

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 102.



Frank's "Science of Chirurgie."

EDITED

FROM THE BODLEIAN ASHMOLE MS. 1396
(ab. 1380 A.D.)

AND THE BRITISH MUSEUM ADDITIONAL MS. 12,056
(ab. 1420 A.D.)

BY

ROBERT V. FLEISCHHACKER, DR. PHIL.

PART I.—TEXT.

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

1894.

Price Twenty Shillings.

PR
1119
A2
no. 102



This book belongs to
THE LIBRARY
of
VICTORIA UNIVERSITY
Toronto 5, Canada





June 1893. For this year the Original-Series Texts were issued in 1892, and so was one of the Extra-Series Texts; while the other went out early in 1893. The Texts of both Series for 1894 (except *The Prymer*, which is nearly ready) are now issued, with one of the Original Series for 1895 (the other is promised for July). The Extra Series Texts for 1895 are almost sure to be issued in 1893, as well as some Texts for 1896. **Members are asked to send their two- or three-years' subscriptions for both Series at once in advance.**

The Original-Series Texts for 1893 are:—No. 100, Capgrave's *Life of St. Katharine*, the text edited by Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords, side-notes, and a discussion of Chaucer's *gh* and Shakspeare's long *i*, by Dr. F. J. Furnivall; and No. 101, the *Cursor Mundi*, Part VII and last, an Essay on the MSS. of the Poem, their Dialects and Relation, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe.

The Extra-Series Texts for 1893 are—No. LXIII, Thomas à Kempis's *De Imitatione Christi*, english: the first three books from the MS in Trinity College Dublin, about 1440 A.D., and from Dr. Wm. Atkynson's version, printed by Wynkyn de Worde in 1502; and the fourth book by Margaret, Countess of Richmond and Derby, Mother of Henry VII; the whole edited by Prof. J. K. Ingram, LL.D.; and No. LXIV, Dr. Mary N. Colvin's edition of Caxton's *Godfrey of Bolyne, or Last Siege of Jerusalem*, A. D. 1481.

The Original Series Texts for 1894 are—No. 102, Part I of Dr. R. von Fleischhacker's edition of the english *Lanfranc's Chirurgie*, about 1400 A.D., a treatise perhaps more valuable for Dictionary purposes than any yet issued by the Society, which takes up to Chaucer's death the whole class of surgical and medical words (besides many others of common speech) which we before had only from the black-letters of Queen Elizabeth's time. (Dr. von Fleischhacker is now in England, and hopes soon to finish Part II). No. 103, *The Prymer or Lay Folk's Prayer-book*, edited by Mr. Henry Littlehales, and his friend Mr. A. R. Clark.

The Extra Series Texts for 1894 are No. LXV, the 3rd and last Part of *Sir Bevis of Hampton*, edited by Prof. Kölbing, Ph.D., and No. LXVI, Lydgate's and Burgh's *Secrees of Phillisoffres*, edited by Robert Steele, B.A.

For 1895, the first Text of the Original Series is No. 104, Part I of Mr. Gollancz's re-edition of *The Exeter Book*, from the unique MS. The second, No. 105, will be Prof. Napier's edition of a 12th-century Homily on the *Legend of the Cross*, with an Introduction on the different Legends about it, together with an incomplete Chester *Hymn to the Virgin* of the 13th century, and a short Paper on the soft and hard *g*'s of the *Ormulum* MS., with a facsimile.

During 1892, two unexpected sources of help to the Society sprang up. First, Mr. Henry Littlehales of Bexley Heath, who had printed a MS of the English *Prymer*, ab. 1400 A.D., kindly offered to copy, and pay for the setting, not only of the Cambridge University MS of the *Prymer*, ab. 1425 A.D., but also of a series of extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers, illustrating the religious condition and social life of the diocese. The *Prymer* or Lay Folk's Prayer-book is all in type, and will form a valuable portion of the Society's Pre-Reformation vernacular Liturgical Series, undertaken on the recommendation of the late Canon Simmons. The Extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers are nearly half copied, and will go to press soon. Mr. Littlehales has also put himself generally at the Society's service, and has copied half of the Salisbury Cathedral MS of that very quaint treatise, *Jacob's Well*, about the middle of the 15th century. Mr. Littlehales has likewise copied, and will edit for the Society the very interesting set of Accounts of Prior Moore of Worcester, 1518-35, besides *The Pore Caitiff*, &c. &c.

The second promise of help comes, most gratifyingly, from the University of Chicago. Two Professors in the English Department there, Mr. MacClintock and Mr. Oscar Triggs—with the assent of their Principal, Dr. Harper—agreed to edit and print at the Chicago University Press, two Early English Texts to be issued jointly by the University and the E. E. T. Society, the Society paying for its electrotypes. Prof. MacClintock chose the theological collection of John Lacy of Newcastle, A.D. 1434 (see p. 10 below), and Prof. Triggs chose Lydgate's *Assembly of the Gods*. They hope that, notwithstanding their great World's Fair, these Texts will be issued in 1893.

Such relief as the E. E. T. Soc. gets from the above-named helpers will be devoted to its Reprinting Fund. The out-of-print Texts for 1866 are greatly wanted by members and collectors to complete their sets of the Society's publications.

An urgent appeal is hereby made to Members to increase the list of Subscribers to the E. E. Text Society. It is nothing less than a crying scandal that the Hellenic Society should have nearly 900 members, while the Early English Text Society has only a few over 300!

The Original-Series Texts for 1896 and 1897 will be chosen from books already at press: Richard Misy's—he was Prior of Lincoln—englishings in 1434 and 1435 of Richard Rolle of Hampole's *Fire of Love* and *Mending of Life*, edited by Robert Harvey, M.A., Headmaster of the Cork Grammar School; Part II of the *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.*, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall; Mr. Gollancz's re-edited *Exeter-Book*—Anglo-Saxon Poems from the unique MS. in Exeter Cathedral—Part II; Miss Pemberton's edition of the

fragments of Queen Elizabeth's englishings (in the Record Office) from Boethius, Plutarch, &c.; Dr. Furnivall's edition of the *Lichfield Gilds* is also all printed, and waits only for the Introduction, which Prof. E. C. K. Gonner has kindly undertaken to write for the book. Prof. Mead has sent to press the completion of the prose *Merlin*, for which the Society has been looking in vain from its Treasurer since 1870. Miss Mary Bateson has at press George Ashby's *Active Policy of a Prince, &c.*, from the unique MS. A. D. 1463. Prof. Ingram's edition of the english *Expugnatio Hibernica* of Giraldus Cambrensis, with interesting dialectic features, is also at press. Mr. Utley is home from Roumania, and promises to finish *Lynnesay's Works* this year. Dr. G. Herzfeld's re-edition of the Anglo-Saxon *Martyrology* is all in type. Part II of Dr. Holthausen's *Vices and Virtues* needs only its Glossary.

Mr. Steele has in type two prose englishings of the *Secreta Secretorum* from MSS. at Lambeth, the second of which is very rich in new words. A version by James Yonge in 1428, made for the Earl of Ormonde, will be copied from its Rawlinson MS. at Oxford, and collated with the later Lambeth MS. All three versions differ widely in contents and words.

The Texts for the Extra Series in 1895 and 1896 will be chosen from the prose Romance of *Melusine*, edited from the unique MS. by Mr. A. K. Donald (text all printed); *The Three Kings' Sons*, edited from its unique MS. by Dr. Leon Kellner (at press); *The Towneley Plays*, re-edited from the unique MS. by Mr. George England and A. W. Pollard, M.A.; Part II of *The Chester Plays*, re-edited from the MSS., with a full collation of the formerly missing Devonshire MS., by Mr. G. England (at press); the Parallel-Text of the only two MSS. of the *Owl and Nightingale*, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes (at press); Hoccleve's englishing of *De Regimine Principum*, 1411-12, edited by Dr. Furnivall; Deguilleville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, three prose versions—two English, one French—edited by G. N. Currie, M.A. Some of these Texts will be ready in 1893. Members are therefore asked to send Advance Subscriptions in 1893, for 1894, 1895 and 1896, in order that the 1894-6 books may be issued to them as soon as the editions are finished. The Society's experience has shown that Editors must be taken when they are in the humour for work. All real Students and furtherers of the Society's purpose will be ready to push on the issue of Texts. Those Members who care only a guinea a year (or can afford only that sum) for the history of our language and our nation's thought, will not be hurt by those who care more, getting their books in advance; on the contrary, they will be benefited, as each successive year's work will then be ready for issue on New Year's Day. Members are asked to realise the fact that the Society has now 50 years' work on its Lists,—at its present rate of production,—and that there is from 100 to 200 more years' work to come after that. The year 2000 will not see finished all the Texts that the Society ought to print.

Mr. G. N. Currie is preparing an edition of the 15th and 16th century Prose Versions of Guillaume de Deguilleville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, with the French prose version by Jean Gallopes, from Mr. Henry Hucks Gibbs's MS., Mr. Gibbs having generously promised to pay the extra cost of printing the French text, and engraving one or two of the illuminations in his MS.

Guillaume de Deguilleville, monk of the Cistercian abbey of Chaalis, in the diocese of Senlis, wrote his first verse *Pelerinaige de l'Homme* in 1330-1 when he was 36.¹ Twenty-five (or six) years after, in 1355, he revised his poem, and issued a second version of it, and this is the only one that has been printed. Of the prose representative of the first version, 1330-1, a prose Englishing, about 1430 A. D., was edited by Mr. Aldis Wright for the Roxburghe Club in 1869, from MS. Ff. 5. 30 in the Cambridge University Library. Other copies of this prose English are in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, Q. 2. 25; Univ. Coll. and Corpus Christi, Oxford²; and the Laud Collection in the Bodleian, no. 740. A copy in the Northern dialect is MS. G. 21, in St. John's Coll., Cambridge, and this is the MS. which will be edited by Mr. Sidney J. Herrtage for the E. E. Text Society. The Laud MS. 740 was somewhat condensed and modernised, in the 17th century, into MS. Ff. 6. 30, in the Cambridge University Library:³ "The Pilgrime or the Pilgrimage of Man in this World," copied by Will. Baspoole, whose copy "was verbatim written by Walter Parker, 1645, and from thence transcribed by G. G. 1649; and from thence by W. A. 1655." This last copy may have been read by, or its story reported to, Bunyan, and may have been the groundwork of his *Pilgrim's Progress*. It will be edited by Mr. Currie for the E. E. T. Soc., its text running under the earlier English, as in Mr. Herrtage's edition of the *Gesta Romanorum* for the Society. In February 1464,⁴ Jean Gallopes—a clerk of Angers, afterwards chaplain to John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France—turned Deguilleville's first verse *Pelerinaige* into a prose *Pelerinaige de la vie humaine*.⁵ By the kindness of Mr. Hy. Hucks Gibbs, as above mentioned, Gallopes's French text will be printed opposite the early prose northern Englishing in the Society's edition.

¹ He was born about 1295. See Abbé GOUJER's *Bibliothèque française*, Vol. IX, p. 73-4.—P. M.

² These 3 MSS. have not yet been collated, but are believed to be all of the same version.

³ Another MS. is in the Pepys Library.

⁴ According to Mr. Hy. Hucks Gibbs's MS.

⁵ These were printed in France, late in the 15th or early in the 16th century.

The Second Version of Deguilleville's *Pelerinage de l'Homme*, A.D. 1355 or -6, was englished in verse by Lydgate in 1426. Of Lydgate's poem, the larger part is in the Cotton MS. Vitellius C. xiii (leaves 2-308). This MS. leaves out Chaucer's englishing of Deguilleville's *ABC* or *Prayer to the Virgin*, of which the successive stanzas start with A, B, C, and run all thro' the alphabet; and it has 2 gaps, of which most of the second can be filled up from the end of the other imperfect MS. Cotton, Tiberius A vii. The rest of the stoppages must be got from the original French in Harleian 4399,¹ and Additional 22,937² and 25,594³ in the British Museum. Lydgate's version will be edited in due course for the Society.

Besides his first *Pelerinage de l'homme* in its two versions, Deguilleville wrote a second, "de l'ame separée du corps," and a third, "de nostre seigneur Iesus." Of the second, a prose Englishing of 1413, *The Pilgrimage of the Soule* (perhaps in part by Lydgate), exists in the Egerton MS. 615,⁴ at Hatfield, Cambridge (Univ. Kk. 1. 7, Caius), Oxford (Univ. Coll. and Corpus), and in Caxton's edition of 1483. This version has 'somewhat of additions' as Caxton says, and some shortenings too, as the maker of both, the first translator, tells us in the MSS. Caxton leaves out the earlier englisher's interesting Epilog in the Egerton MS. This prose englishing of the *Soule* will be edited for the Society after that of the *Man* is finished, and will have Gallopes's French opposite it, from Mr. Gibbs's MS., as his gift to the Society. Of the *Pilgrimage of Jesus*, no englishing is known.

As to the MS. Anglo-Saxon Psalters, Dr. Hy. Sweet has edited the oldest MS., the Vespasian, in his *Oldest English Texts* for the Society, and Mr. Harsley has edited the latest, c. 1150, Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter. Dr. Logeman then raised the question of how the other MSS. should be treated; and he was authorised to prepare a Parallel-Text edition of the first ten Psalms from all the MSS., to test whether the best way of printing them would be in one group, or in two—in each case giving parts of all the MSS. on one page—under their respective Roman and Gallican Latin originals. If collation proves that all the MSS. cannot go together on successive pages, there will be two Parallel-Texts, one of the A.Sax. MSS. following the Roman version, and the other, of those glossing the Gallican; but every effort will be made to get the whole into one Parallel-Text. This Text will be an extravagance; but as the Society has not yet committed one in Anglo-Saxon, it will indulge in one now; and every student will rejoice at having the whole Psalter material before him in the most convenient form. Dr. Logeman and Mr. Harsley will be joint editors of the Parallel-Text. The Early English Psalters are all independent versions, and will follow separately in due course.

Through the good offices of the Examiners, some of the books for the Early-English Examinations of the University of London will be chosen from the Society's publications, the Committee having undertaken to supply such books to students at a large reduction in price. The profits from these sales will be applied to the Society's Reprints. Five of its 1866 Texts, and one of its 1867, still need reproducing. Donations for this purpose will be welcome. They should be paid to the Hon. Sec., Mr. W. A. Dalziel, 67 Victoria Rd., Finsbury Park, London, N.

Members are reminded that *fresh Subscribers are always wanted*, and that the Committee can at any time, on short notice, send to press an additional Thousand Pounds' worth of work.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints*, sooner or later. The Society cannot leave out any of them, even though some are dull. The Sinners would doubtless be much more interesting. But in many Saints' Lives will be found valuable incidental details of our forefathers' social state, and all are worthful for the history of our language. The Lives may be looked on as the religious romances or story-books of their period.

The Standard Collection of Saints' Lives in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS., the Harleian MS. 2277, &c. will repeat the Laud set, our No. 87, with additions, and in right order. (The foundation MS. (Laud 108) had to be printed first, to prevent quite unwieldy collations.) The Supplementary Lives from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes.

Besides the Saints' Lives, Trevisa's englishing of *Bartholomeus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the mediæval Cyclopædia of Science, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking. Dr. R. von Fleischhaecker will edit it. Prof. Napier of Oxford, wishing to have the whole of our MS. Anglo-Saxon in type, and accessible to students, will edit for the Society all the unprinted and other Anglo-Saxon Homilies which are not included in Thorpe's edition of Ælfric's prose,⁵ Dr. Morris's of the Blickling Homilies, and Prof. Skeat's of Ælfric's Metrical

¹ 15th cent., containing only the *Vie humaine*.

² 15th cent., containing all the 3 Pilgrimages, the 3rd being Jesus Christ's.

³ 14th cent., containing the *Vie humaine* and the 2nd Pilgrimage, de l'Ance: both incomplete.

⁴ Ab. 1430, 106 leaves (leaf 1 of text wanting), with illuminations of nice little devils—red, green, tawny &c.—and damned souls, fires, angels &c.

⁵ Of these, Mr. Harsley is preparing a new edition, with collations of all the MSS. Many copies of Thorpe's book, not issued by the Ælfric Society, are still in stock.

Of the Vercelli Homilies, the Society has bought the copy made by Prof. G. Lattanzi.

Homilies. Prof. Kölbing has also undertaken for the Society's Extra Series a Parallel-Text of all the six MSS. of the *Anceren Biivle*, one of the most important foundation-documents of Early English. Mr. Harvey, too, means to prepare an edition of the three MSS. of the *Earliest English Metrical Psalter*, one of which was edited by the late Mr. Stevenson for the Surtees Society.

In case more Texts are ready at any time than can be paid for by the current year's income, they will be dated the next year, and issued in advance to such Members as will pay advance subscriptions. The 1886-7 delay in getting out Texts must not occur again, if it can possibly be avoided. The Director has in hand for future volunteer Editors copies of 2 or 3 MSS.

Members of the Society will learn with pleasure that its example has been followed, not only by the Old French Text Society which has done such admirable work under its founders Profs. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, but also by the Early Russian Text Society, which was set on foot in 1877, and has since issued many excellent editions of old MS. Chronicles &c.

Members will also note with pleasure the annexation of large tracts of our Early English territory by the important German contingent under General Zupitza, Colonels Kölbing and Horstmann, volunteers Hausknecht, Einkenel, Haenisch, Kaluza, Hupe, Adam, Holthausen, &c. &c. Scandinavia has also sent us Dr. Erdmann; Holland, Dr. H. Logeman; France, Prof. Paul Meyer—with Gaston Paris as adviser;—Italy, Prof. Lattanzi; while America is represented by Prof. Child, Dr. Mary Noyes Colvin, Prof. Mead, Prof. Perrin, &c. The sympathy, the ready help, which the Society's work has called forth from the Continent and the United States, have been among the pleasantest experiences of the Society's life, a real aid and cheer amid all troubles and discouragements. All our Members are grateful for it, and recognise that the bond their work has woven between them and the lovers of language and antiquity across the seas is one of the most welcome results of the Society's efforts.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

Half the Publications for 1866 (13, 14, 15, 22) are out of print, but will be gradually reprinted. Subscribers who desire the issue for 1866 should send their guineas at once to the Hon. Secretary, in order that other Texts for 1866 may be sent to press.

The Publications for 1864-1894 (one guinea each year, save those for 1866 now half out of print, two guineas) are:—

- | | | |
|--|----------|------------------|
| 1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 16s. | 1864 |
| 2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. | 4s. | " |
| 3. Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. | 4s. | " |
| 4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 10s. | " |
| 5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. | 4s. | 1865 |
| 6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. | 8s. | " |
| 7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 8s. | " |
| 8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock. | 7s. | " |
| 9. Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall. | 10s. | " |
| 10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley. | 2s. 6d. | " |
| 11. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A. | 3s. | " |
| 12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. | 1s. | " |
| 13. Seinte Marherete, 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne; to be re-edited by Prof. Herford, M.A., Ph.D. | | 1866 |
| 14. Kyng Horn, Floris and Blanchefour, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby, B.D. | | " |
| 15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall. | | " |
| 16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall. | 1s. | [In print.] |
| 17. Parallel Extracts from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. | 1s. | [In print.] |
| 18. Hali Meidenhad, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne. | | [In print.] |
| 19. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A. | 3s. 6d. | [In print.] |
| 20. Hampole's English Prose Treatises, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. | 1s. | [In print.] |
| 21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley. | 4s. | [In print.] |
| 22. Partenay or Lusignen, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. | | " |
| 23. Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Inwyt, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 10s. 6d. | [In print.] |
| 24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall. | | [At Press. 1867] |
| 25. The Stations of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Cleue Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall. | 1s. | " |
| 26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Thornton's MS. (ab. 1440), ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. | 2s. | " |
| 27. Levis's Manipulus Vocabulorum, a ryming Dictionary, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley. | 12s. | " |
| 28. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, 1362 A.D.; Text A, Part I., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. | 6s. | " |
| 29. Old English Homilies (ab. 1220-30 A.D.). Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 7s. | " |
| 30. Pierce the Ploughmans Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. | 2s. | " |

31. *Myrc's Duties of a Parish Priest*, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4s. 1868
32. *Early English Meals and Manners: the Boke of Nourture of John Russell, the Bokes of Keruyng, Curtasye, and Demeanor, the Babees Boke, Urbanitatis, &c.*, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 12s. "
33. *The Knight de la Tour Landry*, ab. 1440 A.D. A Book for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A. 8s. "
34. *Old English Homilies* (before 1300 A.D.). Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. "
35. *Lyndesay's Works*, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall. 2s. "
36. *Merlin*, Part III. Ed. H. B. Wheatley. On Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie. 12s. 1860
37. *Sir David Lyndesay's Works*, Part IV., Ane Satyre of the Three Estaitis. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s. "
38. *William's Vision of Piers the Plowman*, Part II. Text B. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. 6d. "
39. *Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy*. Ed. D. Donaldson & G. A. Panton. Pt. I. 10s. 6d. "
40. *English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D.* Edit. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by Dr. L. Brentano. 21s. 1870
41. *William Lauder's Minor Poems*. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s. "
42. *Bernardus De Cura Rei Familiaris*, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 2s. "
43. *Ratis Raving*, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 3s. "
44. *The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathie, or The Holy Grail: from the Vernon MS.; with W. de Worde's and Pynson's Lives of Joseph*: ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 5s. 1871
45. *King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care*, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, by Henry Sweet, Esq., B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. 10s. "
46. *Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems*, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
47. *Sir David Lyndesay's Works*, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 3s. "
48. *The Times' Whistle*, and other Poems, by R. C., 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "
49. *An Old English Miscellany*, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, and Religious Poems of the 13th cent., ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 10s. 1872
50. *King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care*, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. Part II. 10s. "
51. *The Life of St Juliana*, 2 versions, A.D. 1230, with translations; ed. T. O. Cockayne & E. Brock. 2s. "
52. *Palladius on Husbandrie*, english (ab. 1420 A.D.), ed. Rev. Barton Lodge, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
53. *Old-English Homilies, Series II.*, and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. 1873
54. *The Vision of Piers Plowman, Text C: Richard the Redeles* (by William, the author of the *Vision*) and *The Crowned King*; Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
55. *Generydes*, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D., ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I. 3s. "
56. *The Gest Hystoriale of the Destruction of Troy*, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10s. 6d. 1874
57. *The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"*; in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. Morris, M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d. "
58. *The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D.*, ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. Part I. 8s. "
59. *The "Cursor Mundi,"* in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 15s. 1875
60. *Meditacyuns on the Soper of our Lorde* (by Robert of Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper. 2s. 6d. "
61. *The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceuldoune*, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 10s. 6d. "
62. *The "Cursor Mundi,"* in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 15s. 1876
63. *The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D.*, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 7s. "
64. *Francis Thynne's Embleames and Epigrams*, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. "
65. *Be Domes Dæge* (*Bede's De Die Judicii*), &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, B.D. 2s. "
66. *The "Cursor Mundi,"* in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV., with 2 autotypes. 10s. 1877
67. *Notes on Piers Plowman*, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 21s. "
68. *The "Cursor Mundi,"* in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part V. 25s. 1878
69. *Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II.*, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s. "
70. *Generydes*, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4s. "
71. *The Lay Folks Mass-Book*, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmons. 25s. 1879
72. *Palladius on Husbandrie*, english (ab. 1420 A.D.). Part II. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. "
73. *The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D.*, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 10s. 1880
74. *English Works of Wyclif*, hitherto unprinted, ed. F. D. Matthew, Esq. 20s. "
75. *Catholicon Anglicum*, an early English Dictionary, from Lord Monson's MS. A.D. 1483, ed., with Introduction & Notes, by S. J. Herrtage, B.A.; and with a Preface by H. B. Wheatley. 20s. 1881
76. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, in MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
77. *Beowulf*, the unique MS. autotyped and transliterated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. 25s. 1882
78. *The Fifty Earliest English Wills*, in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439, ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7s. "
79. *King Alfred's Orosius*, from Lord Tollemache's 9th century MS., Part I, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 13s. 1883
80. *Erta Voluane*. Facsimile of the Epinal Glossary, 8th cent., ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 15s. "
81. *The Early-English Life of St. Katherine* and its Latin Original, ed. Dr. Eikenkel. 12s. 1884
82. *Piers Plowman: Notes*, Glossary, &c. Part IV, completing the work, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
83. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D. Part II. 12s. 1885
84. *The Oldest English Texts, Charters, &c.*, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 20s. "
85. *Additional Analogs to 'The Wright's Chaste Wife,'* No. 12, by W. A. Clouston. 1s. 1886
86. *The Three Kings of Cologne*. 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 17s. "
87. *Prose Lives of Women Saints*, ab. 1610 A.D., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 12s. "
88. *Early English Verse Lives of Saints* (earliest version), Laud MS. 108, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1887
89. *Hy. Bradshaw's Life of St. Werburga* (Pynson, 1521), ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 10s. "

89. <i>VICES and VIRTUES</i> , from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen. Part I. 8s.	1888
90. <i>Anglo-Saxon and Latin Rule of St. Benet</i> , interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Logeman. 12s.	"
91. <i>Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books</i> , ab. 1430-1450, edited by Mr. T. Austin. 10s.	"
92. <i>Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter</i> , from the Trin. Cambr. MS., ab. 1150 A.D., ed. F. Harsley, B.A. Pt. I. 12s.	1859
93. <i>Defensor's Liber Sointillarum</i> , edited from the MSS. by Ernest Rhodes, B.A. 12s.	"
94. <i>Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints</i> , MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part III., ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 12s.	1890
95. <i>The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History</i> , re-edited by Dr. Thomas Miller. Part I. 18s.	"
(With Reprints of No. 16, <i>The Book of Quinte Essence</i> , and No. 26, <i>Religious Pieces</i> , from R. Thornton's MS.)	
96. <i>The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History</i> , re-edited by Dr. Thomas Miller. Pt. II. 15s.	1891
97. <i>The Earliest English Prose Psalter</i> , edited from its 2 MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part I. 15s.	"
98. <i>Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.</i> , Part I., ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s.	1892
99. <i>Cursor Mundi</i> . Part VI. Preface, Notes, and Glossary, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s.	"
100. <i>Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine</i> , ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20s.	1893
101. <i>Cursor Mundi</i> . Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe. 10s.	"
102. <i>Lanfranc's Chirurgie</i> , ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker. Part I. 20s.	1894
103. <i>The Prymer or Lay-Folk's Prayer-Book</i> , Camb. Univ. MS., ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. 10s.	"
104. <i>The Exeter Book</i> (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS. by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part I. 20s.	1895
105. <i>The Legend of the Cross</i> , from a 12th century MS., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.	1896
106.	"
107.	"

EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1867-1893 (one guinea each year) are:—

I. <i>William of Palerne</i> ; or, <i>William and the Werwolf</i> . Re-edited by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 13s.	1867
II. <i>Early English Pronunciation</i> with especial Reference to Shakspere and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I. 10s.	"
III. <i>Caxton's Book of Curtesye</i> , in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 5s.	1868
IV. <i>Havelok the Dane</i> . Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s.	"
V. <i>Chaucer's Boethius</i> . Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 12s.	"
VI. <i>Chevelere Assigne</i> . Re-edited from the unique MS. by H. H. Gibbs, Esq., M.A. 3s.	"
VII. <i>Early English Pronunciation</i> , by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II. 10s.	1869
VIII. <i>Queene Elizabethes Achademy</i> , &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald. 15s.	"
IX. <i>Awdley's Fraternite of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat</i> , &c. Ed. E. Viles & F. J. Furnivall. 7s. 6d.	"
X. <i>Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyetary of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the Berde, 1542-3</i> . Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 18s.	1870
XI. <i>Barbour's Bruce</i> , Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12s.	"
XII. <i>England in Henry VIII's Time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole & Lupset</i> , by Thom. Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II. 12s. (Part I. is No. XXXII, 1878, 8s.)	1871
XIII. <i>A Supplicacyon of the Beggars</i> , by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with <i>A Supplication to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde; A Supplication of the Poore Commons; and The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep</i> , ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s.	"
XIV. <i>Early English Pronunciation</i> , by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III. 10s.	"
XV. <i>Robert Crowley's Thirty-One Epigrams, Voyce of the Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth, &c.</i> , A.D. 1550-1, edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 12s.	1872
XVI. <i>Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe</i> . Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 6s.	"
XVII. <i>The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D.</i> , with 4 Tracts (1542-48), ed. Dr. Murray. Part I. 10s.	"
XVIII. <i>The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D.</i> , ed. Dr. Murray. Part II. 8s.	1873
XIX. <i>Oure Ladyes Myroure</i> , A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A. 24s.	"
XX. <i>Lonelich's History of the Holy Grail</i> (ab. 1450 A.D.), ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part I. 8s.	1874
XXI. <i>Barbour's Bruce</i> , Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 4s.	"
XXII. <i>Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderyk Mors</i> (ab. 1542); and <i>The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Citie of London</i> , made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper. 9s.	"
XXIII. <i>Early English Pronunciation</i> , by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV. 10s.	"
XXIV. <i>Lonelich's History of the Holy Grail</i> , ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part II. 10s.	1875
XXV. <i>Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version</i> , ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 20s.	"
XXVI. <i>Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version</i> , ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part II. 14s.	1876
XXVII. <i>Bp. Fisher's English Works</i> (died 1535), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. Part I, the Text. 16s.	"
XXVIII. <i>Lonelich's Holy Grail</i> , ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part III. 10s.	1877
XXIX. <i>Barbour's Bruce</i> . Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 21s.	"
XXX. <i>Lonelich's Holy Grail</i> , ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part IV. 15s.	1878
XXXI. <i>The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus</i> , ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s.	"
XXXII. <i>Starkey's "England in Henry VIII's time."</i> Pt. I. <i>Starkey's Life and Letters</i> , ed. S. J. Hertridge. 8s.	"
XXXIII. <i>Gesta Romanorum</i> (english ab. 1440), ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s.	1879
XXXIV. <i>The Charlemagne Romances:—1. Sir Ferumbras</i> , from Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Hertridge. 15s.	"

XXXV. Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Sege off Melayne, Sir Otuel, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 12s.	1880
XXXVI. Charlemagne Romances:—3. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. I., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 16s.	„
XXXVII. Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. II., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 15s.	1881
XXXVIII. Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowdone of Babylone, ed. Dr. Hausknecht. 15s.	„
XXXIX. Charlemagne Romances:—6. Rauf Colyear, Roland, Otuel, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s.	1882
XL. Charlemagne Romances:—7. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part I. 15s.	„
XLI. Charlemagne Romances:—8. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. II. 15s.	1883
XLII. Guy of Warwick: 2 texts (Auchinleck MS. and Cairns MS.), ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 15s.	„
XLIII. Charlemagne Romances:—9. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. III. 15s.	1884
XLIV. Charlemagne Romances:—10. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss Octavia Richardson. Pt. I. 15s.	„
XLV. Charlemagne Romances:—11. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss O. Richardson. Pt. II. 20s.	1885
XLVI. Sir Bevis of Hamton, from the Auchinleck and other MSS., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part I. 10s.	„
XLVII. The Wars of Alexander, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 20s.	1886
XLVIII. Sir Bevis of Hamton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part II. 10s.	„
XLIX. Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Cairns MSS.), Pt. II., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s.	1887
L. Charlemagne Romances:—12. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part IV. 5s.	„
LI. Torrent of Portyngale, from the unique MS. in the Chetham Library, ed. E. Adam, Ph.D. 10s.	„
LII. Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1578 (ed. 1, 1564). Ed. M. & A. H. Bullen. 10s.	1888
LIII. Vicary's Anatomie of the Body of Man, 1548, ed. 1577, ed. F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part I. 15s.	„
LIV. Caxton's Englishing of Alain Chartier's Curial, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall & Prof. P. Meyer. 5s.	„
LV. Barbour's Bruce, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. Part IV. 5s.	1889
LVI. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Pt. V., the present English Dialects. 25s.	„
LVII. Caxton's Eneydos, A.D. 1490, coll. with its French, ed. M. T. Culley, M.A. & Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 13s.	1890
LVIII. Caxton's Blanchardyn & Eglantine, c. 1489, extracts from ed. 1595, & French, ed. Dr. L. Kellner. 17s.	„
LIX. Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Cairns MSS.), Part III., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s.	1891
LX. Lydgate's Temple of Glass, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schick. 15s.	„
LXI. Hoccleve's Minor Poems, I., from the Phillips and Durham MSS., ed. F. J. Furnivall, Ph.D. 15s.	1892
LXII. The Chester Plays, re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deimling. Part I. 15s.	„
LXIII. Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi, english ab. 1440, & 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram. 1s.	1893
LXIV. Caxton's Godfrey of Bolyne, or Last Siege of Jerusalem, 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15s.	„
LXV. Sir Bevis of Hamton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part III. 15s.	1894
LXVI. Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philisoffres. ab. 1445—50, ed. R. Steele, B.A. 15s.	„
LXVII.	1895
LXVIII.	„

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY TEXTS PREPARING.

Besides the Texts named as at press on p. 12 of the Cover of the Early English Text Society's last books, the following Texts are also slowly preparing for the Society:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

- Thomas Robinson's Life and Death of *Mary Magdalene*, from the 2 MSS., ab. 1620 A.D. (*Text in type*.)
 The Earliest English Prose Psalter, ed. Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part II.
 Anglo-Saxon Poems, from the Vercelli MS., re-edited by I. Gollancz, M.A.
 Anglo-Saxon Glosses to Latin Prayers and Hymns, edited by Dr. F. Holthausen.
 Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part IV, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D.
 All the Anglo-Saxon Homilies and Lives of Saints not accessible in English editions, including those of the Vercelli MS. &c., edited by Prof. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.
 The Anglo-Saxon Psalms; all the MSS. in Parallel Texts, ed. Dr. H. Logeman and F. Harsley, B.A.
 Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., ed. Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 Byrhtferth's Handbooc, edited by Prof. G. Hempl.
 The Secret of Secrets, 3 prose versions from MSS., 2 at Lambeth, and one by Jas. Younge, 1420, ed. R. Steele, B.A.
 The Rule of St. Benet: 5 Texts, Anglo-Saxon, Early English, Caxton, &c., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.
 The Seven Sages, in the Northern Dialect, from a Cotton MS., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.
 The Master of the Game, a Book of Huntynge for Hen. V. when Prince of Wales, ed. Mr. T. Austin.
 Ailred's Rule of Nuns, &c., edited from the Vernon MS., by the Rev. Canon H. R. Bramley, M.A.
 Lonelich's Merlin (verse), from the unique MS., ed. by Miss Mary Bateson and Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D.
 Merlin (prose), Part IV., containing Preface, Index, and Glossary. Edited by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.
 Early English Verse Lives of Saints, Standard Collection, from the Harl. MS.
 Early English Confessionals, edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 A Lapidary, from Lord Tollemache's MS., &c., edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morsbach.
 Gilbert Banastre's Poems, and other Boccaccio englishings, edited by Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.

- Lanfranc's Chirurgie**, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part II.
 William of Nassington's Mirror of Life, from Jn. of Waldby. (*Editor Wanted*.)
 A Chronicle of England to 1327 A.D., Northern verse (42,000 lines), ab. 1400 A.D., ed. M. L. Perrin, B.A.
 More Early English Wills from the Probate Registry at Somerset House. (*Editor Wanted*.)
 Early Lincoln Wills and Documents from the Bishops' Registers, &c., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.
 Early Canterbury Wills, edited by William Cowper, B.A., and J. Meadows Cowper.
 Early Norwich Wills, edited by Walter Rye, and F. J. Furnivall.
 The Cartularies of Osney Abbey and Godstow Nunnery, englisht ab. 1450, ed. Rev. A. Clark, M.A.
 The Macro Moralities, edited from Mr. Gurney's unique MS., by Alfred W. Pollard, M.A.
 A Troy-Book, edited from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. E. Wülfing.
 Alliterative Prophecies, edited from the MSS. by Prof. Brandl, Ph. D.
 Miscellaneous Alliterative Poems, edited from the MSS. by Dr. L. Morsbach.
 Bird and Beast Poems, a collection from MSS., edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Scire Mori, &c., from the Lichfield MS. 16, ed. Miss Rosa Elverson, LL.A., and Miss Florence Gilbert.
 Nicholas Trivet's French Chronicle, from Sir A. Aclauid-Hood's unique MS., ed. by Miss Mary Bateson.
 De Guilleville's Pilgrimage of the Sowle, edited by G. N. Currie, M.A.
 Stories for Sermons, edited from the Addit. MS. 25,719 by Dr. Wieck of Coblenz.
 A 15th Century Treatise on Arithmetic, edited by Robert Steele, B.A.
 Extracts from the Registers of Boughton, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
 Jacob's Well, from a Salisbury Cathedral MS., ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
 The Diary of Prior Moore of Worcester, A.D. 1518-25, from the unique MS., ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
 The pore Caitiff, from its MSS., ed. Henry Littlehales, Esq.
 Early English Homilies in Harl. 2276 &c., c. 1400, ed. J. Friedländer.
 Promptorium Parvulorum, c. 1440, from the Winchester MS., ed. Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A.

EXTRA SERIES.

- Vicary's Anatomie, 1548**, ed. 1577, edited by F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part II. [*At Press*.]
 Bp. Fisher's English Works, Pt. II., with his *Life and Letters*, ed. Rev. Ronald Bayne, B.A. [*At Press*.]
 William Staunton's St. Patrick's Purgatory, &c., ed. J. T. Herbert, M.A.
 A Parallel-text of the 6 MSS. of the Ancren Riwle, ed. Prof. Dr. E. Kùlbging.
 Trevisa's Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum, re-edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1564, 1573, 1578. Ed. A. H. and M. Bullen. Pt. II.
 The Romance of Boetius and Sidrac, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 The Romance of Clariodus, re-edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Sir Amadas, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Sir Degrevant, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. Luick.
 Robert of Brunne's Chronicle of England, from the Inner Temple MS., ed. by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.
 Maundeville's Voiage and Travaile, re-edited from the Cotton MS. Titus C. 16, &c., by Miss M. Bateson.
 Arthur and Merlin, re-edited from the unique MS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Guy of Warwick, Copland's version, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 The Siege of Jerusalem, Text A, edited from the MSS. by Dr. F. Kopka.
 Liber Fundacionis Ecclesie Sancti Bartholomei Londoniarum: englisht ab. 1425, ed. Norman Moore, M.D.
 Awdelay's Poems, re-edited from the unique MS. Douce 302, by Dr. E. Wülfing.
 William of Shoreham's Works, re-edited by Professor Konrath, Ph.D.
 The Wyse Chylde and other early Treatises on Education, Northwick School, Harl. 2099 &c., ed. G. Collar, B.A.
 Caxton's Dices and Sayengis of Philosophirs, 1477, with Lord Tollemache's MS. version, ed. S. I. Butler, Esq.
 Caxton's Book of the Ordre of Chyualry, collated with Loutfut's Scotch copy, ed. F. S. Ellis, Esq.
 Lydgate's Court of Sapience, edited by Dr. Borsdorf.
 Lydgate's Lyfe of oure Lady, ed. by Prof. Georg Fiedler, Ph.D.
 Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality, edited by Dr. J. Schick.
 Lydgate's Life of St. Edmund, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Axel Erdmann.
 Jn. Hart's Orthographie, MS. 1551; black and fonetic letters, 1569, ed. Dr. Otto Jespersen.
 Richard Coer de Lion, re-edited from Harl. MS. 4690, by Prof. Hausknecht, Ph.D.
 The Romance of Athelstan, re-edited by Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 The Romance of Sir Degare, re-edited by Dr. Breul.
 Mulcaster's Positions 1581, and Elementarie 1582, ed. Dr. Th. Klaehr, Dresden.
 Caxton's Recuyell of the Histories of Troye, edited by H. Halliday Sparling.

The Society is anxious to hear of more early Dialect MSS. Misyn's englishings, in the Lincoln dialect, 1434-5, of two of Hampole's Tracts, are in type. John Lacy's copy, in the Newcastle-on-Tyne dialect, 1434, of some theological tracts in MS. 94 of St. John's College, Oxford, is to be edited by Prof. McClintock. Prof. Napier will reprint his copy of a bit of a Hymn in the Chester dialect late in the 13th century. More Hampoles in the Yorkshire dialect will follow. The Lincoln and Norfolk Wills, already copied by or for Dr. Furnivall, unluckily show but little traces of dialect.

More members (to bring money) and Editors (to bring brains) are wanted by the Society.

Lanfrank's "Science of Chirurgie."

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 102.

1894.



PR
1119
Az
no. 102

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

61034
22-1-37



CORRECTIONS.

- Page 18, line 17, *for vndir oon of þese iij entenciouns read vndir þese iij entenciouns* (note : both MSS. insert *oon of*)
- „ 19, „ 18, *for vp on read vpon*
- „ 25, „ 1, *for white oute read white* (note : MS. inserts *oute*)
- „ 25, „ 12, put a semicolon after *lungis*
- „ 27, „ 13, cancel *to þe maris*
- „ 29, „ 7, cancel the comma between *brayn* and *& þe nucha*, and put a comma after *þe nucha* and after *þe lymes*
- „ 30, note 3, *for fila read villi*
- „ 31, line 7, *for vunnus read vulnus*
- „ 34, „ 8, put a full stop after *senewe*, and transfer note 2 to the preceding *þat*
- „ 38, „ 10, *for humourer read humoures*
- „ 39, „ 14 and 33, cancel the semicolon after *lyme*
- „ 43, „ 10, put a comma after *drie*
- „ 46, „ 17, cancel the inverted commas
- „ 49, „ 6, put a comma after *myzt*
- „ 52, „ 16, *for eills read ellis*
- „ 55, „ 18, cancel the inverted commas
- „ 77, „ 1, put an asterisk and ellipsis after *condicioun*
- „ 77, „ 19, put an asterisk after *askyth*
- „ 83, „ 1, cancel note 1
- „ 89, „ 6, p. 90, l. 16, p. 99, l. 6, *for compouned read compounned*
- „ 108, „ 19, cancel the comma after *clepid*
- „ 110, sidenote line 1, *for Tassillus read Passillus*

CONTENTS.

Ashmole MS. 1396.

- ¹The firste tretis of^t surgerie halt^t wipinne him general ruelis & [1 leaf 1]
 4 canones, & haþ .iij. techingis / þe firste techinge of^t þe firste tretis,
 haþ þre chapitlis. ¶ Cap. j. of^t þe first tretis of^t þe firste techynge page 7
 is of definicionis & of parties þat ben sugettis to surgerie / Cap. ij. page 8
 is of þe qualite, foorme & maners of a surgien / ¶ Cap. iij. is of page 18
 8 intenciouz of a surgien / The secunde techynge of^t þe first tretis page 20
 is on summe & oon chapitle of anotomie, & þat is to seie: þe
 knouleche of^t þe foorme, & þe complexciouns, & þe helpingis of
 alle þe senews, veines, grustlis, brawnis, guttis, bladdre, lyuere,
 12 milte, & alle opere synguler lymes, & of þe engendringe of þe child
 in þe modir wombe / The first² techinge of þe first tretis haþ page 31
 .xv. chapitlis /
 ¶ Cap. j. of þe þridde techinge of þe .j.³ tretis⁴ is of a comoun [4 leaf 1, bk.]
 16 word of^t woundis, & olde woundis / p. 31
² first, mistake for þridde, as below. ³ Chafed: not room for first.

*Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.*⁵Assit Principio Sancta Maria meo

[5 fol. 31 a]

- þe ffirste tretys of surgerie halt with inne hym generall Rulys
 20 & Canons, & hath þre techynges. þe ffurste techynge of þe furste
 tretys haþ þre Chapyttles. Cap. j. of þe furste techynge of the firste
 tretys of dyffinicionis & of partyes þat beþ suggettys to surgerye.
 Cap. ij. is of qualite, fforme & Maners of a Surgien.
 24 ¶ Cap. iij. ys of Intenciouz of a Surgien. þe secunde techynge
 of þe ffurste tretys ys O summe & on Chapitell of a notanye, þat is
 to sugge þe knowlechyng of þe forme, & þe complexion, & þe
 helpynges of alle þe synwes, veyne, grustlys, brawnyz, guttys,
 28 bleddre, lyuere, Mylte, & alle opere senglere lymes, & of þe engend-
 ryng of þe child in þe modire wombe. The þridde techynge of þe
 firste tretys hath xv. Chapytells. Cap. j. on of þe þridde techynge,
 of þe þridde tretys, ys a comyn worde of woundes & olde woundes.

SURGERY.

B

Ashmole 1396.	¶ Cap. ij. of heelynge of a wounde I-maad in fleisch /	p. 33
	¶ Cap. iij. of heelynge of a wounde maad in senewe /	p. 39
	¶ Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe boon /	p. 47
	¶ Cap. v. of a wounde maad wiþ smytynge /	p. 50 4
	¶ Cap. vj. of a wounde bollid and out of kynde, to hoot or to coold /	p. 54
	¶ Cap. vij. of a wounde of a wode hound or of a uenymous beest /	p. 59 8
	¶ Cap. viij. of a wounde þat is out of ioynthe and to-broken /	p. 62
	¶ Cap. ix. of to miche flux of blood of a wounde /	p. 64
	¶ Cap. x. of dietyng of men þat ben woundid /	p. 72
	¶ Capitulum xi ^m of olde woundis /	p. 77 12
	¶ Capitulum xij ^m of a festre ¹ /	p. 89
	¶ Cap. xij. of a canker I-woundid /	p. 92
	¶ Cap. xiiij. of causis þat letten helynge of woundis and of olde woundis /	p. 97 16
	¶ Cap. xv. of crampe þat comeþ in a wounde /	p. 99

The secunde tretis is of particuler woundis of alle lymes of office from þe heed to the foot, techinge þe anotomie of alle lymes from þe heed to þe foot, þat happiþ to be woundid; & þou haddist 20 tofore þe anatomie ²of veynes & senewis, & opere smale lymes.

¹ After *festre* in a later hand is written *festula*.

Add. MS. 12,056.	¶ Cap. ij. off helynge of a wounde y-makyde in flesch.	
	¶ Cap. iij. off helynge of a wounde y-makyde in þe synwe.	
	¶ Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe bon.	24
	¶ Cap. v. of a wounde y-makyd with smytinge.	
	¶ Cap. vj. of a wounde to bolled & out of kynde, to hote opere to colde	
	¶ Cap. vij. of a wounde of a wod hound, opere a venymouse beste.	28
	¶ Cap. viij. of a wounde þat is out of Ioynte & to-broken.	
	¶ Cap. ix. of to myche flux of blod of wounde.	
	¶ Cap. x. of dyotyng of men þat beþ y-woundyde.	32
	¶ Cap. xj. of olde woundes	
	¶ Cap. xij. off a ffestre	
	¶ Cap. xiiij. of a canere y-woundyd	
	¶ Cap. xiiij. off causes þat lettyde helynge of woundes & olde woundes	36
	¶ Cap. xv. of crampe þat comyth to wounde	

¶ **þe secunde tretis** is of particulers woundes of alle lymes of office from þe hed to þe ³ifot, & techyng þe Anotamy of alle lymes 40 from þe hed to þe fote, þat happyde to be woundyde; & þou haddist

[² fol. 31 b]

And so whanne þis tretis is ful eendid, þou hast anotamie of alle lymes of þi bodi, & þis tretis vnder oon summe conteyneþ x. chapitlis. Ashmole
1396.

- 4 ¶ Cap. j. of þe secunde tretis is of woundis of þe heed and is anotamie / p. 106
 ¶ Cap. ij. is of woundis of þe face, and of anotamie of þe same face / p. 141
 8 ¶ Cap. iij. is of anotamie of þe necke, and of woundis of þe same / p. 145
 ¶ Cap. iiij. of woundis of schuldris, armes and hondis, & anotamie of þe same / p. 155
 12 ¶ Cap. v.¹ of woundis of þe brest, & lymes þat ben wiþinne þe brest, & anotamie of þe same. p. 161
 ¶ Cap. vj. of woundis of þe rigboon & of whirlebones of þe rigge, & of anotamie of þe same / p. 166
 16 ¶ Cap. vij. of woundis of þe wesounde þat goþ to þe stomak, & of þe stomak, and of þe guttis, and þe wombe anotamie / p. 167
 ¶ Cap. viij. of woundis of þe lyuere & splene. p. 171
 ¶ Cap. ix. of woundis of þe 3erde, þat is, in þi pintil, and
 20 anotamie / p. 173

¹ v. above line.

to forþ þe Anotamye of veynes & synwes, & opere smale lymes, & so whanne þis tretys is fully endyde þou hast anotamye of alle lymes of thy body. And þis tretys under summe conteynde x. Add. MS.
12,056.

- 24 Chapyttles.
 ¶ Cap. j. of þe secunde tretys is of woundys of þe hed, and hys Anotamye.
 ¶ Cap. ij. is of woundes of þe face, & anotamye of þe same
 28 vysage.
 ¶ Cap. iij. of Anotamie of þe nekke, and of þe woundes of þe same.
 ¶ Cap. iiij. of woundys of schuldre. Armys & hondys, &
 32 Anotamie of þe same.
 ¶ Cap. v. of woundes of þe brest, and lymes þat betwixt wiþ ynne the brest, & Anotamye of þe same.
 ¶ Cap. vj. of woundes of þe ruggebone & of whirele bonys of
 36 þe rugge, & Anotamye of þe same.
 ¶ Cap. vij. of woundes off the wesand þat goth to the stomak, & of þe stomak, & þe guttes, & þe wombe, & Anotamie of the same.
 40 ¶ Cap. viij. of woundes, of þe lyffere & the splene.
 ¶ Cap. ix. of woundes of þe 3erde, þat ys thyn pyntel, & Anotamie.

Ashmole 1396. ¶ Cap. x. of woundis of þe haunche, þies & feet, and anotamie of þe same / p. 176

sign. ij. *The Ashmole MS. breaks off here.*

Add. MS. 12,056. ¶. Cap. x. of woundes of the hanche, thyes, ffet, and Anotamye. 4

- ¶ þe þridde tretis is of cures of opere seknesse, þat beþ noȝt woundes þat mowen falle to dyuers lymes from þe hed to þe fote, þat comyn to be helyde off a surgien, & haþ þre techynges :
- þe furste techyng of þe þridde tretys hath viij Chapyttles : 8
- ¶ Cap. j of the furste techyng of þe þridde tretys ys off Ornamentys of heer. p. 178
- ¶ Cap. ij ys of ffallynge off heer & of scabbe. p. 180
- ¶ Cap. iij of whelkys in þe vysage, & scalys and crustlys p. 188 12
- [fol. 32 a] ¶ Cap. iiij of Morfu, ffrakles, ¹Goute, rosed of þe vysage, & Cicatrics of woundes p. 189
- ¶ Cap. v of zycchyng & scabbe p. 191
- ¶ Cap. vi of drye scabbe & wete scabbe p. 193 16
- ¶ Cap. vii of lepre, & of knowlechyng of leprys Man p. 196
- ¶ Cap. viii of fastnyng a lene lyme, & to lenen a fat lyme p. 199
- ¶ þe secunde techyng of þe þridde tretys is of apostemes, & hath xvij Chapittles 20
- ¶ Cap. j of þe secunde techyng of þe þridde techyng, of generaciones of humour & here lyknesse p. 201
- ¶ Cap. ij of vniuersel word of enpostemes p. 204
- ¶ Cap. iij of enposteme of the hed & watire congregated in 24 children hedys. p. 214
- ¶ Cap. iiij of emposteme undire þe rote of þe ere. p. 216
- ¶ Cap. v of aposteme of þe nekke & þe þrote. p. 217
- ¶ Cap. vj of Aposteme undire þe Arme hole. p. 222 28
- ¶ Cap. vii of Aposteme þat comeþ in the arme from þe schuldre to þe Elbowe. p. 223
- ¶ Cap. viij off Aposteme þat comyþ on þe sydes. p. 224
- ¶ [Cap.] ix of Aposteme þat comeþ aboute þe Mouth of þe 32 stomak. p. 226
- ¶ Cap. x of apostem that comyþ in þe grynde p. 226
- ¶ Cap. xj of aposteme þat comyþ in þe hanche & þe thyes. p. 227
- ¶ Cap. xij of Aposteme off þe pyntel & þe ballokes p. 228 36
- ¶ Cap. xiii of scrofules & glandeles, þat buþ Curnellys þat comyþ in þe flessch p. 229
- ¶ Cap. xiiij of Cancre þat is nouȝt to-broke, & is cure p. 231
- ¶ Cap. xv of bocche þat hongyþ as swynes babbe undire here 40 nekkys p. 232
- ¶ Cap. xvj of Akþe of Ioyntes p. 233

	¶ The þridde techynge of þe þridde tretys haþ xviij Chapittles	Add. MS.
	¶ Cap. I of seknesse of eyzen, & Anotamye of þe same	p. 240 12.056.
	¶ Cap. ij of seknesse of þe eren	p. 254
4	¶ Cap. iij of seknesse of þe nose	p. 258
	¶ Cap. iiij of seknesse of þe mouth	p. 260
	¶ Cap. v of seknesse of a wommans tetys . to grete, to fatte, ¹ opere to lene.	p. 265 [1 fol. 32 b]
8	¶ Cap. x of eiphac þat is to-broke, opere that is to lose	p. 268
	¶ Cap. vij of brokyn ballok	p. 269
	¶ Cap. viij of stone in þe bleddre	p. 273
	¶ Cap. ix of hermofrodite, þat is to seye, þat hath þe schappe of	
12	Man & womman, & opere of wommen þat haþ scyne withyzne here schape / þat sche ne may nouzt conseuwe þe seed of man	
	¶ Cap. x of water of men þat beþ in þe dropsye	p. 281
	¶ Cap. xj of fycus, þat is, a waxynge up on þe hed of þe zerde	p. 287
16	canere fleynge, bocche in þe pyntel & olde wounde.	p. 287
	¶ Cap. xij of emeroydes, feste & rogadyes, þat beþ slyttes in þe Erse	p. 289
	¶ [Cap.] xiiij of cancrefis & malo mortuo, þat buþ olde sores & olde scabbys on þe schyne.	p. 293
20	¶ Cap. xiiij of veynes þat buþ to grete in þe legges, & of þe leggys þat buþ to grete out off kynde of flesch	p. 295
	¶ Cap. xv of wryncles, & chynes of handes, & kybis on þe ffete,	p. 296
24	& wertys, & oper schyn lyke flessch	p. 296
	¶ Cap. xvj of helpynges þat buþ in blod letynge	p. 298
	¶ Cap. xvij of helpys þat buþ in brennynge with yren opere with gold	p. 305
28	¶ Cap. xviiij of helpe þat is with brennynge of fyre, hote watyr & oyle	p. 312
	—————	
	¶ þe iiij tretys is of wrenchyngis of lymes, & haþ tweye tech- ynges, opere tweye summes.	
32	¶ þe firste techynge of þe furþe tretys haþ vij Chapyttles	
	¶ Chap j of broken bonys an vniuersel word	[missing]
	¶ Cap. ij of bonys þat buþ broken of þe face	p. 313
	¶ Cap. iij of bonys þat buþ broken of þe breste	p. 316
36	¶ Cap. iiij of bonys þat buþ brokyn of þe rybbes, & þe rugge bon.	p. 317
	¶ Cap. v of Armys þat buþ broken	p. 318
	¶ Cap. vi of bonys þat buþ bende withouten brekyng	p. 321
40	¶ þe ² Secunde techynge off þe ffurþe Tretys haþ v Chapytells	[2 fol. 33 a]
	¶ þe firste chapyttle of þe secunde techynge a comyn word off wrenchynges out of Ioynte	[missing]
	¶ Cap. ij of dislocacioun of þe cheke bon.	p. 314
44	¶ Cap. iij of dislocacioun of þe rugge bon.	p. 322
	¶ Cap. iiij of dislocacioun of þe schuldre & about þe schuldre	p. 323
	¶ Cap. v of dislocacioun of þe þyze bon & withynne	p. 326

Add. MS. 12,056.	¶ The ffye tretys is Antidotarie, & hath withinne hym vij chaitells	
	¶ Cap. j of castynge abache, & þe manere how þou schalt caste abacch	p. 328 4
	¶ Cap. ij of resolueres & manere of vndoyng & makyng nessesche	p. 333
	¶ Cap. iij of Maturatiuis, þat buþ Ripers	p. 336
	¶ Cap. iiij of Mundificatiuis, þat beþ clanseres	p. 339 8
	¶ Cap. v of glutinatiuis & consolidatiuis, þat buþ closeres & <i>consouderes</i> , & þe difference of hem	p. 342
	¶ Cap. vj of hem þat maken nessesche hardnesse	p. 353
	¶ Cap. vij of Cauterisinge, that is to sugge brennyng, & 12 opnyng þe extremities	p. 349

Ashmole MS. 1396.

SCIENCE OF CIRURGIE.

¹ Now þese chapitles of þis book ben y-ordeyned, I wole fulfille [f. 2, bk.]
my purpos pursuynge ech chapitle bi ordre, & confermynge my
wordis aftir þe auctorite of myn auctouris and wiþ experiment þat

4 I haue longe tyme vsed wiþ þe help of god. // // //

A l þing¹ þat we wolde knowe, bi oon of .iiij. maners þat¹ we Capm. jm
moun knowe, eiþir bi his name, or by his worchinge, or bi
his verri beyng schewynge *propirte* of him-silf / In þis

8 þre maner we moun knowe surgerie bi expownynge of his name;
for siurge comeþ of siros, þat is a word of gru, & in englisch siros
is an hand, & gyros gru, þat is worchinge in englisch / For þe ende
& þe profite of syurgie is * [of hand-wyrchyng. Of þe Name of

Surgery is
from Greek
cheir a hand,
and *ergon*
work.

12 a thyng Galyen seyth: he þat wyl knowe] soþfastnes of a þing,
bisie him nouzt to knowe þe name of a þing, but¹ þe worchinge & þe
effete of þe same þing¹ / Therefore he þat wole knowe what siurgie is,
he moot vndirstonde, þat it is a medicinal science, which techiþ us

It is a medi-
cinal science:

16 to worche wiþ handis *in* mannes bodi, wiþ kuttyng or openyng þe

Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.

20 **N**OW the Chapitelles of þis bok buþ y-ordeynde, y wyl fulfille
my purpos, *pursuynge every chapyteH* by ordere, & *confermyn-*
ge my wordys after þe Autorite of myn Autores, & wiþ experyment
þat y haue longe tyme y-vsye *with* help of god.

24 **A** l thyng þat we wolde knowe, by on of þre maneres we mowe
knowe, oþere by hys name ore by hys worchyng, oþere by hys
verrey beyng schewynge *propirte* of hym self. In þis þre manere
we mowe knowe surgerie by expownynge of hys name; ffor syrugie
cometh of syros, þat ys a word of grewz, & in englyssche syros ys
28 an hand, & gyros grewz, þat ys worchyng an Englyssche; for þe ende
& þe *prophyte* of surgerye ys* of hand wyrchyng. Of þe Name
of a thyng Galyen seyth: he þat wyl knowe* soþfastnesse of a
thyng, besye hym nouzt to knowe þe name ²of a thyng, bute þe [f. fol. 33 v]
32 worchyng & þe Effecte of þe same thyng; where fore he þat wyl
knowe surgerie ys, he mote vndirstonde, þat yt is a medycineal
science, whyche techiþ vs to worche *with* handes in Mannes body, in

cutting, heal-
ing, and
removing
excrescences.
[1 leaf 3]

parties þat ben hole & in helynge þo þat ben broken, or kutt, as þei were toforñ, ¹ or ellis as nyȝ as a man may, & also in doynge away þat is to myche skyn : as wertis or wennys, or þe fleisch to hiȝe //

¶ þe secunde chapitle of þe firste tretis is of þe 4
qualitees, maners, and kunnyng of a surgian //

¶ Cap^m ijm

A surgeon
must be a
temperate
and well
made man.
An ugly man
can't have
good man-
ners.

NEdeful it' is þat a surgian be of a complexioun weel proporciound, and þat his complexioun be temperat / Races seiþ, who-so is nouȝt semelich, is ympossible to haue good maners * [& Auicenne : euylye maners] but folowen þe lijknes of an yuele complexioun / A surgian muste haue handis weel schape, longe smale fyngris, and his body not quakyng, & al must ben of sutil witt, for al þing þat longiþ to surgie may not wiþ lettris ben writen. He muste studie 12 in alle þe parties of philofie & in logik, þat he mowe vnderstonde scripturis ; in gramer, þat he speke congruliche ; in ² arte, þat techiþ him to proue his *proporcions* wiþ good resoun ; in retorik þat techiþ him to speke semelich. Be he no gloton, ne noon enuyous, ne a 16 negard ; be he trewe, vnbeliche, ³ & plesyngliche bere he him-silf to hise pacientis ; speke he noon ribawdrie in þe sike mannis ⁴ hous /

He must
know Phil-
osophy,
Logic, Gram-
mar, and
Rhetoric.

He must not
be a glutton
or a niggard,
but pleasant
with his
patients.
sign. iij.
[4 lf. 3, bk.]

² Lat. : quod docet dialectica

³ *humbilly* in margin, in smaller hand.

Add. MS. 12,056. kuttynge ore opnyng þo partyes þat ben hol, & in helynge þo that ben tobroken oþere kutte, as þey were to fore, oþere ellys as nyȝ as 20 a Man may, and al so in doynge aweye þat ys to myche above þe schyn : as wertys, oþere wennys, oþer flesch to hyȝh.

¶ The secunde Chapitell of þe ffurste Tretys is of þe
qualites, maners and cunnyng of a surgien. 24

Nedfful ys þat a surgien be of a Complexioun wel *proporcyonede*, & þat is complexioun be temperat. **Rasys** seiþ, whose face ys nouȝt semlye, ys impossible to hauen gode maners ; * & **Auicenne** : euylye maners* beþ folwyng þe lyknesse of an yuele complexioun. 28 A surgien moste han handys wel schape, longe smale ffyngres, and hys body nought quakyng, & alle hys lymes able to fulfyllen gode werkynges of hys soule. He most ben of sotyl wytt, ffor alle þynge þat longyth to surgerye may nought wiþ lettres ben wryten. He 32 moste stodyen in alle þe partyes of natureh ffylosophye & in logyk, þat he mowe vnderstonde scriptures ; in gramere, þat he speke congruliche ; in art, þat techyth hym to *preuen* ys *proposiciones* with gode resoun ; in retoryk, þat techith hym to speke semlyche ; be he 36 non gloton, non spowsbrekere, ne Envyous, ne no nygarde ; be he trewe, vnbelyche ⁵ & plesyngliche bere he hym-self to hys pacientis ; speke he non Rybaudye in þe seke mannis house, ne in þe seke

[5 fol. 34. a]

- zeue he no counseil, but if he be axid ; ne speke he wiþ no womman in folie in þe sik mannes hous ; ne chide not wiþ þe sike man ne wiþ noon of his meyne, but curteisli speke to þe sijk man, and in
 4 almaner sijknes bihote him heele, þouþ þou be of him dispeirid ; but neuer þe lattere seie to his freendis þe caas as it stant / Loue he noon harde curis, & entermete he nouzt of þo þat ben in dispeir. Pore men helpe he bi his myzt, and of þe riche men axe he good
 8 reward / Preise he nouzt¹ him-silf wiþ his owne mouþ, ne blame he nouzt scharpliche opere lechis ; loue he alle lechis & clerkis, & bi his myzt¹ make he no leche his enemye. So cloþe he him wiþ vertues, þat of him mai arise good fame & name ; & þis techiþ etik.
 12 So lerne he fisik, þat he mowe wiþ good rulis his surgerie defende & þat techiþ fisik / Neþeles it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe alle þe parties and ech sengle partie of a medicyn. For if a surgian ne knewe nouzt þe science of elementis, whiche þat ben firstmoost force
 16 of natural þingis & of dyuers lymes, he mai not² knowe science of coniuuncions, þat is to seie, medlyngis & complexiouns þat ben nessessarie to his craft / A surgian muste knowe þat alle bodies þat ben medlid vndir þe sercle of þe moone, ben engendrid of foure

and must in desperate cases even promise recovery, but tell the truth to the patient's friends.

He should make the rich pay for the poor.

He shall not praise himself or blame other physicians.

He must know Physics, Medicine,

[² leaf 3*] and the science of mixtures.

¹ myzt in margin.

- 20 Mannes house gif non counseyle bote he be y-askyde, ne speke he with non womman in no³ folye in þe seke Mannes howse, ne chyde nought with þe seke Man ne with none of hys meyne ; but curteslye speke to þe syke man, & in alle manere syknesse behote hym hele, þowþ
 24 þou be of hym dyspeyred ; but neuere þe lattere seye to hys frendys, þe cas as yt stant. Loue he non harde curys, & entyremete he nought of þo þat beþ in dyspeyre. Pore men helpe he be hys myght, & of ryche men aske he gode rewarde. Preyse he nought hymself
 28 with hys owne mouth, ne blame he nought scharplye opere lechys ; loue he alle lechys & Clerkys, & by hys myght make he non leche hys enemye. So cloþe he hym with vertues, þat of hym mowe a-rysen gode fame & name, & þis techyth Etyk. So lerne he ffysik,
 32 þat he mowe with gode rulys hys Surgerye deffende, & þat techith ffysik. Napeles yt ys necessarye a surgien to knowe alle þe partyes in eche sengle partye of a medycine, ffor 3if a surgien knowe nouzt þe sciens of Elementis, whiche þat buþ furst Meverys of naturel
 36 þynges & of dyuerse lymes, he may nouzt knowe sciense of coniuunctiounes, þat ys to seye, medlynges & complexiouns þat beþ necessarye to hys crafte. A surgien most knowe þat alle bodies þat ben medlyde, þat ben vndire þe cercele of þe Mone, ben engen-

Add. MS. 12,056.

³ no above the line.

There are
four ele-
ments: fire,
water, earth,
and air.

By mixture
of their
qualities new
forms arise
capable of
being en-
dowed with
life.

The noblest
of all these is
the human
spirit.

sign. iiij.
[? It. 3*, bk.]

There are 4
qualities and
complexions,

symple bodies, her lijknes ech in *opere* medlynge; þat¹ is to seie : fier & watir, erþe & eir : þese¹ elementis for þe vttermeste eende, & þe vttermeste contrariouste of¹ here qualitees were fer drawn from bodilich lijf¹; but¹ whanne her qualitees, þat¹ is to seie, maner of⁴ beyng, comen into medlynge, so þat¹ þe leeste partie of¹ þat¹ oon entre into þe leeste partie of¹ þat¹ *oper* partie, medlynge brekiþ her contrariouste; & þerof comen a newe foorme, & a newe complexioun of¹ þe medlynge of¹ her substauce / Also þe medlynge of¹ 8 qualitees & þe quantitees is fer drawn from þe contrariouste of¹ þe same elementis, & so complexioun is nyȝ brouȝt to a mele; & so þat¹ þat is medlid is more able to resceiue þe noble foorme of lijf, þe which nobilite aboue alle bodies I-medlid is founden in mannes 12 spirit. But for þat¹ þe qualitees þat wip þo bodies of¹ elementis 2 comen into medlynge, & it¹ is vnpossible to departe þo qualitees from bodies þat¹ ben foure: hoot, coold, moist & drie, & complexiouns ben bi hem, it is nessessarie to fynde in bodies þat ben 16 medlid foure complexiouns / Complexioun is no þing¹ ellis but a maner qualite medlid in worching & suffrynge of¹ contrarious qualitees þat¹ ben founden in elementis, so þat¹ þe leeste partie of¹ ech element entre into þe leeste partie of þe *opere*. & for þat ilke 20

¹ ben above line.

Add. MS.
12 056.

[? fol. 34 b]

dryd of foure symple bodyes, here lyknesse eche in *opere* medlyng; þat ys to sugge, fyr & eyre, erþe & water. þese elementys, ffor þe outemast ende & outemast *contraryousite* of here qualites, weren fer drawn from bodily lyffe; but whanne here 3 qualytes, þat is to 24 sugge manere of beyng, comyn in to medlynge, so þat þe leste partye of þat on entre in to þe leste partye of þat *opere* partye, medlynge brekyth here *contrariosite*, & þere of comme a newe forme & a newe complexioun of þe medlynge of here substauce. Al so 28 þe medlynge of þe qualitees & þe quantites ys fer drawyn from þe *contraryousite* of þe same elementes, & so complexioun is nyȝ brought to a mene, & so þat þat ys medlyde ys more able to resseyuen þe noble forme of lyff, þe whiche noblete aboffe alle bodyes y-medlyde 32 ys y-founden in Mannys spiryt. But for þat þe qualites, þat with þo bodyes of Elementes comyth in to Medlynge—& yt ys vnpossible to departe þo qualites from bodyes—ben foure: hot, colde, moyst, & drye, & complexiouns ben by ham, yt ys necessarie to fynden in 36 bodyes þat ben medlyde, foure complexiouns; Complexioun ys noþyng ellys but a manere qualite medlyde in worchyng, & suffryng of *contrariouse* qualites þat buȝ founden in Elementis, so þat þe leste partye of eche elemente entre in to þe leste partye of þe 40 *opere* partye. And for þat pilke foure complexiouns: hot, colde,

- .iiij. complexiouns, hoot, moist, coold & drie, sumtyme ben y-componed, þat is to seie, medlid, þer comen in hem .viiij. as: hoot & drie, hoot & moist, & coold & drie, and coold & moist / Foure of þese ben symple, and foure componed; & for þilke .viiij. sumtyme ben wiþ mater, & sumtyme wiþoute mater / þer ben .xviij.; & for þilke xvj. aftir sum consideracioun moun be naturel to summan, & summan vnatural / þer moun be .xxxij. Neuereþelatter among alle þe complexiouns þat man mai fynde, þat is componed of dyuers qualitees, þere ne is noon so temperat, as is mannes complexioun; & hauynge reward to mannes complexioun, alle opere þingis *[ys] I-clepid, hoot, coold, moist, ¹ eiper drie. / Whanne ² þat a mete or a medicyn haþ suffrid kyndely heete þat is in man, þat heetiþ him nouzt, ne drieþ him nouzt, ne moistiþ hym nouzt, so þat mannes complexioun may not conseyue wheþer it coldiþ him, heetiþ or drieþ or moistiþ him: it is clepid temperat / & þilke þing þat we seie is hoot in þe firste degree, þat is I-heet' of kyndely heete þat is in oure bodies, & heetiþ oure bodies wiþouten greuauuncis / & þilke we seien to be hoot in þe secunde degree, which þat is het' of oure kyndely heete, so heetiþ oure bodi þat he ne myzte heete us no more wiþoute greuauunce /

hot, moist, cold, and dry. By mixing them we get 8;

and as these may be either with or without matter, 16;

and as they are either natural or unnatural in some men, 32.

Compared with men's complexion,

[1 leaf 4] other things are hot, cold, moist, or dry.

A medicine which does not affect a man's complexion is called temperate.

A hot meat or medicine may be hot,

in 1° gradu, in 2° gradu,

² A mistranslation from the Latin: *Illam namque rem . . . dicimus esse temperatam, quæ cum passa fuerit a calore naturali, qui est in nobis, non calefit, etc.*

- 20 moiste & drye, sumtyme ben y-componyd, þat ys to sugge medlyde, þere comen of hem VIII, as hote & drye, hote & moist, colde & drye, colde & moiste; ffoure of þese ben symple, & foure ben componyd. And for þilke VIII sumtyme ben with mater, sumtyme withoute mater, þere ben XVI; & for þilke XVI, after sum consideracioun mowe ben natureh to sum Man, ³ & to sum man vn natureh, þere mowe ben XXXII. Nevere þe lattere amonge alle þe complexiouns þat man may fynden, þat is componyd of dyuerse qualites, þere nys non so temperat as ys mannes complexioun; hauynge rewarde to mannes complexioun, alle opere þynge ys* clepyde colde, hote, moyste, opere drye. Whanne þat a mete, opere a medycine, hath y-suffryde kendlye hete þat ys in Man, & hetyth hym nozt & colyth hym nauzt, ne dryeþ hym nozt, ne moysted hym nozt, so þat mannes complexioun may nozt conseyven wheþer yt colde hym, ore hete, dryze, opere moyste, yt is clepyde temperat; & þilke thyng we sigge is hot in þe firste degree, þat ys y-hatte of kyndely hete, þat ys in oure bodies & hetyth oure bodies withouten greuauunce, & þilke we siggen be hote in þe secunde degree, whiche þat ys y-hette of oure kendlye hete, so hetyth oure body, þat he ne myzte hete vs namore withouten greuauunce; hot in þe þridde degree:

Add. MS. 12,056.

[³ fol. 35 a]

in ³ gradu, pilke we seie to be hoot in þe þridde degree, which þat is het¹ of
 in ⁴ gradu. ¹kyndely heete bryngiþ to oure bodi sensible greuauunce. & pilke
 is in þe fourþe degree, þat¹ is hot² of ²vnkyndely heete, distroieþ þe
 bodi openliche / & in þis same maner 3e mounz knowe degrees þat 4
 ben colde / I mai preue in þis maner, þat¹ it¹ is nessessarie a surgian
 .Nota. to knowe complexiouns of¹ bodies, lymes, & of¹ medicyns. Take .ij.
 men þat¹ ben of¹ oon age, & lete hem ben I-woundid wiþ a swerd or
 a knyf³ þwert¹ ouer þe arm in oon hour & in oon place; oon of 8
 [4 lf. 4, bk.] þe men is of¹ an ⁴hoot complexioun & a moist, þat¹ oþer of¹ a cold
 complexioun & a drie. þe comoun seiynge of¹ lewid men is þat¹ þei
 schulden boþe ben helid on o maner; but¹ resonable surgerie I-preued
 techiþ us, þat¹ þei ne schulde not boþe be helid aftir oon maner / For 12
 he þat haþ an hoot complexioun, & a moist, may liztly haue an hoot
 enpostym—þat¹ is an hoot swellynge—& þat may be cause of an
 hoot feuere. What¹ schalt þou þanne do? þou must loke, wheþer he
 haþ bled myche blood at his wounde, and þanne it¹ is weel; ellis 16
 lete him blood of þe contrarious arme, or ellis*—of¹ þe oon same side,
 if strenkþe & age acorde; or ventose⁵ him on þe two buttokkis, if
 þat he be feble. & if¹ he may not schite⁶ oones a day, helpe him

People of
 different
 complexions
 must be
 treated
 differently.
 1. For a
 patient of a
 hot and moist
 complexion,
 use blood-
 letting, cup-
 ping and
 purging.

¹ *vn* above line.

² *vn* in different hand.

³ *ouer* above line.

⁵ Lat. ventosare. Kersey, *Dict.* Ventose, a Cupping Glass.

⁶ Lat. ascellare. Add. MS. translates accurately: *go to sege*. See below.

Add. MS. pilke we sigge to be hot in þe þridde degre, whiche þat ys y-hatte of 20
 12,056. kendlye hete, bryngeþ to oure bodye sencyble greuauunce; **hot in þe
 fourþ degree**: and pilke in þe fourþ gre þat is y-hat of kendly hete,
 dystroyeþ þe body opynlyche; & in þis same manere 3e may knowe
 degrees þat ben colde, & y may preue in þis manere þat yt is 24
 necessarye a surgyne to knowe complexiouns of bodyes, lymes, & of
 medicynes. ¶ Take two men þat ben off one age, & lete hem ben
 y-woundyde with a swerd oþere a knyffe twarte offere þe arme, in
 [7 fol. 35 b] one oure & in ⁷one place. One of þe men ys of an hote complexioun 28
 & a moyste, þe oþere of a colde & a drye; þe comyne siggyng of
 lewyde men ys, þat þey scholde boþe by helyde aftere o manere.
 But resonable surgye wel y-proved, techith vs þat þey ne schulle
 nozt boþe ben y-helyde aftere on manere; for he þat haþ an hot 32
 complexioun & a moyst, may lyztliche haue an hote enposteme, þat
 ys an hote swellynge, & þat may be cause of an⁸ hote ffeyvre. What
 schaltou þanne do? þou moste loke wheþer he haue y-bled myche
 blod at hys wounde, & þenne it ys wel, ellys lete hym blod of þe 36
 contraryose arme, oþere ellys* on þe fot on þe same syde; 3if strengþe
 & age acorde, oþere ventuse hym on þe tweye buttokkys; gif þat he
 be feble, 3if he may nozt go to sege onys a day, helpe hym þereto

⁸ *an* above the line.

- perto, or *with* clisterie, or wip suppositorie. & brynge þou þe parties of þe wounde togidere þoru; sowynge, or wip plumaciols—þat ben smale pelewys—or wip byndynge, if þat sewynge be nouzt nessesarie, & þanne worche aboute þe wounde, as it is told aftir in þe book. But aboute þe wounde leie a medicyn defensif, of bole armonyac¹, oile of rosis, & a litil vynegre; so þat² þe medicyn touche þe brynkis of þe wounde, þat humouris moun not haue her cours
- 8 to renne to þe wounde; & we forbeden him wiyn, mylk & eiren & fisch þat engendriþ myche blood / But he schal ete for his mete growel maad of otemele, eiþir of barli mele wip almaundis; & generaliche he schal vse a streit dietyng, til þat he be sikir þat he
- 12 schal haue noon hote enpostym. & if þat we kuzne fende him fro a feuere & apostym, þe science of his complexioun techiþ us, þat he may of his sijknis soone be hool / þe opere of þe cold complexioun schal not be leten blood ne ventusid, for blood schulde be kept in
- 16 him, as for tresour / Forbede hem neiþir wiyn ne fleisch, for þe stomak þat is so feble ne myzte nouzt engendre nessesarie mater of blood þat longiþ to þe wounde / Ne we drede nouzt in him þe feuere, for his complexioun is nouzt able to reseceyue þe feuere / We moun
- Compare: *a Sege of a Privay*; gumfus. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 328. Compare the French: aller à la selle.
- ¹ *Bole Armoniac.* See N. E. Dict.

Close his wound with compresses or with bandages,

and apply an *vnguentum defensivum*.
[² leaf 5]

He must keep a strict diet.

2. Keep the blood in a patient of cold complexion; give him wine and meat.

- 20 opere wit clysterye, opere *with* suppositorye; & brynge þou þe parties of þe wounde to-gedire, opere *with* sowynge, opere wip plumaciolus—þat beþ smale pelewys—opere *with* byndynge, zif þat sowynge be nouzt nessesarie. And þenne worche aboute þe wounde, as it ys tolde aftere in þe boke; but aboute þe wounde leye a Medecine defensiu, of bol Armonyac, oyle of rosys, & a litil vynegre, so þat þe medecine touche þe sydes of þe woundes, þat humours mowe nouzt hauen here cours to renne to þe wounde. And
- 28 we forbyde hym wyn, Milke, & eyren, & fysch, þat engendriþ myche blod; but he schal ete for his Mete grueþ y-made of ote Mele, opere barly mele *with* Almaundes, & generaliche he schal vsen a streyt³ doynge, tyl þou be sykere þat he schal haue non enposteme.
- 32 And zif þat we kunne dyffenden hym from a ffevyre & aposteme, þe science of hys complexioun techyþ vs þat he may of hys seknesse sone be hol. ¶ þe opere of þe colde complexioun ne schal nouzt be leten blod ne ventusyde, ffor blod scholde be kepte in hem as for
- 36 tresoure; forbyde hym neiþere wyn ne flesch; for þe stomak þat ys so feble, ne myzte nouzt engendre nessesarie mater of blod þat longyþ to þe wounde; ne we dredyþ nouzt in hym þe ffevyre, for his complexioun ys nouzt able to reseceyuen þe ffevyre. We mowe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[³ fol. 36 a]

vitriol
has a differ-
ent effect on
different com-
plexions.

[? lf. 5, bk.]

fynde a medicyn maad in oon maner þat worchip dyuers effectis, & he be I-leid to dyuers complexiouns / Grene vitriol, & he be do to a man of a drie complexioun engendrith fleisch¹; & if þou leie² him on moist compleccioun, he greueþ nouzt oonliche, but corrodith 4 it; and nepeles vitriol haþ but oon maner worchinge, þouþ þat he worche dyuersliche in dyuers complexiouns / Riht as þe worchinge of þe sunne is dyuers, nouzt for þe sunne, but for þe worchinge of dyuers bodies into whom he worchip / Vitriol drieþ wondirfulliche 8 myche: in drie bodies he defendiþ³ þe smale lymes myzt⁴ to azenstonde his miht, wherfore he may nouzt but drie þe superfluytees þat he fyndiþ in þe wounde; & whanne þo ben y-dried, kynde engendriþ fleisch. In moiste bodies, for þat þe smale lymes ben feble 12 & moun not wiþstonde þe strekþe of þe vitriol, þe fleisch meltiþ vndir it, & so bi vitriol þe fleisch rotiþ. & þat is seid of dyuers complexiouns, is y-seid of dyuers lymes / Galion seiþ: If þat tweye woundis ben euene I-quytturid, & þe oon be a drie lyme, & 16 þe oþer a moist lyme, þat þat is þe drie lyme nedip þe moister medicyn / And if þat .ij. lymes leue⁵ ben I-woundid þat ben lich

Galien
Limbs of
different
complexions
must be
treated
differently.

¹ *fleisch* in margin.

³ *defendiþ*, mistake for *fyndiþ*; see below.

⁴ *myzt* for *myzty*; see below.

⁵ *leue* for *leche*?

Add. MS. 12,056. fynden a Medycine made in o manere þat wirchith dyuerse effectis, & he be y-leyde to dyuerse complexiouns. Grene vytreole, & he be 20 done to a Man of dryze complexioun, engendriþ flessch; & zif þou leggen hym on a moyste complexioun, he greuyth nozt onlyche, but coroduþ yt. And napeles vitreole haþ but one manere wyrchinge, þouþ he wirche dyuerslyche in dyuerse complexiouns, ryzte as þe 24 wirchyng of þe sonne ys dyuerse—nozt for þe sonne, but for þe wyrchyng of dyuerse bodies in whom he wyrchyth. Vitreole dryeþ wonderlyche muche, & in dryze bodies he fyndeþ þe smale lymes myghty to ageyne stonden hys strengþe. Wherefore he may 28 nought but drye þe superfluytes þat he fynte in þe⁶ wounde; & whenne þo ben y-dreyede, kynde engendryth flessch. In moyste bodies, for þat þe smale lymes beþ feble, & mowe nozt wistande þe strengthe off þe vytreole, þe flessch meltyth vndire yt, & so be þe 32 vitreole þe flessch rotyth; & þat þat ys seyde of dyuerse complexiouns, ys y-seyde of dyuerse lymes. Galien: zif þat tweye woundes 7ben evyne i quyter, & þe on be in a dryze lyme, & þe 36 oþere in a moyste lyme, þat þat is in þe dryore lyme nedip þe dryore 36 medycine. And zif þat two lymes ben y-wounded þat ben lyche in

[? fol. 36 b]

⁶ *wound*, cancelled because blotted after *in þe* and re-written.

in complexioun, & þe oon haþ myche quytture & þe toþer litil, he þat haþ þe myche quytture, nedip to han þe drier medicyn /

4 **I**ohannes damascenus seiþ, Medicyns & enplastris schulden ben
 acordynge to þe lymes þat þei ben leid on / Galienus : a kyndly
 þing^r schal be kept wip a þing^r þat is kyndly þerto / And þat is azen
 kynde schal be doon awei with þing^r þat is contrarie þerto / If þat
 a surgian knew not complexiouns of lymes & of bodies, he schal
 8 nouzt conne to schewynge hise medicyns aftir þat kynde askip. A
 surgian must knowe generacioun of humouris, if he wolde knowe
 þe science & þe helynge of apostymes, as it schal be declarid in þe
 tretis of apostymes. He muste knowe þe dyuersitees & þe profitis
 12 & þe officis of lymes, þat he mowe knowe, what lymes han a greet
 worchinge in mannes body, & whiche ben of greet felynge, & whiche
 moun bere a strong^r medicyn / & þe vertues of lymes þou must
 knowe, þat he se, whanne þe worchinge of ony vartu failip in ony
 16 lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertu & þe same lyme failynge. & if
 he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues, þe science of spiritis
 schal nouzt be hid fro him. Alle þese þingis bifore seid ben but
 natureles, & þei ²ben but techinge of medicyns speculatif /

20 Also he muste haue koulechinge of þingis þat ben not natureles,
 þat he kunne chese good eir to him þat is woundid or ellis haþ

[¹ If. 6.]

Galienus

nota

A Surgeon
 must know
 the genera-
 tion of the
 Humours,
 and the
 different
 offices of the
 Limbs.

[² If. 6, bk.]

He must also
 know the
 things which
 are not

complexioun, & þat on haþ myche quyter and þe oþere lyte, he þat
 haþ myche quyter nedytþ to haven þe dryere medicine. **Iohannes**
 24 **damacenus** : Medicines & enplastres scholde ben acordynge to þe
 lymes þat þey ben y-leyde on. **Galienus** : a kendlye thyng schal
 be kepte with þynge þat ys kendlye þere to ; and þat þat is azeyne
 kynde schal be done away with þynge þat is contrarye þere to. 3if
 28 þat a surgien knowitþ nozt complexiouns of lymes & of bodies, he
 schal nozt kunne to chaungen hys medicines aftere þat kynde
 askep. A surgien moste knowe generacioun of humours, 3if he
 wolde knowen þe sciense & þe helynge of Apostemys, as yt schal ben
 32 declared in þe tretys of apostemes ; he moste knowyn þe dyuersite,
 & þe profytes, & þe offices of lymes, þat he mowe knowen what
 lymes han grete wyrchyng in mannys body, & whiche ben of grete
 felynge, & whiche mowe bere a stronge Medicine ; & þe vertues of
 36 lymes he moste knowe, þat he se whanne þat þe worchyng of enye
 vertue faylep in enye lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertue in þe same
 lyme faylinge. And 3if he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues,
 þe sciense of spiritus ne schuþ nozt ben y-hud from hym. Alle þese
 40 þynges before seyde beþ natureles, & þey beþ techynge of medicine
 speculatyff. Also he moste han knowynge of thynges þat beþ nozt
 natureles, þat he kunne chesen gode eyre to hym þat is y-woundyde,

Add. MS.
 12,056.

natural, as
the effect of
the air on a
wound.

nota

He must
know how to
prescribe
moving or
rest.

[⁵ lf. 7]

Nota

He must
regulate the
patient's
sleep.

a boch¹ / Woundis moun not be² dried in a moist eir & a vapouris, but þei þat ben woundid musten ben chaungid fro þat moist eir to a swete cleer eyr & a drie / In wyntir he muste kepe him fro cold ; for no þing³ greueþ so myche boones & senewis as cold³ þat ben ⁴ I-woundid / & in somer he muste haue temperable eir. It is nessessarie þat he kuzne dietyn his pacient, as I schal telle in þe same chapitle of dietinge / also he muste ordeyne meuyng & reste,⁴ as it nedijþ to þe same sijk man / for if þat he be woundid in þe 8 heed eiper haue ony puncture of ony senewe, it⁵ is nessessarie þat he reste & dwelle in stillenes & haue an esy bed & a soft ; lest he suffre ony traueile of his lymes / But if þat olde woundis wijout akyng weren in his armes, it⁵ were good to him, þat is sijk, to walke on his 12 feet, & lete his arme be bounde to his necke ; & if þat þe wounde be in hise schynes & in hise feet, it were good þat he lay & traueilide wij hise hondis / Also a ⁵surgian, in al þat he myzte, he muste tempere a sijk mannes slepinge ; for to myche slepinge 16 engenderijþ superfluyte & febliþ his vertewes, & coldijþ & lesijþ al his bodi / To myche wakinge dissolueþ & confoormeþ⁶ hise spiritis &

¹ *boch*, Latin apostema ; M. E. botch. See N. E. Dict.

² *heelid* cancelled.

³ *as cold* misplaced ; see below.

⁴ *to* cancelled after *reste*.

⁶ *confoormeþ*, erroneously for *consumeþ*, as below. Lat. Orig. : *dissolvunt et consumunt*.

Add. MS. 12,056. *opere* ellys haþ a bocche. Woundes mowe nozt ben y-dryzed in a 7moyste eyre & a vaporose, but þey þat ben y-woundyde most bene 20
[7 fol. 37 a] y-chaungyde from þat moyste eyre to a swote cler eyre & a dryze. In wyntere he moste kepe hym from colde, ffor nopinge grevyth so myche bonys & synwes þat buþ y-woundyde as colde. And in somere he moste han a temperable eyre ; hit ys necessarye þat he 24 kunne dyoten hys pacient, as y schal tellen in þe same Chapytell of dyotyng. Also he moste ordeyne moffyng & reste, as yt nedep to þe same syke man ; ffor zif þat he be woundyde in þe hed, *opere* haue eny puncture off enye synwe, it ys necessarye þat he reste : 28 dwelle he in styllesse, & haue an euene bed & a softe, leste he suffren enye trauallye of hys lemys ; but zif þat olde woundes, wijouten akyng, weren in hys Armes, hit were gode to hym þat ys seke to walken on hys fete, & bere hys arme y-bounden to hys 32 nekke ; & zif þat þe wounde be in hys schynys & in hys ffete, hit were gode þat he leyze & trauelyde with hys handes. Also a surgien, in alle þat he myghte, he moste atempe a syke Mannes slepyng, ffor to myche slepyng engendreþ superfluyte, & feblyth 36 his vertues, & coldyth & losyth alle hys bodye ; to myche wakyng dyssolfijþ & consumeþ hys spirites, & makyth scharpe hys humores,

makij scharpe hise humouris ; it bryngij vnkindly drowpe to woun-
 dis, & is cause of akyng / Also he muste kunne evacuener him free the patient from evil humours
 þat is ful of yuel humouris & fulfille him þat is waastid, þat he
 4 brynge sike men to good temperaunce ; ellis a wounde mai not be
 heelid / Entempre he þe herte of him þat is sijk, for to greet wrappe. and take care that the heart is temperate.
 makij þe spiritis renne to myche to þe wounde & þat is caus of
 swellynge ; to greet drede, ouþir vttereste¹ of heelþe of his wounde,
 8 holdij þe spiritis wiþinne his bodi, þat mater mai not come to heele
 his wounde / þese .vj. þingis ben clepid vnnaturel,² which techij a
 man speculatif of leche craft.

He muste knowe þe sijknis : as olde wounde, festre, cankre & He must know the different kinds of wounds,
 12 alle opere soris, þat he traueile not in veyn & brynge þe sike man
 to his deep / For ech dyuers soor nedij dyuers helpingis. He
 muste knowe þe cause of þe wounde / ffor a wounde, þat is ³maad
 wij a swerd eiper a knyf, must operwise be heelid, þan he þat is
 16 maad wij stoon eiper fallinge / And a wounde þat is biten wij an
 hound schal operwise be heelid, þan he þat is biten with a wood
 hound ; as þou schalt fynde soone told in þe book hereafter / & he
 muste knowe þe accidentis þat ben aboute a wounde / for þe wounde
 20 schal neuere heele, til þe accidentis be remeued away / accidentis is and the accidentes which befall a wound.

Nota
 [3 lf. 7, bk.]

¹ *uttereste*, only known as an adj. : *extremus*, erroneously for *untruste*.
 See below.

² *Lat. quæ sunt secundum membrum theoricæ medicinæ.*

& hit bryngeþ vnkyndly drowpe to woundes, & ys cause of akyng ; Add. MS. 12,056.
 also he moste kunne evacuen hym þat ys ful of euele humores, &
 fulfille hym þat ys wastyde, þat he brynge seke men to gode
 24 temperaunce ; ellys a wounde may nozt ben helyd ; entempre he þe
 hert of hym þat ys seke, ffor to gret wratthe makij þe spiritis renne
 to myche to þe wounde, & þat ys cause of swellynge ; ⁴to grete drede, [4 fol. 87 b]
 opere vntryst of helpe of hys wounde holdij spyrites withynne hys
 28 body, þat mater may nouzt come to hele þe wounde. þese sixe
 thynges ben y-clepyde vnnatureH, whiche techith a Man speculatyff
 of leche craft. He mot knowen þe seknesse, as olde wounde, festre,
 cancre, & alle opere sores, þat he traveylle nozt in deveyne, & brynge
 32 þe seke man to hys deþ : ffor eche dyverse sore nedith dyverse
 nelpynges. He mote knowe þe cause of þe wounde ; ffor a wounde
 þat is mad with a swerd opere a knyff mote opere weys ben helyde
 þen he þat is y-makyde with ston, opere with fallynge, & a wounde
 36 þat is byten with an hounde schal opere weys ben helyde þen he þat
 ys y-byten with a wod hound, as þou schalt fynde tolde in þe boke
 hereafter. And he mot knowe þe Accidentes þat buþ aboute a
 wounde, ffor the wounde schal neuere hele tyl þe Accidentes ben
 40 remevyde away. Accidentis ys a þynge þat fallij to þe wounde out
 SURGERY.

He must know how to prescribe appropriate diet.

.Galien.

a þing' þat falliþ to a wounde out' of kynde as hoot, cold, drie, eiþer to myche moistnes, crampe & oþere þinges azens kynde / A surgian muste ordeyne dietyng in dyuers maner, as it is told in þe chapitle of dietyng; & whanne it is nedeful, he muste þene dyuers drinkis / 4
Galien : Laxatiues & vometis ben nedeful to hem, þat han olde rotid woundis & stynkyng / For whanne þe bodi is purgid fro wickide humouris, þe wickidnes of þe mater renneþ fro þe wounde & so þe wounde is sunner helid / He þat biholdiþ alle þe parties of 8 a medicyn, he may weel se þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe phisik, & oþer dyuers science, as I haue told tofore in þe book.

¶ þe .iiij. c^o. of þe firste techinge is of intencioun of a surgian /

12

[1. 16. 8.]
¶ Capm 3m
1.
2.
3.

¹ A l þe entencioun of a surgian, how diuers þat it be, it is on* [of] þre maners / þe first is vndoynge of þat, þat is hool / þe secunde to hele þat, þat is broke / þe .iiij. is remeuyng of þat, þat is to myche ; so þat it be don with hand craft / ffor al entencioun of 16 a surgian is vndir oon of þese .iiij. entenciouns, or ellis vnder oon of hem. A surgian vndoip þat þat is hool, whanne he letiþ blood, eiþer garsiþ,² eiþer brenneþ, eiþer settiþ on watirlechis, for þis is a
² garsiþ] Lat. scarificat; Fr. gerçer; med. Lat. gersa, garsa. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 150.

A surgeon
1. either
undoes what
is whole,

of kynde, as hete, colde, drowþe oþere to gret moistnesse, crampe, & 20 oþere þynges azeyne kynde. A surgien mot ordeyne dyetyng in dyverse manere, as it is tolde in þe ChapiteH of dyetyng. Whenne þat it is nedful, he mote 3yve dyverse drynkes. Galien : laxativis & vomytes buþ necessarie to hem þat han olde, rotyde, stynkynde 24 woundes ; ffor whanne þat þe body is purgyde from evyle humouris, þe wykkednesse of þe matere renneþ from þe wounde, & so þe wounde is sonnere y-helyde. He þat byholdeþ alle þe partyes of a medicine, he may wel se ³that it is necessarie a surgyne to knowen 28 ffysyk and oþere dyverse science, as hit is tolde tofore in þis boke.

[3 fol. 38 a]

¶ The þridde Chapitele of þe furste techyng is of Intencioun off a Surgyne.

Alle þe entencioun of surgerye, how dyverse þat it be, yt is on 32 *of þre maneres : þe ffurste ys undoyng þat þat is hol ; secunde ys helpyng of þat þat is tobroke ; þe þridde ys remevyng of þat þat is to myche, so þat it be do with hande crafte ; ffor alle þe entencioun of a surgien ys vndire one of þis þre entensiouns, oþere ellys 36 vndire one of hem. A surgyne vndop þat þat ys hol, whanne he letyth blod ore garsyth oþere brenneþ, oþere setteþ on waterlechys,

- surgiens craft; þouȝ we for oure pride haue left it to barbouris & to wymmen / for Galion & Rasis diden it with her hondis, as her bookis tellen. And we vndoon þat, þat is hool, whanne þat we
- 4 kutten þe veynes, þat ben in þe templis & þe forheed & maken cauterizaciouns for þe sijknis of þe yzen / And whanne þat we maken cauteries in þe heed & in dyuers placis of þe bodi, as I schal telle in þe chapitle of cauterisyng / þe secunde entencioun is to
- 8 hele þat, þat is broken as woundis, olde woundis, festriss, cankris & in bringyng¹ to her placis ioyntis þat ben oute & in helynge boones þat ben to broken / þe .iiij. entencioun is to remeue þat, þat is to myche, as ¹scrofulus of þe heed & þe necke & opere parties of þe
- 12 bodie / cataractis²—is a watir þat cometh bitwene þe white of þe yzen & þe appil; sebel—þat ben veynes þat ben in þe whiȝt of þe yzen & beþ ful of blood / vngula—is a þing, þat bigynneth bi þe nose & goiþ ouer þe iȝe til he keuere al þe iȝe—& knottis, þat ben in þe
- 16 iȝe & opere siknes of þe iȝe; & in doynge away polippis, þat is fleisch þat growiþ wipinne þe nose; wertis & wennys; ficus, þat is superfluyte þat growen vp on þe skyn of þe pintils hede wipoute, emeraudis³ & a skyn þat enclosiþ a wommans priuy membre, þe

Nota.
G. R.

as when he bleeds, scarifies or cauterizes;

or 2. he heals wounds, &c.,

or 3. he removes excrescences, sign. 2j
[¹ ff. 8, bk.]
as cataracts,

polypuses, and wens.

² cataract, sebel and ungula. See Notes.

³ The Latin text has: superfluitatem hermaphroditis.

- 20 ffor þis ys a surgyns craft, þawȝ we for oure pride haue y-lefte yt to laborers & to wommen, for Galien & Rasys dyden it wip here handes as here bokys tellyþ. And we vndoth þat þat is hol, whenne þat we kutteþ þe veynes þat ben in þe templys & þe forhed, &
- 24 makyth cauterisaciones from þe seknesse of þe eyzen, & whenne þat we maken Cauteries from þe hed & in dyverse places of þe body as y schal telle in þe chapiteH of Cauterysyng. þe secunde entencioun ys to hele þat þat is tobroke as: woundes, olde woundes, fiestres, &
- 28 Cancres, and in bringyng to here place Ioyntes þat bene oute, & in helynge bonys þat ben tobroken. þe þridde entencioun is to remeyn þat þat ys to myche as scurfyls of þe hed & þe nekke, & opere partyes of þe body, & Cataractis þat ys a water þat comyth
- 32 bitwene þe whyte of þe eyze & þe Appul. Sebel þat beþ veynes þat buþ in þe whyte of þe eyze, & beþ ful of blod. Vngula, ⁴þat ys a thyng þat bygynneþ by þe nese & goth ouere þe eyze, tyl he keffere alle þe eyze & knottes þat ben in þe eyze, & opere seknesse
- 36 of þe eyze, & in doynge away polippes þat is fleisch þat growiþ wipinne þe nese, wertys & wennys, ficus þat is a superfluyte þat growiþ vp on þe skyn off þe pyntellys hed wipoute, emeraudes & a schyn

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁴ fol. 38 b]

sixte fingre of þe hond & manye superfluytees þat beþ nouȝt semelich to a manys body

¶ þe firste chapitle of þe secunde tretis is an vniuersal word of smale lymes & her helpingis, & of generacioun of embrioun, þat is þe child, in þe modir wombe // / /¹

de anotho-
[m]ia.
A Surgeon
must know
Anatomy.

Auicē.
[² lf. 9]

†The Embryo

.G? is engendered
of the seed of
man and
woman.†

G Alienus seiþ, þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe anotamic; ne leeu we nouȝt þat ech brood ligament is a skyn, & ech 8 round ligament to be a senewe, so bi his opinyoun he myȝte falle into errour / þerfore I þenke to ordeyne a chapitle of þe kynde & of the ²foorme & helpinge of alle smale lymes / Auicē seiþ / knoulechinge of a þing^t, þat haþ cause, mai nouȝt be knowen, but 12 bi his cause. þerfore we moten knowe þe cause, *membrorum consimilium*, þat is to seiē, smale lymes. & I wole telle þe generacioun of embrioun: þat is to seiē, how a child is I-gete in þe modir wombe / Galien & auicē tellen, þat of boþe þe spermes of man & 16 of womman, worchinge & suffrynge togideris, so þat ech of hem worche in opir & suffre in opir, embrioun is bigete / But the worchinge of mannes kynde is more myȝtiere, & wommans kynde

¹ See *Vicary*, ed. Furnivall, p. 78.

Add. MS. 12,056. þat enclosyth a wommans priue membre, þe sixte fynger of þe hand, 20 and manye superfluytes þat beth nought semlye to manys body.

¶ The ffurste Chapitell of þe secunde tretys ys an uniuersel word off smale lymes, & here helpynges of generacioun of enbrion þat is child in þe moder 24 wombe.

G Alien seiþ þat it ys necessarie a Surgien to knowe Anotomye, ne leffe henoȝt þat iche brode ligament þat ys a schyn, & iche rounde ligament to ben a synwe, & so be hys opynioun he myȝte 28 fallen in erreoure. þerfore i þynke to ordeyne a Chapitell of þe kynde & of þe fforme & þe helpyngē of alle smale lymes. Avycene seiþ, knowlechyngē of a þyngē þat haþ cause may noȝt be knowe but by hys cause, þerfore we mote knowe þe cause *membrorum* 32 *consimilium*: þat ys to sigge smale lymes. Y wyl telle þe generacioun of embrioun, þat ys to sigge, how a childe ys bygete in þe modire wombe. Galien and Avycene tellen þat of boþe þe spermes of Man & womman—wirchyngē & sofferyngē togedires, so þat iche of hem 36 wirche in opere & suffren in opere—embrioun ys bygete. But þe worchyngē of Mannes kynde is more myȝtiere, & wommans ³kynde

[³ fol. 39 a]

more febler / For riȝt as þe roundeles¹ of chese haþ bi him-silf wei
of worchinge & þe mylk bi wey of suffrynge, so to þe generacioun
of embrion mannes sperme haþ him² bi wei of worchinge & wommans
4 sperme bi wey of suffrynge / & riȝt as þe rundelis¹ & þe mylk
maken a chese, so boþe þe spermes of man & womman maken
generacioun of embrion. þouȝ þat alle þe smale lymes of a child
ben I-geten of boþe two spermes, neþeles, to cloþe hem with fleisch
8 & wiþ fatnes, comeþ to hem menstrue³ blood / þe maris⁴ of womman
haþ an able complexioun to conseiuen; & of hir kynde he castiþ
þe spermes to þe depepest place of hir; & of hir nature he closiþ hir
mouþ, þat þer myȝte not entre the poynt of a nedle / & þanne þe
12 foormal vertu which almyȝty god haþ ȝeue to þe maris ordeyneþ &
diuidid euery partie of þese spermes in her kynde, til þat þe child
be born / Vndirstonde þat þe fleisch & þe fatnes is mad of menstrue
blood, þe boones & gristlis, ligamentis & senewis, cordis, arteries,
16 veynes, panniclis—þat ben smale cloþis—& þe skyn beþ engendrid
of boþe þe spermes, as auicen & opere auctouris tellen / If þat ony of
þe lymes þat ben engendrid of þe spermes ben doon away *[he] moun
neuere veriliche be restorid, for þe mater of hem is þe sperme of þe

† And as rennet curdles milk and the two make cheese, so does the seed of man and woman make the Embryo. †
sign. 2ij
[3 lf. 9, bk.]
The flesh and the fat are formed from the menstrual blood.
The Matrix closes itself after having conceived.
The whole body is developed in the Matrix (except the flesh and fat) from the seed of the man and woman.
Avicen

¹ roundeles, rundelis. Add. MS. rendelys, coagulum. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 429, renlys, or rendlys. Comp. O. Du. rinsel, ronsel.

² mannes sperme haþ him, Lat. ita sperma viri se habet. ⁴ maris, matrix.

20 ys more ffeblere. Ffor ryȝt as þe rendelys of chese haþ hym by weye of worchyng, & þe Mylk be weye off suffrynge, so to þe generacioun of embrion, Mannes sperme⁶ hath hym be weye of worchyng, & wommans sperme⁶ be weye of suffrynge, & ryȝt as þe
24 rendles & þe mylk makyth a⁵ chese, so boþe þe spermes⁶ of man & womman makyþ þe generacioun of embrion. þowȝ þat alle þe smale lymes of a childe be y-geten of boþe two spermes,⁶ napeles to cloþe hem with flesch & with fatnesse comeþ to hem menstrewe blod. þe
28 marys of a womman haþ an able complexioun to conseiuen, & of here kynde sche castyth þe spermes to þe depepeste place off here, and of here nature sche closyth hire mouth þat þere myȝte nouȝt entre þe poynt of an nedle. And þenne þe foormal vertu whiche
32 þat almyghty god haþ ȝeuen to the marys, ordeyneþ & deff[e]ndeþ every party of þese spermes in here kynde, tyl þat þe childe ben ybore. Understande þat þe flesch & þe fatnesse ys y-mad of menstrewe blod, the bonys & þe grustlys, ligamentes, synwes, cordes,
36 Arteries, veynes, pannycles, þat buþ smale cloþes & þe schyn buþ engendred of boþe þe spermes, as Avicene & opere Autores tellyn. ȝif þat enye of þe lymes þat buþ engendrede off the spermes be don away, *he may neuere verrellyche ben restoride, ffor þe matere of

Add. MS.
12,056.

⁵ Above line.

⁶ MS. spernes.

fadir & of þe modir; but þe fleisch the which mater is blood, þat is al dai engendrid in us, may weel & verriliche be restorid / þese smale lymes han dyuers foormes, complexciouns & helpingis aftir þe dyuersitees of þe proporcious of þe mater, which þat þei ben maad of / for þou3 þat alle þe lymes ben maad of oon mater I-medlid, neþeles in ech of þe smale ly¹mes þer is a dyuers proporcoun of mater, for þe which mater þei taken dyuers foormes & dyuers helpingis. Almy3ti god 3eueþ to ech þing^t of his foorme after þat his mater is* proporciond disserueþ /

consimile

membris.**

1st Member

The Bone.

Its functions:

to move
limbs,

protect them,

support the
body,and fill the
hollows of
joints.

þe boon is þe first of þe consimile membrs—þat is oon of þe smale lymes; þe which ben² cold & drie & he haþ dyuers foormes in mannes bodi: for he helpiþ dyuerslich / þe cause whi þer ben manye dyuers boones in mannes bodi is, for sumtyme it is nede to meeue oon lyme withouten anoþir & þat were impossible, if þat al þe bodi were but oon boon / Anoþer cause whi þer ben manye boones: for summe defenden þe principal lymes from harm, as þe brayn scolle from³ þe brayn of þe heed / summe ben fundamentis, as þe boones of þe rigge & of þe schenes & of þe armes / summe ben as additamentis þat ben in þe side of þe rigge boon, & summe to fulfille the holownes of summe ioyntis, as þe handis & þe feet; 20

² ben for is, see below.³ from, erroneously inserted.Add. MS.
12,056.

[4 fol. 89 b]

hym ys þe sperme of þe fadire & þe modere. But þe flesch whose matere ys blod þat is al day engendred in vs may wel & vereliche be restoryde. þese smale lymes han dyverse formes, complexioun, & helpynges after the dyversite of þe proportiouns of þe mater whiche þat þey ben⁴ mad of; ffor þow3 þat alle the lymes be mad of on matere y-medlyde, napeles in eche of þe smale lymes þere is a dyverse proposicioun⁵ of matere, for the whiche matere þey taken dyverse forme & dyverse helpe. Almyghty god gevyth to effrye þynge of hys forme after þat hys matere* proporciond deservyt.

þe bon is furst of consimile membrs þat is on off smale lymes, þe whiche ys colde & drye, & he haþ dyverse formes in mannes bodye, for he helpiþ dyversliche; þe cause why þere ben manye dyverse bonys in mannys body is,⁶ ffor sum tyme it ys nede to meffyn o lyme without an opere, & þat were impossible, 3if in alle þe body were but on hol bon. An opere cause is why þere ys manye bonys; for sum diffenden þe principal lymes from harme, as þe brayn scolle þe brayn of þe hed; somme ben ffundamentys, as þe bonys of þe rugge, & of þe schynes, & of þe Armes. Some ben as armure, as additamentys, þat ben in þe syde of þe rugge bon, & somme fulfille þe holwenesse of somme Iunttes, as þe handys & þe

⁵ read "proporcionn."⁶ is above line.

& summe *per* ben *pat* þe roundnes of þe boon myzte entre into þe holownes of *pat* *oper* boon / & non les schulde not lacke his meuyng as þe schuldre boones & þe hiþe boones. þou maist fynde
 4 how manye boones *per* ben in þe .ij. tretis, ¹ where schal be told sign. 2ij
[1 lf. 10, bk.]
 pleynlier þe anotamie of consimile membrs of al þe bodi from þe heed to þe foot.

A gristil is cold & drie, & is neischere þan a boon, & hardere þan
 8 þe fleisch, and in þe fleisch he hæþ sixe helpingis / þe firste, *pat* *pat* schulde be a meene bitwene þe vttr ende of þe hard boon & þe
 neische fleisch / þe .ij. *pat* þe harde schulde not hirte þe neische,
 nameli in þe tyme of *compressioun*, & in þe tyme of *smytinge* / þe
 12 .ij. *pat* þe eende of þe boones whiche *pat* ben in þe ioyntis schulden
 haue a softere *confutacioun*² in her ioyntis / þe fourþe, *pat* he schulde
 fulfillen þe office of þe boon to susteyne a brawne, meuyng a membre
pat hæþ noon boon, as þe ouer lid of þe iþe / þe fifþe : for it is
 16 nessessarie a gristil to ben in place, *pat* is nouzt ful hard as þe þrote bolle ; for þe eende of þe þrote bolle is gristeli / þe .vj. : for it is
 nessessarie summe lymes to han a sustentacioun, and applicacioun,³
pat is foldyng, to be streyned & drawen abrod as þe noseþrillis &
 20 þe gristile of þe eere.

² *confutacioun*, erroneously for *confricacioun*. See below.

³ *applicacioun*. Read a *plicacioun*.

fete, & somme *pere* ben *pat* þe roundnesse of on bon myzte entre in
 to þe holwenesse of þe *opere* bon & napeles scholde nozt lakken hys
 meffynge, as þe schulder bonys, & the heþe bonys. þou maiste fynde
 24 hou many bonys *pere* ben in þe secunde tretys where schal be tolde
 plenerliche—þe Anotamie of *consimile* membrys of alle ⁴þe body,
 from þe hed to þe fot. A grustyH ys cold & drye, & is nesschere
 þenne a bon, & hardere þanne þe fleisch, & in þe fleisch hath vi
 28 helpynges. ¶ Helpyng þe grustel. The ffurste *pat* *pere* scholde be
 a Mene, bytwene þe vtter ende of þe hard bon, & þe nessch fleisch.
 ¶ þe secunde, *pat* þe harde scholde nozt hurt þe nessche, namlyche,
 in þe tyme of *comprission*, & in þe tyme of *smytyng*. ¶ The
 32 pridde, *pat* þe ende of þe bonys, whiche *pat* ben in þe Iunttes
 scholde han a softere *confricatioun* in here Iunttes. ¶ þe iiij, *pat*
 he scholde fulfillen þe office of þe bon, to susteyne a brawne meff-
 yng, a membre *pat* hæþ non bon, as þe ouere lyd of þe eyze. ¶ þe
 36 v. for his necessarie a grustyH to be⁵ in a place *pat* ys nozt ful
 hard, as þe prote bolle ; ffor þe ende of þe prote bolle ys grustlye.
 ¶ þe vi. for it is necessarie some lymes to han a sustentacioun &
 a plicacioun, *pat* is a foldyng, to be streyned & drawen abrod, as þe
 40 nese þrylles & þe grustle of þe ere.

⁵ *nozt* above line.

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁴ fol. 40 a]

3rd Member,
Ligament.

[¹ lf. 11]

The four uses
of Ligament.

1.
It binds the
bones to-
gether,

2.
it joins with
Sinews to
make *Cordes*,
i.e. Tendons
and Muscles,

3.
it is a resting-
place for
Sinews,

4.
it sustains
the parts
within the
body.
4th Member,
Sinews
(Nerves).
They start
from the
brain or
Spinal Cord.
sign. ²ijj
[⁴ lf. 11, bk.]

Ligament is cold & drie, and goþ out of þe boones & hap þe foorme of a senewe. & he may be bowid, but he felip nouzt; & he ¹hap foure helpingis / þe firste is, þat he knyttip oon boon wip anoper / it is nessessarie, þat oon boon be knytt wip anoper, þat ⁴ many boonys myzten make oon bodi as oon boon, & neuereþelatter ech membre myzte meue bi him-silf, & þerfore þe ligament is as bowable & incensibile / for if þat it hadde be censibile, þei myzten nouzt^t han I-susteyned þe traueile & þe meuyng of þe ioyntis / & ⁸ if þat he hadde be inflexible as a boon, of whom he comþ of, oon lyme myzte not han meued wipouten anoper / þe secunde help is, þat he is ioyned wip senewis to make cordis & brawnes / þe þridde help is þat he schulde be a restyng place to summe senewis / þe ¹² fourþe þat bi him þe membris, þat ben wipinne þe bodies, schulden ben y-teied, þe whiche þat neden hangyng.

A corde² is cold & drie, & he comþ from þe brayne, eiper from þe mucha³; þat is þe marie of þe rigge boones // From þe brayn ¹⁶ comen .vij. peire cordes. & þei ben clepid sensible senewis / ffrom þe nucha þer comen xxx peire cordis & oon bi him silf & þei ben mouable / And alle þe cordis þat comen of þe ⁴brayn & nucha, hap

² There is a constant confusion in all the mediæval medical books between nerves and sinews. See further Notes.

³ *mucha*, an error for *nucha*; med. Lat. *nucha*. Dufr.: postera pars colli. Fr. nuque. Littré gives references from the 14th cent. for the signification, marrow. See Notes.

Add. MS.
12,056.

Ligamente is colde & drye, & goþ out of þe bonys, & hap þe ²⁰ forme of a zenewe, & he may be bowyde, but he felip nouzt, & he hap iij helpynges. þe fyrste ys þat he knytte on bon with an opere. It is necessarie þat o bon be knytte with an opere, þat manye bonys myzte make on body as on bon, & nevere þe later eche ²⁴ membre myzte meffyn by hym-selfe, & þere fore þe ligamente was bowable & insensibile; for zif þat yt had y-be sensible, þey myzte nouzt have susteynde the travaylle & þe meffynge of þe Iuntys; and zif þat he hadde be inflexible as a bon, of whom þat he comþ ²⁸ of, ⁵ on lyme myzte nouzt han meffyde withouten an opere. þe secunde help ys, þat he ys joynede with zenewys to make cordys & brawne. þe þridde helpyng ys, þat he scholde ben a restyng place to summe senewys. þe fourþe, þat be hym þe membris þat ben withynne þe ³² body scholde ben tyede, whiche þat nedyþ hongyng.

[⁵ fol. 40 b]

A corde ys colde & drye, & he comyþ from þe brayn opere fro þe nuca, þat ys þe marye of þe rugge bonys. ¶ From þe brayn comþ ³⁶ vij peire cordys, & þey buþ y-clepyde sensible zenewys, from þe nuca þere comyþ xxx peire cordys, and on by hym selfien & þey buþ mevable; & alle þe cordys þat comyþ of þe brayn, & þe nuca

boþe felynge & meuyngē. & þe cordis ben white oute, bowable, strong¹ & tow³. & of her kynde þei bryngen meuyngē & felynge to lymes. & for þat it¹ is long¹ & dyuydiþ¹ alle þe parties of þe senewis
 4 * [in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamyē of 3enewes & here place] as þei ligge; in þe whiche placis þou must be war whanne þou schalt kutte eiþer brenne / whanne þat we schulen ordeyne anotamie of official membris & of her woundis / Official membr
 8 is to seie: a fyngir, a ioynt, an hand, eiþer a foot * [ore] opere lymes of office /

Nerve of Feeling spring from the Brain: those of Motion from the Spinal Cord.

Official membr
bris.

Arteries ben hooþe nouþt of her owne kynde, but for þe hoot blood & lijf þat goiþ in hem from þe herte. Of her kynde þei ben
 12 colde & drie & þei han two cloþis, outcept oon þat goiþ to þe lungis þe ynnere corde is stronger & grettere, þat he mowe wiþholde a meuable mater & an hoot. & her bigynnyngē is in þe list¹ side of þe herte. & þere bigynneu two arteries; oon goiþ to þe lunge & hap
 16 but oon coote and sprat¹ in þe same lunge, & þere endiþ & bringiþ blood to þe lunge, bi whom he is norischid, & spirit of lijf, and þat he myzte bryngē from þe lunge eir to þe herte for to entempre þe fumosite of hete of þe herte. & þis arterie² is³ y-clepid venales. & it

5th Member, Arteries spring from the heart, and have two coats,

[³ ff. 12]

¹ & dyuydiþ] a mistake for *to dyvyde*. Latin: De divisione vero membrorum multum longa est doctrina.

² *Arteria venalis*, Pulmonary vein. It was taken to be an artery, as it carries arterial blood. See *Vicary's Anatomie*, ed. Furnivall, p. 58, note 1.

20 habbeþ boþe felynge & meffynge. & þe cordys ben whyte, bowable, stronge, & tow³; & of here kynde þey bryngē meffynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat hit is longe to devydeþ alle þe partyes of 3enewes; * in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamyē of
 24 3enewes & here place,* as þey ligge; in þe whiche place þou moste be ware, whenne þou schalt kutte opere brenne, whenne þat we schulle ordeyne Anotamyē of official membris & of here woundes. Official membre ys to sigge: a ffynger, a Ioynt, an hand, opere a
 28 fote *ore opire lymes of ofyce.

Add. MS. 12,056.

Arteries beþ hote, noþt for here owne kynde, but for þe hote blod & lyf þat goþ in ham from þe herte. Of here kynde þey ben colde & drye, & þey han tweye cloþes, outseptē on þat goþ to þe
 32 longes. þe innere cote⁴ is grettere & strengere, þat he mowe wiþholde a Mevable mater & an hote. & here bygynnyngē is of þe lyfte syde of þe herte. & þere bygynneþ tweye Arteries, on goþ to þe longe & hap bot on cote & sprat in þe same longe, & þere endyth
 36 & bryngēþ blod to þe longe, by whom he ys y-norysschyde, & spirit of lyf, & þat he myzte bryngē from þe longe eire⁵ to þe herte, for to entempren þe fumose hete of þe same herte. & þis Arterie ys clepyde

[⁴ fol. 41 a]

⁵ MS. eiþere.

save *Arteria venalis*, and that has but one.

The uses of Arteries:

.1. to bring cold air to the heart;

.2. to cast out the fumosity;

.3. to carry life to the whole body.

is a maner veyne, for as myche as he ne hap but¹ oon coote, and þerfore he is þe more obedient to be drawe abroad þoru3 out¹ alle þe lungis; & also þat þe blood þat norischip þe lungis myzte listly swete out of þis arterie / þe toþer arterie þat comeþ out of þe lift- 4 side of¹ þe herte hap two cootis, bi cause þat oon myzt not azenstonde þe strenkþe of þe spiritis; & also þat, þat is wipinne þe arterie, is ful derworþe & nedip greet kepinge / þer ben þre helpingis of þe arteries: oon is þat cold eir myzte bi hem be drawe & I-brouzt to 8 þe herte whanne þe arterie is drawe abroad. þe secunde is, þat þe fumosite myzte be cast out whanne he is constreyned / þe þridde is, þat þe spirit of lijf myzte be brouzt bi hem to al þe bodi / þese arteries ben deuydid many weies; whos dyuysious man mai nouzt¹² conseyue bi his witt, ne þei ben nouzt dredful to¹ surgiens craft, but whanne þou schalt drede þe arteries I schal telle þee in her placis /

6th Member, veynes.

[² If. 12, bk.]

Veins spring from the liver.

Veynes bi cause of¹ her bodies ben deemed cold & drie; for þe 16 blood þat is withynne hem þei ben deemed hoot¹; & alle þe veynes han her bi²gynnyng at þe lyuere, in þe which lyuere .ij. veynes han pryucipal bigynnyng / oon veyne bigynneþ of¹ þe holow3 side of¹ þe lyuere. & is clepid porta³—þat is a 3ate / & her office is to drawe * [Chilum] 20

¹ a erased.

³ *Vena Porta*. See *Vicary*, p. 22, note 1.

Add. MS. 12,056.

venalis, & yt is a manere veyne, ffor as myche as he may haue but o cote, & þerfore he is þe more obedient to be drawn abroad þorwe out alle þe longes & also þat þe blod þat noryschith þe longe myzte listlokere swete out of þis arterie. þe oþere Artery, þat 24 comyth out of þe lefte syde of þe herte, hap two cotys, because þat on myzt nozt ageyne stonde þe strengþe of þe spirites, and also þat þat is wipynne þe Arterye is ful derwarde & nedip gret kepyng. þere ben þre helpinges of þe Arteries: on is þat colde eyre by hem 28 myzte be drawe & y-brouzt to þe herte, whenne þe arterye is drawe abroad; þe secunde ys þat þe fumosite myzt be caste out, whenne sche is constreynede; þe þridde ys þat þe spirite of lyf myzte be brozt by hem to alle þe body. þese Arteries beþ devydyde many 32 weyes, whos divisions Man may nozt conseyve by hys wyt, ne þey ne beþ nozt dredful to surgiens crafte; but whenne þou schalt drede þe arterye i schal tellen þe in here places.

Veynes by cause of here bodies beþ y-demyde colde & drye; but 36 for þe blod þat is withynne hem þey beþ y-demyde hote, & alle þe veynes han here ⁴bygynnyng of þe lyffere, in þe whiche lyffere two veynes han pryucipal begynnyng. On veyne bygynneþ of þe holwe syde of þe lyvere, & ys y-clepyde **Porta**, þat ys a 3atte, & here ofyce 40 is to drawe *chilum* from þe stomake & þe guttes by mene of þe

[⁴ fol. 41 b.]

- fro þe stomak & þe guttis bi mene of þe veynes miseraices¹; & þilke chilum spredip þoru; al þe lyuere bi mene of veynes capillares / Chilum² is þe licour of þe mete, whanne it goip out of þe stomak & þe guttes / Veynis miserak¹ ben smale veynes þat comen out of þe veyne þat is clepid porta & cleueþ on þe stomak & þe guttis / Venes capillares, þat ben veynes as it were heers of a mannes heed /
- After hem comeþ pannicelis—þat is to seic smal clooþ, þat is maad of sotil predis of senewis, veynes & arteries / wherfore þei ben colde & drie & censible / & þei han þre helpingis / þe firste is: þat þei moun bynde manye þingis in oon foorme, as þe panicle of þe heed byndip seuene boones / þe secunde Iuuament is: þat þei hangen & bynden summe membris wiþ opere as þe reynes to þe rigge & þe maris to þe maris³ to þe rigge / þe þridde helpinge is: þat þe membris þat ben incensibile bi her kynde, bi þe pannicelis þat wriep hem velen bi accident: as þe lungis, þe lyuere, & þe splene, & þe reynes. þes lymes bi her kynde han no felynge, but what þei felen it is bi accidens of þe pannicle þat wriep hem.

The Mesaraic veins bring

Chilum to the Portal Vein.

7th Member, panickelles. the fleshy membrane. The uses of the Pannicle.

.1.

.2.

.3.

[4 ff. 13]

þe⁵ fleisch is not hoot, but it is moist & hap þre maner lijknis: oon is a symple fleisch, & his helpinge is to fulfille þe voide placis

8th Member Flesh. 3 Maner of fleisch.**

¹ *Veynis miserak.* See *Vicary*, p. 66, note 7.

² *Chilum.* See *Vicary*, p. 68, note 2.

³ MS. þe maris to þe maris to þe rigge. The second *maris* is cancelled.

⁵ Latin: Caro vero calida est et humida.

- 20 veynes miscraykus; þilke chylum spredeþ þorwe al þe lyffere by mene of veynes Capillares. Chilum ys þe licoure of mete & of þe drynke, whanne yt goþ out of þe stomake & þe guttes. Veynes miserayke beþ smale veynes, þat comyþ out of þe veyne þat is y-clepyde porta, & clevyþ on þe stomake & þe gottys. Veynes capillarys þat beþ veynes, as yt were herys of a Mannes hed.
- ¶ After hem comyþ pannyceles, þat ys to sigge, a smal cloth, þat ys mad of sotyH predys of synwis veynes & arteries, where þe firste is þat they mowe bynden manye þynges in on forme, as þe pannicle of þe hed bynde vii bonys; þe secunde Iuvament is þat þey hongen & bynden somme membrys with opere, as þe reyns to þe rugge & þe marys to þe rugge bon; þe þrydde helpinge ys þat some membrys þat beþ insensibile by here kynde, by þe pannyceles þat wreyeþ hem fleiþ by accydent, as þe longes, þe lyffere, & þe splene, & þe reynes; þese lymes by here kynde hap non felynge, but what þat þey felyn it ys by Accident of þe pannycle þat wreyeþ hem.
- þe flesch is nozt hot, but yt is moist, & hap þre manere lyknesse; on ys symple flesch, & hys helpinge ys to fulfille þe voyde placys

Add. MS. 12,056.

1.
Simple flesh
fills up hol-
lows.

2.
Glandulous
flesh turns

blood into
milk,
and makes
sperin into
spittle.

3.
Brawny or
muscular
flesh.

[4 ff. 13, bk.]

9th Member,
Skin.
It is temper-
ate.

of smale lymes to brynge hem to a good schap, & þat ech hard lyme schulde nouzt hirte oper wijþ confucacioun¹ togidere / Anoper maner fleisch þer is þat is glandelose, þat¹ is as it were accornis,² & his Iuuament is þat¹ he turne³ humedites, þat¹ is to seie moistnes to her 4 heete; as þe glandelose fleisch of wommans brestis þe which þat¹ turneþ þe blood þat¹ is drawn from þe maris into mylk; & þe glandelose fleisch of þe ballockis, þat turneþ þe blood into sperme / & þe glandelose fleisch of þe chekis þat engendriþ spotil / þe þridde 8 maner fleisch is a fleisch þat is in brawnys, þat is clepid a brawn fleisch, for he is medlid wijþ sutil þredis of cordis, as I schal telle after þe whiche helpingis schal be told in þe 4anotamie of þe brawn.

At þe laste is þe skyn þat is temperat in al her qualitees; & it¹ 12 is maad of smale þredis of veynes, senewis, & arteries, þat makip him sensible, & zeueþ him lifz & worchinge, þat ben gouernouris of al þe bodi. & þe skyn is maad temperat, for he schulde knowe hoot, coold, moist, & drie, soft, hard, sharp, & smope / & if þat þe skyn 16 were as sencible as a senewe, þanne a man myzte not dwelle in erþe ne in hoot eir; ne þe skyn of þe fyngris endis þe whiche þat is more temperat þan ony oþir skyn of þe bodi ne schulde nouzt be a

¹ *confucacioun*. Addit. *confricacioun*. See page 23, note 2.

² *accornis*, glandes.

³ Latin: eius iuumentum est, ut convertat humiditates ad eius colorem. The English translator read: calorem.

Add. MS.
12,056.

[5 fol. 42 a]

of smale lymes, to bryngen hem to a gode schappe, & þat iche harde 20 lyme ⁵ne scholde nouzt hurten opere with *confricacioun* togedire. An opere manere flesch ys þat is glandelose, þat ys as hyt were achcharnes, & hys Iuamente is þat he turnyth vmydites to here hete: as þe glandelose flesch of wommans brestys, whyche þat 24 turnyth þe blod þat ys drawe from þe marys into þe mylk, þe glandelose flesch of þe ballokes, þat turnyth þe blod into sperme, & þe glandelose flesch of the chekys þat engendreþ spotel. þe þridde manere of flesch ys a flesch þat is in brawnys, þat ys y-clepede a 28 brawny flesch, ffor he ys medlyde wijþ sotyl þredys of cordys, as y schal tellyn aftere, whose helpynge schal be tolde in þe Anotamye of þe brawne.

At þe laste is þe schyn, þat is temperat in al here qualite, & is 32 y-mad of smale þredys of veynes, synwes, & Arteries, þat makeþ hym sensible, and geveþ hym lyf and norisschyng, þat he be governoure of alle þe body. & þe skyn ys y-mad temperat, for he scholde knowe hot, colde, moyste & drye, softe & hard, scharpe & smeþe; & 3if þe 36 skyn were as sencible as a zenewe, a man myzte nozt dwellen in colde eyre, ne in hote eyre; ne þe skyn of þe fyngres endys, whiche þat ys more temperat þenne eny opere skyn of þe lody, ne scholde

good demere in knowynge hoot, cold, hard, scharp, soft, eiper neische.

- Brawnes þouȝ þat þei be maad of mater medlid, nepeles þei ben 9th Member, Muscles are instruments of moving. Coris are made from Sinews and Ligaments,
- 4 rekened among^t membris consimiles, for þei comen to þe making^t of membris officials / Brawn is maad of fleisch, senewe, & ligamentis, & þei ben instrumente voluntarie meuyngē. þe senewe þat comeþ fro þe brayn, & þe nucha & goiþ forþ to meue þe lymes is medlid
- 8 wiþ a ligament / & whanne þe senewe & þe ligament^t ben medlid togidere, it^t is clepid a corda / & þe corde is maad for þre skilis. þe firste¹ for a symple sinewe is to cen²sible; þe senewe bi him-silf myȝt not suffre gret^t traueile & meuyngē, but^t þe felowschipe of þe
- 12 ligament þat is incensibile lettīþ þe felyngē of^t þe senewe, & bringīþ him to a profitable temperaunce / þe senewe haþ .ij. oþere defaultis : neischēnesse and liztnesse. But þo .ij. defaultis þe medlyngē of^t þe ligament^t fulfillīþ³; for þe neischēnes is temperid & strenkpid, & þe
- 16 litilnes is maad more. þe neischēnes comeþ of^t þe brayn for it is myche, & þe litilnes comeþ of þe nucha, for it is litil. þat þat is maad of þis nerf & þis ligament is clepid a corde; þe which þat meueþ þe lymes to þe wille of^t þe soule, whanne þat^t it is schortid

[² If. 14]

the Sinew alone being too sensible,

too soft,

and too small. cordia.

¹ þe firste in margin.

³ fulfillīþ, supplet. See *Cath. Angl.*, p. 145, to *Fulfyllē*, supplere vicem Alterius.

- 20 noȝt ben a gode demere in knowynge hot, cold, hard oþere scharpe, softe oþere nessche. Add. MS. 12,056.

- ¶ Brawnyȝ þowȝ þey ben mad of matere y-medlyde, nevere þe latere þey beþ y-reknyde amonge membrys consimiles, for þey comen 24 to þe makyngē off^t Membrys-officiales. Brawne ys y-mad of flesch, 3zenewe, & ligamente, & þey ben Instrumente off voluntarie meuyngē. þe 3enewe þat comyþ from þe brayn & þe nuca, & goþ forþ to meue the lymes, ys y-medlyde with a ligamente, & whenne þe 3enewe & þe 28 ligamente beþ medlyde togedyre, yt ys clepyde a corde, & the corde ys y-made for þre skylles : þe ffurste for a symple senewe ys to sensible, & þe 3enewe by hym-self^t ne myȝte noȝt suffren to grete travaylle & meuyngē, but þe felawschipe of þe ligamente, þat ys 32 incensibile, lutlīþ þe felyngē of þe synwe, and bryngēþ hym to a profitable temperaunce. þe 3enewe hadde tweyne oþere defaultes : nesschēnesse & litylnesse, but þo tweyne defaultes, þe medlyngē of þe ligament ffulfilleþ; for the nesschēnesse ys entempred & y-strength- 36 yde, and þe lytelnesse ys y-made more. The nesschēnesse comyþ of þe brayn, ffor it ys nessche; and þe lytelnesse comeþ of þe Nuca, for it ys lytel. þat þat is mad of þis nerff^t & þis ligamente ys clepyde a corde, whiche þat meviþ þe lymes to wyl of þe soule,

[⁴ fol. 42 b]

Muscles are made from cords and flesh.

- ouper drawn after þat þe lyme bouwip. To þis¹ corde, þer is asocied a symple *[flesch] for to make a brawn for þre profitis / þe firste profizt² þat is in drawyng & wiþdrawyng of þe corde, þe fleisch schulde be as a pelewe vpon þe which he myzt reste / þe secunde, 4
- .1. profizt² þat is in drawyng & wiþdrawyng of þe corde, þe fleisch schulde be as a pelewe vpon þe which he myzt reste / þe secunde, 4
- .2. þat þe fleisch þat is neische & moist schulde kepe þe corde, þat he drie nouzt in her meuyng / þe þridde, þat þe makyng of lymes were þe more schaploker. / þe brawn is maad bowyng as a bowe þat is bent; & for þe kynde wolde kepe þis complexioun, he clopide 8
- .3. ²þe brawn wiþ a pannicle / þe corde whanne he entriþ into þe brawn is departid into many smale þredis, & þei ben clepid villes³—þat is to seie wrappingis. & þese villes ben of .iiij. maner: in lenkþe bi þe which vertu, þat drawiþ haþ myzt, in brede, bi þe which vertu 12
- þat castide out haþ myzt / in þwert ouer bi þe which vertu *[þat] with halt haþ myzt / & at þe eendis of þe brawn þilke þredis ben gaderid togidere to make a corde, aftir þat it is nessessarie / many cordis eiper brawnes to ben engendrid. & official membris ben maad of 16
- þese consimile membris, þe whiche þat ben instrumentes to resonable soule. And in þe ij. tretis I wole telle þe anotamie of lymes of office.

¹ Lat. : Huic autem chordæ—associatur caro simplex. Comp. Add. MS.

³ villes. Lat. fila.

- Add. MS. 12,056. whenne þat it is schortid opere y-drawe, aftere þat þe lyme bowyth 20 to þis corde. ffor þere ys Asosyed a symple *flesch for to maken a brawne for þre proffytes: þe furste profyt, þat boþe in drawyng & wiþdrawyng of þe corde, the flesch scholde be as a pylwe, vp on whom he myzte reste; þe secunde cause, þat þe flesch þat is nessche 24
- [² fol. 43 a] & moyst schulde kepen þe corde, þat ⁴sche dreyzede nozt in here mevyng; þe þridde, þat þe makyng of lymes were þe more schaplokore. þe brawne is made bowyng, as a bowe þat ys y-bent; & for þat kynde wolde kepe þys compositionn, he clothyde þe brawne 28
- wyþ a pannycle. þe corde whenne he entriþ in to þat brawne, ys departyde in to many smale þredys, & þey ben clepyde vylles, þat ys to sugge, wrabynges. & þese villes bene of þre maners, in lengþe—by whom vertue þat draweþ haþ myzt, in brede—by whom 32
- vertu þat castyþ out haþ myzt, in twart ofere—by whom vertu *þat wiþhalt haþ myzt; & at þe ende of þe brawne þilke þredys beþ gadride to gedre to maken a corde, after þat it is necessarie, many cordys opere brawnyys to ben engendride. & official membrys ben 36
- y-mad of þese consimile membrys, whiche þat beþ instrument to resonable soule. And in þe secunde tretys y wyl tellen þe anotamye of lymes of office.

The firste chapitle //

¶ Capm. jm

¶ þe .iij. techinge is of difference of woundis & of general *de vulneribus* curis / We schulen undrestonde þat wounde, & old wounde, festre & cankre woundid, & boon out of ioynte, & a boon to-broken, & apostyme, alle þese ben clepid vndoyng of þat þat is hool. & alle þese sijknessis, & many oon opir as weel, moun falle to *consimile membris* as to official *membris* / *vunnus* is a newe wounde / *vlcus* is an old rotid wounde. ¹ I schal tellen in her placis þe difference of festre & cankre & apostyme; plage comounly is taken for an oold wounde, & ofte tymes we fynde þat an old wounde is clepid *vunnus*, as *ypocras seip* / *vulnera annua necesse est* in eis os taliefieri ² & *cicatrices concavas fieri*: þat is to seie, it is nedful³ þat þe boon in an oold wounde to be rotid & þe *cicatrices* to be holow³ / *Cicatrice* is þe place of þe schynboon⁴ þe wounde, whanne þat it is hool / Summe woundis ben symple, & summe compound / in two maner he is clepid a symple wounde / oon maner, for he haþ not lost of fleisch / anoþer maner for he haþ noon opir sijknesse wiþ him, ne is nouzt distemperid / A wounde compound is clepid contrarie to him þat is symple / but boþe symple & compoundis sumtyme is in þe fleisch or

[¹ leaf 15]

Wounds are either woundis sempell

or compound,

² Read *tabefieri*.³ it is nedful in margin.⁴ *schynboon*, read *schyn above*. See below.

20 The ffurste Chapitle of þe þridde techyng is of difference of woundes & olde woundes & off generall cures.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ We schulle vndirstonde þat wounde, olde wounde, festre, cancre & y-wondyde, a bon out of loynt, a bon tobroken, Aposteme, alle þese ben y-clepyde vndoyng of þat þat ys hol, & alle þese seknesse & manye opere as wel mowe fallen to *consimile membris*. as to oficial *membris*. *Vunnus* is a newe wounde. *Vlcus* ys an olde rotyde wounde. I schal⁵ tellen in here place þe dyfference of festre & cancre & apostemys. Plage comynliche ys y-taken of an olde wonde; and ofte tyme we fynden, þat an olde wounde ys y-clepyde *Vunnus*, as *Ipcres seip*: *Vulnera Annua necesse est* in eis os *tabefieri* & *cicatrices concavas fieri*. ¶ That is to sugge, it ys ned, þat þe bon in an olde wounde to be rotyd, & þe *Cicatrices* to be holwe. *Cicatrice* ys þe place of þe skyn above the wounde, whenne þat yt is hol. Some wounde buþ symple & some ben componyde. In tweye manere he ys clepyde a symple wounde. On manere, for he haþ nouzt leste of flesch; an opere maner, for he haþ non opere seknesse with hym, ne is nouzt distempride. A wounde componed ys y-clepyde contrarye to hym þat is symple. But boþe symple & also com-

[⁵ fol. 43 b]

in þe senewe, or in þe boon, or in þe veynes, or in þe arterie / also þese woundis han dyuers cause. Summe comen fro wiþinne of þe malice, eiper of to greet multitude of humouris. * [forto gret multitude of humores] opirwhile tobrekiþ þe membre & wiþholdiþ & woundiþ 4 him / Cold matere streyneþ, drie mater kuttip, moisture wiþoute
 [1 If. 15, bk.] mater makiþ no wounde, but selden with¹ mater, but he drawe þe and external. lyme to brode. & also þe cause wiþoute² mai be dyuers opirwhile wiþ a swerd eiper wiþ a þing¹ þat¹ kuttip along, oþerwhile wiþ a knyff 8 or wiþ a spere or an arowe þat prickiþ, & summe ben maad wiþ a staf or wiþ a stoon eiper wiþ fallynge, & summe ben maad wiþ bitynge of an hound oupir a wood hound; & alle þese ben diuers affir þe dyuersite of her causis; & also þe maner of helynge is dyuers / Al þe intencion 12 of helynge of woundis is for to sowden or to helen & to restoren þat, þat is departid, þe which þat mai not oueral be doon / for if þat membris of office ben kutt of, þei moun neuere be restorid, ne noon of þe consimile membris mai be restorid, if he be doon away: 16 as boonis, pelliculis, gristlis, ligamentis & skyn / For þe cause of her generacioun is þe sperme of þe fadir & of þe modir, as I tolde tofore / but in place of þing¹ þat is I-lore, kynde restoriþ þat, þat is moost conuenient to þe place; but fleisch mai be restorid bi cause 20

² The cause wiþoute, causa exterior.

ponyd some tyme is in þe flesch oþere in þe synwe oþer in bon, oþere in veyne, oþere in arterie. Also þese wondes han dyverse causes. Some comen from wiþynne of þe malice, oþere of to greet multytude of humores; * forto gret multitude of humores oþere while 24 tobrekyth þe membre, þat wiþholdiþ & woundiþ hym cold matere streyneþ, drye matere kutteþ, moistnesse withouten matere makeþ no wounde, but selden with matere, but he drawiþ þe lyme to brode. And also þe cause wiþout may be dyverse, oþerwhyle with a swerd, 28 ore with a þynge þat kutteþ alonge, oþerwhile with a knyff, oþere a spere, oþere an arwe þat³ prykeþ, & somme ben made wiþ a stafe, oþere with a ston, oþere with fallynge, & somme ben mad with bytynge of an hound, oþere of a wod hound; & alle þese ben dyverse, 32 after þe dyverste of here cause; & also þe manere of helynge ys dyverse. Alle þe entencion of helynge of woundes, ys forto sowdyn & to helyn, & to restoren þat þat is departyde, whiche þat may nozt overe al be don. Ffor 3if þat membris of offyce ben kutte of, þey 36 mowe neuere ben restoryd; ne non of þe consimile membris may be restoryde, & he be don away: as bonys, pellicules, grustles, ligamentis & schyn. Ffor þe cause of here generacioun is þe sperme of þe ffadire & þe modere, as y tolde tofore; but in place of thyng 40 þat is lore, kynde restoryth þat þat is most convenient to þat place; but the flesch may be restoryd, by cause þat þe blod ys engendred

and have different causes, both internal

[1 If. 15, bk.] and external.

The object of healing is to close a wound, and to restore what has been lost.

Nota

Bones, ligaments, and similar parts cannot be restored;

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 44 a]

þat þe blood is engendrid al day in us, & þe blood is þe mater of þe ^{flesh, veins, and arteries} fleisch / & summe seien þat veynes, arteries, & senewis myzt not be ^{can be.} restorid as þei weren tofore; but þei moun ^[leaf 16] ¹ be restorid as boоныs
 4 ben / But Galien and Auicen & I þat am expert here seiynge, ^{G. A.} ² wo³ seie þat þei moun be restorid wiþ veri consolidacioun, whanne þat her kuttinge is lital, & whanne þat þe senewis þat ben newe kutt⁴ & soude azen; but þei moun not be consoudid, whanne þat
 8 her kuttinge is myche & greet; & resoun grauntip it / Senewis bi kynde ben neische & viscouse; & þefore þei moun⁵ ben consoudid, & þe veynes & þe arteries moun be consoudid bi resoun of þe blood
 þat is in hem. I þenke to ordeyne ech chapitle bi him-silf after ^{vaynes & arteries may be consoudid but not senewis.}
 12 þe dyuersite of lymes & of placis, þe whiche þat þei ben maad yme / & I wole bigynne at a symple wounde maad in fleisch /

þe secunde chapitle of þe þridde techinge /

ij^o. c^o.

16 **N**OW we wolen trete of a wounde maad in fleisch. We wolen ^{Of wounde maad in fleisch.} bigynne at a symple wounde maad wiþ knyff or wiþ swerd, or spere or arowe, or wiþ any opir þing semblable to hem.

² I þat am expert here seiynge. Lat.: ego qui sum expertus eorum dicta.

³ we, added above line.

⁴ s, mistake for ben.

⁵ not, erroneously added above line.

al day in vs, & þe blod ys þe matere of fleisch; & somme suggen þat ^{Add. MS.} ^{12,056.} veynes, synwes, & arteries myzte nouzt be restoryde as þey were tofore; but þey mowe be restoryd as bonys buþ. But Galien & Avycene, & I þat am expert here suggynge, suggen þat þey mowe be restoryde with verrey consolidacioun, whanne þat here kuttinge ys lyteþ, & whenne þat þe synwys þat buþ newe kutte beþ so wyde
 24 azeine; but þey mowe nozt be consouded, whanne þat here kuttinge ys gret & myche; & resoun grauntyth yt. Synwys by kynde buþ nessesche and viscose; & þefore þey mowe ben consouded. þe veynes & þe arteries mowe be consouded by resoun of þe blod þat ys
 28 in hem. I þynke to ordeynen eche Chapitell ⁶ be hym selven, aftere þe dyuersite of lymes & of placys, whyche þat þey buþ y-made yn; & y wyl begynne at a symple wounde y-mad in fleisch. ^[6 fol. 44 b]

¶ þe secunde Chapitell off þe thridde techynge off the
 32 ffurst tretis is of cure of a wounde y-mad in fflesch.

Now we willen treten of a wounde y-makyd in fflesch. We wylle begynne at a symple wounde, y-mad wiþ knyff oþere wiþ
 36 swerd ore spere, oþere with arwe, oþere with enye oþere thyng
 SURGERY. D

Simple wounds, if painless, will close if only bandaged,

Bynde togideris pilke wounde with a boond þat closiþ þe wounde togideris, & kepe pilke wounde from swellynge wiþ þe whizt^t of an ey leid aboute þe wounde, & lete þe wounde be in reste; & þer nedij noon

[1. 16. bk.] oþer cure, namely, ¹whanne þe wounde is wiþoute akyng; but, & þer 4 be in þe wounde greet akyng, þanne it is a tokene, þat þer is a senewe prickid vndir þe wounde, eiþer a pannicle þat is bitwene þe fleisch and þe boon; & þanne þer is anoþer cure, as I schal telle in þe chapitle

Naracio.

Ego curauy homo.

as has been shown in the case of an old man.

of puncture of a senewe þat I haue heelid a man þat² was * [sefenty 8 zere olde þat was] smyte wiþ a spere þoruþ þe fleisch of þe buttoke, bi þe lenkþe of a fote, * [& more] but pilke wounde touchide no senewe, & þat I wiste sikirliche, for he hadde noon akyng / I heeld þe wounde open aldai wiþ a litil smal tent & a schort, þat I myzte 12 wite, if þat he schulde aken on þe morowe, & I comaundide him to reste / & on þe morowe I foond noon inflacioun ne akyng; & þanne I took away þe tent & lete þe wounde closen, & so comaundide I him to reste þe secunde dai / In þe þridde day he was hool. & if a 16 wounde were maad wiþ a swerd or wiþ ony þing^t þat bitip in lenkþe, anon þou must loke if^t þe wounde be so litil þat he nede no sowynge, & þanne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togideris, þat it may be weel ioyned, & leie aboute þe wounde a poundir maad oon partie 20

Treat slight wounds with puluis consolidativus

² þat, scribal insertion.

Add. MS. 12,056.

semblable to hem. Bynde togedyre pilke wounde with a band þat close þe wounde to gedire, & kepe þe wounde from swellynge, with þe whyte of an eyze y-leyde aboute þe wounde, & lete þat wounde ben in reste, & þere nedytþ none oþere cure, namlye, whanne þe wounde 24 ys withouten akyng; but and þere be in wounde gret akyng, þanne þere is a tokne þat þere ys a synwe prikyde vndire þe wounde, oþere a pannicle þat ys betwene þe fleisch & þe bon, & þanne þere ys al an oþere cure, as y schal telle in þe chapiteH of the puncture of a synwe. 28 And y haue helyd a man þat was * sefenty zere olde, þat was y-smyten wiþ a spere þorwe þe fleisch of þe buttoke by þe lengþe of a fote * & more, but pilke woude touchide non synwe; & þat y wiste sykerliche, for he had non akyng; y helde the wounde opyn al a day, 32 with a lyte smal tente & a schert þat y myzte wyte, zif þat he scholde ake on þe morwe & I comaundyde hym to reste, and on þe morwe y fonde non inflacion ne akyng, & þenne y caste awaye þe tente & lete þe wounde closen, & so y comaundide hym to reste, & wiþymne 36 þe þridde day he was al hol. And zif þat a wounde were maad wiþ a swerd, oþere wiþ eny þynge þat ³ kutteþ in lengþe, a man most loke zif þe wounde be so litel þat he nede non sowynge, & þenne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togedyre, þat it may wel ben y-joynede, & 40 leye aboute þe wounde a poudere y-mad of on partye of ffranke-En-

[3 fol. 45 a]

of frankencense, & of two parties¹ of sandragoun,² & of þre parties ^[1 leaf 17] of quyk lym, & lete nouzt þe poudre entre bitwene in þe wounde but³ aboue, for þer schal no þing⁴ entre in þe wounde, & kepe þe 4 parties of þe wounde þat ben brouzt togidere wip a plumaciol³ .iij. cornered maad of herdis or of towe in þis maner: ◁ oon bi þe sidis of þe wounde, so þat boþe þilke plumaciols holde þe wounde þus iclosed⁴: ◁ | ▷ & ioyned togidere as it⁵ was ioyned arst, or 8 it were kutt / & bynde þe wounde togidere aboue þe plumaciols wip a rolle þat goiþ ouerþwert aftir þis lettre .X. & take a lynnen cloof & wete him in two parties of þe white of an ey, in oon partie of oile of⁶ rosis, þei ben togidere medlid, undir þe plumaciols, leid aboue 12 þe wounde þat is brouzt togidere, for to kepe þe⁵ poudre; & do nouzt⁷ away þi medicyn til .iiij. daies ben goon, but if þat þe **Nota** wounde ake or be to-swollen. & þanne bynde þe wounde as it was biforn wip þe white of an ey; oile, poudre, & plumaciols. But if 16 þe wounde were so myche, þat byndynge wolde nouzt suffice, or were **Large wounds and those which run athwart the limb are to be stitched.** kutt ouerþwert⁸ ouer þe lyme, so þat þe parties of þe lyme myzt nouzt⁹ wel be⁶ brouzt togideris, þanne sowe þe wounde on þis maner / Ioynne þe lippis of þe wounde, & be war þat noon oile *[ne dust] ne no ^[6 lf. 17, bk.] 20 þing¹⁰ ellis, þat lettij consolidacioun, falle bitwene þe lippis of þe

² *Sandragoun*. Sanguis draconis: the gum of the Dragon-tree. Kersey. 1706.
³ See Notes. ³ *Plumaceoli*: Bolsters used by Surgeons. Kersey. 1706.
⁴ *iclosed*, inserted in margin. ⁵ MS. *wounde*, cancelled.

sence, & of two partyes of sanedragoun & of þre parties of quyke- **Add. MS.** lyme, & lete nozt þe poudre entre wipynne þe wounde but above, **12,056.** for þere schal noþynge entre withynne þe wounde, & kepe þe parties 24 of þe wounde þat buþ brouzt togedire with a plumacyole þre corneled y-made of hurdes opere towz in þis manere ▷ on be þe sydes of þe wounde, so þat boþe þilke plumacioles holde þe wounde þus y-closyde ◁ | ▷ & joynde togedire, as yt was joyned ere þenne 28 yt was ykutte; & bynde þe wounde togedire abouen þe plumacioles, with a rolle þat goth twartoffere after þis lettere XX, & take a lynnen cloth & wete hym in two parties of whyte of an eyze, & in on partie of oyle of roses i-bete togedire, vndire þe plumacioles abofe þe 32 wounde, þat ys y-browzt togedyre, forto kepe þe poudre, & do nozt away þe medicine tyl foure dayes ben ago, but zif þat þe wounde ake, opere ellys be to-swollon; & þenne bynde þe wounde as yt was toforne, with þe whyte of þe eyze, oyle, poudre, & plumacioles. But 36 zif þe wounde were so myche, þat þe byndynge wolde nozt suffice, opere were kutte twart offere þe lyme, so þat þe partyes of þe lyme myzt nozt wel be browzt togedire, þanne sowe þe wounde on þis manere: joyne þe lippes of þe wounde togedire, & ware þat non oyle 40 *ne dust, ne noþynge ellys þat lattyd consolidacioun, falle bytwene

with an
acus trian-
gulum.

Way of stitch-
ing a wound.

Number of
the stitches
and their
distance from
each other.

[¹ leaf 18]

The stitches
must be deep
enough

wounde, & haue a nedle pre cornerid, whos ize schal be holid on
bope sidis, so þat þe pred þat is in þe nedle may lie in þe holow;
place, & pilke pred schal be twyned, & wipoute knotte, & I-wexid,
& þe lippis of þe wounde schal be sowid togideris; & þe pred schal 4
be knytt wip two knottis in þe firste place, & in þe secunde place
wip oon knotte; & so make as manye poyntis, as it is nessessarie,
& ech poynt schal be from opir bi þe brede of a litil fyngir, &
streyne þe wounde with knottyng & þe sewyng of þe lippis of þe 8
wounde togidere þat he ake sumwhat, but nouzt to myche. & if þat
þe nede mo poyntis to be þere þan two, euermore þe schal be odde
poyntis, as .iij. v. or .vij. & þe oon poynt schal be first from þe oon
eende of þe wounde, bi þe space of a litil fyngir, & þe topir poynt 12
schal be at þe opir ende of þe wounde, & þe þridde poynt schal be
in þe myddil of þe wounde / & if it be nede to haue mo poyntis,
þanne schalt þou ¹bigyne at þe myddil poynt, & make as manye
poyntis on bope sidis as it is nede, til þou come to bope eendis / For 16
bi þis maner of sowyng neþir partie schal be crokid, & so þe place
mai faire be restorid, & euermore take kepe þat * [zif] þe wounde be
not depe, þi sowyng schal be nouzt deep / & if þi wounde be deep,
þi sowyng schal be deep, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde moun 20

Add. MS.
12,056.

[² fol. 45 b]

þe lippes of þe wounde, & haue an nedle ²pre kornerde, whose eyze
scholde be holyde on bope sydes, so þat þe ³prede þat is in þe nedle
may ligge in þe holwe place, & pilke schal be twynede, & withoute
knotte & ywaxide, & þe lippes of þe wounde schulle ben sowyde 24
togedyre, & þe prede schal be knette with two knottes in þe firste
place; in þe secunde place with on knotte, & so make as manye
punctis as yt is necessarie, & eche puncte schal be from opere by þe
brede of a lytel ffyngere, & streyne þe wounde wip knettyng, & þe 28
sowyng of þe lippes of þe wounde togedire þat he ake sumwhat,
but nouzt to myche, & zif þat þere nede mo punctis to be þere þen
two, efire more þere schal be odde punctys, as þre, fyfe, opere seuene;
& þe on puncte schal be fyrst from þe on ende of þe wonde by þe 32
⁴brede of a litel fyngire, & þe opere puncte schal be at þe opere ende
of þe wounde, & þe þridde puncte schal be in þe myddil of þe
wounde; & zif it be nede to haue mo punctis, þou schalt begynnen
at þe myddel puncte, & make as manye punctes on bope þe sydes, as 36
yt ys nede, tyl þou come to bope endys; ffor by þis manere of
sowyng neþere partye schal be crokyde, & so þe place may fairere
ben restoryde. And euermore take hede, * zif þe wounde be nouzt
depe, þy sowyng schal be nouzt depe. And zif þy wounde be depe 40
þy sowyng schal be depe, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde mowe

³ þridde cancelled before prede.

⁴ sp. cancelled before brede.

be ioyned / For if þe wounde were deep, & þi sowynge not deep, to leave no hollows in the wound.
 nede þer muste be in þe deppe of þe wounde a greet holownes, to þe which holownes blood & quyttre schulde be cast; & þilke
 4 quyttre & blood schulde lette þe helynge of þe wounde. & þe
 poudre þat is seid in þe same chapitle, schal be leid aboue on þe
 same wounde; & þou schalt kepe þe sewynge & þe parties of þe
 wounde þat I brouzte togidere wip plumaciols þre cornerid, & wip
 8 alle þe opere þingis þat ben in þis chapitle tofore seid / And if þat
 a wounde haþ be to longe in þe eir open, which þat is þe cause of
 quyttre þat lettþ consolidacioun, þanne we musten clense þe wounde
 wip þis mundificatif þat is maad of flour of wheete & hony & water
 12 & mel roset, ¹I-colat, þat is to seie, clensid from þe rosis, and of
 barly mele / Of þese mundificatyues þou schalt haue a ful techinge
 in þe laste tretis /

To wounds exposed to the air apply a cleansing ointment.

a mundificatif.
 [1f. 18, bk.]

But if þe wounde be compound, a leche muste haue as manye
 16 intenciouns as þer ben accidentis to þe wounde / I sette an ensauple. *Nota*
 I suppose þat a wounde be compound wip holownes & lesynge of
 fleisch & of skyn, & þere be myche quytter, & also þat þer be
 apostyme, & þer be a greet akynge; al þis is clepid a wounde com-
 20 pound / þanne schulen we nouzt onliche take hede to consolidacioun
 of þat wounde: þat is to seie, helynge; but first we schulen aswage

If pus and pain come on,

be ioyned togedire. Ffor 3if þe wounde were depe, & þy sowynge
 were nozt depe, nedys þere moste ben in þe deppe of þe wounde a
 24 gret holwene-se, to þe whiche holwenesse blod & quyter scholde be
 cast; & þilke quyter & blod scholde lette þe helynge of þe wounde.
 And þe poudre þat ys seyde in þe same chapytell schal be leyde
 aboue þe same sowynge, & þou schalt kepen þe sowynge & þe parties
 28 of þe wounde, þat buþ brouzt togedyre, with plumacioles þre cornelyd
 & with alle opere þynges þat beþ in þis chapytel forseyde. And 3if
 þat a wounde haue be to longe in þe eyre opyne, whiche þat ys
 cause of quyter þat latteþ consolidacioun, þenne we moste clense þe
 32 wounde with ³ þis mundificatyff, þat is mad of floure, of whete & hony
 & watyre opere mel rosate, & colat þat ys y-clansed from þe roses, &
 of barly mele. Of þese mudyficatyfes þou schalt han a ful tech-
 ynge in þe laste tretys. But 3if þe wounde be y-componed, a leche
 36 moste han as manye intensiones as þere ben accidentys to þe woude.
 Y sette ensauple: y suppose þat a wounde be componed with hol-
 weness & lesynge of flesch & of skyn, & þere be myche quyter &
 al so þere be a posteme & þere be grete akynge, al this ys clepyde a
 40 wounde compoynde. þanne we schulle nozt only take hede to con-
 solidacioun of þilke wounde, þat is to sigge helynge, but firste we

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[² fol. 46 a]

³ MS. þat.

deal with the symptoms separately, akþe & apostymes, as it^r schal be told in þe chapitle of an enpostyme & of^r akyngge / Aftirward we schulen clense þe quytture, & aftir þat regenerere fleisch, & at þe laste bryngge ouer cicatrice. In alle þe worchings of medicyns, where þat akþe is, first we schulen aswage akþe, 4
and first relieve pain. notz. for aboue al oþir þing^r strong^r akyngge ouercomeþ myzt of vertu & strenkþe / & also resoun telliþ; membris¹ þat han akþe, þilke akþe is cause of drawynge from þe opere placis to þe membre þat akiþ þe
Aucien worste² þing^r of^r þe humouris / Aucien seiþ: humouris ben drawn 8
[² leaf 19] to lymes þat aken for .ij. causis: o cause, for kynde * [& Spiritus and humourer rennyth þedyre; þe secunde cause, for akþe febylth þe lyme, & humours] & spiritis rennen to þe feble lyme / þe swellynge
G. & A. schal eer be heelid þan þe wounde / Galien & Aucien tellen: þat al 12
þing^r þat^r consowdiþ þe wounde greueþ þe wounde, if^r þat þer be apostyme wiþ þe wounde / & þe quytture schal be clensid or þou leie
A purulent wound must be cleansed, before closing it or putting on a "regeneratif." ony regeneratijf to holow³ woundis. Aucien telliþ þe cause, whi
þat yuel fleisch growiþ in a wounde / If þat a leche wolde bisie him 16
wiþ a medicyn regeneratijf to regendre fleisch in a wounde, & er þan þe quytture were clensid / & whanne þat þe wounde is clensid, þanne we schulen fulfille þilke holownes wiþ fleisch or þat þe wounde be

¹ Lat., Membra quoque dolorem habentia, dolor ipse est causa attrahendi aliunde humorum pessimitatem.

Add. MS. 12,056. schul aswagen akþe & aposteme, as yt schal be tolde in þe chapitle 20
of aposteme & of akyngge; aftirwarde we schullen clanse þe quyter, & aftere þat regenerere flesch, & at þe laste bryngge ouere a Cicatrice. In alle þe werkynges of medicine, where þat akþe ys, firste we schulle aswagen akyngge; ffor abouen alle opere þynge stronge 24
akyngge, ouere comeþ myzte of vertu & strengþe, & also resoun tellyth; membrys þat han akþe, þilke akþe ys cause of drawynge from opere places to þe membre þat akþe³ þe worste þynge of þe
[¹ fol. 46 b] humoures. Avicene seyth humours beþ drawn to⁴ lymes þat aken 28
for two causes: On cause, for kynde * & Spiritus and humoures rennyth þedyre; þe secunde cause, for akþe febylth þe lyme, & humours * & spiritis renne to þe feble lymme. þe swellynge schal ere ben y-helyde þen þe wounde. Galien & Avycene tellen þat alle 32
þynge þat consoudeþ þe wounde, grefyþ þe wounde, zif þat þere be aposteme with þe wounde, & þe quyter schal ben y-clansyde, ere þenne þou legge enye generatyff to holwe woundys. Avicenne tellyth a cause, why þat yuele flesch growith in a wounde, zif þat a leche 36
wolde besy hym with a medycin regeneratyff to engendre flesch in a wounde, ere þanne þe quytere were clansede. And whenne þat þe wounde ys clansyde, þenne we schulle fulfyllen þilke holwnesse with

³ MS. akþe.

heelid, lest *peraventure*¹ þat þer dwelle an holownesse vndir þe wounde, whanne þat he is helid, in whom þat quytture schulde be engendrid, þerwith² ech dai schulde augmente þilke holownesse, & 4 so we moten be constreyned to opene anopir tyme þat, þat was heelid tofore / þou maist fynde in þe chapitle of woundis of senewis, how þou schalt aswage akþe, & in þe .vj. chapitle of þis techinge þou schalt fynde þe cure³ of a wounde þat haþ a swellynge, & is 8 out of kynde distemperid; & þou schalt haue in þe chapitle of olde woundis, how þou schalt clense quytture & regendre fleisch /

[3 l. 19, bk.]
in þe co. of
olde woundis
in þe ante-
dotarie.

The þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is of heelynge of a wounde maad in senewe /

¶ 3o. co
De vulnera
incarne.

12 Almyzti god hath 3eue to senewe greet felyngt, & if þat he be hirt, he suffriþ greet akyngt / Galien seip: a senewe þat is more felyngt þan anoper *[lyme]; it is nessessarie þat he haue grettere akþe / Vndirstonde þat a wounde þat is maad in a senewe, mai not be 16 wiþoute akyngt. Ne⁴ woundis þat ben maad in senewis, ouþer þat ben in lenkþe or in brede / þe woundis þat ben maad in lenkþe of þe² senewe, ben lesse perilous þan⁵ þo þat ben maad in brede of þe

A wound cut-
ting the nerve
lengthwise,
a *fissura*, is
less danger-
ous than one
crossing it,
a *sisaura*.

¹ *peraventure*. See N. E. Dict., *adventure*, I. b.

² *þerwiþ*, scribal error for *þe which*.

⁴ *no*, scribal error for *þe*. ⁵ *þan* erroneously inserted.

flesch, ere þanne þat wounde ben y-helyde; leste þat þere dwellen an 20 holwnesse vndire þe wounde whenne þat he ys helyde, in whom þat quyter scholde be engendryde, þe whiche eche day scholde augmente þilke holwnesse, & so we moste ben constreynede to opyne an opere tyme þat, þat was helyde tofore. þou mayste fynden aftere in þe 24 chapyteH of woundys of synwes how þou schalt aswagen akþe, and in the sixte ChapiteH of þis techyngt þou schalt fynde þe cure of a wounde, þat hath a swellynge, and ys out of kynde dystempryde, and þou schalt haue in þe chapitle of olde woundys; how thou schalt 28 clense, quytyre, and regendre flessch //

Add. MS.
12,056.

⁶Cap. iii. of the þridde techyngt of the ffurst tretis is of helyngt of a wounde y-makyde in synwe.

[6 fol. 47 a]

Almiztie god hath 3ife to synwe gret felyngt, & 3if þat he be 32 hurt he suffrede grete akyngt. Galien: a synwe that is more felyngt þen anopere *lyme; yt is nessessarie þat he haue gretter akyngt. Vndirstonde þat a wounde þat is y-makyde in a synwe, may nouzt ben wiþouten akyngt. The woundes þat beþ y-makyde 36 in synwe, oper þey ben in lengthe opere þey beþ in brede. þo woundes þat beþ y-mad in lengthe of þe synwe beþ lasse perylous,

if the nerve is cut through, the limb becomes insensible;

if the nerve is pricked by a punctura, then there is danger of cramp.

Spasmos.
[¹ leaf 20]

Loss of feeling and cramp happen when a sinew or muscle is cut or pricked.

Senewe,
corde &
Brawne.

When the nerve is pricked, but the skin whole,

senewe ben moost perilous / Oþerwhile a senewe is kutt^t al atwo / & þanne pilke lyme, to whom þat senewe serueþ, lesiþ his meuyng & þe felynge, þat pilke senewe brouzte to him from þe brain. & pilke senewe oþirwhile is not^t kutt^t al atwo, but he is 1-prickid, & þanne 4 it^t is perilous lest þe crampe come for to greet^t akþe / For akþe entriþ into þe part of^t þe senewe þat is kutt^t or prickid; & bi þe 1partie of^t þe senewe þat is hool, akþe is brouzt to þe brayn. & so þe 8 crampe mai come to þe wounde bi oon of þre weies: þat is to greet^t 8 akþe, cold, or rotyng. Of^t þese þre or of^t oon bi him-silf^t mai come a drawinge togidere of^t a senewe þat is cause of a crampe / & þat þat is seid of a wounde of a symple senewe may fallen ofte-tymes in a wounde of^t a corde & a brawn, & nameliche of a corde þat is in 12 bigynnyng of^t a brawn. þo woundis þat ben in þese þre consimile membris, þat is * [to] seie senewe, corde, & brawn han o. drede in cours of^t þe crampe, & also o. drede of^t felynge, lesyng & meuyng / & 2 þerfore be-war in þe cure of^t a wounde maad in senewe, wheþer 16 þat^t it^t be a prickynge or þat it be kutt ouerþwert, or ellis be kutt^t oonly bi his lenkþe. If^t oonly he be prickid þe wounde of^t þe skyn is hool, & þanne it is clepid a blynde puncture; eiþer þe wounde is open, & it^t is clepid an open puncture / In a blind puncture it^t is 20

² †, above line.

Add. MS.
12,056.

& þo þat beþ in brede of þe synwe beþ more perilous. Oþere whyle a synwe ys y-kut al atwo, & þenne pilke lyme to whom pilke synwe serfede, lesiþ þe menyng & þe felyng þat pilke synwe brouzt to hym from þe brayn. Oþere while þulke synwe is nouzt y- 24 kut a two, but he is y prikyde, and þenne it is perel lest þe crampe come for to gret akþe. For akþe entriþ in to þe part of þe synwe þat is y-kut oþer priked, & by þe party of þe synwe þat is hol akþe is brouzt to þe brayn, & so crampe may comen to þe wounde 28 by on of þre weyes, þat is to gret akþe colde oþer rotyng. Of þese þre oþere ellys of on by hym self, may come a drawyng togedre of a synwe þat is a cause of a crampe; & þat þat is seyde of wounde of a symple synwe, oft-tymes may fallyn in a wounde of a 32 corde & a brawn, & namlyche of a corde þat is in þe bygynninge of a brawn. þe woundes þat ben in þese þre consimel membris, þat is * to sigge, synwe, corde, & brawn, habben on drede in course of þe crampe, & also on drede of lesyng, felyng, & menyng, & þerfor 36 be war in þe cure of a wounde i-makyde in synwe, wheþer þat þere be a prikyng, oþere þat þe synwe be y-kut twartofere, oþer ellys be y-kut only by his lengthe. 3if only he be y-prikyde þe wonde of þe skyn is hol, & þenne it is clepyde a blynde puncture, oþer þe 40 wounde is opene & it is clepide an opene prikyng. In a blynde

- nessessarie to opene þe skyn, & aftirward heelde into þe hoole as hoot as he mai suffre, hoot' oile of rosis swete smellynge, þat is maad of' oile de oliue þat is nouzt ripe, til al þe wounde be ful. & 4 aboute þe wounde leie whizt' tere¹bentine² I-drawe abrood bitwene two clowtis, & anoynte alle þe membris aboute þe wounde wip hoot oile of rosis maad þicke with bool armoniak. & aftir þat leie a lynnē cloop I-het' aboute, & aftir þat a good quantite of tow I-tosid, 8 & bynde þe lyme softliche wipoute streynynge; & if þe akþe wip þis medicyn wole not ceessen, remeue & chaunge þis medicyn ofte tymes in þe dai & in þe nyzt / & if' þe prickynge be in þe foot, anoynte þe grynde³ wip hoot' comoun oile; & vndir þe arme holis 12 & in þe necke pitt', if' þat þe prickynge be in þe hand, for þis enoynture rarefiesþ & eueneþ þe placis bi whom akþe goiþ to þe brain, & it' lettis drawynge togidere of' þe senewe / & þou3 þat þou seest' nouzt' þe akþe ceesse in summen as hastiliche as þou woldist, 16 neuer-þe-lattere chaunge not' þi medicyn, for þer may be no bettere medicyn. But if' þat akþe dure ouer longe, it is not yuel to putte a litil opium to þe oile of þe rosis & þe bole armoniak, þat þou leidist' aboute þe wounde. þe sike man muste reste & bi no wey he
- ² *terebentine*, from *Pistacia Terebinthus*, L. The *Alah* of the Old Testament, and the *ρίπωνος* of Theophrast.: now almost obsolete.
- ³ þe *grynde*, inguina. *W. Wr.*, p. 589. 39. 15th cent.: inguen, the grynde.

open the skin
and apply
hot oil.

R
& and dress the
wound.

[¹ ff. 20, bk.]

N

If the pain
endures re-
new the
dressing
frequently.

N

and add
opium to the
ointment.

N

R

- 20 prikyne hit is necessarie to opyn þe skyn, & afterwarde held in to þe hole, as ⁴hot as he may suffren, oyle of roses swote smellynge, þat is y-made of oyle de olyffe, þat is nouzt rype tyl þe wounde be al ful. & aboute þe wounde leye whyte terbentyne y-drawe abrod 24 betwene tweye cloutes, & anoynt al þe membris about þe wounde wip hote oyle of rosys, y-made þikke wip bol Armonyak, & after þat leye a lynnē cloth y-hat aboute, & after þat a gode quantyte of tow3 y-tosyd, & bynde þe lyme⁵ softlyche wipout streynynge; & 3if þe 28 akþe wip þis medicyne wolde nouzt cese, remeffe & chaunge þis same medicyne oft tymes in þe day & in þe nyzt, & 3if þe prikyng be in þe fot, anoynte þe grynde wip hote comyn oyle, & vndire þe Arme holys & in þe nekputte, 3if þat þe prikyng be in þe hande. 32 For þys vnture rarefiesþ & efenyþ þo placys by whom akþe goth to þe brayn, & it lattis drawynge togedre of þe synwe, & þow3 þat þou sest nouzt akþe, sese in some men, as hastily as þou woldyst, nevere þe later chaunge nouzt þy medicyne, for þere may be no 36 bettere medicyne. But 3if þat akþe dure ouere longe yt is nouzt efel to putte a lutyl opin to þe oyle of rosys and þe bol armoniak, þat þou leydest aboute þe wounde. þe seke man most reste, & by

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁴ fol. 47 b]

⁵ MS. lynnē.

schulde nouzt be wroþ; his bed muste be maad soft, euene, & smope, & þat he ¹myzte haue reste / Whanne þat þe akþe aswagiþ & þe wounde zeueþ *sum* quytture, þanne þe sike man is saaf from al maner perel, but if he do ony newe errour / Of þis wounde Ypocras ⁴ spekiþ: *in vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non apparante*—þat is to seie: *in yuel woundis and strongt woundis, if no quytture appere it is yuel / Strongt woundis ben clepid woundis þat sore aken / Yuel woundis ben þo, to whom scharpe humouris rennen 8 & ben nouzt obedient to kyndeli heete, to be turned into quit-ture / And þerfore Ypocras seide: þat whanne akyng & quytture appereþ it is a tokene of heele / þe þridde signe a man muste knowe in þis place, þat lewde men, seyinge akyng & swellyng 12 in a lyme þat is woundid, leie þerto a potage in maner maad of erbis & swynes grece & water & wheete flour, corruptyn þe lyme, & þilke corrupcioun is cause of þe crampe / For Galien seiþ: þat a senewe is maad of moist mater & a cold, & þerfore he 16 rotip of heete and moistnes / Also summen, for to aswage akþe as² a senewe þat is prickid, puttiþ þe lyme in hoot watir * [oþer ellys caste it on þe lyme] þe which mater³ is þe most greuauunce ⁴ to þe senewe / Galien seiþ / Hoot watir, þouþ it aswage akþe to þe 20*

² as, error for of; see below. ³ mater, error for watir.

Add. MS. no weye he scholde nouzt be wroþ, hys bed most be made softe 12,056. euene & smeþe þat he myzte haue rest. Whanne þat þe akþe aswagyth & þe wounde gyueþ *sum* qyter, þan þe syke man ys saf from al manere peryle, but zif he do enye newe error. Of þis 24 wounde ypocras spekiþ: *In vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non aparente malum, þat is to seye: in evyle woundys & stronge woundes, zif no quyter apere, hit is yuele. Stronge woundes ben y-clepyde woundys þat sore aken. Iuel woundes beþ þo, to whom scharpe humores rennyth & beþ nouzt obeydent to kyndlie hete to ben turnyde into quyter & þerfore ypocras seyde, þat whanne þat akyng sesyth & quyter aperith, yt is a tokne of hele. þe þridde 28 signe a man moste ⁵knowe in þis place, þat lewyde men seyne 32 akyng & swellyng in a lyme y-woundyde, leggen þereto a maner potage y-mad of erbys & swynes grese, water, & floure of whete, corupyn þe lyme, & þilke corrupcioun is cause of þe crampe; for Galien seiþ þat a synwe is mad of a moiste matere & a cold, & he 36 rotyth of hete & moistnesse. Also *sum men* forto aswage þe akþe of a synwe þat is y-prikyde, putteþ þe lyme in to hote water,* oþer ellys caste it on þe lyme hot water,⁶ þe whiche water is most grefes to þe synwe. Galien: hote water þowþ it aswage akþe, to the 40*

⁶ hot water, insertion.

prickyng of a senewe is most greuance / Cold also greueþ sore þe
 senewe as wel in somer as in wyntir / And Ypocras seiþ in þe .v. *Ypocras*.
 part of his *auforismus*: cold is bitynge & greuous to senewis & and the heat
 is as danger-
 ous as great
 cold.
 4 woundis, & also in þe chapitle next folowyng, but it be in a
 crampe wipoute wounde / Galien seiþ in þe ende of his coment: *Galien*.
 coold is moost greuous to a senewy lyme þat is woundid & is sore
 swollen; namely, & he haue þe crampe. It schewiþ¹ þanne þat an
 8 hoot medicyne & a drie is moost acordyng to senewis þat ben
 woundid; but nouzt to hoot a medicyn, lest *perautre* þat he make
 þe lyme to swelle; & if it be drie nouzt wip stipticte, an *auntre* if
 þat he closiþ þe poris of þe skyn / Galien seiþ: þat it is yuele to *Galien*¹
 12 close þe poris of a lyme þat is prickid. þe medicyn þanne muste
 be hoot & drie *with* subtiliate as *terebentine* to moiste bodies; & to
 drie bodies he muste be medlid wip a litil *enforbium*, *azafetida*² is
 best medicyn if þou make of him *emplastre*, *serapinum*,³ & þe *fecis*⁴
 16 of a litil *wex*, & þe filþe of þe vessels of been, alle þei ben gode to
 a senewe þat is prickid, þou þat þou putt⁵ ech of hem bi him-silf
 or ellis compound / & þow schalt fynde a ful techinge of þese
 medicyns in þe *antidotarie* of þis boke / þou schalt nouzt close a

*Galien*¹

N.

The pores of
a wounded
limb must be
kept open.

R

[5 It. 22]

¹ *schewiþ* for *sewiþ*; see below.² *Asa fetida*, a sort of gum pressed out of a certain plant, which grows in Persia.³ *Serapinum* = *Sagapenum* . . . A gum resin obtained from the *Ferula* Persica. See *Notes*.⁴ *fecis*, Lat. *fæces*, dregs.

20 prikyng of a synwe ys most greuest; colde also gefyþ sore þe Add. MS.
 synwes as wel in somere as in wyntere. Ypocras in þe ferthe 12,056.
 partye of his *Amphorismes*: colde is bytinge and grefes to woundys;
 and also in þe chapitell nexte folwyng, bot it be in a crampe wip
 24 out wounde. Galien seiþ in þe ende of his comente: colde is most
 grefest, to a synwe lyme þat is y-woundyde & ys *toswolle*, namely,
 & he haue þe crampe. Hit sewiþ þenne þat an hote medicyne & a
 drye is most accordyng to synwes þat beþ y-woundyde; bot nouzt
 28 to hot a medicyne, leste þat he make þe lyme *toswellyn*; & drye
 nouzt wip stipticte, lest he close þe pores of þe schyn. Galien seiþ:
 it is yuel to close þe pores of a lyme þat is y-prikyde. þe medicyne
 þenne most ben hote & drye, wip subtilite as *terbentyne* to moiste
 32 bodyes; & to drye bodyes, he most be medlyde wip a lytel *eufor-*
bium. *Asa fetida* is best medicyne, zif þou make of hym *emplaster*,
serapinum, & þe feces of wax, & þe fylthes of vesselis of been, alle
 þey ben gode to a synwe, þat is prikyde, *wheper* þou put iche be
 36 hymself oþer opyn hem; & þou schalt fynden a ful techyng of þese
 medicynes in þe *Antidotarie* of þis boke. þou schalt nouzt clesen

The nerve must be cleaved and healed before the wound is closed.

.Galien.

relates, how a physician, by not so doing, caused the death of his patient.

wounde where þat þe prickynge of^t a senewe is, til þat þe senewe be perfytly clenlid & heclid, & til þat þou be sikir þat þe place schal nouzt swelle / Galien telliþ of a man þat was prickid *with* a poyntel in þe pawme of^t þe hand, to whom came oon of^t tisilies¹ 4 clerkis þe which took hede to heele alle woundis generaliche; & he leide to þilke prickynge a consowdlynge oynement^t þat was more acordynge to a wounde maad in fleisch; & he leide þerto a plastre maturatijf, wherfore al þe hand rotide & he fel into a crampe, & 8 so he diede, or þat þe .vij. daies weren passid / & if^t þat ilke leche hadde maad þat wounde broddere, & þanne þat he hadde helt^t into þe wounde hoot oile of^t rosis, & þanne þat he hadde do² comen out quytture wiþ hote medicyns sotil & drynge, & nouzt wiþ moist^t 12 medicyns, þat man schulde not^t haue be deed /

Tederik.

[⁴ fr. 22, bk.]

The ends of the nerve ought to be sewn at the same time as the skin, and a medicine applied,

If þat^t a senewe hadde ben I-kutt ouerþwert ouer al atwo þanne, þou3 þat^t Tedericus³ & summe opere seien þe contrarie, it^t is good þat þow⁴ sowe togidere þe eendis of^t þe senewis þat^t ben kutt wiþ þe 16 sowinge of þe skyn. & aboue þilke maner of^t sowinge, þe firste dai leie oile of^t rosis, in þe which oile, maddockis⁵—þat ben wormes

¹ Lat., unus de secta Thessali. Thessalus lived in Rome at the time of Nero, and enjoys the reputation of being the first great quack.

² Lat., Si . . saniem . . subtiliter desiccantibus expectasset. Add. MS. translates literally, abyde. The use of *do* (= faire) is further illustrated by Mätzner. See *don* .6.

³ Theodoricus, an Italian (?) monk of the 13th century, was the author of a *Surgery*.

⁵ maddock, O.E. maðek, Dan. maddik. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, under maggot and mawkish.

Add. MS. 12,056. a wounde, where þat þe prikyng of a synwe is, ere þan þe synwe be perfityle clansyde & helyd, & ere þou be sykere þat þe place 20 schal nouzt swelle. Galien tellyth of a man wiþ a poyntel in þe pawme of þe hand, to whom come one of⁶ Tesilies clerky3, þe whiche toke hede to helyn alle woundis generalyche, & he leyde to þilke prikyng a consoudynge oynement þat was more acordynge 24 to a wounde y-made in flesch, & he leyde þereto a maturatijf plastre, where fore al þe hand rotyd, & he fel into a crampe, & so he dyede ere þe vii dayes were passyde; & 3if þat þilke leche hadde y-made þilke wounde braddere, & þenne & hadde y-helde in þe 28 wounde hote oyle of rosys, and þenne hadde abyde quyter wiþ hote medicynes sotyl & dreying, & nozt wiþ moiste medicynes, þilke man ne scholde nouzt haue ben ded. 3if þat a synwe hadde ben kut twart ouer al atwo þenne, þaw3 þat tedericus & summe opere sigge 32 þe contrarye, hit is good þat þou sewe togedre þe hedys of þe synwys þat bep y-kutte, wiþ þe sowinge of þe skyn & abouen þilke maner of sewynge, þe first day leye oyle of roses, in þe whiche oyle

of^t þe erþe—han be boilid, & caste aboute þe wounde þe poudre þat
 kepib þe sowynge .o. day or two aftirward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ
 plumaciols .iij. cornerid, & wiþ byndynge, & kepe þe lyme from
 4 swellynge, for bi sich a maner sowynge of^t a senewe þou maist^t con-
 sowde þe senewe aȝen; for þe lyme schulde han be lost^t in partie or
 in al, þe meuyng þat was brouȝt vnto him fro þe braun, for bi þat
 senewe þe lyme mai rekeure his felynge, & so þe restoringe of^t þe
 8 braun may be fastere & schapliker. þou schalt nouȝt drede of^t þe
 akyng þatt^t schulde be maad of^t prickynge¹ of^t þe senewe, for þe
 akþe schal be doon awei wiþ oo leiyng to eiþer tweyne of^t þilke
 oyle / Ne sich maner akþe may nouȝt make þe crampe, for þe senewe
 12 is al kutt^t atwo ne no man *[make an] obieccioun wiþ Galion .Galion.
 wordis, þat we schulden be war in ioynynge parties of^t a wounde
 togidere *[þat non here ne oyle ne scholde nouȝt entre wiþynne þe
 lippes of a wounde, þat betþ y-brought togedre] To þilke abiec-
 16 cioun we answeren: þat þe stipticite² of^t þe rosis & þe oyle þat was
 nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosite of^t þe wormes of^t þe erþe remeuen þe akþe
 of^t þe senewis & al þe harm þat^t schulde come of^t þe ilke sowynge.

then the limb
 may regain
 its motor
 powers.

.Galion.

Nothing
 should enter
 into the
 wound.

[² lf. 23]

If þat a senewe were woundid in lenkþe, he mai wel & lizliche

¹ *prickynge of þe senewe.* The Latin, *acus punctura*, is correctly translated in Add. MS. See below.

20 Maddokys, þat beþ wormys of þe erthe, haue ben boyllede; and
 caste aboute þe wounde þe poudre þat kepyth þe sowynge a day
 oþer two afterward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ plumacioles þe kernel-
 lyde & wiþ³ byndynge, & kepe þe lyme from swellyng, ffor by
 24 swyche a manere sowynge of þe synwe þou maiste consoude þe
 synwe ageyn, for þe lym scholde haue lost in party oþer in al the
 meuyng, þat was y-brōwȝt to hym from þe brayn, for by þilke
 synwe þat lyme may rekeuere hys felyng, & so þe restoringe of
 28 þe brayn may be more schaplokere & fastere. Ne þou ne schalt
 nouȝt drede of þe akyng þat scholde be made of þe prekyng of þe
 nelde, for þe akþe schal be don away by one leggyng to oþere
 tweyne of þilke oyle; ne swyche manere akþe may nouȝt make þe
 32 crampe, for þe synwe ys al kutte atwo. Ne no man *make an
 obieccioun wiþ galyens wordys, þat we scholde be ware in ioynynge
 þe partyes of a wounde togedre, *þat non here ne oyle ne scholde
 nouȝt entre wiþynne þe lippes⁴ of a wounde, þat beþ y-brouȝt to-
 36 gedre.* To þilke obieccioun we answeren, þat þe stipticite of þe
 roses & þe oyle þat was nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosyte of þe wormys
 of þe erthe remywen þe akþe of þe synwes, & al þe harm þat
 scholde comen of þilke sewynge. Ȝif þat a synwe were woundede
 40 in lengþe he may be wel & lizliche y-souyde togedire, wiþ

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[⁴ fol. 49 a]

³ *wiþ* above line.

The wounded limb must be kept from swelling.

Nota.

If there is swelling, and if the wound is purulent, apply a mundificative, and keep the wound tented.

[4. fr. 23, bk.]

a mundificatif medicine

be sowdid togidere wip ioynynge of lippis, & wip þe sowynge & wip þe kepyng of þe lyme þat he swelle nouzt / Vndirstonde here in þis place : þat þer is no þing more worschipful to a leche ne more profitable to a sijk man þan to kepe a lyme woundid fro swellynge, 4 & nepeles it is hard to kepe senewis þat ben woundid from swellynge / Nepeles a leche here schal take heed aftir þe techinge þat schal be zeue him in þe chapitle of þe cure of a wounde, whanne þat þer is wip him a swellynge. If þat a wounde were chaungid 8 of þe eyr and made quytture, þat þe sowynge were to-broke and þe puncture were vndir,¹ þanne make a medicine mundificatif & leie him abroad on a lymen cloof & leie it aboute þe wounde, & putte a litil smal tent in þe eende of þe wounde þat is moost lynynge,² & 12 þilke tent schal touche no senewe ne make noon akþe vndir³ þat, þat ilke wounde be ⁴weel dried. A mundificatif medicyn of senewis woundid is maad in þis maner : Take mel roset colat ʒ .iij. smal flour of barley & medle hem togidere & boile hem slili þat þei 16 brenne nouzt, & remeue hem fro þe fier & bete hem "longe" togidere wip a spatore ;⁵ & þanne putte þerto ʒ j. of whit terebentyne ; & if þou mowe finde noon whizt terebentyne, þanne waische opere

¹ undir, mistake for undō. See below. ² lynynge, for declynynge.

³ undir þat, donec. ⁵ spatour, spatula.

Add. MS. 12,056. ioynynge of þe lippys & wip sowynge & wip kepyng of þe lym, þat 20 he scholde⁶ nouzt. Understande here in þis place, þat þere is no þynge more worschipful to a leche ne more profytable to a seke man, þenne to kepe a lyme y-woundyde from swellynge, & napeles it is hard to kepe synwys þat þe wouндыde from swellynge. 24 Napeles a leche here schal take hede aftere þe techynge þat schal be geuen to hym in hys chapytiff of þe cure of a wounde, whanne þat þere ys wip hym a swellynge. 3if a wounde were chaungyd of þe eyre and mad quyter, þat þe sowynge were tobroke, & þe 28 punctis weren vndo, þenne make a medicine mundificatyff, & leye hym abroad on a lynne cloth, & leye it aboute þe wounde, & put a lytel smal tent in þe one ende of þe wounde þat is most declynynge ; & þilke tent schal touche non synwe, ne make non 32 akþe, vndire þat þat þilke wounde be wel dryede. A mundificatyff medicine of synwes y-woundyde ys y-made in þis manere : R. mel rosat colat ʒ iii smal floure of barley ʒ, & medle hem togedre & boyle hem slyzly þat þey brenne nouzt, & remywe hem from þe 36 fyre & bete hem togedre longe wip a spator, & þenne put þere to ʒ. of whyte terbentyne, & 3if þou maiste fynde no whyte terbentyne

⁶ scholde, error for swelle, or it belongs to : scalle, scalde, scalled, scab. See W. Wright, and *Cathol. Angl.*

terebentyne *wil* cold watir til it be whizt, & whane þat be þis
 medicyn þis wounde is almoost drie, þanne putte in þe same medi-
 cyn a litil poude of frankencense mastik & saundragoun, medle
 4 hem togidere & leie aboue þe wounde til it be hool / & whanne þat
 it is hool manye daies aftir, leie flex in good strong wiyn het hoot
 til it be perfiztli al hool, & if þat þer leue ony hardnes in meuyngē,
 after þat it is hool, þanne þou schalt vse þe techinge þat schal be
 8 þouen to þee in þe laste tretis þat schal be antidotarie in þe chapitle
 of medicyns mollificatyues; þere þou schalt fynde þe maner how þou
 schalt helpe best lymes þat ben heclid and moun not rizt weel meuen /

Any remain-
 ing stiffness
 of the limb
 may be re-
 moved by a
 mollificative
 medicine.

12 Þe firste¹ techinge of þe firste tretis is of heelynge of
 a wounde maad in boon /

Ch. 4m.
 Off woundes
 made yn the
 bonis

Whanne þat woundis ben so depe þat² only fleisch is not
 woundid but þe boon þat is vndir þe fleisch & þe senewe / þanne a
 man muste biholde, wher þat þe boon be kutt al atwo, as ofte-tyme
 16 it may happe in þe boon of þe thie & schene boonys & þe boonys
 of þe armes. And þanne þilke wounde is ful perilous; & nameli if
 þe boonys of þe thie ouþir þe boon of þe arme from þe schuldre to
 þe elbowe be kutt al atwo, so þat þe marie go out. But ofte-tymes

[² ff. 24]

It is danger-
 ous if the
 thigh bone or
 the bone of
 the upper arm
 has been cut
 in two.

¹ firste, mistake for furþe.

20 wassche it wyth colde watyre, tyl it be whyt; & whezne þat by þis
 medycine þe wounde is almost drye, þenne put in þe same medycine
 a lite smal poude of franke ensence, mastike, & sank dragoun, &
 medle hem to gedre, & leye aboue þe wounde tyl it be al hol; &
 24 whanne þat it is hol manye dayes altere, leye flax in gode stronge
 hot wyn, tyl yt be al hol perfityche. & zif þat þere leue enye
 hardnesse³ in meuyngē, altere þat it is hol, þenne þou schalt vse
 the techyngē þat schal be geuen to þe in þe laste tretys, þat schal
 28 be antidotarye in þe chapitle of medycine, molyficatyffes; þere þou
 schalt fynde þe manere how þou schalt helpyn beste lymes, þat beþ
 y-helyde & mowe nozt ryzt wel meffen.

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[³ fol. 49 b]

32 The furþe techyngē of þe firste tretys is of helyngē of
 a wounde y-makyde in bon.

Whezne þat woundes beþ so depe þat only þe flesch is nouzt
 y-woundyde, but þe bon þat is vndire þe flesch & þe synwe, þenne a
 man most byholde wheþere þat þe bon be kut al atwo, as ofte tymes
 36 yt may happen in þe bon of þe thyz & þe schynebonys, & þe bonys
 of þe Arme, & þenne þylke wounde is ful perylouse; and namlye,
 zif þe bon of þe thyz ore þe bon of þe arme, from þe schuldre to þe
 elbowe, be y-kutte al atwo, so þat þe marye gon out. But ofte tymes

oon boon of þe schene or o. boon of þe armes is kutt^t al atwo ouertwert^t ouer & neþeles afterward may be restorid; ouþer a boon is not kutt^t al atwo but^t sum of his substaunce is don away, & þilke substaunce, ouþer he is doon away or ellis he hangijþ togidere / A 4 general rule is in cure of woundis in whom boonys ben woundid: þat neuere bi a leche fleisch schal ben I-sowdid aboute þe boon, but^t first^t pleynerliche bi repeire¹; for þe boon may neuere be² wiþ verri consolidacion be consowdid, for his mater was þe sperme of þe fadir 8 & of þe modir; but^t in summe children, for þe age³ is toward ofte tyme þat þei were sperme / but þer schal be maad a maner of restorynge in place of þe boon þat was broken eiper lost, þat men clepen ⁴poris sarcoides or ellis caro poroydes, & a⁵ maner þing^t þat is 12 restorid is hardere þan þe fleisch & neischere þan þe boon / & if^t þat ilk mater þat^t is restorid be ny; as hard as is þe boon, it^t is clepid porus sarcoides / & if^t þat ilke mater be not hard but sumwhat porus sarcoides / & if^t þat ilke mater be not hard but sumwhat porus sarcoides / & if^t þat a neische fleisch were 16 & a moist nouzt^t regenerated vpon boonys þat ben sett togidere, a man schulde not^t haue his purpos to heele & consowde þe wounde. Loke þanne wheþer þe boon be kutt^t atwo altogidere ouerþwert^t ouer, þat

The wound ought not to be closed before the bone has been repaired.

Nota

In the place of the missing bone, there grows either a hard substance

[⁴ If. 24, bk.]

poris sarcoides.

or a soft one: caro poroides.

¹ *repeire*, erroneously for *repeired*.

² *be* has to be cancelled.

³ *for þe age is toward ofte tyme*, for, *for þe nyzte of tyme*. See below.

⁵ *a*, above line.

Add. MS. on bon of þe schyne, oþere in bon of þe Arme, ys ykutt al atwo 20
12,056. twartofere, & napeles afterward may be restoryde; oþer a bon ys nouzt ykut al atwo, but sum of his substaunce ys done awaye, and þilke substaunce oþere he ys don al awaye, oþere he hongyth to gedre. A general rule ys in cure of woundes in whom bonys ben 24 woundyde, þat neuere by a leche flesch schal be y-sowdyd aboute þe bon, but first þe bon plenerlyche be repeyrede; ffor þe bon may neuere with verrey consolidacyoun ben consoude, for his matere was þe sperne of þe fadire & þe modire, but in somme children for 28 þe nyzte of tyme þat þey were sperme (*sic*); but þere schal be mad a manere restorynge in plas of þe bon þat was broken oþere lost. þat men clepen porrus sarcoydes oþere ellys caro poroydes, & þat manere thyng þat is restoryd is hardere þe flesch & nesschere þen 32 þe bon; & zif þat þilke mater þat is restoryde by neye⁶ as hard as yt were a bon, yt is clept porus sarcoydes; & zif þat þilke mater be nouzt harde, but sum^t what nessche, yt is clepyde caro poroydes; zif þat a nesch flesch & a moist were nozt regenerated vpon bonys 36 þat ben set togedre, a man schulde nozt han his purpos to helyn & to consoude þe wounde. Loke þenne wheþere þe bon be kutte a-

[⁷ fol. 50 a]

⁶ MS. *neþe*.

- pou bryngist togidere & bindist þe parties of þe wounde, as it schal be told in þe .vij. chapitle folowyng, where þou schalt haue how a wounde schal be heclid þat is out¹ of ioynthe I-kutt^t atwo & 4 to-broken / & if^t a wounde¹ be not^t kutt^t atwo al togidere ouerþwert ouer, loke if^t ony pece of þe boon dwelle sadliche with þe oþere partie of þe hool boon / & þanne if^t þou myzt^t brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore wiþ þristyng^e doun þilke pece wiþ 8 sum instrument^t acordyng^e þerto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hool boon wiþ þe poudre þat I shal telle aftirward; for so the² schap of þe lyme mai dwelle³ faire & strengere / & if^t þat ilke pece haue no fastnes to þe hool boon, do þat pece away & regenerere in þe place of 12 þe boon þat^t þat⁴ was lost^t a repeirement / For þowz þat^t ypocras & Galion tellen þat^t it is nessessarie after quantite of þe boon þat is lost^t, an holowz cicatrise to be alwey, neþeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese poris may be mendid, not^t a litil, but^t ryz^t 16 myche / þis is þe poudre: take frank-encense, mastik, mirre, dragagantum, gumme arabik, ana. ʒ ij. flour of fenegrek, .ʒ. s' caste þis poudre vpon þe defaute of þe boon þat is lost^t, til þat^t þou holde a pleynere repeirement * [& a restauracioun. þenne & nozt ere 20 brynge ouere flesch ouere þe reþeyrment wiþ] regeneratiuis, mun-
- ¹ wounde, erroneously for boon. ³ hool, cancelled after dwelle.
⁴ The second þat has to be cancelled. ⁵ incarnatyff in a later hand.

A portion of the bone can either be re-fastened,

[2 lf. 25]

or it must be removed.

ypocras & Galion.

poudre incarnatyff⁵

two al togedre twartofere, þat þou brynge togedre, & bynde the partyes of þe wounde as yt schal be tolde in þe eyzte chapyteH folwyng, where þou schalt han hou a wonde schal ben helyde þat 24 is out of joynt, y-kutte atwo & tobroke. & zif þat a bon be nozt kutte atwo al togedre twartofere, loke zif enye pece of þe bon dwelle sadlyche to þe on partye of þe hole bon, & þenne zif þou myzte brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore with 28 þrustyng^e don þilke pece with sum Instrumentis acordyng^e þereto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hole bon with þe poudre, þat y schal tellyn afterwarde; for so þe schap of the lyme may dwelle fairere & strengere. & zif þat þilke pece haue no fastnesse to þe hole bon, 32 do þat pece away, & þenne regenerere in þe place of þe bon þat was lost a repairment. Ffor þowz þat ypocras & Galien tellyn þat it ys necessarie aftere þe quantite of a bon þat is lost, an holwe cicatrice to be alwey, napeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese 36 pores may be mendyde nozt a lytel, but ryz^t myche. þis is þe poudre: Take frank ensence, Mastyke, Mirre, dragagantum gu. arabyke ana. ʒ. ij., flour of flenngreke, ʒ, ß, cast þis poudre a gode quantite vpon þe defaute of the bon þat was lost, tyl þat þou haue 40 a plenere reþeyrment * & a restauracioun. þenne & nozt ere brynge ouere flesch ouere þe reþeyrment with *generatyffes, mun-

Add. MS. 12,056.

dificatiuis & consolidatiuis aftir þe techinge þat þou haddist' biforn / Undirstonde þat al þing' þat is seid of' boonys in þis chapitle is of alle þe boonis of' þe bodi saf' þe heed / I schal make a chapitle by hym-silf' //

4

¶ Cap^m vñ
Wondis
made with
conteschoun
l. h.

THe fifþe chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis of woundis þat ben maad wiþ smytyng of staf or stoon, or fallynge or smytyng of an hors, or wiþ ony oþir þing semblable.

8

[1 lf. 25, bk.]

must be at-
tended to in a
different
manner to
incised
wounds.

All the soft
parts are
bruised

with or
without the
skin being
divided.

To hem happen greet difference ¹fro woundis þat' ben maad wiþ kuttyng, as wiþ swerd, knyf, eipir arowe prickynge; & in opere maner þei schulen ben I-heelid / For þou; þat verry consolidacioun be þe firste & principall entencioun of' heelyng of' a wounde, to þis chapitle it' acordiþ nouzt', for in smytyng, þe fleisch & þe veynes, & senewis, & arteries ben brusid, for in þe ynnere part' of' þe lyme þe boon azenstondiþ, & on þe ouer part' ²of' þe þing' þat' is smyten knyttip nouzt' / Wherefore it' is nessessarie, if' þer schulde be a wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat' ben bitwene þe boon & þe þing'

² The passage is corrupt; the correct version is given by Add. MS. : þe þynge þat smyter & kutteþ nozt.

Add. MS.
12,056.

dificatyfes, & consolidatyfes, aftere þe techynge that þou haddyst tofor. Undirstonde þat alle þynge þat ys seyde of bonys in þis chapitle, ys of alle þe bonys of þe body saff þe hed; & of þe bonys off' the hed y schal make a chapitle by hym-selff.

[3 fol. 50 b]

þe ffye Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe furst tretis is of woundis ³that beth y-mad with smytinge.

24

The woundys þat bep mad wiþ brosynge, as wiþ smytyng of a staf, opere ston, oper fallynge, opere wiþ smytyng of an hors, oper wiþ enye thyng semblable to hem, habbitþ gret differens from woundis þat bep y-made wiþ kuttyng: as wiþ swerde, knyf, ore arwe prikynge, & in opere manere þey schulle ben helyde. For þow; þat verreye consolidacioun be þe first & þe principall Intencioun of helyng of a wounde, to þis chapitle it' acordyth nozt, ffor in smytinge, þe fleisch & þe veynes, synwes & arteries ben y-brusyde; for in þe ynnere part of þe lyme þe bon azeine stonde, & on þe vtter part þe þynge þat smyter & kutteþ nozt, wherefore it is necessarie, 3if þat þere scholde ben a wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat bep bitwene þe bon & þe þynge þat smyter, scholde be brusyde; & 36

- þat smytip, schulde be brusid, & oþerwhile þe fleisch & þe opere
 consimile membris ben brusid wiþoute wounde / Wherefore þe curis of
 boþe I wole ordeyne in þis chapitle. If þat a leche wolde enforse
 4 him to ioynne togidere wiþ consolidatiuis þe wounde þat is maad wiþ
 smytynge, nedis quytture & corrupeioun bi þilke consolidatif muste
 be vnder þe wounde; þe which quytture schulde corrupte þilke lyme
 & brynge him to putrefaccioun, but if þat kynde were so myzty,
 8 þat he myzte eftsoone opene þilke wounde, þat was consowdid bi a
 sori leche¹; or wiþ² a good leche come & knowe þilke dispo³sicioun [3 ff. 26]
 & knowe helpe, wiþ propre eir⁴ to rectifien þe corrupeioun of þilke
 lyme / What schalt þou þanne do? þou muste loke wheþer þat þe
 12 bodi be ful of wickide humouris, eiþer be clene; if þat he be ful
 late him blood, if alle particuler þingis acorden, as vertu, age, con-
 plexioun & consuetude; & þese þingis moten alwey⁵ taken in
 mynde, þou; alwey þei be not I-nempned & namely vertu; & he be
 16 not strong⁶ & alle opere þingis acorden, þou schalt not lete blood, but
 þou maist ventosen, if þat it be nessessarie, or ellis [lose] * þe wombe
 if þat he be costif⁶; & if þat he be feble, & þe brosure were in þe
 ouer parti of þe bodi, voide þe fecis of his wombe bi clisterie. &
- Such wounds,
 when joined
 too soon,
 will slough.
- If the patient
 is plethoric
 use blood-
 letting;
- if he is feeble,
 cupping and
 purging.
- Nota*
- Clisterie*
- ¹ *bi a sori leche*, a malo medico. See Halliwell, *Diet.*, sorry Laten.
² *wiþ*, mistake for *þat*.
⁴ *eir*, read *cur*. ⁵ *be wanted after alwey*.
⁶ *costif*, costive, subject to be bound in body.—Kersey.

- 20 oþerwhyle þe flesch & þe opere consimele membris beþ brusyde
 witout wounde, wherefore þe cures of boþe y wyl ordeyne in this
 chapytte. 3if þat a leche wolde enforee hym to Iune to gedire
 with consolidatyfes þe wounde þat is mad wiþ smytinge, nedys⁷
 24 quyter & corupeioun by þilke consolidatyff, most be vndire þe
 wounde; þe whiche quyter scholde corumpe þylke lyme & brynge
 hym to putrefaccioun, but 3if þe kynde were so myztye, þat he myzte
 eftesonys opyne þylke wounde, þat was consowded by a sorye leche,
 28 opere þat a gode leche come & knewe þilke dispocioun, & coupe
 helpe wiþ propre cure to rettesien þe corupeioun off þilke lyme.
 What schalt þanne do? þou most loke wheþere that þe body be
 ful of yueff humores, oþer be clene; 3if þat he be ful, lete hym
 32 blod, 3if alle partikelere þynges acorden: as vertu, Age, complexioun
 & consuetude; & þese þynges þou most alweye taken in þy mynde,
 þow; alweye þey ben nouzt y-nempnyde, & namlye vertue; & he
 be nouzt stronge & alle opere þynges acorden, þou schalt nouzt leten
 36 blod, bot þou ⁸maiste ventosen, 3if þat it be necessarie, oþer ellis
 lose * þe wombe 3if þat he be costyff⁷; & 3if þat he be feble, & the
 brosure were in þe ouere party of þe body, voyde þe feces of hys
- Add. MS.
 12,056.
- [8 fol. 1 a]

⁷ MS. nedyth.

conussio
membri ner-
uosi cura
l. h.
oile *Roses*

[¹ If. 26, bk.]
An antiseptic
powder.

Treatment
of a con-
tusion, if the
wound is
open.

if þou wolt lete blood, þou schalt lete blood on þe contrarie partie of þe veyne, bryngyng^t norischinge to þe lyme þat was hirt^t; & þilke veyne þou schalt knowe, if þat þou knowist pleynerliche anotamie, þat I haue tauzt^t þee in þis same book / & whanne þat þe bodi is ⁴ clensid, if þat þe brosour be wiþoute þe wounde, anynte þe membre þat is brosid, which bigynneþ to haue an enpostym, with hoot oile of rosis, & caste aboue a poudre maad of þe seed of mirtilles, & bynde it softly; ¹for ofte-tymes it nedij noon oþer eir² / For þis ⁸ medicyn fastneþ þe place, & defendij him fro putrefaccioun. & þou3 þat þis medicyn mowe not letten al þe mater from rotynge, neþeles it defendij myche of þe same mater fro rotynge / & if al þe mater mai not be defendid from putrefaccioun, but sum partie þerof^t ¹² putrefieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quytture, & clense al þe place. & his cure schal be seid in þe chapitle of apostymes³ & of exitours / But if⁴ þat a brusour were wiþ a wounde, anynte aboute þe wounde or eills þe place þat is brusid wiþ þe forseid oile of rosis, & ¹⁶ caste aboue þe forseid poudre of mirtilles, for it fastneþ þe place, ne it lettij nouzt^t þe corrupcioun to spreden eiþer to be drawen abroad; & it castij to þe wounde þe corrupt mater þat is in þe

² eir, read cur.

³ Latin, *de apostematibus exituris*, apostems which discharge pus.

⁴ if, above line.

Add. MS.
12,056.

wombe by clistere. & 3if þou wilt lete blod, þou shalt lete blod ²⁰ on þe contrarie party of þe veyne, bryngyng^e noryssehynge to þe lyme þat was hurt; & þilke veyne þou schalt y-knowe, 3if þat þou knowist plenerlyche Anotamye, þat y haue tauzte þe in þis same boke. & whenne þat þe body ys y-clansyde, 3if þat þe brosure be ²⁴ wiþout þe wounde, anynt þe membre þat is y-brusyde, whiche þat begynneþ to han a postum, wiþ hote oyle of roses, & cast aboue a poudre y-mad of þe sed of mirtylles & bynde it softlye, for ofte tymes it nedyth non oþer cure. For þis medycyne fastnyth þe ²⁸ place, & defendyth hym from putrefaccioun, & þow3 þis medycine mowe nozt letten alle þe mater from rotynge, napeles yt deffendyth myche of þe same matere fro rotynge; & 3if þat al þe matere may nouzt be defendyde fro putrefaccioun, but sum partye þerof ³² putrefieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quyter, & clanse al þe place. & his cure schal be seyde in þe tretys of apostomes & of exitures. But 3if þat þe brosure were wiþ a wounde, anynte about þe wonde oþere ellys þe place þat is y-brusyde, wiþ þe forseyd oyle of roses, ³⁶ & caste aboue þe forseyd poudre of mirtillyes, for þis medycine fastnyth þe place, ne yt ne letteþ nozt corrupcioun to spredyn, oþere to be drawe abroad, & it castith to þe wounde þe corrupt mater, þat

place þat is brusid / Wipinne þe wounde leie þe zelke of an ey, wip
 oile of rosis, with stupis, or ellis wip lint.¹ Leid² aboue þe N
 wounde a potage maad of .iiij parties of watir & oon partie of
 4 oile de olyue, & flour of wheete þat sufficiþ to þe medicyn, & leie R
 þis medicyn to þe wounde, til þat þe akþe be aswagid, & til þat þe
 quytture be engendrid; aftirward clense ³þe wounde, aftir þe [³ lf. 27]
 clenysynge regenerer, & at þe laste cicatrice. & þou schalt haue a
 8 ful techinge in þe antidotarie of mundificatiuis & cicatriꝝatiuis /
 But if þe membre þat was brusid be ful of senewis, as þe hand Treatment of
 ouþer þe foot, þou schalt not chaunge þi cure if þat þer be no a contusion,
 wounde; but þou þer be a brusour in senewy membre I-woundid, if the injured
 12 leie not þere þe potage tofore seid, but oonly hoot oile of rosis, & limb is full of
 aboue þe oile poudre of mirtillis, & aboue þe wounde leie terebentine nerves, e. g.
 I-waischen & drawen abrood bitwene two lynnen cloþis. & make hand or foot.
 a plastre of pich & hony & bene flour, & leie aboute þe lyme þat olium
 16 is ful of senewis, as þe hand, þe foot, & speciali whanne þe flux of Rosarum
 humouris ceessen not / & þou þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go
 not awei from þis cure / & whanne þat al þe akþe is ceessid and þe
 swellynge is aswagid, for to clense þe wounde, vse þe medicyn of
 20 mel roset colath with barly mele, seid in þe wounde of senewis / N plaster
R

¹ lint. *Prompt. Parv.*, schauynge of lynnen clothe.² leid, mistake for leie.

is in þe place þat is brusyde. Wipynne þe wounde leye þe 3olke of Add. MS.
 an eye with oyle of roses, with stupes opere ellys wip lynte; & leye 12,056.
 24 aboue þe wounde a potage y-made off foure partyes of water & o
 partye of oyle d'Olyve & floure off Whete þat suffyseþ to þe
 medicine, & leye þis medicine to þe wounde, tyl þat þe akþe be
 aswagyde & tyl þat þe quyter be engendryde; afterwarde clanse þe
 wounde, aftere þe clenysynge regenerer, & at þe laste cicatryce, & þou
 28 schalt haue a ful techynge in þe Antiodarie of mundificatyfes,
 maturatyfes, & zicatisatifes. ⁴But 3if þat þe membre þat was [⁴ fol. 51 b]
 y-brusyde ys ful of synwes, as þe honde oper þe fot, þou schalt nozt
 chaunge þy cure 3if þat þere be no wounde; but þaw 3 þat þere be a
 32 brusure in a synwy membre y-woundyde, ne leye nozt þere þe
 potage forseyd, but only hote oyle of roses, & aboue þe oyle poudre
 of mirtilles, & aboue þe wounde leye terbentyne iwassche & drawe
 abrod betwene tweye cloþes lynnen. & make enplastre of pych,
 36 hony & bene flour, & leye aboute a lym ful of synwes: as þe fot
 opere þe hand, & specialyche whenne þat þe flux of humours sesep.
 & þaw 3 þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go nozt away fro þis cure;
 & whenne þat al þe akþe ys y-sesyde, & alle þe swellynge ys aswagyde,
 40 forto clanse þe wounde, vse þe medicine of mel rosat colat with

Galion þis cure is apreued bi galion, & I haue preued þis medicyn ofte tymes /

¶ Þe sixte chapitle of þe þridde techinge is of woundis þat han enpostymes & be distempered // 4

[1 lf. 27, bk.]

¶ Capm vjm
If the wound
is tumorous
or distem-
pered,
the tumour
and the
"dyscrasia"
must be re-
moved first.

¹ **A** Wounde þat hæþ enpostym or an yuel discrasiam—þat is to seie out of kynde distemperid, eiper to cold eiper to hoot—he mai not be heeled, ne he schal not ben heeled, but first he² be 8 aswagid in þe yuel discourciour be amendid / & as I haue seid in anoþer place, it is profitable to þe sijk man, & worschipe to þe leche, if þat he mowe defende þe lymes þat ben woundid from enpostyme & from an yuel discrasie. For þanne a leche schal kepe þe canoun 12
Galion. o³ galion, þat is oon of þe .iiij. canouns; oon is to kepe lymes in her owne kyndely complexioun. For woundis moun not ellis be heeled, but if þei be brouzt first into her owne kynde / & a wounde mai be kept from apostyme & an yuel discrasie if þat þe leche be 16 kunnyng & do his deuer, & þe sike man be obedient to þe leche / þe leche muste loke if þat þer go blood y-now3 out at þe wounde; & if þat þe wounde haue not bled blood y-now3, þe pacient muste

If necessary

² The correct version is given by Add. MS.

³ o, mistake for of.

Add. MS. barly mele, y-sayd in the wounde of synwes. þis cure ys apreuyde 20
12,056. by galyen, & y haue preffye þis medicine ofte tymes.

¶ The sixte Chapitle of þe þridde techyng is of Woundes þat han enpostemes, & beþ dystempryde.

A wounde þat hath aposteme oper an yuel discrasie—þat is to 24 sigge, out of kynde distempride, opere to hote opere to cold, he may nozt ben helyd, ne schal nouzt ben heled, but first þe posteme be aswagyde, & þe yuele discrasie be amendide. & as y haue seyde, in an opere place, yt is profitable to þe syke man, & worschiful to þe 28 leche, zif þat he mowe dyffende þe lymes þat beþ woundyde fro eny postemys, & fro an euyþ discrasie. For þenne a leche schal kepe þe canon of galyen, þat is on of foure canones; on is to kepyn lymes in here owne kendlye complexioun. For woundys mowe 32 nozt ellys ben y-helyd, but zif þey ben brouzt first to here owne kynde, & þe wounde may be kepte from aposteme & an yueþ discrasie, zif þat þe leche be kunnyng & do hys deffere, & þe syke man be obeydent to þe leche. þe leche mot loke 36 *zif þat þere haue go blod ynow3 out of þe wounde; & zif þat the wounde haue nozt bled blod ynow3, þe pacyent most ben lete blod, opere ellys ben

[4 fol. 52 a]

- be lete blood or ellis ventusid, takyng reward to alle particuler
 pingis tofore seid / & ordeyne him a couenable dietyng, as schal be
 told in þe chapitle of dietyng; & leie a defensif aboute þe wounde,
 4 3 j. of bole armoniak distemperid wip oile of ¹rosis, & a litil vinegre: use blood-
letting or
cupping,
prescribe a
proper diet
and a
defensiuum.
[1 l. 28]
 as picke as hony *tempere* it / & if þat þe tyme of þe 3eer were
 hoot, putte to þis medicyn þe ius of sum cold erbe: as morel,²
 penywort,³ virge pastoris. Late not þe lyme hange; but if it be
 8 the arm, hange it aboute þe necke / & if it be þe foot eiper þe
 schene, lete him ligge / & if þat þe lyme ake, aswage þe akþe wip
 an oynement of hoot oile of rosis / For as Galion seiþ: þer is no
 þing⁴ more noiuous to a wounde þan is akþe & declinacioun of a
 12 lyme, for þese .ij. maken soone an hoot swellynge, þe which is to þe
 feure as a welle, & to þe bodi as an ouene / þe woundid man
 muste absteyne him after þe chapitle of dietyng techiþ, & boþe þe
 sike man & þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe sike, moten absteyne
 16 hem fro fleischly knowynge of a womman, [ne a womman] *in tyme
Put the
injured limb
in a proper
position.
Galion.
The patient
and the
physician
must live
chastely.
 of menstroe,⁴ ne loke not on þe sike man / & oonys in þe dai þe sike
 man schal go to priuy;⁵ & if he mai not schite "oonys" kyndeli in
Regulate
the patient's
stool.

² *morel*, Lat. Solathrum. See Notes.³ *penywort*, Lat. umbilicis Veneris.⁴ See Notes.⁵ *privy*. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 414, Pryvy or gonge (or Kocay), Latrina, cloaca, ypodromium; p. 202, Goo to pryvy, or to shytyng, Acello. *Pryvy* still used in Yorkshire.

- ventusyde, takyng reward to alle partikelere þynges tofore seyde, Add. MS.
 20 & ordeyne hym a couenable dyotyng, as schal be tolde in þe 12,056.
 ChapiteH of dyotyng; & leye a defens aboute þe wounde: 3 j of
 bol Armonyake, distemperid wip oyle of rosys & a lytel vynegre, to
 þis piknesse of hony; & 3if þat þe tyme of þe 3ere were hot, put to
 24 þis medicyne þe jus of sum colde erbe: as morel, nytschode, peny-
 wort, virge pastoris, *opere sum oper colde erbe*; & bynde nozt þe
 lyme to harde, ne lete nozt þe lyme hongyn; but 3if it be þe arme,
 honge him aboute þe nekke; & 3if it be þe fot *oper þe schyne*, lete
 28 hym ligge; & 3if þat þe lyme akþe, aswage þe akþe wip anoyntyng
 of hote oyle of roses. Ffor as Galyen seyth: þere is noþyng more
 grefes, þan ys akynge & declynacioun of a lyme, for þese two makip
 sone an hote swellynge, the whiche is to þe ffeyre as a welle, & to
 32 þe body as an Olyn. þe woundyde man most absteynen hym,
 aftere þat þe chapiteH of dyetyng techith; & boþe þe syke man &
 þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe syke, mote absteynen hem from
 fleischly knowlache of a womman, ne a womman *in tyme of
 36 menstrew, ne loke nozt on þe syke man; & onys in þe day þe syke
 man schal schyte, & 3if he may nozt schyte kendly onys in þe day,

a clisterie þe dai after þe quantite of mete þat he takip, make him a clisterie ouper a suppositorie oonys ech day. & if þou my3t not wiþ alle þese þingis defende þe lyme from apostyme, it is an yuel signe, for þe lyme is ¹feble, & þe humouris arn wickide; þanne bigynnen² to 4 materen þe swellynge wiþ potage maad of flour, oile & watir, or ellis wiþ þis maturatif / Take malowe leues & leues of violet, & þe rote of holihocke; seþe hem weel in water, & staumpe hem, & take a pound of water, þat þei ben soden ynne, & comoun oile; ʒ .iiij.; of 8 wheete flour ʒ .iiij.; of flour of lynseed ʒ j.; of flour of fenegrek dj.³ ʒ.; of erbis I-staumpid half a pound. & boile alle þese togidere in a panne ouer þe fier, & stire it weel wiþ a spatire; & þis maturatif leie on a lynnen cloof, & leie it on þe postyme til þat it 12 be maturid / & whanne þat þe postyme is maturid, make þe quytture, if þou maist, be cast to þe wounde; & if it mai not be cast to þe wounde, opene þe place þat is moost lowist þere, as þe quytture mai best goon out; & þanne hele þe wounde, as I schal telle in þe 16 þridde chapitle of apostymes / Take hede alwey to þis techinge; & if þe postyme were for þe prickynge of a senewe, ne leie not þerto þis potage maturatif; but wiþ þe oynement of oile of rosis, & of oþere þingis, as it is seid in þe woundis of senewis / 20

2 bigynnen, mistake for bigynne. 3 dimidium.

Add. MS. 12,056. after þe quantyte of mete þat he haþ takyn, make hym a clistry, oþer a suppositorie onys iche day. & zif þou maiste nozt with alle þese þynges defendyn þe lyme from aposteme, yt is an yuele signe, for þe lyme ys feble, & þe humores ben wykkede; þen begynne to maturen 24 þe swellynge, with potage y-made off flour, oyle & water, oþer ellys maturatyff with þis maturatyff: R malwe leuys, leffys of vyolett, & þe rote of holy hokke; seþe hem ⁴wel in water, & þanne stampe hem, & take a pounce off þe water þat þey be sodyn yn, & of comyn oyle 28 ʒ .iiij., of whete flour ʒ .iiij., of flour of lynsed .ʒ. j., of flore vynegreke ʒ ʒ, of erbys i-stamped lb.⁵ ʒ; & boille alle þese togedire, in a pan ouere þe fyre, & stire yt wel wiþ a spatir; & þis maturatyff leye on a lynne cloth, & leye on þe posteme, tyl þat yt be maturyd; & 32 whanne þat þe posteme is matured, make þe quyter, zif þou maist, ben y-cast to þe wounde; & zif it may nozt ben y-cast to þe wounde, opyne þe place þat ys most lowest þere, as þe quyter may best gone out; & þan helyn þe wounde, as y schal tellyn, in þe þridde 36 chapyteH of Apostemys. Take hede alweye to þis techynge, þat zif a posteme were for þe prikyng of a synwe, ne leye nozt þereto þis potage maturatyff, but wyt þe vncture of oyle of roses & of oþer þynge, as yt is seyde in þe woundys of synwys. þou schalt 40

⁶ MS. lj

- pou schalt knowe þe yuel discrasie of a wounde, ¹if þat þou seest þe skyn þat is aboute þe wounde to reed & to hoot in felynge, þanne þe wounde is discrasie in hete; namely, if þat þer come out 4 of þe wounde² a sotil quytture, reed; þilke discrasie pou schalt helpe wiþ coldyng þe lyme aboute þe wounde with oile of rosis & vnguentum album, Rasis of ceruse, which pou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie, & with þe ius of þe opere erbis colde. [1f. 29]
1. A hot dyscrasia,
Nota
- 8 & pou schalt knowe a cold discrasie bi þe whiztnes eiper þe wannesse of þe place / & whanne þe place is cold in towching, & whanne þat þe quytture is picke; þe which discrasie pou schalt remeue bi þe enoynture of hote oiles, as oile of coste,³ oile of 12 laurine, oile of enforbium, & so opere hoote oilis / 2. a cold dyscrasia,
dyscrasia
1. h.
- A moist discracie pou schalt knowe bi þe neischenes of þe place, & bi aboundaunce of whizt liquide rotenes, þe which pou schalt helpe wiþ desiccatiuis: as wiþ waisching of wyyn & hony 16 togidere, in þe whiche ben soden balaustie,⁴ gallis & þe ryndis of some garnadis, or alle or summe bi hem-silf / 3. a moist dyscrasia,
R
- þe drie discrasie pou schalt knowe bi þe smalnes of þe lyme, & þe smalnes of þe lippis of þe wounde, & litil quytture, if þat þe 20 quytture be pinne; þe which discrasie pou schalt helpe: with ⁵ [1f. 29, bk.] 4. a dry dyscrasia.

² MS. erroneously inserts *quytture* after *wounde*.³ *oile of coste*, Lat. cum oleo de castoreo.⁴ *balaustie*. Balaustum, the floure of the wyld Pomgranate. Halle. *Table*, p. 16.—1565. Turner, *Herbal*, II., fol. 49 b., calls it Balaustrum.

- y-knowe þe euyH dyscrasie of a wounde, 3if þat þou sest the schyn þat is aboute þe wounde to reed, & to hot in felynge, þenne þe wounde is discrasiede in hete, namly 3if þat þere come out of þe 24 wounde a sotyH qyter & a red; & þilke discrasye pou schalt helpen with coldyng þe lyme aboute þe wounde, with oyle of roses, & with vnguentum album—rasis of ceruse—whyche pou schalt fynde in þe Antodarie, & wiþ ius of opere colde erbys. & pou schalt knowe a 28 colde discrasye by þe whitnesse oper þe wannesse of þe place, & whanne þe place ys colde in touchyng, & whanne þat þe quyter is thykke; the whiche discrasye pou schalt remeffen, by þe vincture of hote oyles, as oyle of cost, oyle lauryne, oyle of enforbium, & so 32 opere hote oyles. A moiste discrasie pou schalt knowe by þe nesschenesse of þe place, & by þe Aboundaunce of whit lyquyde rotnesse, þe whiche pou schalt helpyn with defficatyffes: as with wasschyng of wyyn & honye togedres, in ⁶þe whiche þuþ y-sode 36 balaustye, gallys, & þe ryndes off pome garnettys, oper alle oper some by hem-selffen. þe drye discrasye pou schalt knowe by þe smalnesse of þe lyme, & þe smalnesse of þe lippes of þe woundes & litel quyter, 3if þat the quyter be þenne; þe whiche discrasye pou Add. MS.
12,056.
[⁶ fol. 53 a]

As soon as
the dyscrasia
is removed,
try to heal
the wound
itself.

Auicēn

castyngē on of hoot water til þat þe lyme wexe reed, & wip an
oynement þou muste¹ grece, as hennes, goos, & dokis, þe marie boon
of a calff, & wip plenteuousnes of good mete þat norischip: as þe
bropis of fleisch, & temperate wryn, & rere eyren, & smale fischis, 4
& wip reste, & softnes of al þe bodi, & of þe lyme þat is hirt; &
alwey to þis techinge take hede þat as soone as a membre is brouzt
to his kyndeli disposicioun, anoon azenstondiþ² wip contrarious
medicyns, & turne azen to þe principal cure of þe wounde. But 8
þenke nouzt to heele þe wounde as longe as it is enpostemed, or
ellis haue an yuel discrasie; but first remeue pilke discrasie, or þat
þou heele þe wounde / For whanne two þingis þat schulden ben
heelid ben togidere, & þe oon of hem mowe not be helid wipoute 12
helyngē of þat opere, first we schulen heelen him, þat mai nouzt
be heelid wipoute þat oper helyngē, as þe apostyme eiper þe dis-
crasie / þus Auicenne techiþ in þe laste chapitle of þe firste book.
Neuer-þe-lattere forzete nouzt þe principal cure, þat whanne þe 16
accidentis ben asesid turne azen to þe principal cure //

¹ þou muste, mistake for of moiste.

² azenstondiþ, mistake for azenstonde.

Add. MS. 12,056. schalt helpen wip castyngē on of hote water, tyl þat þe lyme wexe
rede, & with an oyntyngē of moiste grece, as hennys, gosys &
dokys, & þe marye bon of a Calff, & with plentefoste of gode mete, 20
þat norysschyth, as þe brothys of flesch, & temperat wryn, & rere
eyren, & smale fyssches, & opere gode þynges, & with reste and with
softnesse of alle þe body & of þe lyme þat is y-hurte; & alwey to
þis techyngē take hede, þat as sone as a membre ys y-brozt to his
kendlye dysposicioun, anon azeyne stonde with contraryouse medy- 24
cine, & turne azeyne to þe pryncipal cure of þe wounde. But þynke
nozt to helyn þe wounde, as longe as þe wounde ys apostomyde,
opere ellys haþ an yuele discrasye, but first remywe pilke discrasye
ere þan þou hele þe wounde. For whenne þat tweye þynges þat 28
scholde ben y-helyde, buþ togedres, & þe on of hem mowe nozt ben
y-helyde withouten helyngē of þe oper, ffirst we schulle helyn hym,
þat may nozt be helyde withouten helyngē of þe opere, as þe
posteme oper þe dyscrasye; & þus Avycene techith in þe last 32
chapiteH of þe first bokys. Ne nevere þe latere ne forzete nozt þy
pryncipal cure, þat whanne the accidentes ben asesyde, turne azeyne
to þe princypale cure.

¶ Pe .vij. chapitle of pe .iij. techinge is a wounde maad
with a wood hound, eiper of any oper venemous
beest /

- 4 ¹ **B**Vt whanne an hound hap biten a man, loke first if þat þe
hound be wood ; & if þat þe hound be not wood, heele þe
wounde as þou doist opere comoun woundis ; & if þat þe hound
were wood, þou schalt knowe it bi certeyn cause & disposiciouns /
- 8 For a wood hound sleeþ mete & water ; & he renneþ hidirward &
pidirward as a drunken man, wiþ open mouþ & his tail bitwene hise
leggis ; his tunge hangip out, but he wolde biten alle men ; ne he
knowip not þo men þat ben in houshold. He berkip not / & if
- 12 þat he oþirwhile berke, his vois is ful hors, & opere houndis fleen
fro him & berken vpon him. Also þou schalt knowe bi disposicioun
of þe same wounde. For if þat þou wetist a crumme of breed in
þe blood of þe wounde, & zeuest it to anoper hound to ete, he
- 16 wole not ete it ; & if þat he ete it, he wole die / Or ellis take an
ote, & staumpe it, & leie it on þe wounde al nyzt, & on þe morowe
zeue it to an hen ; & þe hen wole not ete it / & if þe hen ete it, þe
hen schal die /

[1 lf. 30]²

¶ Capm vijm

Bite of a dog.

Ascertain

whether the

dog was

rabid.

Food satur-

ated with

blood of the

wound

kills other

animals.

² Heading to leaf 30, in a later hand, *Off woundes bitten with doges.*

20 ¶ The vij Chapitelle of þe þridde techynge is off a
wounde y-made of a wod hounde, opere of eny
opere venymouse bestys.

- Whenne þat an hounde hath byten a man, firste loke zif þat þe
24 hounde be wod ; & zif þat þe hounde be nozt wood, hele þe wounde
as þou dost opere comyn woundys ; & zif þat þe hounde were wood,
þou schalt y-knowe yt by certeyne causes, & by dispo^siciouns. Ffor
a wod hounde fleyth mete, & fleyth watere, & oþerwyle he dyeth
28 whenne þat he seþ water ; & he rennyth hydrwarde & pedirwarde,
as a dronken man, wiþ opyn mouþ & hys taylle bytwene his leggis,
hys tunge hongyth out, he wolde byte alle men, ne he ne knowyth
nouzt þo men þat ben his housholde, he berkyth nozt ; & zif þat
32 he operewhyle berke, hys voys ys ful hors, & opere houndys fien
from hym & berkyn vpon hym. Also þou schalt y-knowe by
dysposicioun of þe same wounde, for zif þat þou wetyst a crumme
bred in þe blod of þe wounde & geuyste yt to an oper hounde to
36 etyn, he wyl nozt etyn yt, & zif þe hounde etyþ yt he wyth deyen ;
opere ellys take a note & stampe yt, & leye on þe wounde al nyzt,
& on þe morwe zif yt to an henne, sche wyl nozt etyn hyt ; & zif
sche etyth yt sche wyl deyen. & anone as þou wost þe hounde ys

Add. MS.

12,056.

[³ fol. 53 b.]

If the dog was rabid, withdraw the blood from the wound by cupping, cauterization, [1 ff. 80, bk.] and attrahent remedies.

Simple remedies.
Haue it [7]

Compound remedies.

Another treatment:

And anon as þou woost þat þe hound was wood, sette a greet ventuse aboue vpon þe wounde, & drawe out þe myche blood out of þe wounde, & aftirward drawe abrood þe wounde; & aboue al oþere þing, brennyng of hoot yren to þe ground 1 of þe wounde is 4 moost profitable. & leie aboue þe wounde atractiuus, to drawe out þe venym / Summe of þese atractiuus ben symple, & summe compound / Symple beþ: þe lyuere of þe same wood hound þat boot þat is wondirful, þe leues of a gourde,² & þe rote of fenegrek, þe gile³ of fisch, & amptyn I-stampid / þese medicyns ben compound: vreyne of a zong man wiþ nitre; ouper mintis stampid⁴ wiþ salt, & distemperid wiþ vynegre, & maad an enplastre. Anoper medicyn 12 compound: take floris eris & salt, of ech .x. parties, & þe fatte of a calf, & of a wolf þat sufficþ, & make a plastre / Anoper: take schepis talow & buttere, & make a plaster / þis wounde schal be holden open at þe leeste fourty daies, & þis schal be do aboute þe 16 place. In anoper maner regimen / Vndirstonde þat þe man þat is biten, schal not be lete blood in þe bigynnyng, lest þe venym be drawe abrood bi oþere lymes; ne þou schalt zeue him no laxatif, lest it drawe þe venym to þe entrailis wiþinne; but þou schalt sette 20

² gourde, cucumer. See *Prompt. Parv.*, 203, *Goord*, Cucumer, cucurbita, colloquintida.

³ gile, ne. gill. See *Mätzner, Dict.*, p. 268. The Latin has, *gluten*, glue.

⁴ stampid, in margin.

Add. MS.
12,056.

[3 fol. 54 a]

wod, sette a gret ventuse aboue þe wounde & drawe out myche blod out of þe wounde, & afterwarde drawe abrod þe wounde; & abouen alle oþere thyng brennyng of hote eyren to þe deppe of þe wounde ys most proffitable, & aftere leye aboue þe wounde attractyfes, to 24 drawe out þe venym. Some of þese attractyfes beþ symple, & some beþ componyd. Symple ben: þe lyffere of þe same wod hounde þat bote þe man, garlyke y-stampyde, salt fyssch, asschys of vyne, Opopanac ys wondirful, þe leuys of a Gourde, & þe rote of ffyne- 28 greke, þe gele of fyssches, & amptes y-stampyde. þese medycynes ben componyde: vryne of a zonge man, with nytre oþer myntes, i-stampyde with salt & distempred with vynegre, & y-mad in emplastre. An oþere medicyne componyd: R floris eris & salt ana 32 ten parties, & þe fat of a calff twelf partyes, & make a plastre. An oþere: take schepys talwz & buttre, & make emplastre. þis wounde schal ben y-holde opyne at þe leste fourty dayes; al þis schal be do about þe place. ⁵In an oþere manere regimen vndir- 36 stande, þat þe man þat is y-bete ne schal nougt be lete blod in the bygynnyng, lest þe venym be drawe abrod by oþere lymes. Ne þou ne schalt zif hym non laxatyff, lest yt drawe þe venym to þe entraylles withynne; but þou schalt setten on þe place a stronge 40

- vpon þe place a strong^t ventuse, as it^t is seid tofore, ¹þat it^t mowe drawe miche of þe blood. And whanne þat^t .iiij. daies ben passid, it^t is not^t yuele to lete blood & to purge with a lital purgacioun, þat^t purgip þe malencolie, as with decoccioun epithimum,² wip gotis whey; & norischip him with dieting; þat^t fattip & makip him glad & bliþe; & waische his heed with decoccioun of water, þat^t þe feet & þe heed of a weþer were soden yune. Ne late him not^t þirsten ne hungren, suffren, ne traueilen; & so if^t þat^t god wole, þou maist him kepe from perile / & ech dai to a monþis eende he schal take oþere symple medicyns or compounned / * — — Take þe ayschis of crabbis I-brent in an ouene .iiij. parties, of frankencense vij. parties, & make hem into a poudre / þe pacient schal take ech dai of þis poudre .ij. .3. / An oþer medicyn: take þe powder of crabbis brent^t vj. parties, gencian .iiij parties, terre sigillate oon partie, make poudre / If þat^t þou were not^t at þe bigynnyng, & it^t bigynne to haue yuel accidentis: as yuel þouztis, soruful metyng in his sleep, & þat he be wroþ & grucche, & woot^t not^t whi; & if^t men aske him ony þing, & zeueþ no good answeere þerto, & fley lith,³ & he haþ alle oþere signes of malencolie, þanne zeue to him a

use first
cupping,
[1f. 31]
then blood-
letting and a
purgative.

Keep the
patient in
good spirits.

During a
month he
must take
every day
a simple or
a compound
medicine.

If the patient
seems melan-
choly,

[4 1f. 31, bk.]

² *Epithemum*. See Notes.

³ *fley lith*, altered to *fleyntlith* with different ink. Read: *fleyth lizt*.

- 20 ventuse, as yt is seyde tofore, þat he mowe drawe myche of þe blode. & whenne þat þre dayes ben passyde, yt is nouzt yuele to leten blod, & to purge with a lyzt purgacioun, þat purgith þe malyncolye, as with decoccioun of Epytemum, with gotys whey; & norissche hym with dyetyng, þat fattyth hym & make glad & bliþe; & wassche hys hed with decoccioun of water, þat þe fet & þe hed of a weþire ben y-sodyn yn. Ne lete hym nouzt þrustyn, ne suffren hungryre ne traueþ, & so zif þat god wyl, þou maiste kepen hym from peryle. & euery day to a monþ ende, he schal taken oþere symple medicynes, oþer componed. * Symple buþ: Asa fetida. Asa dulsis, polm,⁵ terra sigillata, Wermot, KockuH,⁶ mirre & gencyane. Medicynes componed gode: * R þe asches of crabbys y-brent in an Offyn .iiij partyes, of frankensens vij partyes, make a poudre; þe pacient schal take iche day of þis poudre 5 .ij wip wyn. An oþer: R þe poudre of crabbys y-brende vj partyes, of gencyane .iiij. parties, terre sigillate one partie, make poudre. Zif þat þou 36 were nozt at þe bygynnyng, & he bygynnetþ to haue yuele Accidentes, as yuele þouztes, schrewyde metyng in his slepe, & þat he be wroth & grucche & wot nozt why, & zif men aske hym enye þyng he zeuyth no gode answeere þere to, & fleyþ lyzt, & he hath alle oþere signes of malencolye, þanne zif to hym a medicine y-made

Add. MS.
12,056.

⁵ *polium*, Paley.

⁶ *Kockull*, *Nigella*. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 86.

give him
troches com-
posed of
cantharides
and spices,

R
N

until he
micturates
blood.

Treat bites
from venom-
ous beasts
similarly.

medicyn maad of^r cantarides / Take old grete cantarides, & do
awei þe heed & þe wyngis, .ij dragmis; lentis¹ I-clensid, .ḡ j.;
safron, spikenard, clowis, canel, .ana .ḡ s'.; bete hem weel, & make
of^r hem smale ballis, þat^r ech bal weiȝe a dragme. & ȝeue o. bal at 4
pre tymes, at^r ech tyme þe weiȝte of^r þre cornys of^r wheete, til þat^r
he pisse blood; þanne he schal be saaf^r / For whanne þou art sikir,
heele þe woundis after þat^r fourti daies ben passid, in þe same
maner. If^r þat^r þe wounde were maad of^r bitinge of^r an eddre or of^r 8
ony oþer venomous beest^r, þe leche schal take heede to drawe abrod
þe wounde, & sette aboue a uentuse, & drawe out^r miche blood; &
it is miche worþ to enuyroune þe place aboute þat^r is biten wiþ
brome I-stampid / For if^r þat^r þe prickynge be in þe foot^r or in þe 12
hand, if^r þou enuyroune þe arme with brome, it^r lettij þe venym to
go vpward; & ȝeue him þe medicyns writen aboue, & also lete þe
wounde be open, til þe venym be excludid /

¶ Cap^m viij^m **T**He .viij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste 16
tretis of a wounde maad in a ioynt, & is dislocate /

Whanne þat^r a wounde is in a lyme, & þe boon of þe same lyme
[² ff. 32]³ is to-broke ²atwo & dislocate—þat is to seie out^r of^r ioynte, þanne

¹ docsnet above *lentis*; meaning ?

³ Heading to leaf 32 in a later hand: *Off woundes in Jintes.*

Add. MS. of cantarydes. Take *olde* grete kantarydes & do aweye þe hed & 20
12,056. þe wynges ʒ. ij., lentys I-clansed ʒ. j., saferen, spikenard, clowys,
canest ana ʒ. ʒ.—in oþere bokys—ipone hem wel & make of hem
smale ballys þat weyȝen j. penyȝe wyȝt; & ȝif a bañ at pre tymes,
at iche tyme þe wyȝt of vij cornys of whete, tyl þat he pisse blod, 24
for þenne he schal be saff^r. Ffor whenne þou art sykere, hele þe
[⁴ fol. 54 b] ⁴wounde after þat fourty dayes ben passyde, in þe same maner.
ȝif þat a wounde were mad of þe bytinge of an eddre, oþere of eny
oþere venymouse beste, þe leche schal take hede to drawe abrode þe 28
wounde & setten abouen a ventuse & drawe out myche blod, & yt
is myche worþ to environ þe place abouten þat is y-betyn wiþ
brome y-stampyde. Ffor ȝif þat þe prikynge be in þe fot oþere in
þe hande, ȝif þou environ þe arme oþere þe legge with brome, yt 32
latteþ þe venym to gone vpwarde; & ȝif hym þe medycines y-wryten
aboue, & also tryacle, & lete þe wounde be opyne, tyl al þe venym
be escludyde.

The viij. Chapytelle of þe þridde techynge of the firste 36
tretys is of a wounde y-made in a joynt & is dislocat.

defensiff^r

Whenne þat^r a wounde is in a lyme & þe bon of þe same lyme
ys tobroken atwo & is dislocat—þat is to sigge, out of joynt,

it is good þat þou putte in þe wounde whanne þe blood is staunchid, & also aboute þe wounde þe ʒolke of an ey wip oile of rosis, & anointe al þe lyme aboute þe wounde with two parties of oile of
 4 rosis, & half^o oon partie of^t vynegre maad picke wip bole armoniak, til þe quytture be engendrid, & þat^t þou be sikir þat^t no postyme schal come. Ne take noon hede to brynge togidere þe parties of^t þe boon þat^t is to-broken or dislocate, til viij. daies ben goon in þe
 8 wyntir, & v. in þe somer; for þanne it schal make quytture, and be sikir from swellynge; & þanne brynge togidere þe brynkis eiþer þe disiuncture after þe techyng þat^t schal be seid in þe chapitle of algebra. & if þat^t þe prickyng eiþer þe dislocacioun nedij splentis,
 12 make þat þe splentis & byndyng faile aboute þe wounde. þat^t þou may do if þat^t þou kutte þe splentis & þe bindyng aboute þe wounde with a knyft^t or a rasour, & in drawyng abroad þe hoole of^t þe wounde¹ aboute þe wounde wip a nedle, so þat^t þou maist bi þat^t
 16 hole ech day change þi medicyn of þe wounde wipoute choudyng² of^t þe boond þat^t þou madist^t first^t aboute þe boony^s þat^t weren broken ouþer dislocate; þe which boond þou schalt^t nouzt^t remeuen til tyme schal be teld in his place, but þou schalt^t bynde aboute þilke

If the wound is accompanied by fracture or dislocation of a bone,

R
dress the wound,

and do not join the bone before some time elapsed.

Cut a hole in the splints or bandages,

through which the wound can be dressed.
[¹ If. 82, bk.]

¹ *wounde*, error for *bonde*.

² *choudyng*, error for *chongyng*.

20 þanne it is gode þat þou putte in þe wounde, whanne þe blod is y-stauchyde, & also aboute þe wounde, þe ʒolke of an eyze, with oyle of roses, & anynt alle þe lyme aboute þe wounde, wip two partyes of oyle of^t rosys, & wip half on party of vynegre, y-made þikke with
 24 bol Armonyake, tyl þat þe quyture be engendered,⁴ & þou be sykere þat none Aposteme schalt come. Ne take none hede to brynge togedere þe parties of þe bon þat is tobroken oþere dislocat, tyl viij daies ben go in þe wyntire, & fyff^t in the somere; for þenne yt
 28 schal make quytere, & be sykere from swellynge; & þenne brynge togedire þe brekyng oþere þe dysynncture after þe techyng þat schal be seyde in þe Chapytell of **Algebra**. & ʒif þat þe brekyng oþere þe dyslocacioun nedij splyntes, make þat þe splyntes & þe
 32 byndyng faylen aboute þe wounde; & þat þou maiste do, ʒif þat þou kyttest þe splyntes & þe byndyng aboute þe wounde with a knyft oþere a rasoure, & in drawyng abroad þe hole of þe bonde aboute þe wounde⁵ wip a nedle, so þat þou maiste by þilke hole euery day
 36 chaungen þe medicyn of þe wounde withouten chaungyng of þe bonde, þat þou madest firste aboute þe bonys þat were broke oþere dislocat. þe whiche bonde þou schalt nouzt remeffen, tyl þe tyme þat schal be tolde in hys place; bote you schalt bynde aboute þilke

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁵ fol. 55 a]

⁴ MS. engenderes.

boon a newe boond, which þou schalt remeue as ofte as þou chaungist þi wounde. & whanne þat þou art sikir fro þe enpostemyngē, & whanne þat þou hast settʰ togidere þe boonys þat were settʰ togidere & dissolate, þanne leie vpon þe wounde bi þe hole 4
 R þat þou madistʰ in þe boond, a mundificatifʰ of mel rosetʰ colat, & of barli mele til þe wounde be clensid; & leie on þatʰ a¹ mundificatifʰ, þredis ofʰ oolde whiztʰ lynnen cloþ, til þatʰ þe wounde be ful clensid; aftirward regendre fleisch, & aftirward consowde with 8
 regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis, whiche þatʰ schulen be seid in þe ende of þe book /

¶ Cap^m ix^m

THE nynþe chapitle of þe .iij. techinge of þe firste tretis is of fluxblood of a wounde / 12

Hæmorrhage arises from an injury, corrosion, or weakness of the veins and arteries—

þer ben ij. maner of causis þat makij blood to blede out of a manys body; þe oon cause is clepid—cause coniuncte; & þe toþer—cause antecedentʰ / þe enchesoun ofʰ cause coniuncte is compounned ofʰ þe mouþis of þe veynes and arteries, or ellis whanne 16
 þat þe veynes ben kutʰ atwo, or ellis corrosion ofʰ þe bodies of þe 2
 same veynes & arteries, or ellis to greetʰ febilnes or to greetʰ losnes / And þer ben manie enchesouns ofʰ cause antecedentis: as to

[² 1f. 33.]¹ a, erroneously inserted.³ Heading to leaf 33, *Off flux off blade in woundes.*Add. MS.
12,056.

bonde a newe bonde, þe whyche þou schalt remeffe, as often as þou 20
 chaungiste thy wounde. & whanne þou art sykere from empostomyngē & þou haue sette togedire þe bonys þat were sette togedire & dislocat, þezne leye vpon þe wonde by þe hole þat þou madyst in þe band a mundifycatyffʰ of mel rosat colat, & of barlye mele, tyl 24
 þe wonde be clansyde; & leye on þilke mundyficatyffʰ þredys of olde clene whyte lynne cloþ, tyl þat þe wounde be ful clansyde; afterward regenerere flesch, & aftereward consoude wiþ regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, whiche þat schullen ben seyde in þe ende of 28
 þe boke.

The ix Chapitle of þe þridde techyngē is of flux blod off a wounde.

þere beþ two manere causes þat makyth blod to bleden out of 32
 mannes body; þat on cause is clepyde cause conjuncte, & þat oþer cause antecedent. þe encheson of cause conjuncte ys openyngē of þe mouþes of þe veynes & þe Arteries, oþer ellys whanne þat the veynes beþ kut atwo, oþer ellys corosion of þe bodies of þe same 36
 veynes & arteries, oþer ellys to gret feblenesse, oþere to gret losnesse. & þere beþ manye enchesouns & causes antecedente: as to myche

- myche frelenes¹ of blood, or ellis to myche acute of blood, & also manye opere causis per ben þat ben clepid cause of² primitif: as smytyng þat woundith, to greet lepyng, cryng; wraþe, chidyng, & so manye opere; & ech of þese causis tofore seid haþ his maner heelyng by him-silf in fisik medicinal. But it is not þe entencioun of þis booke to treten³ of blood þat bledith of wounde, þat is maad with wounde, þe which may be restreynd with craft of 8 ciurgie. In flux of blood þat comeþ of a wounde, þe leche muste loke þe disposicioun, þe abitude, age, vertu, & complexioun of him þat is woundid; if þat þese acorden, & he be myzty in vertu, he schal blede myche blood at þe wounde, þouþ þat þe leche be clepid 12 at þe bigynnyng, but if it be so þat he be⁴ feble ouer greetliche. & if þat nede constreyne þe leche to stauche blood, he muste loke if þat þe blood go out at þe veynes capillares, þat ben smale veynes as heeris of a mannys heed / & þanne oonly þe whizt⁵ of an ey leid 16 aboue with towze of flex suffisip / whanne þat þe parties of þe wounde ben bronzt togidere; & if þou caste aboue poudre of lym aforeseid in þe chapitle of sowynge of woundes, it schal be þe bettere; for þat poudre wipstreyneþ þe blood & consoudip þe parties
- ¹ frelenes, mistake for fulnesse. ² of, erroneous insertion. See below.
³ but, omitted. Latin: Non est huius libri intentio tractare nisi de fluxu sanguinis. . . ⁴ be, added in margin in same hand.

from fullness of blood—
 cause antecedentes;
 from an accident—
 cause primitiva.

If the patient is strong, let him bleed freely;
 if he is weak use a mild styptic when the blood is lost from the capillaries;
 [5 li. 33, bk.]

- 20 fulnesse of blod, oper ellys to myche Acuyte of blod & also manye opere causes; and þere beþ opere causes þat beþ clepyd causes prymytiff; as smytyng þat wondith, to gret lepyng, crying, wraþe, chydinge, & so many⁶ opere & iche of þese causes tofore 24 seyde haþ hys manere helyng by hym-selfen in fesyke medecynal. Bot it ys nozt þe entencyoun of þis boke, to tretyn but of blod, þat bledith of wounde, þat is y-mad wip wounde, the⁷ whiche may be restreynde by craft of surgerye. In flux of blod, that comyth of 28 a wounde, þe leche most loke þe disposicioun, þe Abytude, Age, vertu & complexioun of hym þat is y-woundyde; & zif þat þese acorden, & he be myztye in vertue, he schal blede myche blod at hys wounde, þowþ þat þe leche be clepyde at þe bygynnyng, bot zif 32 it so be þat he feble ouere gretlyche. & zif nede constreyne þe leche to stauche þe blode, he most loke zif þat þe blod go out of þe Veynes capyllares, þat beþ smale veynes as herys of mannys hed; & þanne only þe whyte of an eyze, y-leyde aboue wip towz of flex 36 suffiseþ, whenne þat þe parties of þe wounde beþ brouzt togidire; & zif þou cast aboue þe poudre of lyme, tofore seyde in the chapytelle of sowynge of woundes, yt schal be þe betyre; for þe poudre wipstreyneþ þe blod & consoudeþ þe partyes of þe wounde, togidire.

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[7 fol. 55 b]

⁶ MS. may.

when it is lost from a larger vein use a stronger styptic;

when it is lost from an artery press the artery until a clot is formed,

and apply a styptic

R

[2 ff. 34]

Renew the remedy carefully.

of þe wounde togidere. & if þe blood come fro grete veynes he mai nouzt^t so sumtyme be constreynded, but^t it^t nedij a stronger medicyn & also a more cautele / & if^t þat^t þe blood go out^t of arterie, þou schalt knowe it^t bi construccion & dilatacion of þe 4 same arterie—þat^t is to seie, þat^t þe blood go out wip lepinge & oþerwhile wip wipdrawinge¹; & þanne sette þi fyngir vpon þe mouþ of þe grete veyne or hollis on þe arterie, & holde þi fyngir þeron bi a greet^t hour; for þanne by grace sum greet^t drope of blood may be 8 congelid togidere & þere-bi vertu may be myche comfortid; aftirward leie plenteuousliche of þis medicyn vpon þe veyne eiþer þe arterie þat^t is kutt^t atwo / Take frankencense, whizt^t gummis, & fatt^t .ij. 3., aloes .3. j., make poudre & distempere with þe white of 12 an ey as picke as hony / after take heeris of an hare smal kutt^t, medle alle þese togidere, & þer is no medicyn so good as þis medicyn is in streynunge of blood & consowdyng of þe veyne / But whanne þat^t þou comest^t to chaunge þat^t medicyn of þe wounde, do 16 nouzt^t þe medicyn away wip strenkþe, but^t leie aboue of þe same medicyn³ moist^t, to neische þe firste medicyn, þat^t it^t myzte falle away bi him-silf / Neþeles it^t is possible þat^t a medicyn caustik, þat^t is to seie, a medicyn þat^t brennep, sunner staunchip 20

¹ Lat. : quod sanguis exit cum saltu secundum constrictionem et dilatationem ipsius arteriæ.

³ MS. *medicyn*, repeated.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[2 fol. 56 a]

& 3if þe blod come from gret Veynes, he may nozt so sumtyme be constreynde, but it nedij a strengere medycyne & also a more cautele; & 3if þat þe blod go out of an arterye, þou schalt y-knowe yt be constructioun & dilatacioun, of þe same arterye—þat is to sigge, 24 þat þe blod goþ out with lepyng, & oþer whyle with wipdrawinge, & þenne sette þy fyngere vpon þe mouþ of þe gret veyne, oþere ellys þe Artarye, & holde þy fyngere þere on by a grete oure; for þenne by hap sum grete drope of blod may be congelyde togedre, & þereby 28 vertu may be myche y-comfortyde. Afterwarde leye plentyfullyche of þis medycine vpon þe ⁴Veyne oþere þe arterye þat is kut atwo. R ffrancencens, whyzt gommous & fat 3. ii., Aloes 3. i., make poudre & distempere with þe whyzt of an eyze as þykke as hony; 32 after take herys of an hare smale & kutte, medle al þis þynge togedire, & þere ys no medycine so gode as þis medycine is, in streynunge of blod & consoudyng þe Veyne. Bot whanne þat þou comyst to chaunge þe medycine of þy wonde, do nozt away þe medycine 36 wip strengþe, but ⁵leye aboue of þe same medycine moist, to nessesche þe firste medycine, þat yt myzte fallyne away by yt-selff. Naþeles yt is possible, þat a medycine caustyke, þat ys to sigge a medycine

⁴ *wounde*, cancelled before *veyne*.

blood þan þis medicyn of frank encense ; & þou schalt haue greet^t plente of medicyne caustik in þe antidotarie, but we ben nouzt^t sikir þat þe blood of þe veyne eiþer arterie anoþir tyme wole goon
 4 out, whanne þat þe schorf^t of þilke caustik Medicine¹ is remeued away / but þis medicyn of encense with þe heeris of an hare not oonliche staunchiþ þe blood, but also sowdiþ² þe veyne & þe arterie, as I haue preued it ofte tymes / And for to zeue autorite I
 8 sette a saumple þat come sumtyme to myn hondis : A child of þre 3eer old hadde a lital knyf in his hond, & he fel on þat knyf in þe former partie of þe þrote persched þe veyne organise ; þer cowde no man it staunche, & þanne I was clepid, & I cam to þe child in
 12 ³ greet haaste, & he hadde almost lost his sizt ; for hise izen in his heed weren turned vp so down ;⁴ & þe blood come out at þe wounde whizt as whey, vnneþe he hadde no pouste⁵ / & þanne I leide my fyngir on þe heed of þe veyne, & I heeld it faste þat þer myzte no
 16 þing^t go out ; & so I heeld þe veyne a greet hour, & þanne vertu of his bodi þat was almost lost quykenede azen, & þe pouse bigan to appere febiliche as it were a smal þred / þanne I sente to þe spiceris

The styptic is a surer remedy than a caustic.

Nota bene

1st Example. A child having cut its throat with a knife,

[3 lf. 34, bk.] the loss of blood caused collapse.

The vein was pressed,

¹ medicine, added in margin.

² MS. *sowdyngē*.

⁴ *up so down*. See Mätzner, *Diet.*, s. v. "down." Latin: *oculos habebat in capite revolutos*.

⁵ *vnneþe he hadde no pouste*. This passage is corrupt ; for the correct version see below.

þat brennyth, sennore staunchyth blod, þenne þis medicine of encense ;
 20 & þou schalt haue gret plente of medicine caustyke in þe antidotarye, but we beþ nouzt sykere þat þe blod of þe Veyne, oþere þe arterye an oþer tyme wyl gon out, whanne þat þe serche of þylke caustyke medicine ys remywed away. But þy medicine of ensence,
 24 with þe herys of an hare, nozt only staunchiþ þe blod, but also consoudeþ þe Veyne, & þe Arterye, as y haue preuyde yt ofte tymes. And forto 3if Autorite, I sette an saumple, þat come sum tyme to myn handys : A childe of þre zere olde, hadde a lyte knyf in hys
 28 hande, & he fel on þat knyf, & þe poynt of þe knyf, in þe fore partye of þe þrote, persyde þe Veyne organys ; ne þere ne coupe no man yt staunche, & þanne y was y-clepyde & y come to þe child in gret haste, & he hadde almoste loste hys syght ; for hys eyzen in
 32 hys hed were turnyde vp so down, & þe blode come out of þe wounde, whyte as wheyze, ne he ne hadde no pous, & þenne y leyde my fyngere on þe hed of þe veyne, & y helde faste þat noþyng myzte go out, & so y helde þe veyne by a grete houre, &
 36 þe vertue of hys body þat was almost lost quyknede azeine, & þe pous bygan to apere ffiblyche as yt were a smal þreed. þanne y

Add. MS. 12,056.

schoppe þat^a was a greet weye fro me / ne I remeuede not^a away my
 fyngir fro þe place, til þat^a þe messanger cam azen, and þe child
 bigan þanne to opene hise izen; & þanne I ordeynede þis medicyn
 to be maad, & plenteuousliche I leide it aboue þe wounde, & I 4
 boond þe wounde wip plumaciols & with stupis¹ I-leid in whit^a of
 an ey, & with a boond I boonde it^a streitly, and comaundide hem to
 zeue him crummys of breed leid in water; & on þe morowe I come
 azen, & þanne I foond þe child comfortid / & neuere þe lattere I 8
 nolde nouzt^a vndo þe medicyn / þe fader preiede me wip greet in-
 stance to vndo þe medicyn,² but I wolde not^a; & so I lete it^a lie
 stille, til .iiij. daies weren passid withouten remeuyng^a / & neþeles
 I visitide him ech day; & þe .iiij. day I vndide þe wounde, & þe 12
 medicyn was drie aboue þe wounde, so þat^a I myzte not^a han re-
 meued it^a wipoute greet violence. & þanne I leide aboue þe whizt^a
 of an ey wip a litil oile of rosis, & so I lefte it lie oon day til on þe
 morowe I turnede azen; & þanne I remeuede away þe medicyn 16
 wipouten violence, & I foond þanne þe wounde & þe veyne al hool.
 & of þis heelyng^a his fadir & alle hise neiþeboris hadden greet
 wondir / And if^a þat^a wip þis medicyn þou maist^a not^a sowde þe
 arterie ne þe veyne, ne þow maist^a not constreyne þe blood for sum 20

¹ "Stupes (in Surgery), Pledgets of Tow, Cotton, etc., dipt in scalding hot Liquors and apply'd to the diseased Part."—Phillips.

Add. MS.
12,056.

[fol. 56 b]

sente to þe spysers schoppe, þat was a grete weye from me, ne y ne
 remywede nozt away my fyngere from þe place tyl þat þe messagere
 come azeine, & þe childe þenne bygan to opene hys eyzen; and
 þanne y ordeynede þilke medycine to be maad, & plentyffuliche y 24
 leyde it abouen þe wounde, and y bonde þe wounde with plumaceoles
 & with stupes y-leyde in whyzt of an eyze, & with a bande y bonde
 yt streytly, & y comaundede hem to gyuen hym crommys of brede,
 y-leyde in water; and on þe morwene y come azeine, & þenne y 28
 fonde þe childe y-cumfortede & neuere þe latere y wolde nouzt vndo
 þe medycine; þe ffadire³ preyde me wip grete instance to se þe
 wounde, but y wolde nouzt; & so y lete yt be, tyl foure dayes were
 passyd, withouten remeffyng^a & napeles y vysitede hym every day; 32
 in þe fourþe day y vndyde þe bande, & þe medycine was drye aboue
 þe wounde, so þat y myzte nozt haue remywede hyt withouten grete
 Vyolence. & þenne y leyde aboue þe whyte of an eyze, with a lytel
 oyle of roses, & so y lasfe yt by on day. On þe morwen y turnyde 36
 azeine, & þenne y remeffyde away þe medycine withouten Vyolence,
 & þenne y fonde þe wounde & þe Veyne al hol. And of þis helyng^a
 þe fadire & alle his neyzhboures hadden gret wondire. And zif þat
 with þis medycyne þou maiste nozt soude þe Arterye, ne þe Veyne, ne 40
 þou ne maiste nozt constreyne þe blod for sum opere Impedement,

oper impediment: þanne þou must ouþer bynde þe veyne, or drawe
 hir out of hir place, & bynde þe heed of þe veyne or arterie, ouþer
 þou must brenne hir wiþ hoot iren, & make on hir heed a greet
 4 cruste & a depe. ¶ Anoper ensauple: þer was a child of .xv.
 3eer oold þat smoot him-silf with a smal knyf, & þilke knyf per-
 side o. senewe of þe arm & prickide a ueyne þat lay vnder þilke
 senewe. & for þe prickynge of þat senewe ¹he hadde greet
 8 akynge, & blood drewe down to þe wounde & nouzt azenstood ² for
 alle þe staunchis of medicyns þat me myzte do þerto, it wolde not
 staunche, þe blood ran out at þe wounde. & colde medicyns ben
 greuous to senewis þat is prickid, for þei stoppen þat lyme, & þat
 12 is contrarious azens senewis; & þanne I demede nessessarie to
 drawe out al þe veyne out of her place & to bynde hir & to helpe
 þilke senewis wiþ oile of rosis / But þe modir of þat child sente for
 a lewde leche which þat repreuede foule my doom, & he bihiȝte to
 16 heele safly þe child. He dwellide on þe cure, & I wente my wey /
 þe which leche took hede to him .x. daies, þat neiþir þe akynge
 ceesside ne þe blood was not staunchid, & so þe sijk man was nyȝ
 deed / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I wolde not come to þe pacient /
 20 þanne a fisician þat was frend to þe freendis of þe pacient blamede
 þe modir & hir freendis þat þei hadden left counseil for þilke idiotis
² azenstood, for azenstondyng.

use a ligature
 or torsion or
 cauterization
 of the bleed-
 ing artery or
 vein.

Nota
 2nd Example
 Case of a
 child which
 had pricked
 a nerve and a
 vein in its
 arm.

[1 ff. 35, bk.]

Lanfranc
 suggested ty-
 ing the vein
 and applying
 oil of roses to
 the nerve.

A lay phy-
 sician at-
 tempted an-
 other treat-
 ment,

but for ten
 days the child
 suffered acute
 agony and
 bleeding;

þan þou moste opere bynde þe Veyne, opere drawyne here out of
 here place, & wynde þe hed of þe Veyne oper Arterye, oper þou most
 24 brenne here wiþ hote yren, & maken on here hed a grete croste & a
 depe. An opere exauple: þere was a childe of xv ȝere olde, þat
 smot hym-self with a smal knyff, & þilke knyff persyde on Veyn of
 þe Arme, & prikyde a Veyne þat lay vndire þilke synwe. & for þe
 28 prikyng of þilke synwe he hadde grete akynge, & blod ran to þe
 wounde & nozt azeynestondyng medycines þe blod ran out at þe
 wounde. Kolde medycines weren profitable to bledyng of wounde,
 and colde medycines beþ greffes to prikyng of synwes; for þey
 32 stoppyn þat lyme & þat ys contraryus azeyns þe synwys; and
 þenne y demyde necessarye to drawe out alle þe Veyne out of here
 place & to bynde here & to helpen þilke synwe with oyle of roses.
 But þe modire of þilke childe sende for a lewyde leche, whyche þat
 36 reprevyde foulliche my doom, & he behyȝte to helyn saflyche þe
 childe. He dwellyde on þe cure, & y went my weye. þe whyche
 leche toke hede to hym be ten dayes, þat neiþere þe akynge sesyde
 ne þe blod was nozt y-staunchyde, & so þe syke man was ³nyȝh ded.
 40 And at þe laste y was clepyde & y wolde nozt come to þe pacient.
 But þenne a ffysisyen þat was frende to þe man of þe pacyent,
 blamyde þe modire & here frendys, þat þey hadde lefte my consaylle

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[3 fol. 5^v 7]

biheeste; & pilke fisician purposide, after þat he hadde herd my counseil, þat þer was noon oþer wey þat myzte saue þe sike man from deþ, & he axide of þe sirurȝian wheþer he coude do as I hadde seid bifore. & ¹ he seide, þat he coude so doon, & so he 4 dide / He kutte þe skyn aboue þe veyne & twynede þe veyne in hise handis, & boond þe eende of þe veyne *with* a þred; & after he helde on þe senewe hoot oile of rosis, & so bi þis counseil he was restorid aȝen to heelþe / But who so wolde aske how þat he 8 myzte so manye daies be kept from þe crampe for þat he suffride so greet akþe / I answeere & seie: þat þe cause was, for þat he bledde at þe wounde ech day, so þat þe senewe ² myzt not be to myche replete eiþer ful of blood / Alle þese þingis I haue told, þat he þat 12 redliþ hem mai þe visiloker in semblable causis worchen. & if þi þis medicyn he myzte nouzt sikirliche be restorid or restreyned þat falliþ riȝt seelde whane ³ / þanne we moten brenne þe heed of þe veyne eiþer of senewe ⁴ wiþ hoot iren, & pilke hoot iren myzte 16 make au hard cruste. & be war þat þou touche not þe lippis of þe wounde ne þe senewe, ne noon oþer þing but onli þe veyne wiþ hoot iren. & if al þis craft wole not helpen, we musten drawe

[I. 36]
finally a surgeon tied the vein and saved the child.

Nota
The bleeding of the wound prevented cramp.

When styptics fail, use cauterization;

Nota

² *senewe*, error for *wounde*. Add MS. has the same mistake.

³ *riȝt seelde whane*. *Polychron*, i. 133, wel silde whanne. Stratm., seldhwonne.

⁴ *senewe*, error for *arterie*. The same mistake in Add. MS.

Add. MS. 12,056. for þe byhestys of þylke ydyote; & pilke ffysisyens proposyde, 20 aftere þat he had herde my counseyle, þat þere was non oþere wey. þat myzte saue þe syke man from þe deþ, & þenne he askyde a surgyne, wheþere he couþe don as y hadde seyde byfore; & he seyde þat he couþe so don, & so he dyde. He kutte þe skyn aboue 24 þe Veyne, & twynede þe veyne in his handys, & bonde þe ende of þe Veyne wiþ a þrede, & afterwarde he hylde on þe synwe hote oyle of rosys, & so by þis counseyle he was restoryde aȝeyne to hele. But ho so þat wolde aske how þat he myzte so manye dayes be 28 kepyde from þe crampe, for þat he suffryde so grete akþe, I answeere & sigge: þat þe cause was, for he bledde at þe wounde eche day, so þat þe synwe ne myzte nozt be to myche replet oþere fulfyllde of blode. Alle þese thynges y haue tolde, þat he þat redyth hem may 32 þe wyslocor in semblable causes wyrchen. And ȝif be þis medycyne he myzte nozt sykerliche be restreynede, þat fallyth ryȝte selden, þenne me moste brenne þe hed of þe Veyne oþere of þe synwe wiþ hote yren, þat pilke hote yren myzte maken an harde croste. And 36 be war þat þou touche nozt þe lippes of þe wounde, ne þe synwe, ne non oþere thyng, bot only þe veyn *with* hote yren. And ȝif al þis crafte wolde nozt helpyn me, men most drawn out þe Veyne, &

out þe veyne & fle þe fleisch aboue here, & wynde þe veyne sadliche
 & bynde hir heed wiþ þin han¹dis.—Bi² my witt³ I³ trowe amene
 þat⁴ a bodi schulde make þeron a knotte I-knytt⁴ of him-silf⁴ or ellis
 4 knytt⁴ wiþ a þred. I woot⁴ neuere wheþer he meneþ; for he seiþ in
 anoþer place tofore þat⁴ I schulde knytte it⁴ wiþ a þred, & þerfore I
 suppose bi my witt⁴ þat⁴ I schulde make a knotte þeron of⁴ his owne
 silf⁴ bi my witt⁴.—& sumtyme it⁴ happiþ þat⁴ an arterie is broken
 8 ouþer kutt⁴ & þe fleisch þat⁴ is aboue is hool & nouzt⁴ to-broke neiþir
 I-kutt⁴, or ellis þe fleisch þat⁴ is aboue þe arterie is helid tofore & not⁴
 þe arterie; & vndir þe fleisch þer is a swellynge of⁴ blood þat⁴ is
 clepid aperisma⁴ ouþer mater sanguinis, & þerof⁴ þe pacient⁴ hap
 12 greet drede, lest⁴ þat⁴ þe skyn to-breke & þe blood go out, þe which
 blood is hard to restreine / for of⁴ þis maner sijknes spekiþ galion
 & seiþ þat⁴ a seruaunt⁴ of⁴ sich a disposicioun was helid of⁴ a lewde
 man þat⁴ tauzte him þat⁴ he schulde leie snow on his siknes. Where
 16 fore a man may vndirstonde þat⁴ to siche enpostymes colde medicyns
 & drie ben nessessarie. // // // // // // //

and if this
falls, torsion
and a liga-
ture.
[1f. 36, bk.]

In the case of
rupture of an
artery an
aporisma is
formed.

.Galion.

² An insertion of the scribe.

³ *I trowe a mene*, "I believe to mean."

⁴ *aperisma*, Lat. ophorisma seu mater sanguinis. Dufur. Gloss. med. Lat.:
 Aporisma—collectio sanguinis in aliquo membro extra venas non putrefacti
 maxime sanguinis arterialis.

flene þe flesch aboue here & wynde þe Veyne sadlyche & bynde here
 hed with þyn handys. And sum tyme yt happyth, þat an Arterye
 20 is y-broke opere y-kutte, & þe flesch þat is abouen ys hol & nozt to-
 broke ne y-kutte, opere ellys þe flessch þat is aboue þe Arterye ys
 y-helyde & nozt þe Arterye, & vndire pilke flessch þere is a swellynge
 of blode⁵ that is y-clepyde **Aporisma** opere matere **Sanguis** &
 24 þere of þe pacient hatþ grete drede, lest þat þe skyn tobreke & þe
 blod gone out, þe whiche blod is hard to restreine. Of þis manere
 seknesse spekyth **Galyen**, & seiþ þat a seruaunt of swyche a dys-
 posisioun was y-helyde of a lewyde man, þat tauzte hym þat he
 28 scholde legge snow vpon þat seknesse, wherfore a man may vndir-
 stande, þat to swyche empostemys colde medicynes & drye beþ
 necessarye.

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁵ fol. 57 b]

¶ Cap^m x^m

The .x. chapitle of þe bridde techinge of þe firste tretis¹ is of gouernaunce & diete¹ of men þat ben woun²did /

[² lf. 37]

off dietynges for woundes. Some physicians give nourishing food and wine,

pretending that water is harmful;

others allow only bread and water and sodden apples.

Both are dogmatic.

þer ben manye men þat discorden of^t dietynges of men þat ben 4 woundid, for sum men zeuen to alle men þat^t ben woundid, wheþir þat it be in þe heed or in ony oþere place, good wiyne & stronge fleisch of^t capouns & of^t hennes; & þei affermen þat bi sich a maner wey sike woundid men ben summere heclid / for þei seien þat^t 8 water putrifieþ lymes þat^t ben woundid & engendriþ enpostymes & corruppiþ & febliþ complexiouns & makþ manye harmys / & summe oþere men gouernen alle maner of^t sike men þat^t ben woundid wiþ breed & watir & applis soden til ten daies ben goon / And 12 if^t god wole eende þis book, it schal be remeuyngge errouris & declaryngge & openyngge doutis / I seie þat^t þese boþe sectis erren in her opyniouns, for þei taken hede onoly to her experimentis not consideryngge resoun of^t complexioun of^t him þat is woundid / þe firste 16 secte of^t þese two * [seyth] þat^t summen onoly eten breed & watir in so myche þei ben feblid þat^t blood & mater in her bodies may nouzt be restorid; þe³ which were sufficient^t to hele with her woundis,

¹⁻¹ added in margin.

³ þe cancelled in MS.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ The x Chapitle of þe bridde techyngge of þe firste 20 tretys is of men that beth y-woundyde.

Many men discorden of dietynges of men þat ben woundyde, for sum men zeuen to alle men þat ben woundyde, wheþer þat it be in þe hed oþer in enye oþere place, gode wyn & stronge flesch of 24 capouns & of hennys; and þey affermen þat by swyche a manere weye seke woundyde men sonnere ben y-helyde, ffor þey siggen þat watyre putrefyep lymes, þat þep woundyde, & engendriþ Apostemys & corruppyth & feblyth complexiouns, & makyth many harmys. 28 Sum oþere men gouernen alle manere of syke men þat þep woundyde with brede & water & Applys y-sodyn, tyl x dayes ben passyde, & 3if þat god wyl ende þis bok, yt schal be remeffyngge away Errores, & declaryngge & opnyngge Downtous. Y sigge, þat boþe þese sectes 32 erryn in here opyniouns, ffor þey taken hede onolyche to here experymentys, nouzt consideryngge resoun of þe complexioun of hym þat is y-woundyde. The firste secte of þese *seyth þat some men, onoly etyngge bred & watere, in so myche ben y-feblyde, þat blode & 36 matere in here bodies may nouzt be restoryde; þe whiche were suffi-

- but þei ben so feble þat' þei ¹ dien, or ellis þei languren ² longe [¹ ff. 37, bk.] tyme; ne þe lymes may not' receyue resonable vertu. as þei schulde; & þese maner men ben of' cold complexioun & drie & her bodies
- 4 weren feble or þei weren woundid, & her stomak & her entrailis wipinne weren feble / þe secunde secte seip: þat' summe þat' drinken wygn & eten fleisch hadde in þe membre þat' was woundid a greet' enpostyme & a febre—& þo þen zonge men þat' ben of' an
- 8 hoot' complexioun & a moist—wherefore þei comaundide to alle maner opere of complexioun þat' þei schulden drynke no wygn ne ete no fleisch / 3e schulen vndirstonde þat' bope þese sectis ben nouzt'; & þefore I folowyng þe doctryne of rasis, auicen, & galion
- 12 & of' opere doctouris, & also experimentis þat' I haue longe preued, I seie þat' it is nedeful þat' a woundid man in þe bigynnyng absteyne him fro wygn, & namely if' þat' þe wounde be in þe heed eipir in ony partie of' a senewe. for þer is no þing' þat' so soone
- 16 smytþ greuance in þe heed or þe senewis as wygn; for he is soone conuertid of' kyndely heete & for he is so sotil, he persip swipe into þe senewis, & he assendiþ soone into þe heed, bryngyng wip him humouris & spiritis. It' ³ troublip a mannys witt, & wygn greueþ
- 20 alle men þat' han a feble heed / & þefore in alle maner woundis of'
- ² languren, languent. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 286, *Langurygn yn sekenesse langueo*. And *ibid.* note 5.

The patient ought, according to

Rasis. & A. Galion.

to abstain from wine at the beginning.

Nota

if he is wounded in his head or in a nerve,

[³ ff. 38]

- saunt to hele with here woundys, bot þey ben so feble þat' þey dyzen, opere ellys þey langoren longe tyme; ne þe lyme may nozt' resseyuen resonable vertue, as he schulde; & þese manere of men ben of a colde complexioun & a drye, & here bodies weryn feble.—*The secunde secte seyth þat' some þat' dronken ⁴ wygn & etyn flesch hadde in þe membre þat' was y-woundyde a gret' enposteme & a ffeuyre— and þo þeþ zonge men þat' þeþ of an hot complexioun & a moist—
- 24 wherefore þey comaundyde to alle opere manere complexiouns, þat' þey schulde nozt' drynken no wygn, ne eten non flesch. þe vnderstandyng of bope þese sectes nys nozt' comendable and þefore y folwyng þe doctryne of rasys, Avenge, galien, & of oþer doctoris,
- 28 & also experimentis, þat' y haue longe y-preuyde, sigge þat' it is nedeful in þe bygynnyng þat' a woundyde man Absteyne hym from wygn & namlye zif þat' þe wounde be in þe hed, opere in eny partye of a synwe. For þere nys noþyng þat' so sone smyteþ with
- 32 greuance þe hed opere þe synwe as wygn; for he ys sone conuertide of' kendlye hete, and for he ys so sotyH, he persyth swipe into þe synwes & he assendyth sone into þe hed, bryngyng with hym humores and spiritis. Yt' trublyth a mannys wyt, & wygn greuyff'
- 40 alle men that' haþ a feble hed; & þere fore in alle manere woundys

Add. MS. 12,056.

[⁴ fol. 58 a]

if his complexion is hot and moist;

if he has a cold complexion he may have a little wine, but in general a specially prepared beverage.

þe heed & of¹ senewis he schal be forbode in þe bigynnyng namely to þo þingis¹ þat han hoot¹ complexiouns & moist¹ into þe tyme þat þe cure be ful endid / & to þo þat¹ ben of¹ a cold complexioun, whanne .iiij. daies ben passid, þou maist¹ zeue to drynke smal temperat¹ wyn, & afterward a litil strengere, aftir þat¹ þou art¹ sikir þat þer schal nouzt¹ come to þe membre noon enpostyme. But þis² drinke schal be watir of¹ barlich, eiper water of¹ crummes of¹ breed bene soden in whit³ wyn,⁴ or ellis lete þe breed lie in cold watir⁸ rapere þan þou faile þat¹ he schal drynke / but¹ he may tende weel to heete it¹, & nameliche in somer / & to þat¹ ben woundid⁵ to drynke watir, or ellis with þe x. partie of¹ wyn of¹ pome garnates or ellis with þe sixte partie of¹ wyn agrestis þat¹ is smal brusck⁶ 12 wyn, or ellis þis is a perfizt¹ drynke to woundis of¹ þe heed & to senewis : / Take a potel of¹ water & of¹ barly clensid .iiij. ʒ., juiube,⁷ sebesten⁸ ana. ʒ. ʒ., of¹ drie prunis of¹ damascenes ʒ j, sugre of¹ rosis ʒ ij., seþe hem⁹ to .iiij parties ben consumed, & þanne lete him 16 drynke. To asaye it¹ softly¹⁰ / ¹¹þis drynke is alteratijf¹: þat¹ is to seie, chaunginge, ne it¹ swellij not, & it¹ lettij fumosite to arise

¹ þingis, inserted. ² þis, error for his. ³ whit, error for with.

⁴ wyn, inserted. ⁵ woundid, error for wonid. Lat. homini assuetus.

⁶ brusck, Roman brusco (Lat. rusticus?), harsh. See later reference in N. E. Dict.

⁷ Juiube, a kind of prune growing in Italy. Kersey—1721.

⁸ Sebesten, Arab. sebesten. Name for Cordia mysa vel sebastena.

⁹ Corrupt passage. Lat. : donec consumetur tertia pars.

¹⁰ softly, error for soplely.

Add. MS. of þe hed & of¹ synwes, he schal be forebode in þe bygynnyng, & 12,056. namlye to þo þat han hot complexiouns & moiste, into þe tyme þat 20 þe cure be ful endyde; & to þo þat beþ of colde complexioun, whenne þre dayes ben passyde, þou maiste zeuen to drynke a smal temperat, wyn, & afterwarde a lyte strengore; aftere þat þou art sykere, þat þere schal nozt comen to þe membre non Aposteme. But 24 his drynke schal be watyre of barlyche opere watire þat crommes of brede ben sodyn yn, wiþ opere colde watyr & namlye in sommere, & to þo þat beþ woundyde drynke watyre, opere ellys wiþ tenþe partye of wyn of pome garnettys, opere ellys wyth sixte partye of 28 wyn agreste þat is smal broske wyn, opere ellys þis is a perfyte drynke to wondys of þe hed & of synwys : Take a poteff of watyr & of barlyche y-meynde ʒ. iiij, juiube, sebesten, ana .ʒ ʒ, of drye prunes of damacynes ʒ j., sucre of rosis ʒ ij, sethe hem to þre 32 partyes ben consumed, & þenne lete hym drynken yt. Sothlye þis drynke ys alteratyff¹: þat ys to sigge chaungyng, ne hyt ne swel- lyth nozt. & yt latteþ fumosites to arysen to þe brayn. 12 Of mete

[12 fol. 58 b]

- to þe brayn. Of mete I seie : to him þat is of a moist complexioun & hoot / bi no maner wey schulde not be ʒouen fleisch, fisch, mylk, eiren, ne no comfortable mete, but if þei weren ouer-
- 4 comen wiþ to greet febilnes ; but he muste holde him content wiþ
ius of barli or ellis of ootis wiþ almaunde mylk ; outake¹ wounde
of þe heed, were² I ne apreue nouzt almaundis ne noon oper
vaperous fruyt : as notis eipir walnotis eiper avellanes ; for þei han
- 8 a maner fumose properte greuyng þe heed / he may eten amidoun,
betis, letuse, & breed I-waische wiþ sugre if þat he were feble. &
if þat he myzte not absteine him fro fleisch, ʒeue him fleisch of
smale chikenes & of smale briddis & kidis & lambis & calues
- 12 I-sauered with agresta eiper wiþ wynn of pome garnatis ; & pilke
dietyng he schal vse til he be sikir fro swellyng & þat þou schalt
knowe whanne þat akyng swellyng & extencioun of þe lyme ben
ceessid & þe wounde almost consowdid. If þat it was a wounde
- 16³ þat was sowid eiper brouzt togidere with byndinge, in whom
quytture was nouzt engendrid, & if þat it was a wounde maad
wiþ smytyng or ellis chaungid wiþ þe eyr, in whom it is nedeful
engendryng of quytture, þanne it is siker þat it schal not enpos-

A patient of a hot and moist complexion should eat vegetables only ;

Nota

if he cannot abstain from meat, chickens or veal may be given him.

[³ II. 39]

¹ outake, except. See *Catholicon Angl.*, p. 264, Oute take, note.

² were, error for where.

- 20 y sigge : þat to hym þat is of an hot & moiste complexioun, be non manere weye ne scholde nozt be ʒeffen flesch, ffysch, Mylke, eyren, ne no manere conuertyble mete, bot ʒif þey weryn ouere come with to gret febylness ; but he mos:e holde hym content with Iuse
- 24 of barlyche, opere ellys of otys wiþ almaunde mylke ; out take wounde of þe hed, where y ne Apreue nozt Almaundys, ne non opere vaporose frutys, as notys oper walnottys oper Avelanes, for þey hauen a manere fumose properte greuyng þe hed ; he may etyn
- 28 Amidoun, betes, letuse & bred y-wassche wiþ sucre, ʒif þat he were feble. And ʒif þat myzte nozt Abstynen hym from flesch, ʒif hym flesch of smale chyknes, & of smale briddys : as larkys & opere sengle briddys, & kyddes & lambres, & kalffes I-saveryde with
- 32 agresta, oper with wynn of pom garnett ; & þis dyetyng he schalt vse, tyl he be sykere from swellyng, & þat þou schalt y-knowe, whenne þat Akyng, swellyng & extencioun of þe lyme ben secyde & þe wounde is almost consouded. ʒif þat it was a wounde þat
- 36 was sowyde opere brouzt togedyre with byndyng, in whom quyter was nozt engendryde, and ʒif þat it was a wounde y-mad wyth smytinge—opere ellys y-chaungyde with þe eyre, in whom yt is ned-fuþ engendryng of quyter, þenne yt is sykere þat yt schal nouzt

Add. MS.

12,056.

Improve this diet when he gets better.

If he has a cold and dry complexion,

he should take meat from the beginning.

[² lf. 39, bk.]

Nota

If a bone has been broken, prescribe food which will repair the bones and ligaments.

tyme, whanne þat he makij quyttre plenteuousliche ; & whanne þat þe lyme is weel disposid & not to swolle ne drawe abroad & is wipoute akyngne ; þanne chaunge a litil & a litil his dietyngne til þat þou come to his dietyngne þat he was wont to vse tofore / & if þat þe pacient were of a cold complexioun & a drie & þat he hadde bi nature eijer bi custum a feble stomak, þanne it were nessessarie to 3eue him at þe bigynnyngne fleisch a litil sauerid with swete spicerie : as canel, gynger & opere semblable to hem, & to 3eue him in þe bigynnyngne Julep¹—þat is a sirup maad oonly of water & of sugre —& aftir iij. daies ben passid, wiyn, & boþe in þe oon complexioun & in þe opere complexioun. If þat a boon were broke wip a wounde or wipoute a wounde aboute þe eende of þe cure, þat is to seye, whanne þou art siker from apostyme & swellinge, it is good to 3eue norischaunt metis þat it myzte make a good & a strong re-
 peirement of þe boon þat was to-broke : as furmente soden in,³ potage of flour weel soden & wip þe extremytes of beestis feet & swyne groynes & oxen wombe weel soden & bi siche opere þingis bi whom a good ligament & a strong may weel be engendrid / Wherefore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe his dietyngne, vertues of coplexciouns, agis, regiouns, consuetudes & þe tymes of þe 3eer þat

¹ *Julep*, med. Lat. *julapium*, Fr. *julep*, Pers. *goulāb*. See *Skeat, Et. Diet.*

³ *in*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[⁴ fol. 59 a]

enposteme, whenne þat he makyþ quyter plentyuouslyche ; & whenne þat þe lyme ys wel dysposyde & nozt toswolle, ne y-drawen abroad. & ys wipouten akyngne, & þanne chaunge a lytel & a lytel hys dyetyngne, tyl þat þou come to hys dyetyngne, þat he was wont to vse tofore. And 3if þat þe pacient were of a colde complexioun & a drye & þat he hadde by nature opere by costeme a feble stomak, þanne yt were necessarye to 3euen hym at þe bygynnyngne flesch a lytel y-saueryde with swote spysorye : as kanell gyngeffre & opere semblable to hem & to 3euen hym in þe bygynnyngne Julep—þat is a syripe y-mad only of watyre & of sucre—& aftere þre dayes ben passyde, wyn, and boþe in þe on complexioun & in þe opere complexioun. 3if þat a bon were y-broke, wip a wounde ore wipouten a wounde, aboute þe ende of þe cure, þat is to sigge, whenne þou art sykere from a posteme & swellynge, yt is gode to 3if noryschande mete, þat it myzte make a gode & a stronge repayment of þe bone þat was tobroke : as with ffurmente y-sode, & potage of floure wel y-sode, & with þe extremetes of bestys, as fette & swynes groynes & oxe wombys wel y-soden, & with swiche opere þynges by whom a gode ligamente & a stronge may wel be engendrede. Where fore yt is necessarye to a surgyne to knowe in hys dyetyngne, vertues of complexiouns, Ages, regeouns consuetudes & þe tymes of þe 3ere, þat

he mowe change his dietyng afir þat dyuerse condicioun. Ne he schal not afir o maner of counseil procede in his dietyng.

THe .xj. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste ¶ Capm. xj^m.
4 tretis.

is of olde woundis þat ben maad of kuttinge or of open-
yng of a postyme, or ellis of a wounde þat is not heeled in
his tyme, or ellis of sum maner fleinge, or of brewnyng, or
8 of to greet heete, or of to greet drouthe, or of to greet cold
constreynyng, or of to greet aboundance of mater corumpinge /
For euery olde wounde hauyng rotnes or wire¹ þat is þinne
venymous quyttir or ony opir þing þan good quytture is not clepid
12 a wounde, but it is clepid *vlcus* / Rowland & Rogerine & þe
moste ²partie of men þat ben now, clepen it a festre³ or a cankre,
but it is neipir festre ne cankre, but festre & cankre han difference
fro þis / þis *vlcus* as a propre þing hap difference from a þing þat
16 is comoun / for ech festre & ech cankre þat is woundid, is clepid
vlcus, but it ne schewiþ not þat ech *vlcus* is clepid cankre or festre

off olde vere-
lent woundes

Various
causes of
ulcers.

Rowland &
Rogeryn
[² ff. 40]

Ulcer is a
more general
term than
fistula or
cancer.

¹ wire, Lat. virus.

³ festre, fester in Mätzner Dict.; O.Fr. flestre, festre; Lat. fistula.
Comp. N. E. fester vb.

he mowe chaungen his dyetyng, aftere þat dyverse condycioun askyþ. Ne he ne schal nozt aftere on manere of counseyle proceden
20 in hys dietyng.

Add. MS.
12,056.

¶ The xi. Chapitle of þe þridde techyng of þe firste
tretys is of olde woundes.

¶ Olde woundes ben mad of kuttinge oþer of openyng of a
24 posteme, oþere ellys of a wounde þat is nozt helyde in his tyme, oþer
ellys of sum manere fleynge oþer of brewnyng, oþer of to grete hete,
oþer of to grete drovþe, oþer to gret colde constreynyng, oþere of to
grete Abundaunce of moist mater corumpyng. For euery olde
28 wounde, hauyng rotenesse oþere *virus* þat is þenne venemy quyter,
oþer eny oþer þyng þenne gode quyter nys nozt y-clepyde wounde,
but is y-clepyde *vlcus* þat is an olde wounde. And of þis *Vlcus*,
Rouland & Rogerine, & þe most partye of men þat ben now, clepyde
32 it festre, oþer cancre. But it is neipere festre ne cancre, but festre &
cankre hadde dyfference from þis. ⁴ *Vlcus*, as a propre þyng hath
dyfference, from a þyng, þat is comyn; for euerye festre & euerye
cankere, þat is y-woundyde, ys y-clepyde *Vlcus*, but yt ne syweth
36 nozt þat euerye *Vlcus*, ys clepyde cankre oþere festre, as y schal

[⁴ fol. 50 b]

Auicena
distinguishes
six kinds of
ulcers.

as I schal telle openliche in ech chapitle bi him-silf / Auicena seip,
pat^r per ben .vj. maner of þis vlcus : summe pat^r ben venemous,
summe hore, summe depe, summe cauernose eiper hid, summe
corosif, summe rotin, summe ambulatif^r þat is spredynge abroad, & 4
summe harde to consowde / Of þese maners tofore seid, summe¹
han acordynge with festris in tokenes & in foormes as venemous &
holow; & summe han acordynge with cankris as spredynge abroad
& fretynge him-silf & nepeles þei han difference, as it^r is conteyned 8
in þe chapitle of cankris I-woundid & of festre. & alle þese tofore
seid han difference fro wounde / for in a wounde per is whizt^r
quytture & euene in alle hise parties & hole and nouzt^r departid &
wipoute stenche. þis maner of quytture is engendrid of goodnes 12
[^r 1f. 40, bk.] & kyndely heete, & is perfiztly defied / But venym rotynes² & a
cruste, & al opere superfluyte of olde woundis ben engendrid of a
strong^r vnkyndly heete.

vlcus viru-
lentum

A uenym vlcus is in whom aboundiþ venym sutil & liquid. If 16
pat^r it^r be reed or zelu, or oon partie redisch and scharp bitynge þe
lyme, it^r signifief lordschipe of a strong^r heete.

vlcus
sordidum

An hori elde wounde þat^r haþ summe greete crustis, or ellis a 20
wroting^r, sum gret^r proud fleisch to hize.³

¹ MS. *summen*.

³ *proud fleisch to hize*. Lat.: *carnem superfluum grossam*. Proud flesh,
Fungosity. Dunglison.

Add. MS. 12,056. tellen opynlyche in euerye chapyteþ be hym-self. Auesene seyth
þat þere ben sixe manere of þese Vlcus, for sum ben Venemy, sum
hory, some depe, some cauernouse opere y-hud, sum corosyff, sum
rotyne, some Ambulatyff—þat is spredynge abroad, & some hard 24
to consouden. Of þese manerys tofore seyde, some hath acordynge
with festres in toknes & in fourmes : as Venemy & holwy, & sum
han acordynge with cancre : as spredynge abroad & fretynge hym
self. And napeles þey hadde difference as yt is conteynede in þe 28
chapytelles of cancre y-woundyde & of festre. & alle þese tofore
seyde habbitfi difference from a wounde, for in a wounde þere ys
whyte quyter & euene in al his partyes & hol & nozt departyde,
—& wil/outhe stynke. þis manere of quyter is engendrede, of 32
godnesse of kendlye hete & is perfitlye deffeyde. But vemyn,
rottenesse, & croste, & alle opere superfluyte of olde woundes
ben engendred of a straunge vnkendlye hete. A venemy Vlcus is,
in whom habundeþ venym sotyl & liquydy. 3if þat yt be red opere 36
zolwe, opere a partye redyssche, & scharpe bytynge þe lyme, hit
synifief lordschipe of straunge hete. An hory olde wounde ys
y-clepyd, þat haþ sum grete crostes, opere ellys sum grete awrotynge

A deep vlcus is þat, þat haþ a greet depnes & an holow; & vlcus profundum
 þeraunter crokinge.

A wrotiḡ vlcus is þat of his malice fretiþ bi cause þat þe vlcus
 4 blood is sent to him so scharpe / Galien seiþ: þat scharp blood not ^{corosium}
 oonli corrodip [noz]t*—fleisch in woundis, but also hool fleisch / Galien.

A rotid vlcus is stynkyng, hauyng a strong heete in his vlcus
 ground, & out of him passiþ a stynkyng smel, eiper smoke, as putridum
 8 doip out of fleisch þat is rotid / þilke¹ word 'stynk' I vndirstonde
 it bi my maner witt: sich breeþ þat comeþ out of a bodies ende,
 whanne a bodi breeþ wiþ þe mouþ in frosty wedir, þat men taken
 a saumple, bifor to sle her lac dre / þanne whanne þou myzt se þe
 12 breeþ of þin owne ende comyng out at þi mouþ in þe eir.

A walkyng / vlcus is þat walkiþ hidirward & þidirward, & vlcus ambu-
 neþeles he profoundiþ nouzt depe ²into þe ground. lativum

An vlcus þat is hard to helin is he þat for his yuel propirte þat vlcus diffi-
 16 is sent to him fro þe bodi lettiþ him to heele. cilis.

& for to heelen ech maner of þese vlcus, þer ben manye dyuers Cura vlcoris
 rulis / þe firste rule is þat þei moun not be heelid, but þe super- .1.
 fluytees þat ben in hem ben I-dried / þe secunde rule / but if þat .2.
 20 bodi ouþer þe membre be oute of his naturel complexioun, or þan
 þou þenke to heele þilke vlcus þou muste bryng azen to his diete

¹ This curious explanation of the word *stynk* is an insertion of the scribe.
 Read: *ste her laddre*. One letter half erased in *laddre*. *Ste*, see *Stratm.*
Dict., O.E. *stigan*.

proud flesch to hyze. A depe Vlcus is þat þat haþ a gret depnesse Add. MS.
 & an holwe, & þeraunter crokyng. A wrotiḡ vlcus is þat of 12,056.
 24 hys malyce wroteþ, bycause þat þe blod þat is sent to hym, is to
 scharpe. Galien: scharpe blod nozt onlyche cordyth nozt *fleisch in
 woundes, but also hol flesch. A rotyde vlcus is stynkyng, hab-
 byng a straunge hete in his gronde, & out of hym passith out a
 28 stynkyng smel oþere smoke, as þere dop ³out of flesch þat is [f. fol. 60 a]
 y-rotyde. A walkyng Vlcus is þat walkeþ hyderwarde & þedir-
 warde & napeles he profundeþ nozt depe into þe gronde. An
 Vlcus þat is hard to helyn, is he þat for his yuele proprete, þat is
 32 sende to hym fro al þe body, latteþ hym to hele. & forto helyn
 euery manere of þese hulkes, þere ben manye dyverse rulis. þe
 firste rule ys þat þey mowe nozt ben helyde, but þe superfluytes
 þat ben in hem ben dried. þe secunde rule ys þat zif þat þe body
 36 oþere membre be out of hys natureþ complexioun, ere þan þou
 þynke to hele þilke Vlcus, þou moste bryngen azeyne to hys due

3. complexioun distemprid þilke bodi oupir membre. þe þridde rule is : þat if þe lyuere eipir þe splene ben I-greued, as it happiþ ofte tymes in olde woundis, þou muste rectificen hem / þe .iiij rule is : þat þe qualitees & þe quantitees of humouris schulden be temperid 4 wiþ blood-letyng & purgaciouns & with good gouernaile / & if þat þe eir be yuel, þe sike man schal be chaungid into good eyr / & whanne þat þe leche haþ tofore seen alle þese þingis, þanne he may go to his cure / 8

If the ulcer is virulent, wash the wound with a wasching,

Nota¹
[³ ff. 41, bk.]

and apply an unguentum

& if þe vlcus be virulent, þat is to seie venemi, loke if þat þe venym þat goiþ out be redisch or zelowisch, & if þat þe lyme haue ony maner heete; þanne waische it wiþ water of rosis & barlich. alim² & balaustia & lentiles with hony³ symple eiper compounned 12 ben soden yn, & lete þis watir peersen to þe depþe of þe wounde; & if þe virus be wiþoute heete & þe membre haue noon heete, waische it wiþ watir or with wiyn þat mirre wormode,⁴ horhone,⁵ sauge,⁶ pimpernelle⁷ hony symple or compounned ben soden yn / Clense þe 16 wounde perfitliche & engendre fleisch & afterward consowde it wiþ þis propre oynement þat þi⁸ olde foule venym woundis, eiper

¹ MS. *Nona*.

² *alim*, Latin: aluminis.

⁴ *wormode*, absinthium. O.E. wormôd, M.E. wormwood.

⁵ *horhone*, Marrubium vulgare. See Britten, *Diet*.

⁶ *sauge*, salvia.

⁷ *pimpernella*, Pimpinella.

⁸ *þi*, error for *in*.

Add. MS. 12,056. complexioun distempride⁹ þilke body oþer membre. þe þridde rule ys, þat zif þat þe lyfere oþere splene ben y-greuyde, as yt happyth 20 ofte tymes in olde woundes, þou most retyien hem. The fourth rule ys: þat þe qualites & quantytes of humours scholde be tempride with blodletyng, & purgatiouns & with gode governaylle; and zif þat þe eyre be yuel, þe syke man schal be chaungyde into gode 24 eire. And whanne þat þe leche haþ tofore seye alle þese þynges, þenne he may go to hys cure. & zif þat þe Vlcus be Virulente, þat is to sigge Venemy, loke zif þat þe Venym þat goþ out be redyssch oþere zolwe, & zif þat the lyme haue enye manere hete; & þenne 28 wassche it wiþ water þat rosys & barlyche Alum & balaustia & lentilis with honye symple oþere componed ben sodyn In. And lete þis watere persen to þe depthe of þe wounde. And zif þe Virus be withouten hete & þe membre haue non hete, wassche it with water 32 oþere wyþ wyn, þat Mirre, wermot, horhowne, sauge, pypiruel, honye symple oþer componed ben sodyn In. Clense þe wounde perfitlye & engendre flesch & afterwarde consoud it with þis propre oynement, þat in olde foule venemy woundys oþer Vlcus engend- 36

⁹ At the margin.

vlcus, engendriþ fleisch, clensip & heeliþ as auicen & rasis witnessen /
 recipe litargium¹ as myche as þou wolt & stampe it in a morter² &
 putte wiþ him good oile of rosis & vynegre now on & now þe oþere,
 4 alwey stiring, til it be perfiztly an oynement & come into þe foorme
 of an oynement. & þis oynement is clepid litargirum nutritum,
 þat is to sai litarge nurschid, þat is profitable in manye causis /
 afterward take of pilke litarge norischid .vij. parties & of alim,
 8 & of balaustie or ellis in þe stide of balaustie wormes of þe erþe
 brent, bras brent, leed, gallis, sandragoun chathinie³ argenti .ana.
 as myche as is xij parties of al þe oynement; medle alle togidere
 and ^[4 lf. 42] make an oynement / þis oynement schal be leid wiþinne þe
 12 wounde & al aboute þe wounde; for it driep þe wounde & engendriþ
 good fleisch & consowdiþ / Take hede to þis rule, þat in heelynge
 of alle olde woundis after þat þei ben clensyd, aboute þe oynement
 it is good to leie a lynnyn cloþ, to distende abrood on of þe
 16 mundificatiuis of ony which þat schal be told in þe antidotarie, &
 leie aboute aboute pilke vlcus specialy from þe ouer partie fro whens
 humouris fleen, a defensif of bole armonyak & terra sigillata; þat
 and add a
 T^b
 defensif
 dressing.

¹ "Lithangyros, Litharge or Silver-glet, the frothy Dross, or Scum that
 arises in the purifying of Silver with Lead."—Phillips.
² MS. § putte it in a morter, scribal insertion.
³ "Cathima est minera de qua elicetur aurum vel argentum."—Sinonoma
 Barth. p. 14. Cathimia: argenti spuma, Cartelli Dict. ⁵ a sign like Nota.

reth flesch, clansyth & helyth as Auecene & Rases wytnessith,
 20 litargium nutritum. R litarge as myche as þou wylt & stampe it
 & put it in a mortere & ^[6 fol. 60 b] putte wiþ hym gode oyle of roses &
 vynegre, now þe on now þe oþere, alwey sterynge, tyl it be perfit-
 lyche augmentyd & come to þe fourme of an oynement. & þis
 24 oynement—litargirum nutritum—þat is to sigge litarge y-noryssched,
 þat is profitable in many casis. Afterwarde take of pilke litarge
 viij parties, & of alym, & of balaustie oþere ellys, in þe stede of
 balaustye, wormys of þe erþe y-brend, brend bras, brend led, gallis,
 28 sanke dragoun, cathimie, Argenti ana as mychel as ys .xij parties
 of alle þe oynement, and medle al togedre, & make an Oygne-
 ment. þis oynement schal be leyde withynne þe woundes & aboute
 þe wounde, for yt dryeth þe wounde, & engendriþ gode flesch &
 32 consoud. Take hede to þis rule, þat in helynge of alle olde
 woundes, aftere þat þey ben clansyde, aboute þe oynement yt is
 gode of one a lynnyn cloþ, forto dystende abrode on of þe mundyfi-
 catyfes of hony whiche þat schulle be tolde in þe antidotarye. And
 36 leye aboute aboute pilke vlcus, & specialiche from þe ouere partye,
 fro whom humores flotyn, a⁷ defensif of bol Armonyake & terra

⁷ MS. §.

T
R

is maad on þis maner / take bole armoniak .̄3̄ j. terra sigillata. ̄3̄ ſ
oile of rosis & vynegre þat' suffisiþ, I-now₃ do in þe oon now in þe
oper til þe oynement' be ful maad & liquide I-nou₃ / so þat' of þe
oile of rosis be double as myche as of vynegre / þis defensiv a 4
membre fro corrupcioun & also vlcus þat' he sprede nouzt abroad /

In a (2) sordid
ulcer remove
the scurf.

An hory wounde shal be heelid, in remeuynge away þe crust'
eipere filþe þat' is in him wiþ poudre of affodill, þat' schal be said in
þe eende of þis booke, ouþer wiþ sum oper mundificatiuis; aftir 8
consowde it' wiþ consolidaciouns /

[f. 42, bk.]

In a (3) deep
ulcer cleanse
the wound,

A deep wounde is heelid ¹wiþ castynge into þe deppe of þe
wounde with an instrument' maad to þe lijknesse of a clisterie, ony
of þe waischingis þat' ben seid in þe venemy wounde aboue, aftir 12
þat' þe disposicioun of þe membre askiþ of heete or of cold. &
aftir þat', he is clensid in castynge in watre ouþir wiyn þat' mastik
or frank encense is soden ynne & in leggyng' wiþouten oon of þe
mundificatiuis of hony þat' schal be seid aftir. & also it' is good to 16

and make the
pus discharge
itself freely.

ordeyne þe lyme so þat' þe mouþ of þe wounde hange downward, &
streyn þi ligature at þe ground of þi wounde, & bynde it' losely at
þe mouþ of þe wounde; also it' were good, if þat' it' myzte be, þat'
þer were maad a newe wounde in þe place þat' is moost' hangynge, 20
þat' þe rotynes & þe quytture myzte þe bettere goon out'; for so
þilke vlcus myzte þe sunnere be heelid /

Add. MS.
12,056.

sigillata þat is mad on þys manere: R bol armoneake ̄3̄ j terre
sigillate 3 ſ., oyle of rosis & vynegre, þat suffyseþ, now do in þe on, 24
now þe oper, tyl þe oynement be ful mad & lyquyde ynou₃; so
þat of þe oyle of roses be duple as myche as of þe vynegre. þis
diffensiff' defendiþ a membre fro corrupcioun, & also Vlcus þat he
sprede nozt abroad. An hory wonde ys y-helyde, in remeffynge 28
away þe croste opere þe fylthe þat is in hym with poudre of affodylles
shal be sayde in þe ende, opere with sum opere mundificatyfes;
afterwarde consoude yt with consolydatyfes. A depe wounde ys

[f. 61 a]

y-mad to þe lyknesse of a clisteyre, any of þe wasschynges þat beþ
seyde in þe Venemy wounde aboue, after þat þe disposisioun of þe
membre askeþ of hete oper of cold. And after þat he is y-clansyde,
in castynge in water opere in wyn þat mastyke opere frankensence 36
ys y-soden yn, & in leggyng without, on of þe mundificatyfes of
hony, þat schal be sayde aftere. & also it is gode to ordeyne þe
lyme, so þat þe mouth of þe wounde honge dunwarde, & streyn þi
ligature at þe grounde of þy wounde & bynde it looslye at þe mouþ 40
of þe wounde. And also yt were gode, zif þat it myzte be, þat þere
were made a newe wounde in þe place þat is most hongynge þat þe

A wroting¹ vlcus is heclid in leggyng^e specialiche aboute him ^{(4) In a corroding ulcer, use an obtundens,} colde pingis whiche þat ben² obtunden or casten bach þe scharpnes of þe same vlcus; & also with amendyng^e, as with metis & drynkis, ^{an appropriate diet, purging,} 4 þe scharpnes of þe same blood, & in purgyng^e þe reed colere; & wip anoyntyng^e wip colde oynementis & consolidatiuis. & þerto ^{and the vnguentum album rasis} ^[3 lf. 43] ^{(5) In a stinking ulcer use a lotion of ydromel, and a mundificatif.} 8 A stynkyng^e wounde is heclid in remeuyng^e away þe stinche & þe rotnes; & þerto is myche worþ a waisching^e of ydromel: þat is hony & watir soden togidere wip mirre, & a mundificatif³ maad wip ius of wormod & barly mele & hony & mirre, þat is maad on þis 12 maner / take ius of wormod. ʒ iij. of hony. ʒ iij. barli mele ʒ ij. R of mirre ana. ʒ j. & compounne hem togidere & fille þe wounde wipinneforþ with lynnet³ of lynn^e cloop. & if þat wormes ben engendrid in þe wounde, sle hem wip þe ius of calamynte ouper wip 16 þe ius of þe leues of pechis, or ellis persicarie,³ eiper wip decoccioun ^{Nota bene} of elebre. & whanne þat a perfyzt mundificatif is maad, engendre fleisch & consowde as it is seid tofore /

A walkyng^e vlcus is heclid wip flebotomie & formacie⁴ þat is ^{(6) In a walking ulcer use phlebotomy and purging,}

¹ wrotyng, error for fretyng.

² ben, erroneously inserted. ³ persicarie glossed colorag. See Notes.

⁴ O.Fr. farmacie = purgation. See Littré, *Dict.*

20 rotnesse & þe quytere myzte þe betyre gone out, for so þilke Vlcus ^{Add. MS.} myzte sumnere be helyde. A fretyng^e vlcus ys y-helyde, in leggyng^e ^{12,056.} specialiche aboute hym colde þynges, whiche þat obtunden oþer castyn bach þe scharpnesse of þe same Vlcus, & also in amendyng^e 24 with metys & with drynkes the scharpnesse of þe same blod, & in purgyng^e þe rede colore & with anoyntyng^e wip colde oynementes & consolidatifes, & þerto is myche worþ vnguentum album Rasis, þat schal be told in þe antidarye. A stynkyng^e wounde ys 28 y-helyde in remeuyng^e away þe stenche & þe rotnesse, & þerto ys myche worth a wasschyng^e of ydromel þat is hony & water y-sode togidre wip mirre, & a mudyficatiff³ y-mad with ius of wermot & barly mele & hony & mirre, þat is made on þis manere: take jus of 32 wermot .ʒ iij, of hony ʒ iij, of barly mele .ʒ ij, of mirre ʒ j., compone hem togedire, & fulle þe wounde, wipyrne forth wip lynete of lynn^e clop. & ʒif þat wormys ben engendride in þe wounde, sle hem wip jus of calamynte, oþere with þe juse of þe leuys 36 of pechys, oþere ellys persicarie, oþer with decoccion ^[5 fol. 61 b] of ellebre. And whanne þat a perfyte mudyficioun is mad engendre fleisch & consoude, as yt is seyde tofore. A walkyng^e Vlcus ys y-helyde with flebotomye & ffarmasye þat is laxatyfes purgyng^e þe colere &

laxatiuis purgynge þe colere & brent^t humouris, & in leggyng aboute a defensif^t of bole & terra sigillata þat^t is seid tofore in þis chapitle; & with oon of þe cold mundificatiuis, & sumtyme þou muste cauterise þe vlcus aboue with an instrument^t of gold. For þilke maner of 4 brennyng rectifieþ weel þe membre /

[1 If. 43, bk.] þe cause whi þat^t summe vlcus¹ is hard to consowde is, for an yuel disposicioun þat^t is hid in þe bodi, & þerfore it^t nedip to rectifien þe membre & þe bodi as I haue seid tofore. & if^t þe cause be vpcn,² 8 oon oper manye, do awei þilke cause or ellis þe manye causis, or þat^t þou go to þis princípal cure / þese ben þe causis þat^t letten consowdyng of olde woundis: au yuel disposicioun of^t al þe bodi as ydropisie; or ellis an yuel disposicioun of^t þe lyuere as if^t þat^t he be 12 to feble, as to hoot^t or to cold, to moist^t or to drie, wiþ mater or wiþoute mater, as wiþ to greet^t hardenes; or ellis þe splene is to feble to purge þe malancolient^t blood; or ellis to myche blood or ellis to litil blood; or ellis þe veynes ben to fulle of^t blood þat^t goon 16 down to þe vlcus; or elles þat^t glandeles þat^t ben kirenelis þat^t ben in þe ground³ þat^t senden down mater to the vlcus þat^t is in þe pies & in þe leggis; or ellis þe lippis of^t þe vlcus ben to grete; or ellis myche fleisch; or ellis mys-ordynauce of^t dietyng or ellis an 20

The healing is delayed if

Nota.
the patient suffers from dropsy, the liver,

the spleen, the blood,

or the glands,

or an inappropriate diet or medicine,

² vpon, error for open.

³ ground. See grynd, page 41, note 3.

Add. MS. 12,056. brende humoures, & in leggyng aboute a defensif^t of bol & terra sigillata þat^t is seide tofore in þe same Chapytle, & with on of þe colde mundyficatyfes & sum tyme men most cauterise þe Vlcs aboue with an instrument of gold. for þilke manere of brennyng 24 rectifieþ wel þe membre. þe cause why þat^t sum Vlcs is hard to consoude is, for an yuel disposicion ys y-hydde in þe bodye, & þerfore it nedyth to retyfien þe membre & þe body as y haue seide tofore. And 3if þe cause be opene, on opere manye, do aweye þilke 28 causes oper ellys þo manye causes, ere þanne þou go to þe princípal cure. þese ben þe causes þat^t lettyn consowdyng of olde woundes, an yuele disposisioun of alle þe body: as dropsye, opere ellys an iuele disposisioun of þe lyuere: as 3if þat^t he be to feble, as to hot opere 32 to colde, to moiste opere to drye, with mater ore withouten matere, as wiþ to grete hardnesse; opere ellys þe spleen is to feble to purge þe malancolyent blod; opere ellys to myche blod, opere ellys to acute blod; opere ellys þe veynes beþ to ful of blod, þat^t goþ down 36 to þe Vlcs; opere ellys curnellys þat^t glandeles, þat^t beþ kurnellys þat^t beþ in þe grynde, þat^t sendip down matere to þe Vlcs þat^t is in þe thyres & þe legges, opere ellys þe lippes of þe Vlcs beþ to grete & hard, opere ellys to myche flesch, opere ellys mysordeynninge of 40

- inconuenient^t medicyn to þat^t membre or ellis þe lyme þat^t is hirt
 haþ an yuel discrasie; or ellis þilke vlcus is in an yuel place as in
 þe eende of þe ¹elbowze; or ellis þe vlcus is al round; or ellis þe ^[1 lf. 44]
 4 boon þat^t is vndir þe vlcus is corrupt / Alle þese tofore seid letten
 vlcus to be heclid / wherfore it^t nedip þe, to take kepe to alle þese
 þingis tofore seid, to amende al þe bodi & namely þo lymes þat^t han
 principalte in mannes body, & kepen alle þe lymes þat^t ben in her
 8 naturel disposicioun with þingis þat^t ben acordinge to her naturel
 disposicioun, þo / & if^t þei ben discrasid, remeue þilke discrasie wiþ
 þat^t, þat^t is contrarie to þe discrasie / also tempre þe qualite & þe
 quantite of þe blood & streyne þe veyne if^t þat^t þou brynge þidir
 12 blood, or ellis if^t þat^t it^t be possible latt^t þe blood away; vndo þe
 glandeles þat^t ben kirkels þat^t sendin þider mater, & remeue deed
 fleesch, smale þe lippis of woundis þat^t ben greete & kutte hem
 away if^t þat^t þou myzt^t do noon opirwise; amende his dietynge; &
 16 brynge aȝen þe rondnes of þilke vlcus into a long forme aftir þe
 lenkþe of þe membre with a knyft hoot brennyng / but if^t a veyne
 or a senewe lette. & þou schalt remoue þe boon þat^t is corrupt^t on
 þis maner: in kutyng away al þe fleisch & þe boon þat^t is corrupt^t
 20 with an hoot ²iren, or wiþ a medicyn þat^t schal be seid in þe laste
 eende of þis booke, or ellis it^t is bettere to don it^t away wiþ hoot^t
 dyetyng, oþer ellys an vncoenable medycine to þilke membre, <sup>Give an ob-
long shape to
a round ulcer,</sup>
 oþer ellis þe lyme þat^t ys y-hurt haþ an yuele discrasie, oþere ellys
 24 þilke Vlcus is an yuele place—as in þe ende of þe elbowe, oþere ellys
 þe Vlcus ys al rounde, oþere ellys þe bon þat^t is vndir ³þe vlcus is
 corrupte. Alle þese tofore seide letteþ Vlcus to by helyde, where-
 fore yt nedip þe, to take kepe to alle þese thynges tofore seyde, &
 28 to amendyn alle þe body, & namlye þe lymes þat^t habbiþ principalte
 in mannes body, & kepe alle þe lymes þat^t beþ in here natureff
 disposisioun wiþ þynges þat^t beþ acordynge to here naturel disposi-
 sioun, & zif þey ben discrasiede, remywe þilke discrasie with þat,
 32 þat^t is contrarie to þilke discrasie. Also tempre þe qualyte & þe
 quantyte of þe blod, & streyne þe veynes zif þat^t þey brynge þedire
 blod. Oþer ellys zif it is possible, lete þe blod aweye. Vndo
 glandeles, þat^t beþ kurneff þat^t sendeþ þedire mater, & remywe ded
 36 flesch, smale lippes of þe woundes þat^t beþ grete, & kytte hem away,
 zif þou maiste do non oþere weys; amende his dietyng, & brynge
 aȝeyne þe roundnesse of þilke Vlcus in to a longe fourme, aftre þe
 lengþe of þe membre, wiþ a knyft hot brennyng, but zif þat^t a
 40 synwe oþere a Veyne latte. And þou schalt remywe þe bon, þat^t is
 corupe on þis manere: unwrey al þe bon, in kutyng away al þe
 flesch,*—þe bon þat^t is corrupte with an yren, oþer wiþ a medycine
 þat^t schal be seyde in þe laste ende of þis boke. Oþer ellys it is

or if the condition of the wound is bad.

Remedial measures—

remove the dyscrasia, regulate the patient's blood,

give an ob-long shape to a round ulcer,

remove any rotten bone by means of a hot iron—

[1 lf. 44, bk.]

Add. MS. 12,056.

[2 fol. 62 a]

Nota. iren. & whanne þat þe boon þat is corrupt¹ is vnkeuerid, schaue it not² as manye men doon, but³ touche harde þat boon with hoot iren; & aftirward heelde on þilke boon hoot oile of rosis, & leie on oon of þe mundificatiuis þat ben in þe antidotarie whiche þat wolen⁴ remoue þe rotid boon wipoute violence / For vndirstonde weel þou þat þou clense þe rotid boon wip schauynge or wip filynge with violence, neuere þe lattere kynde wole afterward don away a schelle of þilke same boon, nouzt⁵ azenstondynge þi schauynge & þi rasyng /⁸ wherfore in remeuyng þilke boon þou multipliest⁶ þi traueile & makist⁷ newe² mundificacion to þe fulle³ & þerof may come ofte tymes an yuel festre. An inconuenient⁸ medicyn is amendid in consideryng þe complexioun of al þe body & þe complexioun of þe¹² lyme & þe gre of þe medicyn; for if þat þe membre be drie as þe eeris & al bony & grestly lymes, & þei han greet⁹ putride & rotschipe, þanne þou nedist a ful drie medicyn / & if þat þe bodi or þe lymes⁴ ben mene bitwene fatnes & lenenes þat is neiþer to fatt¹⁶ ne to leene, þanne þou nedist a medicyn þat is in kynde mesurableliche dryng / & if þat þe bodi or þe membre be natureliche moist, & if þat he haue a litil putrede or rotschipe, þanne þou nedist a medicyn

If the medicine was not
scrapping and scratching
generally give
rise to fistule.
[¹ If. 45]

¹ MS. *corrupt*.

² *newe*, error for *no*.

³ *to þe fulle*. Lat.: ad plenum. See *Polychr.*, iii. 443, he forgaf him the trespas at the fulle.

Add. MS. 12,056. bettere to don it away with hot yren & whanne þat þe bon þat is corrupte is vnkeueride, schaue yt nozt as many men don, but touche harde þilke bon with hot yren & afterwarde helde on þilke bon hot oyle of rosys, & leye on one of þe mundyficytes þat bep in þe antidotarye, whiche þat wylle remywe þe rotyde bon withoute violence. Ffor vndirstond wel, þawz þat þou clanse þe rotyde bon with schauynge opere wip vylinge with vyolence, neuere þe laterer kynde wyl afterwarde don awaye a schelle of þilke same bon, nozt azenstondynge þy schauynge & þy rasyng; wherfore in remefyng þilke bon, þou multiplyest þy traueil, & þou makyste no mundificatioun to þe folle; & þerof may come ofte tymes, an yuele festre. And inconuenient medicine ys amendyde, in consyderyng þe complexioun⁴ of alle þe bodye, & þe complexioun of þe lyme, & þe³² gre of þe medicine; for 3if þat þe membre be drye as þe erys, noseþrylles & alle bony & grestly lemes, & þey han grete putrede & rotschippe, þenne þou nedyste a ful drye medycyne; & 3if þat þe body opere þe membre be naturellyche moist, 3if þat he haue a lyte³⁶ putrede opere roteschippe, þanne thou nedyste a medycine þat ys lyte dryng. And 3if þat the body opere þe lymes ben mene betwene fatnesse and lenesse—þat nys neiþere to fatte ne to leue, þenne þou nedyst a medycine þat is in kynde, mesurableliche dryng. 40

[⁵ fol. 62 b]

þat is litil drynge / & if þat .ij. membrs ben in complexioun appropriate,
 I-liche euene, & þe toon haue myche quytture, & þe toþer litil change it
 quytture, he þat haþ þe more quytture nedip þe driere medicyn / & according to
 the patient's
 complexion.
 4 *he þat haþ but litil quytture, him nedip his medicyn I-maad nouzt
 fulliche so drie / þerfore it nedip bi mesure þat þou kepe naturel
 þing wiþ þing þat is acordinge to þe same naturel þing / & also
 remeue with mesurable contrariouste þing þat is azens kynde / But
 8 þe quantite of medicyns þat schulden be leid to þe soor as galien *Galien.*
 witnessip mai not wiþ lettris be writen / nepeles it sufficiþ þat a
 man diuise þe medicyn after¹ þe complexioun mai bere / For kynde
 þat is wondirful, fullfillip þing þat is absent, & þat. þat is to myche,
 12 castip away, but if þat it be to myche azen kynde ; & þanne kynde
 muste nede faile in his kyndely worchinge / A medicyn mundificatif
 2 & exciccatif þat is nessessarie in ech old holowe wounde,—³ [² if. 45, bk.]
 & þat may be knowe bi þis maner / if þat þe medicyn make
 16 þinne quytture & blodi & make þe wounde holower, þanne he
 schulde be, þanne is medicyn to scharpe / & if þe quytture be picke
 & towz, þanne is þe medicyn to liþe / & also anoþer signe þat þe
 A thin pus, a
 discoloured
 skin, a burn-
 ing sensation
 show that the
 medicine was
 too dry.

¹ N. E. Dict. s. v., "after C. 2. c" gives later references for the use of
after conj. = according as, without relative particle.

³ Both MSS. omit the end of the passage. Lat. "Medicina vero mundi-
 ficatiua & exiccatiua — aut est fortior, quam conuenit, aut debilior com-
 petenti." Then, as a heading to the next passage : "Significatio si medicina
 est magis sicca quam oportet." The *þat* in *þat may be knowe*, refers to this
 omitted heading.

And zif þat two membrys ben in complexioun i-lyche euene, & þe *Add. MS.*
 20 on haue myche quyter & þe opere lyte quyter, he þat haþ þe more 12,046.
 quyter nedyth þe dreiere medycine,*—afterwarde it nedip by
 mesure þat þou kepe naturel þynge, with þynge þat is acordynge to
 þe same nature, and also to remeffe with mesurable contraryouste
 24 þynge þat is azeyns kynde. But þe quantite of medicyns þat
 scholde⁴ be leyde to þe sore, as Galien witnesseth, ne may nozt with
 lettres ben wryten. Neuer þe latere it suffisith, þat a man defye þe
 medycine, aftere þe complexioun may bere ; ffor kynde þat is
 28 wondirful fulfyller þynge þat is absent & þat þat is to myche
 castyth awaye, but zif þat it be to myche azeyne kynde ; & þanne
 kynde most nedys faylen in his kendlye wirchynge. A medycine
 mundyficatyff & exsiccatif þat is necessarie in eche olde holwe,
 32 vlcere,*—may be knowe by þis manere : zif þat þe medycine make
 þenne quyter & bloody & make þe wounde holwere þan he scholde
 be, þenne ys þe medycine to acute ; & zif þe quyter be pikke &
 towz, þenne ys þe medycine to lythye ; and also an opere⁵ signe þat

⁴ MS. *þat scholde*, twice.

⁵ *medycine*, cancelled before *signe*.

medicyn is to scharp, þat þe place aboute þe wounde is to grene, blak, reed, eiper zelow; & þanne þe sike man schal fele to greet heete & brennyng, also þe venym of þe wounde multipliþ / and whanne þe vnkunynge leche seþ þese accidentis tofore seid, he 4 ordeyneþ a drie medicyn; & so ech day þe wounde apeiriþ.¹

A livid pus, or paleness and coldness of the limb, show that the medicine was not sufficiently dry.

& þe signe þat þe medicyn is of feble dryng is, þat þe quitture & þe rotynes þat goiþ out þerof is greet in substaunce, ponderous & vneue, wan ouþir pale & þe membre is cold & is whiȝt ouþir 8 wan, ouþir cleer in colour ouþer soft; & þe sike man felip cold in his membre / & whanne þat þou knowist þese þingis in þe firste cause make not þi medicyn so drie, & in þe secunde cause make þi medicyn more drie, & also chaunge þi worching as condicioun of 12.

[² Ir. 46]

An ignorant physician may make a dangerous wound out of a slight one.

A mild siccatis.

A stronger siccatis.

kynde askith ²boþe of bodi & membre as weel symple as compound medicyns / He þat knowiþ not þes canones. wel yuele schal he heele woundis / wherfore manye lechis bryngen liztliche woundis with her yuel worching into þe worste olde woundis þe whiche moun not 16 aftir ben I-heelid bi a good leche / þese ben lizt medicyns whiche þat drien olde woundis þat neden a litil dryng: mastik, frank encense, barli mele. & þese medicyns ben somewhat more driere: yrios,³ aristologie rotunda, orabum⁴ þat is wiilde tare, lupines, 20

¹ *apeiriþ* intr. See Prompt. Parv. *Apperyryn*, or make wors. Pejoro, deterioro.

³ *yrios*. Lat. *Iris*. See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 123.

⁴ "*Orobus*, gall. uesche, anglice thare uel mousespese."—Alphita, p. 131.

Add. MS. 12,056. þy medycine is to scharpe, þat þe place about þe wounde ys to grene, 12,056. blake, red opere to zelwe & þe syke man felip to grete hete ⁵& brennyng, & also þe Venym of þe wounde multiplyeth, and whanne þe vnkunynge leche seþ þese Accidentes tofore seyde, he ordeyneþ 24 a dryere medycine; & so eche day þe wounde apeirith. And þe signe þat þe medycine is of feble dreyinge is þat þe quyter & þe rotnesse, þat goþ out þere of, ys gret in substaunce, ponderose & vneue, wan oper pale; þe membre is colde whyte oper wan, oper 23 clere in coloure, oper softe, & þe syke man felyth colde in his membre, & whenne þat þou knowist þese þynges in þe firste cas, make noȝt þy medycine so drye. In þe secunde cas make þy medycine more drye, & so chaunge þy wirkyng, as condyciouns of kynde 32 askyth, boþe of body & of membre, as wel symple as componede medycines. He þat knowiþ noȝt þese kanones wel*—schal helen olde woundes; wherfore manye lechys brynge lyzte woundes wiþ here iuele wirching, into þe worste olde woundes, þe whiche mowe 36 noȝt aftere be helyde by a gode leche. þese ben lyzte medycines, whiche þat drye olde wondys þat neden a lytel dryzinge; mastyke, ffrankensence, barlymele. þese medycynes beþ somewhat dreiere: yreos. Aristologia. Orobum þat is wilde Tare, lupines, þe rotnesse 40

[⁵ fol. 63 a]

þe rotynes eiper þe drie pou dre of trees; & þese medicyns ben strongere: balaustie, psidie,¹ rose, notts of cipris *et cetera* / & þese ben liȝt mundificatiuis: sugre, hony, water of barlich, gotis whay, 4 watir of þe see, watir of brimston þat clensip & hetep, water of alym þat clensip & coldip. & þou schalt haue greet plente of enplastris, mundificatiuis, oyntmentis compouned in þe antidotarie of þis book /

A mild mundificatif.

The .xij. chapitle of þe iij. techinge of þe firste tretis ¶ Capm. xijm.
8 is of festre /

Festre is a deep old wounde, & þe mouþ of him is streyt, & þe ground is brood, & he haþ ²wipinne him a calose³ hardnesse al aboute as it were a goos penne or ellis a kane / & a festre haþ difference from a deep vlcus & a cauernose / for a deep vlcus & cauernose of whom it is toold in þe chapitle tofore seid, þouȝ þat þei acorden togidere in depnes & in streitnesse of þe mouþ, þe vlcus haþ not wipinne him a calose hardnes / Wherefore a festre mai not be clensid wiþ waischinge with which a cauernose vlcus mai be clensid / but it is nessessarie aftir þat þou hast waischen it to

A fistula [2 lf. 46, bk.] is distinguishable from a deep ulcer by its hardness, which must be removed by cauterization.

¹ "*Psidia cortex est mali granati.*"—*Synonoma Barthol.*, p. 35.

³ O. Fr. calus, (Godefroy). See later references in *N. E. Dict.*

oper þe dryze pou dre of trees. þese medicyns ben strengere: balaustie, prosidyde, rose, notys of Cipresse et. cet. And þese⁴ ben lyzte mundificatyfes in cure,⁵ hony, watire of barlye, gotyswheyȝ, water of þe see, water of brymston þat clansith & hetyþ, water of Alym þat clansyþ & coldyþ. þou schalt haue grete plente of enplastres, mundificatyfes, and oygnementys componede in þe 24 antitodarye of þis ilke booke.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ Cap. xii of þe þridde techynge of þe firste tretis is of a⁶ festre.

ffestre⁷ is a depe olde wounde and⁸ þe mouth is streyt of hym & þe grounde is brod, & he haþ wiþ ynne hym a callose hardnesse alle aboute, as yt were a gose penne oper ellys a kane, & a ffestre haþ ⁹diffrence from a depe Vlcus & a cauernose; for a depe Vlcus & a Cauernose, of whom yt ys tolde in þe chapitle toforeseyde, þowȝ 32 þat þey acorden togedire in depnesse & in streytnesse of þe mouþ, þe Vlcus haþ noȝt wipyn hym a callose hardnesse, wherefore a festre may noȝt be clensyde with wasschynges, with þe whiche a¹⁰ cauernose Vlcus may be clansyde, but it is necessarye, aftere þat

⁴ MS. þese, twice. ⁵ in cure, a scribal mistake from sugre.

⁶ of a, above line. ⁷ MS. ffreste.

⁸ in, cancelled; and, above line. ¹⁰ a, above line.

remeue pilke calose hardnesse wip a cauterie eiper *with* a medicyn cauterizinge þat is brennyngē, þe which cauterie oupir brennyngē schulde make þe deppe of þe vlcus holowere þan he was / Wherefore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe þe difference of þis science, 4 þat he mowe knowe to heele boþe þe vlcus & þe festre wip medicyns different þat longen to hem boþe /

Nota.

If the fistula is in fleshy parts, use cleansing medicines.

[11. 47]

& if þat a festre be in þe fleisch or ellis bitwene senewe & senewe, so þat þe substaunce of þe senewe be not corrupt ne þe 8 boon, it is no nede to take noon opere medicyn but egrimoynē & stampe it *with* salt as þou woldist make sause, & drawe out þe ius of pilke egrimoynē, & do it into þe hole of þe festre wip a penne & leie þe substaunce of þe same eerbe þere-vpon til he haue 12 slayn pilke festre & clensid it; & þou schalt knowe bi reednes & sadnesse of fleisch þat is wipinne þe festre al aboute; & aftirward haue þis sirup of hony wip þe whiche þou schalt waische þe festre þat is now vlcus I-compounded in þis maner / Take a pound water, 16 R vynegre half a pound, of hony dispumed ʒ .iiij., of leeuēs of olyuetre bounden togidere wip a þred / ʒ j., of galingale ʒ j, boile alle þese to þe perfiztnesse of a sirup, & lete it colden, & do away þe

² *galingale*, ne. *galangale*, for *sagittelle*.

Add. MS. 12,056. þou hast y-wasschyde yt, to remeffyn pilke callose hardnesse *with* a 20 cauterie, opere wip a medicine cauterysynge þat ys brennyngē, þe whiche cauterie oper brennyngē scholde make þe deppe of þe Vlcus holwere þanne he was. Wherefore it is necessarie to a surgiene to knowe þe difference of þis scyence, þat he mowe conne hele boþe þe 24 Vlcus & þe festre *with* medicynes different þat longyth to hem boþe. And ʒif þat a festre be in þe flesch, oper ellys bytwene synwe & synwe, so þat þe Substaunce of þe synwe be nozt corrupte ne þe bon, yt nys non nede to take non opere medicine but egremoyne, & 28 stampe hym wip salt, as þou woldest maken sause, & drawe out þe jus of pilke egremoyne, & do yt into þe hole of þe festre *with* a penne, & leye þe substaunce of þe same erbe þere-vpon, tyl he haue slaw³ alle pilke festre & y-clansyde yt; & þat þou schalt knowen 32 by þe rednesse & sadnesse of flesch þat is *withynne* þe festre al aboute, & aftirwarde haue þis surype off honye, *with* þe whiche þou schalt wassche þe festre, þat ys now Vlcus componed, in þis manere: 4 R water ii .j., of vynegre ii .ʒ., of hony despumed ʒ iiij, 36 off leuys of olyue-tre, y-bounde togedre *with* a þrede, ʒ .j., of 5sagyttelle ʒ .j., boylle al þis to þe perfytnesse of a sirupe, & let yt

75 fol. 64 a]

³ At the end of the line. One letter wanting.

⁴ Confection of *syrup mellyne*, in margin.

leues of þe olyue, & kepe al þe remenaunt of þe sirup *with* þe leues of sagittel & waische þe vlcus þat was festred tofore wiþ þis licour twies on þe day þat þe licour may go to þe ground, & aftir
 4 ward drie it weel & fille it ful of drie leues of sagittelle & leie a sagittel-leef¹ aboue; & þis medicyn þou schalt contynuen til it be hool / Euery festre þat is in fleisch is heelid wiþ þis medicyn I-preued, but if þat² substaunce of þe senewe & of þe boon be
 8 apeirid in þe ground, & specialiche if þat³ þe festre be not old, & if þat⁴ þe calosite be nouzt to hard. In þese two causis þe medicyn of egrimoyn^e 1ne suffisþ nouzt, but it is nessessarie to haue
 12 a cauterie of fier eiper a medicyn caustik / & of þese medicyns þou schalt haue a ful techinge folowynge in þe book / & if þat⁵ þe boone were corrupt in þe deppe of þe festre, do it awei aftir þe techinge tauzt in þe chapitle tofore / & herof take hede, if þat⁶ a festre perse bi þe weyes of þe vryne so þat þe vryne go out bi þilke weie,
 16 as we han seen ofte tymes, or ellis þat it go bi crokid placis & hid placis of þe face² persinge into deppe, it is³ an vnperfizt cure, but þou maist pale⁴ it, & do it away þe stinche *with* hony waischinge, enplastre, & hony mundificatiuis, & *with* defensiuus aboute þe place

If parts of a bone or sinew are rotten,

[I. ff. 47, bk.]

use cauterization, or a caustic medicine, and remove the morbid bone.

² Lat. per tortuosas aut occultas partes faciei. ³ *it is*, above line.

⁴ *pale*, Lat. palliare. Dufur., *Gloss.*: 1. tegere; 2. simulare.

20 coldyn & do aweye þe leffys of þe olyfe, & kepe alle þe remnaunt of þe surype *with* þe leffys of sagytelle, & wassche þe Vlcus þat was festre tofore *with* þis licoure twyes a day, þat þe lycoure may go to þe grounde, & afterwarde dreye it wel & fyl yt ful of drye leffys of
 24 sagytelle, & leye a sagitelle leff¹ aboue, and þis medycine þou schalt conteynen tyl þat it be hol. Every festre þat is in flesch ys helyde *with* þis medycine y-prefed, but 3if þe substaunce of þe synwe & of þe bon be apeyred in þe grounde, & specialyche 3if þe festre be
 28 nouzt old & 3if þat þe callosite be nozt to hard. In þese tweye cases þe medycyne of egremoyne ne suffiseþ nozt, but it ys necessarye a kauterye of fyre oþer a medycine caustyke; & of þese medicyns þou schalt han a ful techynge, folowynge in þe boke. And 3if
 32 þat þe bon were corrupte in þe deppe of þe festre, do yt aweye after þe techynge, þat y haue tauzte þe in þe chapiteH tofore. And hereof take hede: 3if þat a festere perse be þe weyzes of þe vryne, so þat þe vryne go out by þilke weye, as we haue seyne ofte tymes,
 36 oþer ellys þat he go by crokyde placys and hudel⁴ places of þe face, persynge into þe depnesse of þe hed whose grounde þou maiste nozt perseyue, hit ys bettyre nozt for to cure *with* a perfyte cure, but þou maiste pale it & don away þe stynke, *with* hony & wasschynges of
 40 enplastre in mundificatyfes & *with* defensifus aboute þe place, þat

Add. MS.
12,056.

⁵ *hudel*, adj. See Mätzner, *Diet.*, hudels, sb. O.E. *hūgdels*, hiding-place.

cauteriza-
cioun of þe
senewe þat
is hirt.

þat^t his malice mowe¹ þen lasse greue. For a festre þat^t is in ioynturis as þe feet eiþer þe knee, eiþer þe hand, eiþir þe elbowe, is hard for to heele, & sumtyme impossible / & if^t þat^t he be in anoþer place, & he haue corrodid eiþer rotid sumwhat^t of þe senewe, þow þat^t it^t 4 be greuou for to cure it, þer is noon oþer wey, but^t a liȝt^t cauterizacioun of þe senewe þat^t is hurt / For cauterizacioun wiþ hoot iren eiþer wiþ gold, þat^t is bettere, it^t clensiþ & driep þe senewe þat^t is corrupt^t & rectifieþ þe complexioun of al þe membre & ²a medecyn 8 caustik worchiþ þe contrarie / Brennyng medecyns, boþe þe symple & þe compound þou schalt^t haue to þe fulle³ in⁴ antidotarie of þis book, & þou schalt^t fynde þe maner of cauterisyng to þe fulle in þe þridde tretis folowyng. & whanne þou hast^t maad a perfiȝt^t mundi- 12 ficacioun of þilke colose fleisch, regendre fleisch & consowde wiþ medecyns regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis þe whiche þou schalt^t fynde in þe antidotarie //

[³ ff. 48]

¶ Cap^m
xiiij^m
canser
viciat

The xiiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste 16 tretis is of a cankre /

Cankre I-woundid comēþ of openyng, eiþer of kuttinge, eiþer of brekyng of a cankre not I-woundid, whos techinge þou schalt^t

¹ MS. moore.

³ See page 86, note 3.

⁴ þe þridde tretis folowyng | & whanne þou hast^t maad a perfiȝt^t mundi-
ficacioun struck through in red. after to þe fulle in.

Add. MS. his malyce mowe þe lasse greff. A festre þat is in juncturis as 20
12,056. þe fote oþer þe kne, oþer þe hand, oþere þe elbowe, is hard for to hele & sumtyme vnpossible. And ȝif þat he be in an oþere place

& he haue coroded oþer rotyd sumwhat of þe synwe, þow þat it be greffes for to cure it, þere nys none oþere weye bote a lyȝt cauterys- 24
acioun of þe synwe, þat is y-hurt: ffor cauterysacioun wiþ hote yren, oþer wiþ gold þat is betyre clansyþ & dryep⁵ þe synwe þat ys corrupte, & rectefyeth þe complexioun of al þe membre, and a medycine caustyke worcheþ þe contrarye. Brennyng medecynes, 28 boþe symple & componed, þou schalt han to þe fulle in þe antidotarye of þis boke, & þou schalt fynde þe manere of cauterisyng to þe fulle in þe þridde tretys folowyng; & whanne þou hast made a perfyte mundificacioun of þilke callose flesch, regenere flesch & con- 32 soude wiþ medecynes regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, þe whyche þou schalte fynde in þe antidotarye.

[⁵ fol. 64 b]

¶ Cap. xiii off þe þridde techyng off þe ffirste tretys
is Off a Canker. 36

¶ Cankyre y-woundyde comyþ of opnyng, oþere of kuttyng, oþere of brekyng of a cancre noȝt y-woundyde, whose techyng þou

haue in þe chapitle of þe apostymes in þe þridde techinge / & he comeþ of a wounde yuel heelid, to whom comeþ a malancolient mater rotid; or for þe mater þat comeþ to þe wounde is þere cor-

arises from a badly healed or purulent wound.

4 rumpid & chaungip þe vlcus into a cankre /

& þese ben þe tokenes of þe cankre / þe vlcus is foul & stynkynge, þe lippis ben grete, wan, or blak, hard, & wipinne kirnely, & ouer al aboute arerid and ¹holowe / & þis is þe difference bitwene

Its: signs are: the peculiar condition of the wound, [1 ff. 48, bk.]

8 a cankre & a foul vlcus & an hori of whom I haue maad mencion aboue, þat if þat þou waische hem boþe wip liþe, þe cankre schal be palere & foulere þan he was bifore, & þere schal falle out of him pecis gobetmele.² & þe vlcus is clen sid wip þilke liþe, & þe fleisch

Nota the effect of a lye lotion,

12 is maad fairer þan it was tofore, ne þe vlcus stynkip not bi þe same stinche as þe cankre doip; for þe cankre haþ a propre sauour, þe which mai not be write wip lettre; but þilke sauour is best knowe of men whiche þat best han seiþe cankreis.³

and the smell of the cancer.

16 A general rule in þe cure of a cankre is, þat a cankre mai not be heelid, but if þat he be do away wip alle hise rotis / þe secunde rule is, þat he schal not be touchid wip hoot iren ne with hoot medicyn caustik, þat is to seiþe brennynge, but he be in place

A cancer must either be left untouched or entirely removed.

² gobetmele, piecemeal. *Polychron.*, iv. 103: membratim. See further, Mätzner, *Dict.* ³ MS. *cankre is.*

20 schalt habbyn in þe Chapitle of enpostemes in þe þridde techynge & he comyth of a wounde yuele y-helyde, to whom comyth a malycolient rotyde matere, oþer for þat þe matere comeþ to þe wounde is þere corrupyd, & chaungyth þe Ulcus into a Cankere. And þese beþ

Add. MS. 12,056.

24 þe toknys of þe cankere: þe Ulcus ys foule & stynkynge, þe lippes beþ grete, wanne, oþere blake, harde, and wipinne kernely, & ouere alle aboute areryde & holwy, & þis is þe dyfference bytwene cancre & a foule Ulcus & an hory, of whom y haue made mensioun aboue, 28 þat zif þat þou wassche hem boþe⁴ wip leyþe, þe cancre schal ben pale & foulere þenne he was tofore, & þere schal fallen out of hym pecys, gobetmele. And þe Ulcus ys y-clansede with þilke leyþe, & þe flesch ys made fayrere þenne yt was tofore, ne þe Ulcus stynkeþ

32 nozt by þe same stenche as þe cancre doþ; for þe cankre hath a propre saffoure, þe which may nozt be wryten wip lettres, but þilke saffoure ys best knowyn to of men, whiche þat beste han seiþe cankrys. A ⁵generaþ rule in þe cure of cankre ys, þat a cankyre

[⁵ fol. 65 a]

36 may nozt ben helyde bot zif þat he be done away wip alle hys rotys. The secunde rule ys, þat he schal nozt ben touchyde with hot yren ne wip hot medicyne caustyk—þat is to sigge, brennynge

⁴ MS. oþere.

Nota where he may al be doon away / for þe more þat þou touchist him
 wijþ a violent þing^t eiper medicyn, þe more his malice is encressid /
If possible, Take þanne good heede if he be in a fleischi place, where þat he
 cut away and may be don al wey, & þanne kutte him al away wijþ alle hise rotis / 4
 [1 f. 49] & þanne þriste out al þe malancolient^t ¹ blood þat is wijþinne þe
burn the can- veynes þat ben aboute þe cankre. & aftirward brenne al aboute in
 cer, and apply
 a cleansing
 poultice. þe place þere as þe cankre was with hoot iren / aftirward leie on þis
 confeccioun maad of flour of wheete & hony & ius of smalache,² til⁸
 þat he be perþigtliche clensid. After regendre fleisch & cicatrice.
Nota To þis rule / take hede as ofte as þou wilt wijþ sirurgie heelen a
 cancre: first euacue þe malancolient^t mater, for þat is ypocras
the counsel techinge; & if þat he be growen in sich a place þere as he may not¹²
 off ypocras: be doon al away, as in þe necke or in þe tetis, or in þe face, or in þe
 cannot be arshole, or in þe mareis; & also for schortere conclusioun, & he be
 removed, try no cure at
 all. entrid in ony place þere as ony senewis, arteries, veynes, ben—as
ypocras. ypocras seiþ—it is bettere nouzt^t to cure þe cankre þan to cure. For 16
 & he be curid, þat is to seië kutt^t or I-brent^t, þei perischen þe
 sunnere; & if þei ben not^t curid, þei lyuen þe lengere tyme—libro
 vj^o. *afforismorum: Canceri absconditi multum tempus perfuciunt*
² *smallage*, Halle Table, p. 12. “Smalache, Marche, or Marshe Persley.”
 See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 217.

Add. MS. —but he be in place, þere he may al be don away; ffor þe more 20
 12,056. þat þou touchiste hym with a vyolent thyng eper medicine, þe
 more hys malys is encressyde. Take þenne gode hede zif he be in
 a fleschlye place, where þat he may be don al aweye, & þenne kutte
 hym al aweye wijþ alle hys rotys, & þriste out þe malencolyent blod 24
 þat ys withynne þe Veynes, þat bep aboute þe cancre, & afterwarde
 brenne alle aboute in þe place, þere as þe cankre was, wijþ hote
 yren. Afterward leye on þis *confeccioun* y-mad of floure of whete
 hony, jus of smallache, tyl þat he be perfitly y-clansyde. After 28
 regenerere flesch & cyatrice. To þis rule take hede as ofte as þou
 wilt wijþ surgerye helyn a cancre: furst evacue þe malencolyent
 matere, ffor þat is ypocras techyng, & zif he be growen in swyche
 a place, þere as he may nozt be done alle aweye, as in þe nekke ore 32
 in þe tetys, eper in þe face, ore in þe ers hole, eper in þe marys,
 and also for the schortere conclusioun, & he be entrede in enye
 place, þere as enye Veynes, synwes, & arteryes buþ, as ypocras
 seiþ, yt ys betyre nozt to cure þe cancre, þen to cure; ffor he be 36
 curid, þat is to sigge, y-kutte eper y-brent, þey peryschen
 sonnere; & zif þey be nozt curyde þey lyuen longe tyme—libro
sexto afforismorum Canceri absconditi multum tempus per ficiunt

Regula, in margin.

- curati vero cicius pereunt / But^t defende þe lyme þat^t is hool aboute
 with defensif^t of bole þat^t I haue ofte tymes seid & waische þe
 wounde of þe cankre wip gotis whey, & drie it^t softly, ¹& anynte Use a lotion
R
 4 þe wounde wipinne & wipoute with þis oynement^t of rasis & ²tutie³ / [1 lf. 49, bk.]
and
vnguentum
tute
 take ceruse,⁴ tutie I-waische & medle hem wip oile of rosis & wip
 ius of purcelane⁵ or of sum opere cold eerbe, putte yⁿne sum of þe
 toon, & now sum of þat^t oper, til þe oynement^t be weel I-maad /
 8 þis oynement^t is myche worþ for to defende þat^t þe malice of þe
 cancre schal not^t wexen, & also þat^t þe pacient^t vse a good govern-
 aile: as drinke good wyyn & cleer & lithe, & he muste leeu reed
 wyyn & troublid & picke wyyn, & he may ete good fleisch, as
 12 motoun⁶ of a weþer, kide fleisch sowkyng, capouns, hezmes,
 chikenes, partrichis,⁷ fesauntis, & smale briddis, & he muste leeu:
 beeuës fleisch⁸ & gotis fleisch, hertis fleisch & haris fleisch, goos,
 dokis, & alle greete briddis þat^t lyuen in watri placis, & al salt^t
 16 þing^t & acute þing^t: as garleek, oynonyms & vynegre *et cetera* [þat]^{*}

the diet for
þe canker:
the patient
shall only
take white
wine and
digestible
food.

² *ʒ*, erroneously for *of*.

³ *tutie*, Matth. Sylvat. "Tuchia . . Lat. Cadimia & pomfolix." Arab. *tūtiā*. Fr. *tutie*. See Wr. Wü., p. 559, 13. "Tucia, i. *tutie*" (xiiith cent.). It is: Oxidum Zinci impurum.

⁴ *ceruse*, white lead. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. *Ceruse*.

⁵ *purcelane*, Lat. *portulaca*. Halle Table, p. 90. "Another herbe there is also called *Portulaca marina*, only of the likenes that the leaves therof haue with porcelaine." See "Purslane," Prior, *Popular Names*, p. 193.

⁶ *moton*, carnes ovine, Wr. Wü., 741, 39. xvth cent.

⁷ *partrichis*, *Cathol. Ang.*, p. 270, a Partryke, perdrix. See further Skeat, *Et. Dict.* ⁸ *bef*, added above line, in different hand.

- curati vero cicius pereunt. ¶ But diffende þe lyme þat is hol
 aboute with defensiff^t of bol, þat y haue ofte tymes seyde, & wassche
 þe wounde of þe cancre with gotys whey³, & drye yt softlyche &
 20 anynt þe wounde withinne & without, with þis oynement of rasys
 of tutey, R ceruse, tuthye, y-wasschyn and medle hem wip oyle of
 roses & wip jus of poslane, ⁹opere of sum opere colde erbe, now
 puttyng in sum of þe on & now sum of þe opere, tyl þe oynement
 24 be ful mad. þis oynement ys myche worth forto diffende; þat þe
 malys of þe cancre þat is y-woundyde schal nozt waxen, and also
 þat þe pacient vse a gode governaylle: as drynkinge gode wyn &
 clere & lyzt, & he mote leuen red wyn and troblyde & pykke wyn;
 28 & he may eten gode flesch, as motoun of a weþire, kyde flesch
 sokkyng, Capouns, hennys, Chykenys, partryches, fesauntes, &
 smale briddes, & he moste leuyn befys flesch, gotys flesch, hertys
 flesch, harys flesch, goses, dokys, & alle grete briddys. þat lyuen
 32 in watrye places, & alle salt þyng & acute þyng: as garlyke,
 Oynouns, vynegre, &c., þat^{*} þe syke men mowe lyuen þe lengere vpon

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁹ fol. 65 b]

þe sike man may lyue þe lengere vpon erþe / Neþeles if vlcus be riȝt
 foul & haue nouȝt so greet malice as a cankre, of þe which vlcus I
 haue told tofore may be curid wiþ poudre of affadillis, and aftirward
 weel be heelisid ; & for þat þis vlcus ¹þat was so foul may be heelisid / 4
 Rogeryn and Rowlond & manye oþere settide in her bokis þe cure
 of a cankre, þouȝ þat he be in a senewey place, & þei seien þat þei
 han heelisid him / But vndirstonde weel for certeyn, þat an olde
 cankre mai not be heelisid bi noon oþer wey, but bi þe same wey þat 8
 I haue seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle / & if þat þou dredist
 wheþer þat it be a symple vlcus or a cankre & a foul, for þe signes
 & þe tokenes tofore seid beþ doutis, bigynne to mortifie it wiþ sum
 maner of poudre : as wiþ poudre of affadillis, & bi my witt poudre 12
 of erbe robert² / & loke aftirward þe prisos of þi worchinge seiþ
 þis boke³ / For if þat he be a uerry cankre, þou schalt se þe more
 þou woldist clense him, þe more his malice schal waxen / & if he
 be not a cankre, he schal be clensid riȝt as an vlcus / Whanne þat 16
 þou seest þe wexyng of a cankre & his malice agmenten, ceesse
 from þe verry cure & turne aȝen to þe forseid cure of þe oynement
 of tutie, þe which þat paliþ þe cankre. For & þou bisie þee to

[I. 1f. 50]

Rogeryn
 and Roland
 pretended to
 have healed
 old cancers.

In doubtful
 cases rub
 with a pow-
 der ;

In the case of
 cancer the
 patient will
 grow worse.

² *erbe robert*, insertion of the scribe. *Geranium Robertianum*. See *Prior*, p. 113. *Cronenburg. De Compositione Medicamentorum*, a. 1555, fol. 106, A. *Ruprechtskraut* : *Roberti herba* (*Geranii species*).

³ *seiþ þis booke*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS.
 12,056.

erthe. Napeles ȝif vlcus be ryȝt foul & hath nouȝt so gret malys as 20
 a cancre, of þe whyche Vlcus y haue tolde tofore, may ben y-curyde
 wiþ poudre of affedyllie, and afterwarde wel be clansyde, & for þat
 þis Vlcus þat was so foul may be helyde. Rogeryne & Rouland
 & manye oþere settyde in here bokys þe cure of þe cancre, þowȝ 24
 þat he be in a synwy place, & þey siggen þat þey haue helyde hym.
 But vndirstande wel for certeyne, þat an olde cancre may noȝt ben
 helyde by none oþere wey, bote by þe same wey, whiche þat y haue
 seyde in þe bygynnyng of þys chapyteH. & ȝif þat þou dredyst, 28
 wheþere þat yt be a cancre oþere a symple Vlcus & a foul, for þe
 signes & þe toknys tofore seyde beþ doutes, begynne to mortefye
 yt wiþ sum maner poudre as wiþ poudre of affodylles, & loke after-
 warde þe processe of þy worchyng ; ffor ȝif þat he be a verrey 32
 cancre þou schalt se, þe more þou woldyste clansen hym þe more
 hys malys schal waxen, and ȝif he be noȝt a cancre, he schal be
 clansyde ryȝt as an Vlcus. Whanne þat þou seste þe waxyng ⁴of
 þe cancre & hys malys augmenten, sese fro þe verrey cure & turne 36
 ageyne to þe forseide cure of þe oynement of tuetye, whiche þat
 palyth þe cancre. ffor & þou bysy þe to cure þe cancre, & þou pro-

[f. fol. 66 a.]

cure þe cankre, & þou procede in þi cure, þou schortist^t þe pacientis lijf / & if^t þou palist, þou lenkþist^t his lijf /

4 **T**he .xiiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste [fr. 50, bk.]
 tretis is for to remeue causis þat letten þe cure ¶ Cap^m
 of olde woundis / xiiij^m

- I tolde þee aboue in þe general chapitle of olde woundis cause
 whiche þat^t letten olde woundis to be heeled / & also I tolde þe
 8 techinge plenerliche þat^t ben nessessarie to remeue ech sengle cause
 þat^t is nessessarie, how þat^t alle maner causis þat^t letten mai be don
 away bi a good surgien & a wijs ; so þat^t þou ioynest^t þis chapitle
 wiþ þe opere chapitle tofore seid, þou schalt^t han a pleyner techinge.
 12 If^t þat^t þe bodi be ful of olde humouris eiþer in þe idropisie, loke
 þat^t he may be heeled of þilke disposicioun, & þanne heele him if^t þat^t
 þou canst^t / &¹ if^t þat^t he be not ful of olde humouris whiche þat^t
 neden no curyng of olde disposicioun. Ne traueile not^t in deueyn²
 16 þe sike man neiþir wiþ medicyns corosiuis, ne wiþ kuttyng, ne with
 puttyng into þe woundis greeþe tentis ; but do aboue þe vlcus list^t

If a patient is
 hydroptic or
 cachectic,
 his condition
 must first be
 improved.

¹ The translator, perhaps intentionally, altered his original : si non (seis),
 pette physicum qui curationem illius dispositionis faciat.

² in deueyn = in veyn.

cede in thy cure, þou schortest þe pacientes lyff. And 3if þou Add. MS.
 palest þou lengthiste hys lyff. 12,056.

20 ¶ Cap. xiiij of þe þridde techyng of þe furste tretys,
 is forto remefe causes þat latten þe cure of olde
 woundys.

- ¶ I tolde þe aboue in þe general Chapytte of olde Woundes, causes
 24 whiche þat latteþ olde woundys to by helyde. And also y telde þe
 techynges plenerlyche þat beþ necessarye to remywe eche sengle
 cause, þat is necessarye to be done away. And now y schal in þis
 speycal chapytte teche, how þat alle manere cause þat lettyth may
 28 be done away by a gode surgyne & a wyse, so þat 3if þou joynest
 þis chapitele with þe opere chapytte to fore seyde, þou schalt han a
 plener techyng. 3if þat þe body be ful of elde humores, opere in
 þe dropsye ; loke 3if þat he may be helyde of þilke disposicioun, &
 32 þenne hele hym 3if þat þou canst, and 3if þat he be nozt ful of elde
 humorys ; whiche þat nedyth to curyng of olde disposicioun. Ne
 traueyle nozt in deveyne þe syke man, nowþere with medicynes
 corosifes, ne with kuttynges, ne with puttynges into þe wounde grete
 36 tentys ; but do aboffe þe Vlcus lyzte mundyficatyfes & swote

and in the mean time only mild mundificatifis applied.

[¹ If. 51^a]

The same must be done if the liver or the spleen is bad.

If the patient has too much blood,

use phlebotomy.

mundificatiuis & swete smellynge, þat kepþ þe membre lyztliche clene þat it stynke not / & whanne þat he is keuerid from an yuel disposicioun, thanne turne azen to þe principal cure / & þis same ping¹ I saye of yuel disposicioun of þe lyuere of what maner cause 4 þat he be enfeblid; þe same I saye of þe splene / But if þese tweyne ben in her kyndely disposicioun, olde woundis moun not be heelid. If² þat greet multitude of blood lettþ, þat may be knowen bi ful replecioun of þe veines of al þe bodi, bi reednesse & exten- 8 cioun of þe face, bi swetnes of þe mouþ, bi flating³ / Whanne þat a man is fastyng, bi heuynes of þe browis, & bi zong⁴ age, & his complexioun is hoot & moist, & þat he hap vsid in his dietyng wiyn and fleisch; & make him þanne be lete blood of þe veyne þe 12 which þat bryngþ norischinge to þe lyme, & aftirward of þe veyne þat mai best voiden þe membre þat is hurt / & if þat þe blood trespace oonly in qualite, amende him as if þat he be to hoot, voide him a litil & diete him with colde metis & stiptik. & aftirward 16 procede forþ in alle maner opir causis as it is told in þe general chapitle, takyng hede þat þer ben summe maner medicyns whiche þat ben dryng & clensyng, & han a priuy⁴ propirte to consowde

² if above line.

³ flating, Add. MS. wlatyng. See Wright Wü. O.E. wlatung.

⁴ priuy. See *Cathol. Angl.*, pryvay, occultus.

^a Heading to this page: *Causes þat lettes þe cure off old woundes.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

[⁵ fol. 66^b]

smellynge þat keypþ the membre lyztliche clene, þat he stynke 20 nozt. And whanne þat he is curyd from an yuele disposicioun, turne azeyne to þe princypal cure; & þis same þyng y sugge of yuele disposicioun of þe lyfere, of what manere cause þat þe enfebylde; þe same y sigge of the spleen, ffor but zif þese tweyne 24 ben in here kendlye dysposicioun, olde woundes mowe nozt ben helyde. Zif þat grete multitude off blode lette þe, þat may be knowe by ful replecioun of þe veynes of alle þe body, by rednesse & extension of þe face, be swetnesse of þe mouth, be wlatyng, 28 whenne þat a man ys fastyng, by⁵ heuynesse of þe browys, & by zonge age, & þat hys complexoun ys hot & moyst, and þat he hath y-vsyde in hys dyotyng wyn & flesch, and þenne make hym be lete blode on þe veyne, whiche þat bryngeth noryschyng to þe 32 lyme, & afterwarde of the Veyne þat may beste voyden þe membre þat ys y-hurt. And zif þat þe blode trepasse onlye in qualyte, amende hym as zif þat he be to hot, voyde hym a lytel & dyote hym wiþ colde metys & styptyke. And afterwarde procede forþ in 36 alle opere manere cases as it ys tolde in þe generall chapyteH, takyng hede þat þere ben sum manere medycines, whiche þat beþ dryng & clansyng, & haue a prefe proprete to consoude olde woundys,

olde woundis whiche þat^t ben difficult^t to be consowdid; of^t þe whiche medicyns summe ben symple & summe ¹ben^t compounzed / [¹ If. 51, bk.]
 Symple ben: limature of^t iren, flour of^t bras brent^t, vitriol leed Simple con-
 4 brent^t, & alle scharpe corosiuus if^t þat^t þei ben brent^t; for þat^t þei solidatifs.
 han vertu more to consowden, & also her corisoun is lessid / þis is
 a medicyn compounzed: take floris² eris, limature of^t bras ana. $\frac{3}{3}$ j. a compound
 litarge of^t gold, litarge of^t siluir, 3 .viij. gumme of^t cipresse, 3 .iiij. consoledatiff
 8 sal gemme,³ 3 .ij. aristologia I-brent^t smal to poudre of^t franken-
 cense, ana. 3 .v. wex & oile of^t mirtill þat^t suffisip // //

The .xv. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste ¶ Capm.
 tretis is of a crampe þat cometh to a wounde xviii.

- 12 Nessessarie þing^t is to a surgian to knowe þe causis of^t a crampe,
 þe whiche þat^t cometh to a wounde þat^t schulde be heelid, & also þat^t
 he knowe þe disposicioun of^t him þat^t haþ þe crampe, & also what
 þing^t þat^t þe crampe is, þat^t he mowe resonabliche hele þe crampe /
 16 þe crampe is a sijknes cordous eiper neruous, in þe whiche sijknes Cramp is a
 cordis & þe senewis weren drawnen to her bigynnyng; of^t þe whiche contraction
 drawyng þat^t ben .ij. causis coniuact: þe toon is repleccioun of^t þe of the tendons
or nerves
arising from

² Lat. flor. eris.

³ sal gemme. A Salt so named, from its Transparent and Crystalline Brightness.—Kersey.

- whiche þat^t beþ deffykyl to be consoudyde, of þe whyche medicynes Add. MS.
 20 some beþ symple & some beþ componed. Symple beþ: lymature 12,056.
 of bras, lymature of Iren, floure of bras brent; vytreol rede y-brent,
 and alle scharpe corosifes, 3if þat þey ben y-brent. ffor þat þey han
 þe more vertue to consouden, and al so here corosion ys y-lassyde.
 24 þis ys a medicine componyde: R. floris eris, lymature of bras ana
 .3. j., litarge of gold, litarge of syluere ana. 3. viij., gumme of cypresse
 .3. iiij, sal gemme .3. ij, Aristologie I-brende, smal poudre of ffrank
 Ensence ana. 3. v., wax & oyle of myrtyne þat suffyseþ.

- 28 ¶ Cap. XV. off the þridde techyng of þe ffirste tretys
 is off a Crawmpe, that comyth to a Wounde.

- Necessarye thyng ys a surgyne, to knowe þe causys of þe
 crampe whiche þat comyth to a wounde þat scholde ben y-helyde,
 32 and also þat he knowe þe dysposicioun of hym þat haþ þe crampe.
 And also what þyng þe crampe ys, þat he mowe resonablyche hele
 þe crampe. The crampe ys a seknesse cordouse, oþere ellys neruose,
 in the whiche syknesse þe cordes & þe synwes were drawyne to
 36 here bygynnyng; of þe whiche drawyng þere beþ tweye causes

repletion or
inanition.
[² lf. 52]

Repletion oc-
curs after

- .1.
great pain,
- .2.
cold,
- .3.
putrefaction.

Cramp must
be prevented
in three
ways:

- .1.
- .2.
- .3.

[⁴ lf. 52, bk.]

as it is diffi-
cult to heal.

senewe, þe opere of þe corde, þe oper is inanisioun.¹ He þat is of in-anisioun,² ofte tymes he haþ a cause goynge tofore as to myche euacuacioun of blood eiþer of sum oper þing, as to longe affliccioun for long akþe, or ellis for þe appetite of þe sike man haþ ben longe 4 tyme enfeblid; & þis comeþ lilit & lilit, & þe crampe þat comeþ of boþe þese causis may not be heelid, & he þat comeþ of replecioun haþ oon of þe .iij. causis goynge tofore / þe firste cause is to greet akþe / þe .ij. cause is cold / & þe .iij. cause is putrifaccioun eiþer 8 rotynge / & þouȝ þat oon sengle cause sumtyme suffice to make a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causis happen to come togidres / And þis crampe may be heelid or þat he be confermed, & aftir þat he is confermed seelden or neuere / A surgian muste þanne be bisy in al 12 þat he myzte, þat a crampe ne wexe not in þe wounde þat schulde be heelid, wiþ obuacioun³ defendinge þe lyme, þat noon of þe .iij. causis tofore seid ne come nouȝt into þe wounde: þe oon is in defendyng þe lyme from putrifaccioun / þe toþere is for kepyng þe 16 lyme fro rotyng / þe þridde is to gouerne him from a greet akyng / for it is more sikir to defende þat a crampe⁴ ne come not, þanne aftir þat he is come with medicyns þat is douteful or dredeful to

¹ *inanisioun*, Lat. *inanitio*. Vigo. Interpretation. "*Inanition*, emptyng."

³ *obuacioun*, Lat. *cum obuiatione defensiuorum*.

Add. MS. 12,056. *conjuncte*: þe on ys repletion of þe synwe, opere of þe corde, þe opere 20 is Inanysion. He þat ys in⁵ a vision ofte tymes haþ a cause goynge to fore, ⁶as to myche euacuacioun of blod, opere of sum othire thyng; as to longe affliccioun for longe akþe, opere ellys, for þe 24 Apetite of the syke man hath be longe tyme enfeblyde; & þis comyþ lytel & lyteþ, and þe crampe þat comyþ of boþe þese causys may noȝt ben helyde. And he þat comyþ of repletion hath on of þre causys goynge tofore: þe firste cause ys to grete akþe, þe secunde cause ys colde, þe þridde ys putrefaccioun oper rotyng; 28 and þowȝ þat one sengle cause sumtyme suffiseth to maken a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causes happe to come togedres. And þis crampe may ben y-helyde ere þat he be comfermyde, & after þat he ys confermyde selden opere neffere. A surgyne moste þenne be busye; 32 in alle þat he myzte, þat a crampe no wexe noȝt in þe wounde þat scholde be helyde, wiþ obuacioun dyffendyng þat none of þe þre causes tofore seyde ne come noȝte to þe wounde; þe one ys in defendyng þe lyme from putrefaccioun, þe opere is in kepyng þe lyme 36 from roteness, þe þridde is to gouerne hym from gret akyng; ffor it is more sykere to dyffende, þat a crampe ne come noȝt, þenne aftere þat he ys come with medecine þat is doutes opere dredful to

⁵ Scribal mistake.

do away / For if a feure come to an heed or to a senewe þat
is woundid, & if þe crampe folowe, euermore it' is deedliche.

- Take hede þanne to aswage þe akþe wiþ anyntyng of oile of
4 rosis, in doynge as I haue seid afore in þe chapitle of senewis þat
ben woundid; for ofte tymes þe crampe comeþ fro woundis þat
ben maad in þe heed or ellis in þe senewe / & if þat akþe were so
greet, þat makip þe crampe for þe priekynge of a senewe or ellis of
8 a corde / & if þat þou myztist nouzt defende þe crampe neiþir wiþ
blood letynge, neiþer wiþ ventusyng, ne wiþ clisterie, ne wiþ sup-
positorie, ne wiþ defensif in anyntyng þe necke, ne þe grynde,
ne þe arm hoolis, þanne it' is nessessarie þat þou kutte al atwo þilke
12 senewe or þilke corde þat is priekid, þouþ þat þe felynge or þe
meuyng of þe lyme to whom þilke senewe or þilke corde seruþ in
parti or in al be lost / For it' is bettere þat a man lese þe felynge &
þe meuyng of a lyme, þan for to deie. But it' is bettere, if þat
16 þou cowdist, to kepe a man þer-fro *with* opere¹ medicyns þan þat þe
senewe or þe corde be kutt' al atwo. & if² þat þou were not' at
þe bigynnyng, & þou fyndist a man hauynge þe crampe for a
wounde, do þou as I dide at' melain. Þer was a scoler of' myn þat
20 was a surgian þat was clepid Olyuer, which þat curide a scheþere

Treatment of
cramp.

Allay the suf-
fering with
an ointment,

if necessary,
cut the in-
jured nerve
or tendon.

[¹ If. 53]

Nota.

² *if*, above line.

- don aweye, Ffor 3if þat a ffeuyre come to an hed opere to a synwe
þat ys y-woundyde, & þe crampe folwe eyure more, yt ys dedlyche
Take hede þenne to aswage þe akþe *with* anyngtyng of oyle of
24 rosys, and in doynge as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of synwes
þat beþ y-woundyde; ffor ofte tymes þe crampe comyth for woundys,
þat beþ made in þe hed opere ellis³ in þe synwe: And 3if þat akþe
were so grete, þat makyth a crampe for þe prikyng off' a synwe opere
28 ellys of a corde, and 3if þou myztest nozt deffende þe crampe, newhere
wiþ blode letynge, ne wiþ ventosynge, ne wiþ clysterie, ne wiþ sup-
positorie, ne *with* defensif in anyntyng þe nekke, ne þe grynde, ne þe
arme holys, þenne yt is necessarie þat þou kytte alle atwo þilke synwe
32 opere corde þat is y-prikyde, þowþ þat þe ffelynge opere þe meffynge
of þe lyme, to whom þilke synwe opere corde servyde, in party oper
in al be loste. Ffor yt is bettyre⁴ þat a man lese þe felynge & þe
meffynge of a lyme þenne þawþ þat he deyze. But yt is bettyre 3if
36 þat þou coupest kepen a man *with* opere manere medicynes, þenne
þat þe synwe opere corde be y-kutte al atwo. And 3if þat þou were
nozt at þe bygynnyng, and þou fyndest a man hauynge a crampe
for a wounde, do þou as y dyde at Melan. Þere was a Scolere of
40 myne þat was a Surgyne þat was y-clepyde Olyfere, whyche þat

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁴ fol. 67 b]

³ *ellis*, above line.

Case of a shepherd who had hurt his head. of a wounde þat he hadde in þe heed; & bi pilke wounde þe pannicle ouþir þe skyn þat keueriþ þe brayn panne þat is vnder þe fleisch was hurt, & neuer-pe-lattere þe brayn panne was not hurt. & pilke leche, or þanne he hadde *perfitlich* purified þilke pannicle, 4 sowedid þe wounde wiþoutforþ¹; & whanne þilke wounde was sowedid, þe pannicle þat was not weel heelid hadde a dedein² & was cause of gendrynge of a crampe in þilke wounde. & at þe laste I was clepid to þe sike man, & I foond him hauynge þe 8 crampe, & wiþ þe crampe he hadde manye smale enpostymes aboute his face—& þat is an yuele tokene in þe woundis of þe heed—& þanne I demede him for deed / Neþeles at þe instaunce of hise freendis I wolde asaie þe worchinge of kynde vpon resoun; I made 12 his heed to be schaue,³ & I kutte azen þe wounde þat was ⁴consowedid wiþ a rasour to þe deppe of þe same wounde, & aftirward I fulfillide þe wounde with hoot oile of rosis, & I anoyntide al þe heed with þe same oile of rosis & a litil vynegre medlid togidere, & 16 I anoyntide þe nolle & þe necke oonly wiþ oile of rosis, & I dide on þe wounde þe zelke of an ey wiþ oile of rosis, and I boond al

¹ *wiþoutforþ*, extrinsecus, from without.

² *dedein*, Lat. *panniculus indignatus causa fuit spasmi*. The translator misunderstood *indignatus*, and gives us an "indignant pannicle." *indignatus*, Med. Lat. damaged, hurt. See Tommas. s. v. *indegnare* 3.—Compare þe *ludych lorde*—*hade dedayn of þat dede*.—Allit. Poems, B. 74.

³ *I made his hed to be schaue*, *abradi caput feci*.

Add. MS. 12,056. curyde a schepere of a wounde þat he hadde in the hed; & by pilke wounde þe pannycle opere þe skyn þat keueryth þe breyne panne, 20 þat is vndire þe flesch, was y-hurt, & nere þe latere þe breyn panne was nozt y-hurt. & þilke leche, ere þanne he hadde *perfytyche* y-purifiede þilke pannycle, soudyde þe wounde withouten forth; & whanne þat þilke wounde was y-sowlyde, þe pannycle þat was nozt 24 wel helyde hadde a dedeyne, & was cause of engendrynge of a crampe in þilke wounde. And at þe laste y was clepyde to þilke syke man, & y fonde hym habbynge þe crampe, & with þe crampe he hadde manye smale enpostemes aboute hys face, & þat ys an 28 yuele tokne in þe woundys of þe hed, and þenne y demyde hym for ded. Napeles at þe instaunce of hys frendys y þat wolde assaye þe worchyng of kynde vpon resoun, I made hys hed ben y-schaue, and y kutte azeyne þe wounde, þat was *consowedid*, with a rasoure to þe 32 deppe of þe same wounde, & afterwarde y fulfylde þilke wounde with hote oyle of rosys, & y anoyntede alle þe hed with þe same oyle of roses & a lyteH vynegre y-medlyde togedre, & y anoyntede þe nolle & þe nekke only wiþ oyle of rosys, and y dyde on þe wounde 36 þe 3olke of an eye with oyle of rosys, and y bonde alle þe hed wiþ a

- þe heed wip a boond leiynge þer vndir herdis¹ or towz smal I tosid, and I openede his mouþ & putte into his mouþ þe broþ maad of a chicken, wip comyn & also wip cleer wyyn medlid wip myche water; on
 4 þe morowe I turnede azen & I foond þe sike of^t bettere disposicioun, & I openede bettere his mouþ, & he spak bettere; nepeles I foond þe wounde drie, & þanne I dide ofte tymes þe same medicyn & þe same oynture. In þe þridde dai þe skyn of^t þe heed was maad
 8 moist, þe which was bifore as drie as þe skyn hadde be rostid at þe fier, & in so miche² þe skyn was maad þinne, þat þer was no þing bitwene þe skyn & þe brayn þanne. & at þe laste þe wounde quyturide wip contynuaunce of^t þe same cure tofore seid, & in þis³ maner [3 ff. 54j]
- 12 þe zonge man was heclid boþe of^t þe crampe & also of^t þe wounde / But þilke crampe was wipoute feure; for I may not þenke þat I haue seen a feure in þe woundes of^t þe heed, or ellis of^t þe senewis prickid a crampe, þat nouzt azenstondynge remedie eiper medicyns and so cured the patient.
- 16 þe pacient þat hadde þe crampe dide / My beste counseil is to lete him blood in þe bigynnyng þat haþ þe crampe, namely, & he be strong & replete, & if þat he haue not bled ynouzt at his woundis; If fever occurs death ensues.
- & anoynte his nolle & his necke wip hote oynementis as wip oile use ointments,
- ¹ herdis. See Wright Wü. 614. 2. "Stupa, herdes." ² þat, inserted.

- 20 bonde leggyng þere undyre hurdys opere towz smal tosyde, and y. opnyde hys mouth & put into hys mouth þe broth of a chyken y-made with comyn, and also clere wyn y-medlyde with myche watyre. On þe morwe y turnyde azeine & y fonde þe syke of
 24 bettyre dysposicioun, & he opnyde bettyre hys mouth, & he spak bettyre; & napeles⁴ y fonde þe wounde drye, & þenne y dede este sonys þe same medicine & þe same vncture. In þe þridde day þe skyn of þe hed was y-mad moyst, whyche þat was to forne as drye
 28 as a skyn hadde be rostyde to þe fyre, and in so myche þe skyn was y-made þinne, þat þere was noþyng betwene þe skyn & þe breyne þanne. & at þe laste þe wounde quyturide wip contynewaunce of þe same cure tofore seyde, & in þis manere þe zonge man was helyde
 32 boþe of þe crampe & eke of þe wounde. But þilke crampe was withouten ffeuyre; ffor y ne may nozt þynke þat y haue seyn⁵ a ffeuyre in þe woundes of synwes, opere ellys of þe hed precede a crampe, þat nozt azeine stondynge medycynes þe pacient þat
 36 hadde þe crampe ne deyede. My beste conseyle is to letyn hym blod in the bygynnyng þat haþ þe crampe, namly, & he be stronge & replete, and zif þat he haue nouzt bled ynouzt at hys wounde; and anoynte hys nolle & hys necke wip hote oynementis, as with oyle of

Add. MS.
12,056.

[4 fol. 68 a]

⁵ a wounde struck through after seyn.

Nota.
small cauteries,
bandages.

of nardine, euforbine, oile of rue,¹ lilijs *et cetera* / & also to make smale cauteries punctale, *pat* is to seie as smal as *pe* eende of a pricke, bitwene ech whirlebon of *pe* necke, so neuere-*pe*-lattere *pat* *pe* cauterie go not ouer depe / Aftirward bynde long¹ wolle to his heed bihynde & to his necke & to hise schuldris, & do *peron* hoot oile, & leie him in a soft bed & lete him be in reste & in pees / But *per* ben summe *pat* setten in her bookis medicyns *pat* *pro-uoken* *pe* feueris; for *pat* *ypocras* techip in .iiij^{to} afforismoris: **a** **8** **spasmo² vel te³tano habito febre⁴ superueniente soluit egritudinem** / *pat* is to seie: if *pat* a man haue a crampe or ellis a tetane *pat* is a sijknis *pat* halt *pe* membre lich streit on bope sidis as a crampe halt *pe* oon side of *pe* membre & *pe* feuere come on pilke **12** **crampe eipir pilke tetane**, he distrieþ *pe* crampe eipir *pe* sijknis; & also *pei* anynte wiþ to hoot an oynement to *prouoke* *pe* feueres, *pe* which ping¹ I ne apreue not in *pe* crampe of a wounde þowz *pat* *pilke* oynement myzte be profitable in a crampe wipoute wounde, & **16** where *pat* humouris abounde, namely, if it be fleume.

ypocras.
[³ lf. 54, bk.]
says that
fever takes
away the
cramp or
tetanus:

he is wrong,
if the cramp
comes from a
wound.

Signs (symptoms) of
cramp.
General signs.

Summe ben general tokenes & summe ben special of schewynge of *pe* crampe / General tokenes ben þese: to greet akþe, crokidnes⁵

¹ *rue*, *ruta*. Turner, *Herbal*, ii, 122 b. *Ruta* is named in Greke *Pegamon*, in English *Rue* or *herbe grace*, in French *rue de gardin*, in Dutch *Weinraut*.

² Cramp and Tetanus. See *Notes*.

⁴ *febre superueniente*, error for *febris superueniens*.

⁵ *crokidness*, Lat. *obliquitas*.

Add. MS. 12,056. nardyne, enforbine, Oyle rewe, lylies &c., and also to make smale 20
cauteries punctales, *pat* is to sigge as smale as *pe* ende of a prykke,

bytweene euery whirlebone of *pe* nekke, so neuere *pe* latere *pat* *pe* cauterie go nouzt ouere depe. Afterwarde bynde longe wolle to hys hed be hynde, & to his nekke, & to his schuldris, & do *pere* 24
on hote oyle, & leye hym in a softe bed, & lete hym ben in reste & in pees. But *pere* be summe *pat* setten in here bokys medycines, *pat* *provocen* *pe* ffuerys; for *pat* *ypocras* techyth in quarto afforismorum: **a** **spasmo vel detano habito febre superueniente soluit egritudinem** *pat* ys to sigge; *zif* *pat* a man haff *pe* crampe, *opere* 28
ellys a tetane, *pat* is a syknesse *pat* halt the membre y-lyche streyt on bope *pe* sydes, as a crampe halte *pe* on syde of *pe* membre, & *pe* ffuere come on pilke crampe *opere* pilke tetane, he distroyeth *pe* 32
crampe *opere* *pe* seknesse, and also þey anynte with to hote oynement to *provoke* *pe* ffuerys, *pe* whyche þynge y ne apreft¹ nouzt in *pe* crampe of a wounde, þowz *pat* *pilke* oynement myzte be profitable 36
in a crampe withouten ⁶wounde, & where *pat* humores habounde, **36**
namlye, *zif* yt be flewme. Somme ben general toknys, & some be special of schewynge of a crampe. General toknys ben þese: to

[⁶ fol. 68 b]

of iȝen, & crokidnes of schewynge, & crokidnes of eeris, of þe nose
 þrillis, & of þe lippis, & whanne þat a man may not speke, & þe
 cheke be constreyned & difficulte of meuyngge, and namely, of
 4 þe necke, & ofte constreynynge togidere, & a sodeyn schakyng
 togidere. Special signes maken oon of þre maner of crampis: þe
 toon is clepid amprostonos¹, þe toþer empistenos², þe .iiij. tetanus / Special signs.
.1.
.2.
.3.
[² 1f. 55]
 In þis maner of crampe þat is clepid amprostonos, þe senewis tofore
 8 ben drawe togidere / þe fore partie of þe heed is crokid, þe sike
 man may not heuen it vp, he berip his chyn as it lijþ on his brest,
 & his mouþ is streit & he may not opene it, & þe fyngris of his
 hand ben folden into his fist / & in empistonies þe necke is crokid, Empistonos.
 12 his mouþ is open, hise chekis ben open, & þe fyngris of his hand
 ben streyned backward / & þe tetane halt þe boþe parties of þe Tetanus.
 body, so þat he may not turne his necke to no partie but al þe
 bodi is stif & streyned, as a staf were putt yn at his necke & out
 16 at his ers / Alle þese tokenes or ellis summe of hem schewip þe
 disposicioun of him þat haþ þe crampe / And whanne þat þese
 tokenes fallen in þe wounde of þe heed, or ellis of a senewe þei
 techen bettere þe leche to fle from þe sike man þan on him to abide
 20 & cure /

¹ Latin, *Emprosthotonos*.² Latin, *Opisthotonos*.

gret akþe, crokydnesse of eyȝen, & crokydnesse of erys of nose þreth Add. MS.
12,056.
 & of lyppes, & whenne þat a man may noȝt speke, & þe chekys ben
 constreynde, & dyficulte of swolwynge, & diffyculte of mevyngge,
 24 namlye of þe nekke, & ofte constreynynge togedre, & sodeyne
 schakyng togedire. Special signes maken one of þre manere of
 crampes: þe on ys y-clepyde **Emprostonos**, þe oþere **Empistonos**, þe
 þridde **tetanus**. In þese manere of crampe þat is clepyde Empros-
 28 tonos þe synwes tofore be drawen togedire, þe fore party of þe hed
 ys crokyde, ne þe syke man ne may noȝt heffyn it vp, he berith hys
 chyn as yt leye on hys brest; hys mouþ is streyte, ne he ne may
 noȝt opyne yt, and þe ffyngres of hys hande ben foldyde into hys
 32 fust. And in Empistonos þe nekke ys crokyde, his mouþ is opyne,
 his chekes beþ opyne, & þe fyngres of hys handys ben streynde
 bakwarde, and þe tetane halt boþe þe partye of þe body, so þat he
 may nouȝt turne hys nekke to non partie, but alle þe body is styffe
 36 & streynde, as a staf were put in at hys hed & out at his ers. Alle
 þese toknys oþere ellys sum of hem schewith þe disposicioun of hym
 þat haþ þe crampe. And whanne þat þese toknys fallyn in þe
 wounde of an hed oþere ellys of⁴ a synwe, þey teche bettere þe leche
 40 to fle from þe syke man, þenne on hym to abyde & cure. The firste

⁴ of, above line.

¶ The firste tretis is cendid wip þe help of almyztie god. Now *with* þe help of þe same, go to þe secunde /

¶ Cap^m j^m **N**OW bigynneþ þe secunde tretis of particuler 4 woundis of membris of office from þe heed to þe foot / and first bigynne at anotamie of þe heed /

[1 ff. 53, bk.]² Al þing^t ¹breffly ordeyned aftir my symple wiþ diuysynge, which þat^t longiþ to þe firste tretis of^t þis booke which þat^t holdiþ certeyn 8 rulis & techinge of^t surgerie vndir general chapitlis as we han bihiȝt^t / now we wolen bigynne to treten of^t curis aftir þat^t þe lymes ben in mannes bodi. & first^t I wole bigynne at^t þe heed & at^t his anotamie, & so *procede* forþ to ech membre dyuysynge þe anotamie of^t ech 12 membre, & in ordeynynge þe curis of^t woundis þat^t ben maad in ech sngle membre. I seie þat^t þe heed is maad of^t þre parties: of^t a fleischi partie, of^t a bony partie, & a brawni partie. þe fleischi partie is aboue þe brayn panne, þe which þat^t is maad of^t an hery 16 skyn; & þilke skyn is fulfillid wip braynes in euery partie /

The head consists of three parts.

² Heading to this page: *Anotomy off þe hed & woundes off the same.* / Compare Vicary's *Anatomie*, ch. iii. p. 24.

Add. MS. 12,056. tretys ys y-edyde wip helpe of almyztie god, now *with* þe helpe of³ þe same y go to þe secunde.

¶ Now begynneþ þe secunde tretys off particuler 20 woundes of membris of office from þe hede to þe ffoot, and ffirste y begynne at the Anotamye off the hed.

[1 fol. 69 a] Al thyng breffliche y-ordeynde, aftere þe devysynge of my 24 Symple wytt, whiche þat longith to þe firste tretys of this ⁴boke whiche þat holdyth certeyne rulis & techynges off^t surgerie vndire general chapitelis, as we han byheyȝt. Now we wylle begynne to tretyn of certeyne cures, aftere þat þe lymes ben in mannys body. 28 & firste y wyl begynne at þe hed & at hys anotamye, & so þe *pro-*cesse forþ to eueryche membre devysynge þe Anotamye of euery membre, & in ordeynynge þe cures of woundys þat beþ made in eche sngle membre, I sigge þat þe hed ys made of þre partyes: of a 32 fleschy partye, a bony partye, and a braynie partye. þe flesch partye is aboue þe brayn panne, whiche þat is made of an herye skyn; & þilke skyn ys fulfylde *with* brawnys in euery place. þe

³ MS. of twice.

þe heeris of þe heed weren for greet profite ordeyned þat neiþer cold ne hoot, ne schulde not. sodeynli entre þe þoris of the skyn, & neuer-þe-lattere þat þe fumosite of þe heed myzte go out bi þe 4 poris þere as þe heer growiþ; & þe heed myzte be þe more semeloker, & þat þe colouris of þe heeris of dyuers men myzte schewen þe complecciouns of þe heedis //

The hair protects the brain, and adorns the head.

[1 lf. 56]

þe skyn þat is¹ aboute þe brayn panne is lacertose, & ful of þicke 8 fleisch, þat he myzte wrie þe brayn panne, þat he schulde not fele sodeynliche to greet heete ne to greet cold. þe which skyn is maad of sutil þredis of senewis þat comen fro þe brayn, & of veynes & of arteries sotilliche I-maad; & so þe skyn of þe heed is sotilliche 12 ioyned wiþ þe skyn of al þe bodi / & also þe skyn of þe heed is more þickere þan þe brain sculle, þat it schulde ben more rare² & more porose, þat is to seie, more ful of hoolis / þe lacertis of þe skyn proceden aftir þat þe goynge procediþ of þe heeris /

skyn.

is muscular,

is made of fibrous cords and veins,

is thick and porous.

16 þe brayn panne is maad of manye boonys / þe firste summe,³ þe whiche þat holdiþ þe prouitis þat longen to þe brayn panne, hap .ij. helpingis; oon helpinge is: þouþ þat an hurtynge come to oon boon, neuere-þe-lattere he schulde not falle to alle þe boonys / þe secunde 20 help is, oon boon þat is to hard in oon partie ne schulde not be so

The skull consists of many bones for different reasons, as touching the skull itself.

² rare. Lat. rarus.

³ Lat. Prima nanque summa . . .

herys off þe hed were for grete proffyte y-ordeynde, þat neiþere 24 colde ne hete ne scholde noþt sodeynliche entre þe pores of þe skyn, & neuere þe lattere þat þe fumosite of þe hed myzte go out be þe pores þere as þe here growyþ, and þat þe hed myzte be þe more 28 semlykere, and þat þe coloure of þe herys myzte schewe þe complexioun of þe hed. þe skyn þat is abouten þe breyne panne ys lacertos & ful of þykke flesch, þat he myzte wreyen þe breyne panne, þat he scholde noþt fele to sodeynlyche neiþere to grete hete ne to cold. þe whiche skyn ys made of sotyþ þredys of synwes þat comeþ from þe brayn & of veynis & of arteryes sotylliche y-mad; and so þe skyn of þe hed ys sotylliche y-Ioyned with þe skyn off 32 alle þe bodye, and also þe skyn of þe hed ys more þykkere þanne þe brayne scolle, þat it scholde be more rare & more porose þat is to sigge more ful of hols. þe lacertes of þe skyn proceden after þat þe goynge procedyþ of þe herys, þe brayn panne ys mad of manye 36 bonys. þe fyrste summe, whiche þat wiþholdyþ þe profites þat longyþ to þe brayn panne, hap tweye helpynges; on helpynges ys, þowþ þat an hurtynge come to on bon, neuere þe latere he scholde noþt fallen to alle þe bonys; þe secunde helpe is þat on bon þat is 40 to harde in on partye, ne scholde noþt be so⁴ hard in an opere

Add. MS. 12,056.

[⁴ fol. 69 b]

.2.
the organs
under the
skull.

[¹ If. 56, bk.]

The sutures
of the skull

a.
form the
ways for the
velus,

b.
let the nerves
go out

c.
and the
fumosity,

d.
support the
dura mater
and pia
mater.

The brain
pan is formed
of two tables,

has seven
bones.

I, Coronale.

hard in anopir partie. / þe secunde summe, þe which þat^t wiphalt^t þe helpingis þat^t ben vndir þe brayn panne, haþ wipinne him. iiij. helpingis; þe whiche helpingis ben ful maad by þe ¹semis þat^t ben of þe brayn panne; ne þe helpingis myzte not^t be maad, but^t if^t þat^t ⁴ þer were manye boonys / þe firste^t help is, þat^t þe veynes myzten go doun bi þe semis of^t þe brayn panne berynge² norischinge to þe same brayn³ / þe secunde help is, þat^t þe senewis þat^t comen out^t of þe brayn myzte haue wey in goyng out / þe þridde help is, þat^t þe ⁸ fumes of^t þe brayn myzten haue wey of^t smokyng^t out / þe fourþe is, þat^t neiþer dura mater, ne pia mater, þat^t as þei ben hangid, ne myzte not^t greue þe brayn.

So þat^t þe brayn panne is maad of^t ij. smeþe liz^t tablis, þat^t oon ¹² is aboue, þe toþir is byneþe / & þei ben sumwhat^t spongiours in þe myddis, & rare þat^t þe smoke of^t þe heete myzte bettere passe out^t & þei ben smeþe þat^t þei myzten not^t greue þe brayn / Dyuers men þat^t maken dyuers anotamie dyuyden þe brayn panne diuerslych / sum- ¹⁶ men noumbren mo boonys þan summe opir speken of^t / but^t soþenes is, þat^t þer ben .vj. & oon which þat^t susteyneþ þe sixte. þe firste boon is clepid, þe boon of^t þe forheed or ellis coronale, & he bigynneþ from þe browis & lastiþ to þe seem þat^t departiþ þe heed quarter. ²⁰

² MS. inserts *þ*.

³ panne after *brayn* cancelled.

Add. MS.
12,056.

partye. Secunde summe, whiche þat^t withhalt helpynges, þat^t bep vnder þe brayn panne, haþ with hym iiij helpynges; þe whiche helpynges bep ful mad be þe semys þat^t bep of þe breyn panne. Ne þo helpynges ne myzte nozt be mad, but^t 3if þat^t þere were manye ²⁴ bonys. þe firste helpe ys, þat^t þe veynes myzte go doun by the semys of⁴ þe brayn panne, berynge norosschyng to þe same brayn.

Secunde helpe ys þat^t þe synwes, þat^t comyth out of þe brayn, myzte habbe wey in goyng out. þe þridde helpe ys, þat^t þe fumes ²⁸ of þe brayn myzte habbe wey of^t smokyng out. þe ffourþe ys, þat^t neiþere dura mater ne pia mater, þere as þey ben y-hongyde, ne myzte nozt greue þe brayn. Sytthe þat^t þe breyne panne ys made of two smeþe lyzte tablys, þat^t one ys aboue & þe opere byneþe, & ³² þey be sumwhat spongyouse in þe myddel & rare, þat^t þe smokys of þe hed myzte þe bettyre passen out, & þey be smeþe þat^t þey myzte nozt greue þe brayn. Dyuerse men þat^t makyth dyuerse Anotamye devydeþ þe breyn panne dyuerslyche. Somme nowmbryth mo ³⁶ bonys, þezne summe opere spekyn of; but soþenese ys that þere ben sixe; & one whyche þat^t susteyneþ þo sixe. þe ffyrste bon ys clepyde þe bon of þe⁵ fforhed opere ellys coronale, & he bygynneþ from þe browys, & lastyth vnto þe seme þat^t departyth þe hed ⁴⁰

⁴ of above line.

⁵ þe above line.

1 & pilke is clepid coronale / þis boon haþ in sum maner of men a [1 lf. 57]
 smal seem in foldynge of þe forheed, & þerfore sum men seyn
 þat þer ben .ij. boonis. ij oþir boonys ben ioyned with pilke boon
 coronable in þe myddis of þe heed ouerþwert ouer; þat² þei ben
 4 bounde togidere bi oon ioynture, þe which þat strecchiþ from bifore
 to bihynde to þe lenkþe of þe heed, þe which is clepid sagittales,
 by as myche as he is schape lijk an arowe / & þese .ij. boonys ben
 clepid nerualia bi-cause þat þe figure of þe seem þat is with þe
 8 coronable is þe figure of a senewe eiper of a corde / þese boonys ben
 in þe hizeste coppe of þe heed & byhynde in þe nolle þer is a boon
 þe which is clepid alauda.³ & it is maad in þe symilitude of þis : Λ :
 which þat is ioyned wiþ þe boones nerualibus tofore seid bi þe mene
 12 of oon þan I-made to þe lijknes of þe boon tofore seid. & þese þre
 semes whiche þat ioynen togidere þe .iiij. boonys tofore seid, ben
 maad as it were two sawis, þe whiche teef ben ioyned, ech of hem
 in oþir in þis maner $\wedge \wedge \wedge \wedge$ / & þis ioynynge togidere of oon
 16 boon wiþ an oþir was maad bi-cause of iuvamentis þat I haue told
 to⁵forn; þer is no boon ioyned with an oþer as þese boonys ben. [5 lf. 57, bk.]

² þat insertion.

³ Latin : "Quartum os est ex parte posteriori in puppi; et conjungitur cum prædictis nerualibus mediante una commissura ad modum literæ laudæ grecæ." The word *lauda* is a corruption of *lambda*.

⁴ *augrim*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s.v. *algorism*.

twarte offere. And þylke bon is y-clepyde **coronale**: þis bon hath Add. MS.
 in some manere of men a smal seme in þe ffoldynge of þe fforhed, 12,056.
 20 & þere fore sum men siggeþ þat þere beþ tweye bonys. Tweye
 oþere bonys beþ y-Ioyned wiþ þylke bon **coronale** in þe myden of
 þe hed twarte offere, & þey ben y-bounde togedyre by one Iucture,
 þe whiche þat strecchiþ from tofore to byhynde, by the lengthe
 24 of þe hed, þe whiche ys y-clepyde **sagyttalis** by as myche as he
 ys schapyde lyke an arwe. And þese tweye bonys beþ y-clepyde
Nerualia, by cause of þe ffigure of the seme þat ys wiþ þe coronale,
⁶ys þe ffigure of a synwe oþere of a corde. And þese bonys ben in [6 fol. 70 a]
 28 þe heyest coppe of the hed, and behynde in þe nolle þere ys a bon
 whyche þat is y-clepyde **Alauda**, & ys y-made to þe Symilitude of
 þis cyffre of Augrym Λ , whiche þat ys Ioynede with þe bonys
 nerualibus tofore seyde, by þe mene of on þem y-mad to þe lyknesse
 32 of þe bon tofore seyde. & þese þre zemes whiche þat Ioyneth to-
 gedyre þe foure bonys to fore seyde, ben y-made as yt were tweye⁷
 36 þe whiche whos teth joyned eche of hem in oþere in thys manere /
WINDOW & þis ioynynge togedire of on bon with an oþer was y-made
 by-cause Iuvamentes þat y haue tolde befor; þere nys no bon
 y-ioynede with an oþere as þese bonys ben. Undire þe bon þat ys

⁷ MS. *tweye* twice.

V. Tassillus
(Basilar bone)
supports all
the other
bones.

Vndir þe boon þat is clepid alauda, þer is a ful hard boon & holid in þe myddil, þe which boon susteyneþ alle þe boonys of þe heed. þe which boon is clepid passillus, & he is ioyned byneþe wiþ þe firste boon of þe nake. þe schap of þe coniunccioun of þe .v. boonis of 4 þe heed is in þis maner **ERM**. Boþe on þe rihtside & on þe lift side of þe forseid boonys, whiche þat ben clepid nerualia * [whiche þat beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere syde.] & þo boonys þat vndir setten ben clepid ossa mendosa. & þese 8 boonys in oon partie ben ful hard þere as þe hole of þe eere passip þoru3, & þei ben clepid petrosa; & summen seien þat þer ben .iiij. boonys ij. on eiþir side / & whanne þat alle þe boonys of þe heed ben ioyned togidere, þou schalt fynde in sofastnes þat þer ben but vj. boonys, 12 whanne þat þou rekenest os¹ coronale for oon boon, & .ij. boonys þat ben clepid mendose, ij. & oon þat ben iij; & o boon þat is clepid alauda. & ij. boonys þat ben clepid nerualia þat ben .vj.; & þe .vij. boon is clepid passillare, þe which is not of þe boones of þe 16 heed, but he susteyneþ alle þe opere boonys of þe heed.² & iij. maner of semes³ makip coniunccioun of alle þe boonys in þis maner

VI, VII.
Temporal
bones (men-
dosa); one
portion is
called os
petrosuun.

The skull has
seven bones.

three true
sutures,
[³ lf. 58.]

¹ MS. as.



² Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*þ he is vnterberyng in þe hynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp, or pavillus.*"

33

Add. MS. y-clepyde Alauda, þere ys a ful harde bon & y-holyde in þe myddle, 20 þe whyche bone susteyneþ alle þe bonys of þe hed. þe whiche bon ys y-clepyde **Passilus**, & he ys ioynede byneþe wiþ þe fyrste bon of þe nekke. þe schappe of þe coniunccioun of þe fife bonys of þe hed ys in þis manere **EWEN**. Bothe on þe ryzte syde & on þe 24 lefte syde of þe forseide bonys whiche þat beþ y-clepyde nerualia,* whiche þat beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere syde*; þe whiche þat beþ vndiresetterys to þo bonys þat beþ y-clepyde nerualia; & þo bonys þat vndire setten, 28 ben y-clept ossa mendosa. And þese bonys in one partye ben ful harde, þere as þe hole of þe ere passyþ þoru3, & þey ben y-clepede⁴ petrosa & sum men siggen þat þere ben foure bonys, two on eythere syde. & whanne þat alle bonys of þe hed be Ioynede togidere þou 32 schalt fynde in sofastnesse, þat þere ben but sixe bonys whanne þat þou reknyste os⁵ coronale ffor on bon, & twey bonys þat beþ y-clepyde mendose tweyne þat beþ þre, and o bon þat ys y-clepyde Alanda, & twey bonys þat is y-clepyde nerualia—þat beþ sixe, 36 and þe vij bon ys y-clepyde passillare, þe whiche ys nought of þe bonys of þe hed, but he susteyneþ alle þe opere bonys of þe hed. And þre maner of semys makyþ coniunccioun of alle þe bonys on þis

⁴ MS. petotra.

⁵ MS. as.

- & wip .ij. semes mendose in þis maner 220. & whanne þat þe crounne of þe heed is perfiȝt, þe heed is maad in þis maner  / þis is þe foorme of an heed weel propossiond, round  þat he
- 4 myzte more wipholde, & þat he myzte lasse be hurt, & þat he be longe warpid¹, hauynge tofore & bihynde eminence: þat is to seic apeiryng, þat þe senewis þat comen out of þe brayn myzten haue a porose place of goynge out. & neþeles as ypoeras & galion, whiche
- 8 þat expowneþ ypoeras, tellip², it is possible to fynde oþir in maner of makynge of heedis. Oon maner is, if eminence be not in partie of þe heed tofore, for if þat he be pleyn in partie tofore, bi þat pleynes þe seem is lost, þat is clepid coronalis / þe secunde is, if
- 12 þat þe heed haue noon eminence bihynde, but þat þe hyndere partie be pleyn, & bi þat pleynes þe seeme is lost þat is clepid alauda / þe þridde is, if þat þe noon eminence bifore ne bihinde in þe heed, but al þe heed is round as a sercle, & þanne þe is but oon
- 16 seem in þe myddil of þe brayn panne: for it is vnpossible þe heed to haue ony oþer³ schap wipoute lesynge of sum partie of þe brayn, & were contrarious azens þe lijf / Bi þe myddil seem which þat is in þe heed, þere descendip a ueyne comynge fro þe lyuere bi þe

two false sutures (mendose).

A well-proportioned head is oblong with openings for the nerves,

ypoceras. & Galion enumerate peculiar forms:

.1. front part flat,

.2. back part flat,

.3. without any prominence.



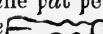
.Nota.

[³ 1f. 58, bk.]

A vein and artery come through the basilar bone,

¹ *longe warpid*, Lat. oblongus. Comp. Langwyrpe bôc, *Indices Monast.*

12, ed. Kluge. ² *tellip*, error for *tellen*.

- 20 manere , & with tweye semys mendose in þis manere . And whanne þat þe corone of þe hed ys perfyte, þe hed⁴ ys maad in þis manere . þis ys þe forme of an hed wel proporcionede, þat he be ronde because þat he myghte þe more wipholde, & þat he
- 24 myzte þe lasse be y-hurt, and þat he be longewarped hauynge tofore & behynde eminence þat is to sigge aperyng, þat þe synwes þat comyth out of þe brayn, myghte haue a porose place of goynge out. And napelese as ypoeras & galyen, whiche þat exponeþ ypoeras, tellyn: it is possible to fynden þe oþere manere makynge of hedys. On manere is, ȝif eminence be noȝt in þe partye of þe hed tofore; for ȝif þat he be pleyn in þe partye tofore, by þat pleynnesse þe seme is y-lost þat is y-clepyde coronalis. Secunde ys ȝif þe hed
- 32 haff⁵ non eminence behynde, but þat þe hyndere party be playn, and by þat playnnesse þe seme ys y-lost þat ys y-clepyde Alauda.⁵ þe þridde ys ȝif þere be non eminence tofore ne behynde in þe hed, but alle þe hed ys rounde as a sercle. And þenne þere nys
- 36 but on sem in þe myddel of þe breyne panne, ffor it is vnpossible þe hed to habben enye oþere schappe wipouten lesyng of some party of þe brayn; & þat were contrariouse aȝeyne lyf. By þe myddele seme, whiche þat is in þe hed, þere dissendyth a ueyne comynge

Add. MS.

12,056.

[⁴ fol. 70 b]

⁵ MS. *Abanda*.

brayn panne of a boon which *pat* is holid *pat* is clepid passillarus. & bi þe same weye þer risiþ an arterie comynge from þe herte, & þei ben ioyned togidere, & of þe weuingge of þe tweyne þer is maad an hard pannicle *pat* is to seie a cloof *pat* is vndir þe brayn 4 panne; & he is hangid *with* summe smale ligamentis to þe brayn panne in summe of þe semes. þe which pannicle byndiþ þe boonys togidere, & it' is clepid dura mater. & it' is riztful *pat* an arterie schulde arise vpward from byneþe, for þe blood *pat* is in him is 8 sutil, & his meuyng is pulsatif; & he hadde discendid from aboue downward, he schulde haue discendid wiþ to greet' an hastynes, but pilke ascendynge temperiþ pilke flux. & it' is couenable *pat* þe veyne discende bicause *pat* þe blood *pat* is in þe veynes is more pickere, 12 & þe blood *pat* is in þe veynes goiþ doun sotilli. & boþe þese veynes *pat* ben pulsatif & not' pulsatif' ben ioyned wiþ dura mater / Also þe ¹ veyne strecchiþ more lower, & of' hem is engendrid pia mater /
 [1 lf. 59] Affir þei discenden doun to þe brayn, & þei bryngen lijf & dewe 16 norischinge & cordialle² spiritis, þe which is in þe brayn & þere is defied, & þere resseyueþ naturel foorme of' vndirstondynge. Pia mater enuyrouneþ al þe brayn, & departiþ him into iij. celoles *pat* iij. cellis of þe brayn

² MS. inserts þe.

Add. MS. 12,056. from þe lyffere, by þe breyn ponne, of a bon welche *pat* is y-holyde. 20 *pat* is y-clepyde pasillaris. And by þe same weye þere arysith an Arterye comynge fro þe herte, and þey ben Ioyned togedire, & of þe weffynge of þo tweyne þere is y-mad an hard pannicle *pat* is to sigge a cloth *pat* is vndir þe brayn panne, and he is hongyde wiþ 24 sum smale ligamentys to þe brayn panne in some of þe semys, þe whych pannicle byndeþ þe bonys togedire, & it is clepyde **dura mater**. And yt is ryztful *pat* an Arterye scholde arysen vpwarde from byneþyne, for þe blod *pat* ys in hym *pat* is sotyH, & hys 28 meffynge *pat* ys pulsatyff³; and he hadde discendyde from aboue dunwarde, he scholde han discendyde wiþ to gret' an hastynesse, but þe ascendynge temprith pulke flux. And yt is couenable *pat* þe veyne discende, bycause *pat* þe blod *pat* ys in þe veynes ys more 32 pykkore, & þe blod *pat* is in þe veyne geþ doun softliche. & boþe þese veynes *pat* buþ⁵ pulsatyf' & nouzt pulsatyf' heþ y-Ioynede wiþ dura matre. And also þowz þe veyne streche more lowere, & of hem ys engendryde pia mater. Afterward þey descenden doun to 36 þe brayn. & þey bryngen lyf' & dywe norysschyng & cordyal spiritus, þe whiche is in þe brayn and þere is diffyede, & þere resseyueþ naturel forme of vnderstondynge. Pia mater environneþ al þe brayn, & departyth hym into þe pre celoles⁶ *pat* heþ chaumbres : 40

[4 fol. 71 a]

³ MS. *prilsatyff*.

⁵ *buþ*, above line.

⁶ MS. *cololes*.

- ben chaumbris : þe firste, þe myddile, & þe laste. & þouȝ þat alle þese ben dyuydid syngulerly bi hem-siluen, it semeþ þat þe celole¹ þat is tofore in þe brayn is departid in two parties ; & bi þat cause
- 4 summen seien þat þer ben .iiij. ventriclis of þe brayn. þe forþere partie of þe brayn is greet & brood, bicause þat he schulde resceyue manye spiritis þat ben sent to him ; for þat place is propre instrument of ymagynacioun þe which resceyueþ þingis þat comprehendij of
- 8 fantasie ;² & þo þingis kunnen vndirstonde resceyueþ³ bi propre instrumentis þat longij. & þouȝ þat al þe brayn, in comparisoun of þe herte & of alle oþere membris of þe body, be deemed cold & moist, þis celule hauynge comparisoun to oþere celules is deemed
- 12 hoot & drie. & þe myddil part of þe brayn is lasse⁴ þan ony oþere of þe oþere two parties, & her foorme is punat⁵ brood toward þe forþere side of þe heed, & scharpere toward þe hyndere syde, þat he myȝte be þe more able to resceyue ymagynatif þingis, & þo
- 16 þingis to zeue to þe ynnere partie, & þo þingis þat ben zeue to wipholde / þis ventricle is sett bitwene two addiamentis of þe brayn ; þe whiche addiamentis ben lijk to tweie buttokkis of a man þat ben ioyned togidere, & þei ben [to]* þis ventricle as it were a sittyng
- The foremost cell or Ventricle is the largest one, and contains Imagination.
- Nota
[* If. 59, bk.]
The middle Ventricle has a pineal form,
lies between two addiamentis of the brain (optical lobes),
- ¹ MS. *celose.* ² Lat. : res a phantasia comprehensas.
³ Read, þo þingis comyn vndirstondynge resceyueþ. Lat. : quas(res) communis sensus recipit. ⁵ punat, Lat. : pineatus.

- 20 þe firste, þe myddle, & þe laste. And þowȝ þat alle þese ben diffyede senglerlyche by hem selffyn, yt semeþ þat þe celele þat is tofore in þe brayn ys departyde in two parties, & by þat cause sum men siggen, þat þere ben foure ventricles of þe brayn. þe
- 24 furþere part of þe brayn ys gret & brod, by cause þat he scholde resceyue manye spiritis þat ben y-sende to hym for þat place is propre instrement of y-maginacion, þe whiche resceyueþ þynges þat þuþ comprehendide of fantasie ; and þo þynges comen vndirstond-
- 28 ynge resceyueþ by propre Instrementys þat longyþ to hym, and þawȝ þat al þe brayn, in comparson of þe herte & of alle oþere membris of þe body, be y-demyde colde & moist, þis celule hauynge comparson to oþere celules ys y-demyde hot & dryȝe. þe myddel
- 32 part of þe brayn ys lasse þen eny of þe oþere two partyes, & here forme ys pyneat, brod toward þe furþere syde of þe hed and scharpere toward þe hyndor syde, þat he myȝte be þe more able to resceyue y-maginatyf þynges & þo þynges to zeve to þe ynnere
- 36 partye & þo þynges þat beþ y-zeve to with holde. þis ventricle ys y-sette bytwene tweyne additamentes of þe brayn, þe whiche additamentes ben y-liche þe two buttokkes of a man þat beþ y-ioynede togedre, and þey beþ to * þis ventricle as yt were a syttyng place
- Add. MS.
12,056.

stretches and contracts during perception,

is smaller than the other Ventricles.

[² 1f. 60]

The third Ventricle is the largest,

from it starts the Spinal Marrow.

The brain is cold and moist,

place eipir a couche vpon þe which he is drawen abroad, whanne þat' he resseyueþ ymagynatif' þingis; aftirward he is drawe togidere as a worm, whanne þat' he resseyueþ ymagynatiif' þingis; & whanne þat' þe sentence of' þilke ymagynacioun is brouzt forþ, þanne þilke 4 ventricle is drawe along', & also þe smallere eende of' þe ventricle entriþ into þe ventricle þat' is bihynde in þe heed. & þis ventricle is myche lasse þan þe opere tweyne, bicause þat' no senewis proceden¹ not out of' him, & þat' manye þingis myzte be comprehendid [in 8 litel]* place þat' vertu of' witt' myzte þe sunnere be gaderid togidere to take his ²counseil; & þis ventricle to comparisoun of' opere ventriclis is deemed hoot' & drie. & aftir þat' þe hyndere ventricle, þe which is grettere & hardere þan þis; þe which [in]* comparisoun to 12 þe opere tweyne is demed cold & drie, þe which is brood twoward þe fore partie of' þe heed & scharp bakward, þe which resceyueþ sentence þat' ben schewid & kepiþ hem priuyliche as a cheste kepiþ tresour. & out of' him goiþ out' nucha þoruþ þe hole of' þe boon, 16 þat' is clepid passillaris, & þilke nucha is clopid wiþ two pannicles þat' goon out' of' þe brayn.

& al þe brayn is deemed cold & moist, bicause þat' he schulde

¹ MS. *procende*.

Add. MS. 12,056. *opere* a couche, vpon þe whyche he ys drawyne abrode, whenne 20 þat' he resseyueþ ³y-maginatyff' þynges. And afterwarde he ys y-drawe togedire as a worme, whenne þat' he resceyuetþ y-maginatyff' þynges; and whenne þat' þe sentence of þilke y-magynacioun ys y-brought forth, þenne þilke ventricle ys y-drawe alonge. And 24 also þe smallere ende of þis ventricle entriþ into þe ventricle þat' ys behynde in þe hed, and þis ventricle ys myche lasse þenne þe opere tweyne bycause þat' non synwes procedent not out of hym, and þat' manye þynges myghte be endyde in litel* place, þat' vertue 28 of wytt' myghte þe sonnere be y-gedyrde togedre to taken hys counseyff. And thys ventrycle to comparson of opere ventricles ys y-demyde hot & drye. After þat' ys þe hyndere ventricle, whiche ys grattere & hardere þenne thys; þe whiche in *comparson of þe 32 opere tweyne ys y-demyde colde & drye, þe whiche is brod towarde þe fore partye of þe hed & scharpe bachwarde, þe whyche resseyuyth sentense þat' beþ schewyde & kepyth hem priuyliche as a chest kepyth tresore. And out of hym goth out⁴ nucha⁵ þrouwe þe 36 hole of þe bon þat' ys y-clepyde passillarys. And þilke nucha ys y-clothyde⁶ wiþ tweye pannycles þat' goth out of þe brayn. And alle þe brayn ys y-demyde colde & moyst. bycause þat' he scholde

⁴ in þe a, struck through after goth out.

⁵ nucha on margin.

⁶ MS. ys y-clothyde twice.

- atempren spiritual fumosite þat comen of þe herte, & þat he schulde not ben dried for to myche meuyngþe þat he haþ in worchingþe of vertues; & þe brayn is whijt, bicause þat he schulde þe bettere
- 4 resseyue resoun & vnderstondyngþe / For if þeyntouris whanne þey schulen peynte a table, first þei maken it whijt, for þer wole no colour lasten but þoruþ him; & it is neische þat þe meuyngþe of vertues myzte þe bettere han place; & þe brayn is towþ þat þe
- 8 senewis þat goon out of hym¹ myzte be þe more towþ, & þe more þei ben enlongid from her bigynnyngþe & þe more hardere þei schulen be, & also þat þei schulden be bowable ynowþ & nouþt azenstondyngþe her hardnesse. & it is nessessarie þat þe brayn be clopid wiþ
- 12 .ij. panniclis: þat is to seie .ij. cloþis, þat in his meuyngþe, [as]* I haue seid tofore, þat it schulde not be hurt of þe brayn panne. Al þe brayn is departid into .ijj. colules² with addiamentis of þe panniclis of þe matris, þat þe spiritis myzten þe lengere dwelle in þe ventricle
- 16 to resseyuen bi ordure of digestioun, foorme & perfeccioun more þan þei hadden first of þe herte; & þat euery vertu myzte fulfille his accidens³ in his ventricle, or þan þe vois⁴ þat is comprehendid
- ² cellis, written above line. ³ accidens for accioun.
⁴ vois, Lat.: "antequam res comprehensa posset ad sequentem ventriculum pertransire."

white like a painter's table,

soft and tough.

[1 ff. 60, bk.]

The brain is protected by two Pannicles (Membranes);

which divide it into three cells,

where thought is formed.

- atempren spirituel ffumosites þat comyþh of þe herte, and þat he scholde nozte ben y-dreyzede fforto myche meffyngþe þat he haþ in worchyngþe of vertues. And þe brayn is whit bycause þat scholde resceyue þe bettere resoun & vnderstondyngþe. Ffor þese þeyntores, whenne þey schulle þeynten a table, firste þey maken yt whyte, for
- 24 þere nylle none coloure lasten but yt be leyde vpon whyt; & it is þenne opere rare, because þat vnderstondyngþe myzte þe sonnere passe þorwe hym; & yt is nessche þat þe meffyngþes off vertues myghte þe betyre habbe place; & þe brayn ys towþ, þat þe synwes
- 28 þat goþh out of hym, myzte be þe⁵ more towþere, and þe more þat þey ben enlongyde from here bygymyngþe, þe more hardere þey scholde be; and also that þey scholde be bowable y-nowþ nought azenystondyngþe here hardnesse. And yt is necessarye þat þe
- 32 brayn scholde be clopid with tweye clothys, þat in hys meffyngþe as *y haue seyde tofore he scholde nought ben y-hurt of þe brayn panne.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 72 a]

- Also þe brayn ys departyde into þre celules with þe addiamentes of þe pannycles of þe⁶ matris, þat þe spiritis myzt þe lengore dwellen in þe ventricles, to reseynen by ordre, digestioun, forme & perfeccion, more þanne þey hadden fyrst of þe hert, and þat euery vertue myghte fulfille hys accioun in hys ventrycle, ere

⁶ MS. *pie*, twice.

Part of the
brain is most
essential to
life,

Nota

[3 lf. 61]
especially the
substance of
the Ven-
tricles.

myzte passe to þe ventricle þat^t is sewingge.¹ Not^t azenstondynge
þese proprietees þe brayn haþ sum substaunce of^t marie þe which
fulfilliþ þe voidenes of^t þe forseid panniclis. & þilke mary enuyroun-
nep þe forseid panniclis, of^t þe which mary þer may sum partie in 4
hurtyng of^t þe heed be lost^t; & not^t azenstondynge þe goynge out^t
of^t sum partie of^t þilke mary, a man schal nouzt die. For þis mary
³is not^t of^t þe substaunce of^t þe ventriclis of^t þe brayn of^t þe which
mynde is maad; for þei ben of^t so greet^t nobilite, þouþ þat^t þer be 8
neuere so litil infeccioun, or ellis þat^t þer falle neuere so litil a lesyng^t
of hem⁴ þei ben deprived of^t her heelþe, in so myche þat^t oon colule⁵
may not^t be lost^t & a man be saued, as manye idiotis supposen con-
trarie / ⁶Anotamie of^t yzen, eeris, nose, chekelappis, mouþ, tunge & 12
teeþ, we deferren to ordeyne in þe þridde tretis, in þe whiche if^t god
wole we þenken to treten, & of^t opere sicknessis, & of^t opere lymes
out-cept^t woundis.

Different
kinds of
wounds on
the head.

& þo hurtyngis þat^t ben maad in þe heed eiþir þat^t ben maad 16
wiþoute wounde or wiþ wounde. & wheþer þat^t þei ben wiþoute
wounde or wiþ wounde, eiþir þei ben wiþ brekyng of^t þe brayn

¹ MS. *swingge*.

² MS. inserts *þ*.

⁴ of *hem* written on margin.

⁵ *cellul* written above.

⁶ The MS. has a marginal note: *Anotemy off eyen, eres, nose, chekes, mouthe, tounge, teth.*

Add. MS. 12,056. þanne þe foyz þat ys comprehendyde myghte passe to þe ventricle
þat ys sywyng. Nowzt azeynestondynge þese propretes, þe brayn 20
haþ sum substaunce of marie whiche fulfilliþ þe voydenesses of þe
forseyde pannycleres. And þilke marye envyrounyth þe foresyde
pannycles, of þe whyche marye þere may sum partye in þe hurtyng
of þe hed ben y-lost^t; and nozt ageynestondynge þe goynge out of 24
sum partye of þilke marye, a man schal nozt deye. Ffor þis marye
is nought of þe substaunce of þe ventricles of þe brayn, of whiche
mynde ys y-mad; ffor þey ben of so grete noblete, þif þere be neuere
so litel infectioun opere ellys þat þere falle neuere so lytel a lesyng 28
of hem, þey ben depreffyde of alle here helthe, in so myche þat on
celele may nozt ben y-lost, and a man ben saffyde, as manye
ydyotes supposen. Anothomye of eynen, neose, erne, chekelappes,
mouþ, tonge & teþ, we deferren to ordeynen in þe þridde tretys, in 32
þe distynციoun whiche þif god wol, we þynkeþ forto treten of opere
syknesse of þe lymes, outsepte woundes. And þo hurtynges þat
þeþ y-mad in þe hed, opere þey ben mad withouten wounde, opere
with wounde. & wheþere þat it be wyth wounde opere wiþouten 36
wounde, opere þey ben with brekyng of þe brayn þanne, opere

panne or wipoute brekyng of þe brayn panne / Or wheþer þat it be maad wip breche of þe brayn panne, or wipoute breche of þe brayn panne, summe ben wip hurtyng of þe brayn, & summe ben 4 wipoute hurtyng of þe brayn / & riȝt as pilke hurtis haue difference in tokenes, so þei han difference in perels & pronosticaciouns & maners with þe whiche þei musten ben holpen /

1 & if þat ony hurt be in þe heed wipoute ony wounde as wip 8 fallynge or wip smytyng of a stoon or of a staf or wip sum opir þing þat brusip, & if þat it be wipoute breche of þe brayn panne & wip hirtyng of þe brayn panne, it nedip not but schauynge of þe heed & anoyntyng with hote oilis of rosis & [abofen þe vncture]* 12 to strawen on þe poudre of mirtillis seed, & streyne þe place wip a boond til al þe place be fastned & þe swellyng be vanyschid away / In þis maner þou fastne al þe place þat no þing schal be corrupid, or ellis þer schal dwelle a litil corrupcioun, & if þat ony þing of 16 corrupcioun abide, þe place schal be opened wip an instrument, & so schal þe quyttur be excludid, & he schal be curid riȝt as opere empostymes þat ben woundid.

& if þat þe brayn panne were broke wipoute wounde of þe 20 heed þe which may be knowe bi disposicioun of þe cause & also of þe sike man, in biholdynge, if þat þat smytip were strong, or ellis

[1 ff. 61, bk.]

hurt of þe heed without any wound or fracture.

Nota

Have the head shaved and an ointment applied.

Fracture of the skull, without any open wound.

without brekyng of þe breyn panne. And wheþer 2 þat yt be mad wip þe breche of þe brayn panne opere withouten breche of þe breyn 24 panne, some ben with hurtyng of þe brayn, some without hurtyng of þe brayn. And ryȝte as pilke hurtynges habben dyfference in toknes, so þey hauen differens in pereles & pronosticaciouns & maners, with þe whiche þey most ben y-holpen. And zif an hurt be 28 in þe hed withouten wounde, as with fallynge, opere with smytyng of a ston, opere a staff, opere with sum opere thyng þat brusyþ, and zif þat yt be withouten breche of þe brayn panne, & with outen hurtyng of þe brayn panne, it nedyþ nouȝt but schaffynge of þe 32 hed, & anoyntyng wip hote oyle of roses, and abofen þe vncture* to strawen on þe poudre of þe seed of myrtylles, & streyne þe place with a band tyl al þe place be y-fastnyde & þe swellyng be y- 36 vanschid awaye. In þis manere þou schalt fastne al þe place, þat noþyng schal be corruped, opere ellys þere schall dwelle a lytel corrupcioun. And zif enye þynge of corrupcion abyde, þe place schal ben y-opnyde with an Instrument, & so alle þe quyter schal be 40 excludyd, & he schal ben y-curyd ryȝt as opere empostemys þat bep y-woundyde. And zif þat þe brayn panne were y-broke withoute enye wounde of þe hed, þe whiche may ben y-knowe by dysposicioun of þe cause & eke of þe syke man, in byholdynge zif þat þat smyt

Add. MS. 12,056.

[2 fol. 72 b]

Symptoms of the fracture: [1. ff. 62] as giddiness, vomiting, headache.

pat þe sike haue falle from his place, or ellis *pat* he was smyte *with* strong¹ smyting¹, & also if *pat* he fel & myzte not hastili arise. 1 & if *pat* he hadde scotomie,² *pat* is to seie a maner sijknes, whanne *pat* þer semeþ as *flien* or *opere* smale gnattis fleen tofore his yzen / or 4 ellis he spewiþ his mete, or he felip to gret akþe in þe heed, & if *pat* he may not breke a knotte of a straw wiþ hisē teep, & if þe heed be smyte wiþ a liȝt drie staf as of salow or ellis of pinee— & þanne leie þin eere to his heed, & if *pat* þe boon be hool þou 8 schalt here an hool soun aftir þe comparisoun of þe soun of an hool belle, also if þou makist þe sike man to holde bitwene his teep a pred twyned & I-wexid, & þanne bigynne to harpe *with* þi nailis vpon þe pred faste bi þe sike mannes mouþ, & so harpe wiþ þi naylis 12 vpon þe pred alwey streyned & makyngē soun to þe eende of þe pred, & þilke pred schal ben on lenkþe fro þe mouþ of a cubite, & so þou schalt harpe ofte tymes, & if *pat* þe pacient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ not his brayn þanne broke, for if his brayn 16 þanne were broke, þe sike man myzte not susteyne þe soun of þe pred. Alle þese signys, or ellis manye of hem bitokenen *pat* [3. ff. 62, bk.] þe brayn þanne is broken / & tweyne 3^{of} þe laste signys ben

² *scotomie*. Vigo Interpret. "*Scotomia*. They shoulde saye, Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth, when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

Add. MS. 12 056. were stronge, *opere* ellys *pat* þe syke haue y-fallen from hys place, 20 *opere* ellys *pat* he was y-smyte *with* stronge smytyngē; and also ȝif *pat* he fel & myght nought hastlye aryse, and ȝif *pat* he hadde scotomye: *pat* ys to sugge a manere seknesse, whenne *pat* þere semyth as flyezes, *opere* smale blake gnattys vleyzen tofore hys 24 eyzen, *opere* ellys he spyweþ hys mete, *opere* he felyth to grete akþe in hys hed, and ȝif *pat* he may nought breken a knotte of a straw; *with* hys teth, and ȝif þe hed be smyten *with* a liȝt dreyze staff, as [4. fol. 73 a] of salwe *opere* ellys pyne, and þenne leye þyn 4ere to hys hed; & 28 ȝif *pat* þe bon be hol, þou schalt heren an hol soun after þe comparisoun of þe soun of an hol belle & a bloke belle; also ȝif *pat* þou makyste þe syke man to holde bytwene hys teþ a prede y-twyned & y-waxed, & þenne begynne to harpen *with* þy naylles vpon þe 32 prede faste be þe seke mannes mouth, & so harpe *with* þyne naylles vpon þe pred alle wey streyned, in makyngē soun to þe ende of þe pred, & þilke pred schal ben of lengþe from þe mouth be þe space of a Kubyte; and þou schalt harpe so ofte tymes, & ȝif *pat* þe 36 pacient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ nozt hys brayn þanne y-broke; ffor ȝif hys breyn þanne were broke, þe seke man myghte nought susteyne þe soun of þe pred. Alle þese signes *opere* ellis manye of hem betokne *pat* þe breyn þanne is broken. And to þe 40

more certeyn þan ony of þe opere. & vnderstonde þat þe brayn panne mai ofte tymes be to-broken, & nepeles þe brayn felip noon harm in þe bigynnyng. But aftirward ofte tymes of hirtyng 4 of þe brayn panne, þe brayn is hirt / Galien witnessyng, þe brekyng of boonys in þe heed is dyuers in perels fro brekyng of opere boonys in þe bodi, for þe accidens þe which þat fallip ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn panne. Neipir is no man ne neuere 8 was þat myzte euermore helpe to alle accidentis, whanne þat þe brayn was meued in þe bigynnyng þat not azenstondyng his help,¹ be he neuere so good a leche, þat þe sike ne muste die /

Euel accidentis þe whiche þat [comyth to þe accidentes of þe 12 brayn & of hys]* pannicle ben² alwey dwellyng as constipacioun of þe wombe, or ellis þe flix of þe wombe, or ellis crokidnes, or ellis lokyng asquynt of þe izen, or ellis wepyng of þe oon yze, or ellis an hard scotomie, or ellis febilnes of alle þe vertues & chaungyng. 16 Not oonly animal vertues, þat ben vertues of þe brayn, ben³ I-chaungid, also naturel vertues & liui⁴ vertues—sensibles & ⁵motifes ;

Galien

Fracture of the skull is very dangerous,

the following accidents (symptoms) are frequently mortal.

Evil symptoms: yvel accidentes

If the animal, natural, and vital functions,

[1r. 63]

¹ help in margin.² One word "spewing" omitted, and as erroneously inserted in both MSS. Lat.: "Mala autem accidentia . . sunt vomitus perseverans constipatio ventris," etc.³ MS. inserts nouzt.⁴ liui, Lat. vitales.

laste signes beþ more serteyne þenne enye of þe opere. And vnderstonde þat þe breyn panne may ofte tymes ben to-broke, & napeles 20 þe brayn felyth nought in þe bygynninge none hurtyng. But afterwardys ofte tyme of hurtyng of þe brayn panne þe brayn ys y-hurt, Galien wytnessyng; the brekyng of þe bonys of þe hed ys dyuers in perelys from brekyng of oper bonys of þe body, for þe 24 accidentes whiche þat fallyth ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn panne. Ne þere nys no man, ne neuere ne was, þat myzte euyre more helpen to alle accidentes whenne þat þe brayn was meffye in þe bygynninge, þat nouzt ageynestondyng his helpe, be he neuere 28 so gode a leche, þat þe syke ne moste deye. Euyly accidentes whiche þat *comyth to þe accidentes of þe brayn & of hys pannycle, ben alwey dwellyng: as constipacioun of þe wombe, opere ellys flux of þe wombe, opere ellys crokydnesse, opere ellys lokyng a- 32 squynte of þe eyzen, opere ellys wepyng of þat on eyze, opere ellys an hard scotomye, opere ellys ffebylnesse of alle þe vertues & chaungyng. And nozt only anymal vertues, þat beþ vertewys of þe brayn, beþ nozt y-chaungyde, but also naturel vertewys, & lyfy 36 vertewys sensyble & motifes; sensible, for þat þey seen nozt

Add. MS. 12,056.

the imagin-
ation,
reason,

memory,
and motor
power are
affected.

A strong
fever pre-
ceded by a
cold shiver-
ing,

blackness of
the tongue,
blains, etc.,
are bad
symptoms.

sensible, for þei ben¹ not¹ riȝtfulliche; for boþe her heerynge & oþere comoun wittis ben troublid; also priuuy vertues þat ben troublid as ymaginatif, for þei bileuen þei seen, [þat þey seen nouȝt];* also resonable vertues, for þei speken in deuyn² & answeren whanne þei 4 ben nouȝt I-askide / also³ memorial þat þei þenke nouȝt on her owne name / also meuable vertues is so myche greued þat vñneþe þei moun nouȝt meue hem nameliche aboute þe necke. þei syke greuouseleche, & a scharp feure fallip, þe which arrigor, þat is to seie a cold schurg- 8 ynge⁴ goip tofore / Arrigor is no þing⁵ ellis, but⁵ as it were a prick- ynge of⁵ nedelis, or ellis of⁵ netlis in þe fleisch, & if⁵ þis rigor come wiþ a feure, or ellis without⁵ feure, it is þe worste signe tokene of⁵ deap, & if⁵ þe crampe folowe it is deedly / Also þese ben yuel accidentis : 12 blaknes of⁵ þe tunge, bleynis aboute þe skyn or þe chekis, or in ony partie of⁵ þe heed þanne [in]* þe wounde, is an yuel signe.⁵ & sum- tyme blod comep out at þe eeris & noseþrillis. & if⁵ þe more partie of⁵ þese tokenese or ellis alle comen, þe sike man muste nedis die, 16 [7 ff. 63, bk.] namely, & þe accidentis conteynen⁶; ⁷& specialy if⁵ þe sike man haue be her-to-fore manye daies in good disposicioun, & after þilke

¹ *ben*, error for *seen*. Lat. : quia non recte vident.

² See page 102, note 2. ³ MS. *alle*. ⁴ *schurgynge*, schurien, to shower.

⁵ Lat. : vel in alia parte capitis quam in vulnere : quod est malum signum.

⁶ *conteynen* for *contynnen*.

Add. MS. 12,056. [8 fol. 73 b] al⁸so priuue vertues ben y-trublyde as ymagenatyff, ffor þey beleffe þat þey seen, *þat þey seen nouȝt; also resonable vertue, for 20 þey speken in deveyn, & þey answeren whanne þey beþ nouȝt y-askyde; also memoryal, þat þey þynke nouȝt on here owne name; also meffable vertue ys so myche y-greuyde, þat vnneþe þey mowe nouȝt mefen hem namlyche aboute þe nekke. þey syken greuouselye, 24 and a scharpe ffeure fallyth, þe whiche a rigoor goth tofore. A rigoor nys nothyng ellys but as yt were a prickynge of nedlys oþere of nettlys in þe flesch, and ȝif þis rigoor come with a ffeuyre oþere 28 ellys with outen ffeuyre, yt is worst signe, and ȝif the crampe fol- wen, yt ys dedlye. Also þese beþ yuele accidentes : blaknesse of þe 32 tonge, bleynesse⁹ aboute þe chyn oþere þe chekenesse, oþere in enye oþere partye of þe hed þanne in* þe wounde, ys an yuele signe, and sum tyme blod comyth out at þe erys & noseþrylles. And ȝif þe 36 more partye of þese toknys, oþere ellys alle comen, þe syke man moste nedys deyzen, namlye & þo Accidentes contynnen, and specialy ȝif þat þe syke man haue y-be tofore manye daies in gode disposicioun, & after þilke disposicioun þese yuele accidentes fallen; 36

**Sygnum
Mortal.**

⁹ *bleynesse*, leady colour. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. *bley*; mistake for *bleynes*, blains.

good disposicioun pilke yuel accidentis fallen ; but^t sumtyme in þe It is a good sign when evil symptoms grow better.

bigynnyng þese yuel accidentis fallen wickid, & aftirward bi good gouernaile & good help of þe leche pilke yuel accidentis ben

4 departid & good comeþ, and þanne it^t is a [good]* signe, for it^t bi-tokeneþ strenkþe of kynde, hauynge no drede of þe sijknes, & kunnyng of þe leche / O holi goost^t, al þing^t fulfillynge, alle þingis sanctifynge, & alle þingis liztnynge, & alle þingis gouernynge, opene

8 þe yzen of hem þat^t loken & reden on þis book, þat^t þei moun vndirstonde þat^t þing^t þat^t is weel seid, & þat^t þei moun demene¹ þoruþ þi cleernes þat^t, þat^t is yuel seid, & specialy in þis caas² where þat oonly not I þat^t am vnwijs & vnkunnyng, but^t also greete maistris

12 & more kunnyng han writen sotilliche, & han sett^t in þis caas dyuers vndirstondynge. Ne þei ne I ne foond no wey in þis werk þat^t myzte us make sikir, specialiche in seryuynge of þe brayn panne, in þe whiche cure³ dyuers men haue³ I-wrouzt^t dyuersliche. [⁴ lf. 64]

16 ⁴I wole bigynne at a symple wounde of þe fleisch of þe heed, in þe which þat^t þer is noon hurtyng of þe brayn ne brayn panne. // Biholde wheþir pilke wounde be maad wiþ a swerd or ony þing^t sembla[b]le to it^t, & þanne sowe pilke wounde, & caste aboute þe

May the Holy Ghost enlighten the readers.

[⁴ lf. 64]
Nota
Treatment of a symple wounde.

¹ demene, O.Fr. "demener," for demen.

² in þis caas. Lat. : in isto passu. See below pas.

³ cure, have, above line.

20 ryztfullyche, for boþe herynge & opere comyn wyttes ben y-trublyde; but sumtyme in þe bygynnyng euyly accidentes comyþ, afterwarde, by good gouernayle & by gode helpe of the leche, þese euyly accidentes ben departyde & good comyþ, & þenne yt is a good* Add. MS. 12,056.

24 signe, for it betoknyth strengþe off kynde, hauynge non drede of þe syknesse & konyngnesse of þe leche. O holy gost, al thyng fulfillynge, al þinge sanctifynge, lytnynge & gouernynge, opyne þe eyzen of hem þat redyn in thys booke, þat þey mowen vndirstonde

28 þat þynge þat is wel seyde, & þat þey mowe demen þorwe þy clemesse þat þat⁵ ys euyly seyde, specyliche in pas where þat only nouzte y þat am vnwis & vnkunnyng, but also grettere maistryes & more kunnyng han y-writen dotousliche. & hap y-sett in þis cas

32 ⁶dyuerse vnderstondynge. Ne þey ne y ne fonde non wey in þis werke þat myzte maken vs sykere, specialiche in grefynges of þe breyne panne, in whose cure dyuerse men han wrought dyuerslye ; y wyþ begynne at a symple wounde of þe flesch & of þe hed, in þe

36 whiche þat þere ys non hurtyng of þe brayn ne of þe brayn panne. Biholde whar pilke wounde be mad with a swerde opere enye þynge semblable to hit, & þan sowen þylke wounde, & caste abofen þe

[⁶ fol. 74 a]⁷

⁵ MS. at.

⁷ Heading of the page: Cure of symple Wounde off þe hed.

wounde þe poudre of lym tofore seid, & do al þing^t bi ordre, as it^t is conteyned aboue in þe chapitle of^t woundis of^t fleisch /

Treatment
of a contused
wound.

Apply
a maturatif,

& if^t þat^t a wounde be maad in þe heed wip brusynge, as wip a mace,¹ or wip a staf^t, or ony þing^t þat^t brusip, þanne it^t is nessessarie to 4 leie aboue þe brusynge a maturatif^t maad of^t .iiij. parties of^t watir, & oon partie of^t comoun oile & flour of^t wheete, þat suffisip to make it^t pikke,² til þat^t þe mater þat^t is brusid be maturid; þe which maturatif schal be do abrood vpon a lynnen cloop & leid to þe 8 wounde, & þou schalt^t fulfille þe wounde wip oile of^t rosis & zelke of^t an ey, & lynt^t of^t an oold lynnen cloop medlid togidere, til þat^t þe wounde 3eue quytture & þe akþe be aswagid. & aftirward leye in þe wounde drie lynt^t of^t old cloop, & fille þe wounde of^t þe same 12 lynet, & leie aboue þe mundificatif^t of^t mel roset^t & barly mele, ³til þat^t it^t be perfiztly clensid; & leie aboute þe wounde, from þe bigymynge til þat^t þe wounde be parfiztly clensid, a defensif^t of^t bole armonyak, þe which I haue told ofte tyme; aftirward incarne 16 it^t, þat^t is to seie brynge ouer fleisch, & aftirward consowde.

[³ If. 64, bk.]
a mundifi-
catif,
and
a defensif.

Cure of a
wound which
touches the
membrane.

& if^t þat^t þis wounde towche þe pannicle þat^t byndip boonys togidere, þou3 þat^t þe boon be not^t to-broken, charge it^t not^t litil, but^t

¹ mace, Lat. macia.

² MS. pikke.

Add. MS. 12,056. poudre of lym tofore seyð, and do alle þynge be ordre as yt is 20 conteynede aboue in þe chapiteH off^t wounde of þe flesch; and 3if þat a wounde be mad in þe hed with a brusynge, as with a mace

Maturatif
for brosur

oper a staf, oper with enye þynge þat brusyþ, þanne it is necessarie to leggen abofe þe brusynge a maturatyf, y-mad of foure partyes of 24 water, & on partye of comyn oyle & floure of whete, þat suffiseþ to maken yt pikke, tyl þat þe matere þat is brusyde be matured; þe whiche maturatyff schal be do abrode on a clop & y-leyde to þe wonde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde with oyle of roses & þe 3olke 28 of an neyze,⁴ & lenet of an olde lynne clout y-medlyde to gedre, tyl þat þe wounde 3if quyter & þe akþe be aswagede. & afterwarde leye in þe wounde dreye lynet of lynne cloth, & fille þe wounde fuH of þe same lynet, & leye aboue þe mundificatyff of mel rosat & 32 barlye mele, tyl þat he be perfityle clansyde, & leye aboute þe wounde fro þe begymynge, tyl þat þe wonde be perfitle clansyde, a defensyf of bol armonyak, þe whiche y haue tolde of ofte tymes; afterward incarne hit—þat is to sigge, brynge ouere flesch, & after- 36 warde consoude yt; and 3if þat þis wounde touchith þe pannycle þat bynde þe bonys togedre, þow3 þat þe bon be nouzt to-broken,

⁴ neyze at the beginning of a line.

take þerof good hede, & do þerynne in þe wounde hoot oile of
 rosis down to þe pannicle þat byndiþ boonys togidere, til þat þer be
 noon akyng in þe wounde. & kepe þilke wounde as þou woldist'
 4 kepe oþere woundis of þe brayn panne; & kepe þe brayn fro cold
 & fro heete, for cold is moost' greuous to boonys & to panniclis þat'
 ben woundid. þer ben summe maner men þat leien wijpout' forþ'
 on alle maner woundis of þe heed, wheþer it' be wijp wounde of þe
 8 brayn panne or wijpoute þe wounde of þe brayn panne, in what'
 maner þat' þe heed be hurt', a lynnen cloþ wet' in þe oynement' þat'
 is maad on þis maner / Take white rosis libram ſ, oile of rosis ʒ v,
 whiʒt' wex ʒ iij, þei melten alle togidere in an yren panne, & þei
 12 maken ²þerof .j. bodi, & boile it' aftirward in good wyn bi þe space
 of an hour; & þei leten it' aftirward nyʒ colden, & þei weten þer-
 inne a pece of a lynnen clout', & þei schapen þilke pece wijp a schere
 aftir þat' þe wounde is, & þanne þei baþe þilke pece in good wiyn, &
 16 þanne leie þilke pece [on þe wounde]*, & anoon aftir þei leien vpon
 þilke pece on eiþir side of þe wounde a plumaciol I-wet' in good
 hoot' wiyn; & þei leien on a drie pelowe of herdis vpon þo two
 wete pelowis, þe which drie pelewe of herdis schal comprehendende þe
 20 tweie wete, & bynde hem faste; & þei zeuen to summen to drynke

Apply
 olium ro.
 hoot.

Nota

Some phy-
 sicians use
 a general
 treatment for
 wounds on
 the head.

Entreat.¹

They apply
 Compresses
 with an
 ointment,

[² ff. 65]

¹ *Entreat.* See entreten ne. entreat, Mätzner, *Dict.*

charge yt noʒt litel but take þere of gode hede, & do in þe wounde
 hot oyle of roses don to þe pannycle, tyl þat þere be non akþe in þe
 wounde. & kepe þilke wounde, as þou woldiste kepen oþer wondys
 24 of þe brayn panne & of þe brayn, fro colde & from hete; ffor colde
 ys most greuest' to bonys & to pannycles þat bep woundyde. ³þere
 ben some manere of men þat leggen withouten forth on alle manere
 wondys of þe hed, wheþere it be wijp wounde of þe brayn panne
 28 oþere without wounde of þe brayn panne, in what manere þat þe
 hed ben y-hurt, a lynnen cloth y-wett in þe oynement y-made in þis
 manere: R whit resine lb. ſ., oyle of roses ʒ v., whyt wex ʒ iij.,
 þey melten aH togedres in an erthyne panne, & þey maken þere of
 32 on body, & þey boyllen yt afterwarde in gode wyn by þe space of an
 Oure; & þey leten afterwarde nyʒH colden, & þey weten þere ynne a
 pece of lynnen cloth, & þey schapen þilke pece with a schere aftere
 þe wounde ys, & þey baþen þylke pece in gode wyn, & þey leggen
 36 þilke pece on þe wounde,* and anon afterwarde þey leggen on þilke
 pece on eiþere syde of þe wounde a plumacyole, y-wet in good hote
 wyn, & þey leggen on a drye pylwe of herdes vpon þo tweie wete
 pylwes, þe whiche dreye pylwe schal comprehendende þe tweie wete
 40 & bynden hem faste; and þey zeuen some men to drynken gode

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[³ fol. 74 b]

Cura
 Ansellina

and diet with
wine and
fowls.

riȝt^t good wyn, & to ete good fleisch of^t hennes & of^t capouns; &¹
pei comaunden to drynke a drope of^t water; & pei gouernen on þis
maner alle men þat^t ben woundid in þe heed differentliche, & pei
seyen þat^t mo men ben heelid bi þis maner cure þan dien. But^t bi as 4

I never dared
to try this
treatment.

[² lf. 65, bk.]

Nota bene.

Wine is
especially
dangerous.

myche as alle auctouris ben azens þis cure, namely in dietyng, I ne
was neuere hardi to preue þis maner cure; for in mannys bodi a
medicyn schal not be preued which þat^t is not^t acordynge to resoun /
For alle autouris acorden þat^t þer is no þing^t ²þat^t so soone greueþ þe 8
brayn & þe senewis as wyn doþ, & vsynge of^t fleisch is cause of^t
bryngynge yn an hoot^t enpostyme. Neuere-þe-latter if^t a man þat^t
vsip^t of^t custum sich a maner dietyng haue a strong^t heed, in his
hele him dredip^t no wyn, & þe vertu of^t him þat^t is sijk be strong^t— 12
in sum manere of^t folk wiþ þis maner gouernaile, vertu is more
strenkþid, & þe sunner pei ben heelid. But I ne procede not^t wiþ
sich a maner dietyng bi cause of^t drede lest^t an hoot^t enpostyme
schulde come to þe sore, but I procede in dietyng & worche aboute 16
þe wounde as I haue seid tofore.

Treatment if
the skull is
broken:

Opere men loke [in brekynges of þe brayn panne, wheþer þat^t]*
þe brekyng of^t þe brayn panne be with^t a greet wounde, or smal

¹ Lat.: & præcipiunt quod unam guttam aquæ non bibat.

Add. MS. 12,056. wyn, & to eten gode flessch of capouns & of hennys; & þey 20
comaunden to drynken a drope watere; and þey gouernen on þis
manere alle men þat ben woundyde in þe hed differentlyche, & þey
sigge þat mo³ men ben y-helyde by þis manere cure þen dyzen.
But by as myche as alle auttours þeþ azeyns þis cure, namlyche in 24
dyetyng, y ne was neuere hardye to preuen þis manere of cure;
ffor in mannys bodye a medycine schal nouzt ben preuyde, whiche
þat is nozt acordynge to resoun; ffor alle auctores acorden, þat þere
ys nobynge þat so sone greuyth þe brayn & þe synwes as wyn doþ, 28
and vsynge of flesch ys cause of bryngynge in an hot Emposteme.
Neuere þe latere zif a man þat vsith of custome swyche a manere
dyetyng haffe a stronge hed, & in hys hele he dredyth^t non wyn, 32
& þe vertue of hym þat ys seek ⁴be stronge, in some manere of folk
with^t þis manere of gouernaylle vertue ys more y-streynþed, & sunnere
þey ben y-helyde. But y ne procede nouzt wiþ swyche a manere
dyetyng, by cause of drede leste an hote empostome scholde come
to þe sore; but y procede in dyetyng & worche aboute þe wounde, 36
as y haue seyde toform. Opere men loken* in brekynges of þe
brayn panne, wheþer þat þe brekyng of þe breyne panne be with^t a
gret wounde opere a smal wounde, opere without wounde; and zif

[¹ fol. 75 a]

³ MS. no.

- wounde, or *without* wounde. & if þat þer be a greet wounde, þei loken wheþer þei moun se if ony pece of þe brayn panne be to-
 broken, & þei don it away. & aftirward þei putten bitwene þe
 4 brayn panne & duram matrem a þinne clout wet in þe white of an
 ey, & sumwhat þe white compressid out, & þei fulfillen al þe wounde
 of þe brayn panne *with* sich a maner cloof. & þei leyn in þe ouer
 wounde which þat is in þe fleisch, lynet wet in þe white of an ey,
 8 til þat þe blood be staunchid; ¹& þei leien aboute a plumaciol wet
 in an ey. & whanne þe blood is staunchid, þei leien a dreie cloof
 vndir þe brayn panne in þe wounde, & þei leien aboute þe wounde a
 potage, þe which engendriþ quytture; & whanne þat þe quytture is
 12 engendrid, þei leien in þe wounde carp,² eipir lynet of a cloute; &
 þei anoynte aboute þe wounde wiþ vnguento fusco; & at þe laste
 eende þei leien aboute apostolicon.³
- & þei asaie in þis maner if þat þe brekyng of þe brayn panne
 16 be wiþ a rimel,⁴ þat is to seie a chene, eipir a creueis; & if þat
 ilke creueis peerse to wipinne, makyng þe sike man to streyne his

Broken pieces
are removed,wet com-
presses
applied to
stanch the
blood;

[1 R. 66]

then dry
compresses,
a poultice,and an
ointment.Treatment of
a fissure of
the skull;

² *carp*, Lat. *carpia*, 'charpie.' *oile* struck through after *carp*.

³ *Apostolorum Unguentum*, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelve Drugs, according to the number of the Apostles.—Kersey. 1706.

⁴ *rimel*, Lat.: *si fractura esset rimalis*. O.Fr. *rimule*, Lat. *rimula*, a small chink.

- þat þere ben a gret wounde þey loken wheþere þey mowe seen zif
 enye pece of þe brayn panne ben to-broken, & þey don yt away.
 20 And afterwarde þey putten bytwene þe brayn panne & duram
 matrem a þenne clout y-wett in þe whyte of an eyze, & sumwhat þe
 whyte compressyde out, & þey fulfyllen alle þe wounde of þe brayn
 panne *with* swiche a manere cloth. & þey leggen in þe ofere
 24 wounde whiche þat ys in þe flesch, lenyt y-wett in þe whyte of an
 eyze, tyl þat þe blode be staunchyde; & þey leggen aboute a
 plumacyole y-wet in an eyze. And whanne þat þe blode ys y-
 staunchyde, þey leggen a dreie cloth vndire þe brayn panne in þe
 28 wounde, and þey leggen aboute þe wounde a potage, the whiche
 engendryth quytere; & whenne þat þe quyter ys engendryde, þey
 leggen in þe wounde carp opere lyneth of a clout; and þey anoynt⁵
 aboute þe wounde *with* oynement fusco; and at þe laste ende þey
 32 leggen aboute Apostolicon. And þey assayen in þis maner: zif þat
 þe brekyng of þe brayn panne be *with* a rimele, þat ys to seye a
 chyne, opere a creueys; & zif þat þilke creveys perse to wipynne,
 makyng þe syke man to streynen hys mouþ & hys nese, & þey

Add. MS.
12,056.

⁵ At the end of the line.

mouþ & his nose, & þei maken him þanne to blowen, & þei loken¹ if ony þing² exale out³ bi þilke rimele, — as blod or ony other mater, þei drede not⁴ to perse þilke rimelle. & þanne summe seien þat þilke rimele schulde be to-broke eiþir peersid from þe toon eende to 4 þe topir wiþ rinspindel³, perischinge þe brayn scolle / A rinspindil is an instrument⁵ þat⁶ coteleris poudren⁴ with her haftis, þe which figure schal be schapen in þis same chapitle folowyng. & þe worste þing⁷ þat⁸ a man may do is to peerse þe rimele on boþe sidis / 8 But⁹ opere⁵ men don bettere which þat⁶ peerse þe rimele on þe oon eende which is moost⁷ hangyng; & þei maken as manye hoolis, oon biside anoþer, as it⁸ is nessessarie to make an hole in þe brayn panne, bi þe which hole if⁹ ony þing¹⁰ be fallen vpon, *duram matrem* 12 myzte be clenid; & þese, in as myche as touchinge trepanacioun⁶ worchip best / & whanne þat⁷ þei han maad manye hoolis, þei kutten from oon hole to anoþer hole wiþ an instrument, þat⁸ þei moun drawe out⁹ þe boon þat¹⁰ is bitwene þe ordure of holis þat¹¹ was 16 maad & þe rimele, & þei casten him away, & aftirward þei proceden

Some physicians open the fissure from end to end,

which is entirely wrong. [5 ff. 66, bk.]

Better open only one end of the fissure, make several holes in the skull,

and remove a piece of the bone.

¹ þanne struck through after loken.

² as blod or ony oper mater . þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle, this is as a note at the bottom of the page.

³ rinspindil, see mod. Germ. Rennspindel, f., upright drill, pump drill. Trépan.—Rumpf, *Technology. Dict.*

⁴ poudren for boren, under the influence of 'pore.' Lat. porus.




⁶ Lat.: quantum est ad trypanacionem.

Add. MS. 12,056. maken hym þenne to blowen, & þey loken 3if enye þyng¹ exale out by þilke rymele. * & 3if þat enye þyng² exale out by þylke rymele, as blod ore enye opere matere, þey drede nozt to perce þilke rymele; 20 and þenne some sigge þat þilke rymele scholde be to-broke opere y-perced. from þat one ende to þat opere. with Rynspyndles, persyng þe braynscolle. 7 A rynspyndeH ys an Instrument þat Cutlers poudren wiþ here hefttes, whose ffigure schal be schappyde⁸ in þe 24 same chapitle ffolwyng. And þe worste þyng⁹ þat a man may do, ys to perce þe rymele on boþe sydes. But opere men don bettyre whiche þat persen þe rymele at þat one ende, whyche is moste hongyng; and þey maken as many holys on bysyde an opere, as 28 þeþ necessarye to maken an hole in þe brayn panne, be þe whiche hole 3if enye þyng¹⁰ beþ⁹ fallen vpon þe duram matrem myzte ben y-clansyde; & þese in as myche as towchyng trepanacioun worchith best. And whenne þat þey haue made manye holys, þey kutten 32 from on hole to an opere with an spatymyne,¹⁰ þat ys an Instrument, þat þey mowe drawyne out þe bon, þat ys betwene þe ordre of holys þat was y-made & þe rymele, & þey casten hym aweye, afterwarde



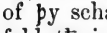
⁸ MS. *scharpyde*. *rp* for *pp*, like *lk* for *kk*. See p. 120.

⁹ þ above line.

¹⁰ Lat.: cum spatumine.

- forþ in opere maner þingis as it is seid tofore / For whazne þou
 desirist way of¹ trepaninge [þis manere trepanynge]* sufficiþ to
 þee in þe rimelis of þe brayn panne. þis schal be þe foorme of a
 4 trepane [with þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be trepaned wiþ]* . & þis is þe foorme of a spatina, wiþ þe which a man
 schal kutte from oon hole to anoþer hole . & þou schalt
 smyte wiþ a mal² eiper an hamer on þe greet eende; & whazne þou
 8 hast remeued of þe boon þat schal be removed, euene þe brynkis
 with schauynge, þat þou mowe not leue no maner scharpnes in þe
 brynkis. þis is þe maner of þe schap , ³ & þis schauē schal [³ ff. 67]
 kutte on þe side þat foldiþ ynward, & it schal be blunt on þe oon
 12 side þat is outward. & þei fulfillen þe wounde þat is wiþinne þe
 fleisch wiþoutforþ, as I haue seid, with þe cloop expressid of þe
 white of an ey & lynet, til þat þe wounde be ful, & also til þat
 þe kynde haue regendrid a repeirement, þe which schal fulfille
 16 þe place þere as þe boon was don away. Aftirward þei curen
 þe wounde aftir comoun cure of woundis / Alle opere maner of
 trepanacioun is comprehendid vndir o summe, þouþ þat summen
 ordeyne particuler aftir her dyuyse, diuers maners.
- 20 But bi as myche as I haue not seen in þis caas no way þat

¹ þe struck through after of.² mal, Lat. malleus.

- þey proceden forth in opere manere thynges, as yt is seyde tofore. Add. MS.
 And whenne þat þou desiriste þe wey of trepanynge, * þis manere 12,056.
 trepanynge suffiseþ to þe in þe rimeles of þe brayn panne. þis schal
 24 ben þe forme of a trepane, * with þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be
 trepaned wiþ . And þis is þe forme off a spatimene, with
 þe whiche a man schal kutte with from on hole to an opere hole
. And þou schalt smyten with a Mal opere an hamere
 28 vpon þe gret ende; and whenne þou haste remefed of þe bon þat
 schal be remeffyde, euene þe brynkes wiþ schauynge, þat þere mowe
 nozt lefe non manere scharpnesse in þe brynkes. þis ys þe manere
 of þy schafe , and þis schafe schal kutten on þe syde þat
 32 feldyth inwarde, & schal be blunt on þe syde þat ys outwarde.
 And þenne fulfyllen þe wounde þat is in þe flesch, wiþoutforþ as y
 haue seyde tofore, with clop expressyde of þe whyte of an eyze, &
 lynet to þat þe wounde be ful, and also tyl þat þe kynde haue
 36 regeneryd a repeyrement, þe whiche schal fulfille þe place where
 þat þe bon was don away. ⁴ Afterwarde þey cure þe wounde aftere [⁴ fol. 76 a]
 comyn cure of wondys. Alle opere manere of trepanacioun ys
 comprehendyde vndire on Somme, þowþ þat sum men ordeynen
 40 partykterliche aftere here devyse, dyuerse maners. But be as
 myche as y haue nozt seyde in þis place no wey þat myzte remefe

Trepanning is dangerous. myzte remeue me from doute, bi as myche as I haue saied bi longe tyme, bope bi summe auctouris experimentis, & also bi myn experiment, & *pat* wei is not certeyn / perfore here þei Galien, *pat* seiþ: if we mowe remeue quytture wiþoute doynge awei of boonys *pat* 4
Galien and *Auicenn* schulde be do awey, it is good / And auicenn & *serapie*¹ acorden to
 used medicines instead of operating. þe same sentence of cure of heed akþe *pat* comeþ of smytynge or ellis of fallynge, where *pat* he towchip² þe worchinge of hurtis of
 [f. 67, bk.] þe brayn ³panne, not bi trepanacioun, but bi emplastris & medicyns / 8
 & also I took good hede *pat* manye mo men ben heelid bi maner of medicyns & emplastris, þan ben heelid bi trapanes, *pat* ben
Nota. peersynge or prillynge / For I ne vse not instrumentis to remeue the boon but in two causis / þe oon cause is if *pat* þe brayn panne 12
 I operate if the broken piece
 1. gets under the healthy bone,
 2. or hurts the dura mater,
 causing a tumour,
 then cramp, be so myche I-slend⁴ *pat* þe part *pat* is broke, entre vndir þe partie *pat* is hool / þe secunde caas is, if ony pece be departid from þe brayn panne, þe which *pat* prickiþ *duram matrem* / In þe firste caas *dura mater* is compressid. In þe secunde caas *dura mater* is 16
 prickid, which is cause of akþe, & akyng is cause of drawynge humouris, þere engendriþ an empostyme vpon þe same pannicle, þe which is cause of a crampe, & of *opere accidentis* tofore seid; &

¹ *Serapie*, probably Ser. the Elder, an Arab physician, cc. 900.

² *towchip* for *techip*.

⁴ *islend*, Add. MS. *ysclend*. See *slent*, to tear, to rend (Dorset).—Halliwell.

Add. MS. 12,056. me fro doute, by as myche as y haue assayed longe tyme bope by 20
 sum auctores experyment, & also by myn experyment, & *pat* wey is nozt certeyn, þerefore here þey Galien, whiche *pat* seiþ: 3if we mowe remywe quyter without doynge awey bonys *pat* scholde be do awey, hyt is good. And Auisene & *Serapie* acorden to þe same 24
 sentence of cure of hed-akþe, *pat* comyth off smytinge *opere* ellys of fallynge, where *pat* he techith þe worchyng of hurtynges of þe brayn panne & of þe brayn, nozt by trepanacioun, but by emplastres & by medicines. And also y toke gode hede *pat* manye mo men 28
 ben y-helyde by manere medicines & emplastres, þenne ben y-helyde by trapanes *pat* beþ persynge *opere* prillynge. Ffor y ne vse nozt Instrumentes to remywe þe bon, but in tweye cases—*pat* on cas ys 3if *pat* þe breyn panne be so myche y-seleud, *pat* þe part *pat* ys 32
 y-broke entre vndire þe partye *pat* ys hol, þe secunde cas ys 3if *pat* enye pece be departyde from þe brayn panne, whyche *pat* pryketiþ *duram matrem*. In þe firste cas *dura mater* ys compressede. In þe secunde cas *dura mater* ys y-prikyde, þe whiche ys cause of akþe, 36
 & akyng ys cause of drawynge of humoures, the whiche engendriþ a posteme vpon þe same pannycle, the whiche is cause of a⁵ crampe, & of *opere accidentis* tofore seyde, & at þe laste þey bryngen dep

⁵ a, above line.

at þe laste þei bryngen deef to þe pacient / In þese .ij. causis finally death.
 I leue hem¹ constreynd to remeue a boon wip handely² instru-
 4 maner þat þei happen, þow3 þat I be not siker of þe pacientis lijf, In all other
 nepeles I procede in þis maner with more trist, bisekyng alwey medicine,
 help of god, þe which þat³ hap heeled mo men bi myn hondis, þat⁴ [3 ff. 68]
 am his instrument, þan haue ben deed, nouzt⁵ azenstondyng alle and by God's
 8 my cautels & helpinge. For soþe þat I haue biholde sopliche resonis help I haue
 & þe proces of opere auctouris, I holde þis wey lasse dredeful þan generally
 ony opere / for I folowe þe sentence of Galien, which þat seiþ: been suc-
 if þat a man haue but⁶ o wei to his hele,⁴ it is good þat he holde Galien
 12 pilke wey, þow3 þat it be yuel.

& whanne þat I come to a man þat is woundid in þe heed, & I Treatment of
 knowe þat þe brayn panne be broke, bi tokenes tofore seid, first I fractures of
 considere þe vertu of him þat is pacient, & also his age & alle the skull,
 16 opere particuler þing⁷, & nameli vertu, & gladliche I leue þe cure, without
 if þat I se ony deedly tokenes, but if it so be þat I be preied wip trepanning:
 þe grettere instaunce of þe freendis of þe sike man. & not azen-
 stondyng her preier I telle hise freendis þat bi wey of resoun þe

¹ *hem* for *am*; *leue* is erroneously added in margin.² *handely* ne. *handy*.⁴ MS. *irele*.

20 to þe pacient. In þese tweye causes y am constreynde to remefe a Add. MS.
 bon with handly instrumentes. In alle opere manere of breches 12,056.
 opere of crefeys, in what manere þat þey happen, þow3 þat y be
 24 more trest, by sechyng alweye help of god, þe whyche þat hap
 y-helyde mo m^{en} be myn handys, þat am hys Instrument, þenne
 han be ded, nouzt azeynstondyng al my cauteles & ⁶helpyng. [6 fol. 76 b]
 Ffor sytthe þat y haf beholde sotelyche þe resouns & þe processes
 28 of opere auctourys, y holde þis wey lesse dredful þenne enye opere.
 Ffor y folwe þe sentence of galien, which þat seiþ: 3if þat a man
 hath but o wey to hys hele, hyt ys gode þat he holde pilke weye,
 þow3 þat pilke wey be eueh. And whanne þat y come to a Man
 32 þat is woundyde in the hed, & knowe þat hys breyn panne ys
 to-broke, by þe tokenys tofore seyde, ffirste y considere þe vertu of
 hym þat ys pacient, & also hys age & alle oper⁷ partyclere thyng,
 & namly vertue. And gladliche y leue þe cure, 3if þat y se enye
 36 dedly signes; but 3if þat so be þat y be preyde wip the grettere
 Instaunce of þe frendes of þe seke man. And nozt azeynstondyng
 here preyere, y telle hys frendys þat by resoun þe pacient scholde

⁵ MS. *m*, *en* cut away.⁷ *oper*, above line.

If there are
no mortal
symptoms
and if the
wound is
large,
[1 ff. 68, bk.]

I shave the
head and
apply
*Olium
Rosarum*,

a defensif
ointment,

compresses,

and band-
ages.

pacient schulde die, & þanne I worche aboute him as in a man in whom yuele accidentis appere. & if þat þe signys ben not deedliche, & þe breche of þe brayn þanne be *with* a greet wounde of þe heed, & þat a greet partie of þe brayn þanne be do awaye al 4 togidere, so þat I mowe ¹haue a good wey to leie medicyns vpon *duram matrem* / First I do schaue his heed, afterward I leie on an eeld lynnen clout & a þenne,² wett in .ij. parties of oile of rosis swete smellynge, & oon partie of mel roset colat, bitwene þe *duram 8 matrem* & þe brayn þanne slyzly & softli, þat *dura mater* be not compressid wip þe clop þat is wet tofore seid; & I fulfille þe wounde of þe fleisch wip lint of oold lynnen clop wett in þe zelke of an ey, & oile of rosis, boþe lieche myche; & anoynte aboute þe 12 wounde wip a defensif of bole armoniak ofte tymes I-seid, & leie aboute þe wounde a plumaciol, þe which þat schal keuere al þe wounde; & þanne aboute al-togidere I leie a greet plumaciol, wett in good hoot wiyn. & aftirward I bynde þe wounde wip a boond, 16 byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe heed wip þe lynet & þe clop, þe which þat is in þe wounde & aboute þe wounde myzte not slide to no partie, & bynde þe wounde in þat maner þat *dura mater* bi no

² MS. þanne, error for a þenne. Lat.: pannum lineum vetustum et subtile. See below.

Add. MS. 12,056. deyz, & þenne y wirche aboute hym, as y worche in a Man in 20 whom yuel accidentes apere. And zif þat þe signes be nought dedlyche, & þe breche of þe breyn þanne be *with* a gret wounde of þe hed, & þat a grete partye of þe breyn þanne be don awaye alle togedre, so þat y mowe han a gode wey to legge medycynes vpon 24 *duram matrem*. ffirste y do schaffe hys hed, afterwarde y legge an olde lynnen clout & a þenne, y-wett in two partyes of oyle of rosys swote smellynge, & on partye of mel rosat colat bytwene þe *duram matrem* and þe brayn þanne, slyzlye & softlye, þat *dura mater* be 28 nozt compressyde *with* þe cloth þat ys y-wett tofore seyde, & y fulfille þe wounde of þe flesch *with* lynt of olde lynnen clop wet in þe zolke of an eyze & oyle of roses, of boþe y-lyche myche; & y anoynte aboute þe wounde *with* defensyfe of bol armonyak ofte 32 tymes seyde, & y legge abouen þe wounde a plumacyole whiche þat schal keuere alle þe wounde, and þenne ³abouen alle togedre y legge a grete plumacyole in-wet in gode hot wyne. And afterwarde y bynde þe wounde *with* a bande, in byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe 36 hed, þat þe lynet & þe clop whyche þat is in þe wounde & aboute þe wounde myzte nozt slyde to non partye, and y bynde þe wounde in þat manere þat *dura mater* be no weye be compressyde. þe

[3 fol. 77 a]

- wey be compressid. þe heeris of þe heed schulen be remeued away on þis maner: clippe hem first *with* scheris, afterward take .ij. parties of water cold, & oon partie of oyle ¹of rosis in somer, & make hoot þe same water & oyle in wyntir, & waische þe heed softliche, takyng hede þat no water ne oyle entre into þe wounde, & þanne schaue it wip a rasour / & whanne þat I haue serued þe pacient on þis maner, I lete him reste til on þe morowe, & aftirward I serue þe wounde on þe same maner til þat þe wounde be hool / Neþeles I considere if þat þe pacient be ful of blood, & his vertu be strong, & if he be zongt, & litil blood bled at his wounde, & whanne alle þese þingis acorden, I make him to be leten blood on þe coral² veyne of þe arme / & but if he mowe go to priuy, I helpe him oonys aday, or wip suppositories or wip clisterie; & I procede in dietyng, as I haue seid in þe chapitle of dietyng / & whanne þat þe wounde makip sufficiently quytture, I leie in þe wounde of þe brayn panne, & vpon þe brayn panne, as I haue don tofore; & aboue þe wounde I leie a mundificatif of mel roset, colat, & barly mele, til þat þe wounde be clensid, & þat þe dura mater be sowdid *with* þe brayn panne / & þanne I caste in þe wounde of þe heed a poudre maad on þis maner / Take frank encense & ciperi, þat is þe

How to shave the head.

[¹ If. 69]

If the patient is strong,

I bleed

and purge.

If pus is discharged

I use a mundificatif

and puluis capitalis.

² coral veyne, vena cephalica.

- herys of þe hed schul be remywed away on þis manere: clippe hem firste *with* scherys, afterwarde take two partyes of colde water & on partye of oyle of roses in somere, & make hot þe same watyr & þe oyle in wyntere & wassche þe hed softliche, takyng hede þat non watere ne oyle entre into þe wounde, & þenne schaffe yt *with* a rasoure. & whenne þat y haue seruyde þe pacient on þis manere, y lete hym resten tyl on þe morwe; and afterwarde y serfe þe wounde on þe same manere tyl þat þe wounde be hol. Napeles y consydere zif þat þe pacient be replet of blod, & hys vertue be stronge; & zif þat he be zonge, & lytel blod haue nouzt go out of hys wounde, & whanne alle þese þynges acorde, y make hym to by leten blod on þe coral veyne of þe arme; & but zif he mowe schiten, y helpe hym onys a day, opere wip suppositorye opere wip clisterie; and y procede in dyetyng as y haue seyde in þe chapyteH of dyetyng. And whenne makyth susesentlyche quyter, y legge in þe wounde of þe brayn panne & vpon þe brayn panne as y haue don toform, & aboue þe wounde y legge a mundyicatyff of mel rosat colat & barlye mele, tyl þat þe wounde ben y-clansyde, & þat þe dura mater be y-soudyde wip þe breyn panne; & þenne y caste in þe wounde of þe hed, poudre y-mad on þis manere: R frank Ensence, ciperi, þe

Add. MS.

.12,056.

[¹ lf. 69, bk.]² note of a cipres, ¹seed of mirtilles, mirre, ana. orobi, \bar{z} j; make poudre, & leie þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leie þredis of lynnen cloþ, or ellis lynet; & aboue al-togidere leie an entreet maad of .ij. parties of whiȝt rosyn,³ & oon partie of wex ⁴ moltun togidere vpon stronge vynegre, & colid þoruȝ a þinne streynour vpon cold water / & whanne þin hondis ben anoyntid wiþ oile of rosis, malaxe⁴ it longe tyme togidere. In somer take euene porcioun of whiȝt rosyn & of wex; in wyntir / take .iiij. 8¹ partis of rosyn,* & þe .v part¹ of wex, & drawe abrood þat treet⁵ on a cloþ, & leie it on þe wounde til þat he be perfiztliche cicatrisid. & if þat þer were ony partie of þe boon þat prickide duram matrem, þanne I aforce me to remeue þilke partie þat 12¹ prickiþ wiþ pynsouns,⁶ if þat I may; & if þilke partie þat prickiþ be ioyned so faste to þe hool boon þat he wolde not be remeued away, þanne I remeue him away wiþ rugement⁷ from þe partie þat halt,⁸ in makynge oon hole or two, or mo, aftir þe quantite of þe 16¹

Lay over all
an
Entreet
(Plaster)
made from
wax and oil
of roses.

I remove a
bone which
pricks the
membrane,
with pincers.

² At the foot of lf. 69 is this note: R *radicis erios, aristolege, thuris, mer, aloes, sanguis draconis, orobus ana, ffac puluis.*

³ *whiȝt rosyn*, hardened Terpentine.

⁴ *malaxe*, Lat. malaxo, mollify.

⁵ *treet* = *entreet*. See p. 123, note 1.

⁶ *wiþ pynsouns, cum piccario*. See Pynsone, Tenella. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 400.

⁷ *wiþ rugement*. Lat.: cum ruginè ruginando, Fr. ruginè, ruginer.

⁸ Both MSS. omit to translate the Lat. *si non possum*.

Add. MS. note of cypresse, sede of mirtylles, mirre ana. 3. i., oreby. 5. j., mak
12,056. poudre & leye þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leye þe
þredys of lynne cloþ oþere ellys lynet; and aboffe al togedire y-
legge an entrete ⁹y-made of two partyes of whyte resyn & on party 20
of wex y-molten togedre, & vpon stronge Vynegre, & y-colyd þorwe
a þenne streynoure vpon¹⁰ colde water; & whenne þat þyne hondys
ben anoyntede with oyle of roses, & malaxe yt longe tyme togedyre.
In somere take euene porcioun of whyt resyn & of wex; in wyntere 24
take foure partyes of —* & þe fifte partye of wex, & y-drawe
abrode þilke tret on a cloþ & legge yt on þe wounde, tyl þat he be
perffilliche cycatrysed. And ȝif þat þere were anye —* of a bon.
whiche þat prekyde duram matrem, þenne y aforce me to remeffe 28
þilke partye þat prykeþ with pynsones ȝif y may. And ȝif þilke
partye þat prikeþ ys y-ioynede so faste to þe hol bon þat he nyl
nouȝt be remeffyd away, þenne y remeffe hym aweye wiþ rugenyng.
from þe partye þat halt, in makynge an hole, oþere two, oþere mo, 32
after þe quantyte of þe bon þat scholde be don away,* þat halt with
þe hole bon; & afterwarde y kutte with a spatymene from on hole

¹⁰ MS. o pound.

boon þat schulde be don away [þat halt *with* þe hole bon & after-
 wardē y kutte *with* a spatymene from on hole to anopere tyl al
 þe bon be remeffyde awaye.]* / & whanne þat þe boon is remeued
 4 awei, I procede in þe cure as it is ¹seid in þis chapitle / But [¶ 11. 70]
 whanne I remeue a boon wiþ instrumentis of þe brayn panne,
 þanne I stoppe þe sijk mannes eeris, þat he mowe not heere þe
 soun of þe yren þat trepaniþ. & I remeue þe same maner þe partie
 8 þat is broke, þe which þat goiþ vndir þe partie þat is hool, & com-
 pressiþ þe dura mater. & if þat a gobet eipir a pece of a boon
 holde *sumwhat* in þe wounde, & myzte not liztliche be remeued
 away, & he prickiþ not dura mater ne compressiþ not dura mater,
 12 þanne at þe bigynnyge I do on þe boon hoot oile of rosis, & I
 fulfille þe wounde wiþ oile of rosis & þe zelke of an ey medlid
 togidere, til þat þe boon be neischid & may liztliche be remeued
 away; þanne I remeue þe boon softliche, & I procede in þe
 16 worchingē bitwene þe boon & *duram matrem*, as it is seid tofore /
 & if þat þe breche of þe brayn panne were as a creueis or ellis
 I-slend, & neiþer part of þe boon were lowerē þan oper, þanne I
 considere if þat ilke slendynge² perce al þe brayn panne; & þat
 20 þou schalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid, or ellis þou schalt
 knowe bi þis signe, þat neuere failiþ / Make ³a plastre of poudre of [¶ 11. 70. bk.]

I stop the patient's ears during the operation.

Nota

I soften the bone before removing it.

² *slendinge*, see p. 128, note 4.

to anopere tyl al þe bon be remeffyde awaye.* And whenne þe bon
 ys remefyde away, y procede in þe cure, as yt is seyde in þis same
 24 chapyteH. But whanne þat y remeffe a bon *with* Instrumentes of
 þe brayn panne, þenne y stoppe þe syke mannys eres, þat he mowe
 nozt here þe soun of þe eyren þat trepanyth. And y remeffe þe
 same manere, þe partye þat is broke, whiche þat goþ vndire þe
 28 partye þat ys hol, & *compressyth* þe dura mater; and zif þat a
 gobbet opere a pece of a bon helde *sumwhat* in þe wounde, &
 myzte nozt lyztlye be remeffyde away, and he prikyde nouzt ne
 compressyde nouzt *duram matrem*, þenne at þe bygyrnyngē y do on
 32 þe bon hot oyle of rosys, and y fulfille þe wounde *with* oyle of roses
 & þe zolke of an eyze y-medled togidere, tyl þat þe bon be y-
 nesschyde, and mowe lyztlyche be remywede awaye; þenne y
 remeffe þe bon, & y procede in worchyngē bytwene þe bon &
 36 *duram matrem*, as it is seyde tofore. & zif þat þe breche of þe
 breyn panne ⁴were as a cerfes, opere ellys y-slend, & neiþere party
 of þe bon were lowerē þenne opere, þen y consydere zif þilke
 slendynge parten alle þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe by
 40 þe toknys tofore seyde, opere ellys þou schalt y-knowe by þis signe
 þat neuere failiþ: make a plastre of þe poudre of mastyk & þe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[¶ fol. 78 a]

How to discern by means of a Plaster, whether the fissure pierces the skull or not.

When the skull is pierced,

some physicians use trepanning.

[4 l. 71]

Nota.

mastik & þe white of an ey, medlid togidere as pikke¹ as hony, & distende² it vpon a clooþ, & leie it on þe place þat³ is hurt fro morowe til euen, or ellis from þe eucne til þe morowe / & whanne þat³ þe plastre is remoued away, if þat³ þe creueis peerse þoruþ þe 4
brayn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drie azens þe creueis þan in ony oþer place, for þe greet heete þat³ comeþ fro þe brayn [& zif þe breyn panne]* be nouzt I-slend þoruþ, þe plastre schal be nomore drie aboute þe creueis þan on an oþer place / & if þe creueis perse 8
not þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as it is seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle, þere as I tolde of cure of wounde of þe heed, where þat³ þe brayn panne eiper þe brain is not hurt. For if þat³ ilke remile peerse þe brayn panne, þer is a greet doute in þe caas, for summen seien þat³ 12
it is impossible sich a wounde to heele; but if þe remele be trepaned, & a quantite of þe boon be doon away, þat³ þe superfluyte þat³ is cast vpon duram matrem may be doon away, or ellis þe dura mater schulde putrifien & be corrupt, & bi þat³ skil³ þe pacient schulde 16
die, þe which þat³ myzte⁴ be heelid bi þe remeuynge of þe boon /
Neþeles I þat³ haue seen in trepaninge greet perel, namely whanne

¹ MS. *pilke*. ² *distende*, Lat. *distendo*.

³ *bi þat skil*, Lat. *quare*. *Skil* = *causa*, synon. with 'resoun' occurs frequently in *Polychron*. See Gloss. The same construction in: '& by þe same skile' ea racione, *ibid.*, iii. 465.

Add. MS.
12,056.

whyte of an eyze, y-medlyde togedyre as þykke as hony, & distende it on a cloþ, & leye it on þe place þat ys hurt from morwe tyl eueene, 20
oþere ellys from euene tyl þe morwe. And whenne þat þe plastre ys remefyd away, zif þat þe crefeys persith þorwe þe breyn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drye anonde⁵ þe crefeys þen in enye oþer place, for þe gret hete þat comyth from þe brayn; * & zif þe 24
breyn panne* be nozt y-slend þorwe, þe plastre schal be namore rye aboute þe crefeys þenne on an oþere place. And zif þe crefeysd perse nouzt þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as yt is seyde in þe bygynnyng of þis chapyteH, þere as y tolde of þe cure of wounde of 28
hed, where þat þe breyn panne oþere þe brayn ys nozt y-hurt. Ffor zif þat þilke ryemele persyth þe breyn panne, þere ys a gret doute in þe cas, ffor some seyne þat yt ys vnpossible swyche a wounde to ben y-helyde, but zif þe rymele be y-trepanyd & þat a quantyte 32
of þe bon be y-don away, þat þe superfluyte þat ys y-caste vpon duram matrem mowe be done away, ellys þe dura mater schulde putrifien & be corrupt, & by þat skylle þe pacient schulde deye, whiche þat myzte be helyde by remywyng of þe bon. Naþeles y 36
þat haue y-seye in trepanyng grete peryle, namlyche whanne þat

⁵ Over an erasure,

- þat þe creucis is bisidlis þe semys, where þat þe trepaninge is deedlich / & I haue seen manye þat wipoute trepanyng^t almyzty god haþ delyuerid bi myn hondis, wipoute touchinge of ony brayn
- 4 scolle wip ony trepan or wip iren ; but I helde in to þe creucis hooft de vertute Olium Rosarum.
oile of rosis colat, & mel roset colat, medlid togidere affir þe doctrine tofore seid, fulfillynge al þe wounde with sich maner I use oil of roses,
cloþis ; & aftirward leie aboue þe zelke of an ey & oile of rosis
- 8 medlid togidere, & aboute a defensif of bole armoniak tofore seid, a defensif
til þat þe quytture be engendrid. & aftirward I contynue mel roset & oile of rosis in þe wounde, & aboute a mundificatif of mel roset & barly mele til þat þe ligament be fully engendrid on þe and a mundificatif medicine,
- 12 brayn þanne, & þat þou schalt knowe whanne þat þou seest þe boonys ben¹ ioyned togidere, as it were two bordis weren ioyned togidere with cole² or with glu ; & þanne I fulfille þe wounde wip drie predis of clene lynnen cloþ, & aboute ³a mundificatif, til þat [³ 12. 71, bk.]
- 16 þe boon be keuerid. þanne I strowe on aboue þe capitale poudre tofore seid, & I leie on þe schauynge or ellis þe rasure⁴ of lynnen cloþ, & aboute al þis I leie on a treet of whiçt rosyn ; & I do alle þese þingis þat I haue seid tofore til þat þe wounde be consowdid / and a plaster of terpine.

¹ ben, above line.² cole, Lat. : sicut si essent duo ligna cum glutino in simul incolata.⁴ rasure, Lat. rasura.

- 20 þe crefeys ys bysyde þe semys, where þat trepanynge ys dedlyche, and y haue seye manye þat wipouten trepanynge almyztie god haþ delyuerede be myn handys, without touchynge enye brayn scolle with trepane opere with eyren ; but y helde into þe crefeys hote Add. MS. 12,056.
oyle of roses, and y legge aboue cloþes y-wett in mel rosat colat, & oyle rosat colat y-medlyde togedyre aftere þe doctrine tofore seyde, fulfillynge aH þe ⁵wounde wip swyche manere clothys, & afterwarde y legge aboue þe zolke of an eyze & oyle of roses y-medlyde [⁵ fol. 78 b]
- 28 togedres, and aboue þe wounde a defensiff of bol armonyac tofore seyde, tyl þat þe quyster be engendryd. & afterwarde y contynwe mel roses & oyle rosarum in þe wounde, & aboffe a mundificatyf of mel rosarum & barly mele, tyl þat þe ligament be fullliche engendrede
- 32 on þe breyne þanne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe whenne þat þou seste þe bonys Ioynede togedre, as yt were tweye bordys Ioynede to gedre wip colle opere wip glowz ; & þenne y fulfille þe wounde with drye þredys of lynnen cloþ, and abouen a mundificatyf tyl þat þe
- 36 bon be keffride aboue. & þenne y strawe on aboue þe capytale poudre tofore seyde, & y legge on þe schaffynge opere ellys þe rasure of lynnen cloþ, and abouen al þis y legge on a Tret of resyne ; & y do alle þynges þat y haue seyde tofore tyl þe wounde be con-

& if 3e make an obieccioun how þat it myzte, wipoute arerynge of þe boon, þe blood & þe quytture be dried, þe which þat fil down bi pilke slendynge vpon *duram matrem* / I answere : ryzt¹ as þe mater of þe frenesie & þe mater of þe litarge¹ þat¹ is more doutes, bi 4
 8
 12
 16
 20
 24
 28
 32
 36
 40

Nota. This remedy dissolves the blood and pus, which exhales through the fissure.

[³ ff. 72]

Treatment of a wound of the skull when the skin is not broken.

Some physicians use trepanning.

I apply oil of roses.

& if 3e make an obieccioun how þat it myzte, wipoute arerynge of þe boon, þe blood & þe quytture be dried, þe which þat fil down bi pilke slendynge vpon *duram matrem* / I answere : ryzt¹ as þe mater of þe frenesie & þe mater of þe litarge¹ þat¹ is more doutes, bi 4
 8
 12
 16
 20
 24
 28
 32
 36
 40
 44
 48
 52
 56
 60
 64
 68
 72
 76
 80
 84
 88
 92
 96
 100

þat¹ wente down bi þe forseid slending¹, may bi þe forseid slendynge 8
 þe bettere be exaled. Ne pilke blood is not viscat² in þe substauce of dure matris, as þe mater is in empostymes, wherfore he is more obeisschaunt* — — to þe attraccioun of medicyns /

& if þe brayn panne be hurt wipoute wounde ³of þe skyn, þe 12
 which þou shalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid / þanne summen kutte aboue þe hurtynge in þe maner of a crose, & þei areren þe .iiij. quarters, & þei kутten & fleen þe pannicle þat¹ keueriþ þe boonis. & aftirward þei vsen trapanes & her oþere comoun curis, as 16
 it is schewid tofore / But I kutte not þe skyn in þe maner of a crose, but in þe maner of a scheeld or ellis of a þing¹ þat¹ is triangle in þis maner ◁, & I make but oon quarter, & I vnwrie þe boon þat¹ þe oile of þe rosis may peerse yn, & þat¹ þe vertu of þe medicyn, 20

¹ *litarge*, Lat. lethargus. Lethargy, stupor.

² *viscat*, Lat. inviscatus, inclosed. See below, *inviscat*.

12,056. sould. And 3if me maken an obieccioun how þat yt myzte *wil-*
 12,056. *outen* arerynge of þe bon, þe blod & þe quyter be dreyede whiche þat fel down by pilke slendynge vpon þe *duram matrem*, I answere: ryzte as þe matere of þe frenesie & þe matere of þe litargie þat is 24
 28
 32
 36
 40
 44
 48
 52
 56
 60
 64
 68
 72
 76
 80
 84
 88
 92
 96
 100

more doutes, by emplastres *wilhouten* forth leyd is desolfed, and þere nys none sclyndynge of þe breyn panne ne no wounde in þe skyn, myche more lyztlokere & more bettere þe blod þat is lyzt & able to ben reselfyde, whiche þat wende done be þe forseyde 28
 32
 36
 40
 44
 48
 52
 56
 60
 64
 68
 72
 76
 80
 84
 88
 92
 96
 100

scleldynge, may be þe forseyde sleldynge beter ben exaled. Ne pilke blod ys nozt inviscat in þe substauce of dure matris as þe matere ys in apostemys, wherfore he ys more obeyssaunt to* þe expulcioun of kynde, & also ys more obeysaunt to the attracioun 32
 of medycine. And 3if þe brayn panne be hurte wipout wounde of þe skyn, þe whiche þou schalt y-knowen by þe toknys tofore seyde, þenne sum men kутten aboue þe hurtyng in þe manere of a cros, & þey areryn þe foure quarters, & þey kyтten & flen þe pannycle þat 36
 40
 44
 48
 52
 56
 60
 64
 68
 72
 76
 80
 84
 88
 92
 96
 100

keferith þe bonys, & afterwardes þey vsen trepanys & here oþere comyn cures, as *yt ys schewyde tofore. But y kyтte nozt þe skyn in manere of a cros, but in þe manere of a Schelde oþere ellys of a thyng þat ys tryangle in þis manere ◁, & y make but on 40
 44
 48
 52
 56
 60
 64
 68
 72
 76
 80
 84
 88
 92
 96
 100

quartere & y vnwrye þe bon, þat þe oyle of roses may persen yn,

[⁴ fol. 79 a]

þat is maad of hony of rosis & oile of rosis, may drawe fro byneþe
 þe brayn-panne / & I do in þis caas al þing^r as it is 'declarid next'
 aboue. & if^r ze make obieccioun azens me bi costantyne¹ or ellis bi
 4 opere, þat^r seien þat^r bi al oure myzt we eschewen þat^r neiþer oile
 ne noon oyntuose þing^r falliþ not^r wipinne þe brayn-panne / I
 answeere wiþ auicen, þat^r seiþ: þat^r he worchþiþ riȝtfulliche þat^r vsiþ
 teped² oilis, & þe same tellen galien & serapion; & also I seie þat^r
 8 oile of rosis, þe which þat^r schal³ be maad of^r grapis of^r olyue trees
 þat^r ben not^r ripe, is not^r oyntuose, but^r it is drie, & is clepid oile
 enfancinum;⁴ & namely whanne þat^r rosis ben medlid wiþ þilke
 oile, þilke oile haþ gete to him a swete smellynge & a drie þing^r of^r
 12 comforynge⁵ animal spiritis; & also þat^r oile haþ a vertu expressif,
 as galien telliþ in þe book of symple medicyns, bi þe whiche þe
 brayn is comfortid & akþis ben swagid / & if^r þer be maad ony greet
 blood, it is maad sutil with þat^r oile; & whanne alle þese þingis
 16 ben congaderid & leid aboue duram matrem, it is clensid /
 ¶ Sumtyme þe brayn is meued of sum greet hurt^r eiþer of sum
 fallynge or of sum smytynge wiþoute ony wounde or wiþoute ony

Constantyn
objects,but
Auicen,Galien,
Serapion,
and I use

[3 lf. 72, bk.]

Oleum
enfancinumas a strength-
ening
remedy.

Galien.

Concusson of
the brain not
complicated¹ Constantinus Africanus, c.c. 1070.² teped, Lat. tepidus.⁴ enfancinum, for omfacinum ὀμφάκιον ἔλαιον, oil made from unripe olives (*Diosc.* I. 29). *Vigo Interpr.*: "Omphax in Greke is an vnripe grape. *Vigo* calleth oyle of omphacyne, that oyle that is made of vnripe Olyves." Compare *Tomm. Dict.* s. v. onfacino.⁵ See below.

and þat þe vertue of þe medycine, þat ys y-mad of honye of
 20 roses & oyle of roses, may drawe fro byneþe þe brayn-panne; and
 y do in þis cas al þynge, as yt declarith nexte aboffe. And ȝif
 men make obieccioun aȝeyns me by constantine opere ellys by hym,
 þat seyth þat by alle oure myght^r we enchewyn þat neþere oyle ne
 24 non vncomys⁶ þynge falle noȝt withynne þe brayn-panne, I answeere
 with Auecene, þat seyth: þat he wirchep ryȝtfulliche þat vsith
 certeyne oyles, & þe same telliþ galien & serapion, and also y seye
 þat oyle of roses, whiche þat be mad of grapes of Olyue tres þat beþ
 28 noȝt ripe, is noȝt vinctuose, but is dreyze; & it is clepyde oyle
 Omfacinum, & namlye whanne þat roses ben y-medlyde with þat
 oyle, þilke oyle hath y-gete to hym a swete smellynge & a dreyzinge,
 comforynge animal spiritis; and also þilke oyle hath a vertue
 32 expressif, as galien tellyth in the bok^r of symple medicynes, by þe
 whyche þe brayn ys conffortyde & akþes ben aswagede, & ȝif þere
 be mad enye gret blod, yt is y-made SotyH; & whenne alle þese
 þynge ben y-gadryde togedyre & leyde abouen, dura mater ys
 36 clansed. Sumtyme þe brayn ys meffyde of sum gret hurt opere of
 sum fallynge, opere of sum smytynge withouten eny wounde ore enye

Add. MS.
12,056.⁶ Corrupt, probably for vinctouys.

by a wound
or fracture.

Nota

A certain
Canon fell
from his
horse,
and was left
senseless.

[1 l. 73]

I thought
him dying,

Nota

but entreated
by his friends

I anointed his
head

and laid on
compresses,

breche of ony boon, þanne do þou as I dide to a chanoun of þe ordre of seynt austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lept vpon an hiz hors & haue seten in þe satel, þe hors areride vpon hise two hyndere feet, & þilke chanoun fel down backward vpon þe erþe vpon 4 his heed; & al his bodi was brusid & namely aboute þe heed, þat anon he loste þe meuyng and þe felyng of al his body / þanne a lewid leche ¹þat was frend to þilke chanoun was clepid, & he cowde not helpen him, for he hadde neuere seen þe same caas, ne he 8 cowde not no letrure² / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I foond him neiþer heeryng, ne spekyng, ne no þing¹ meuyng, & I deemde him for deed / & neþeless³ I seide, & he were my broþer, I nolde not for an .C. mark, but I asaiede in him goodnes of þe helpinge of 12 medicyns / for ofte tyme kynde wiþ good werkis helpiþ priuylie þat semeþ vnpossible to a leche. & þei þanne preieden me with greet instaunce / & I made þe heeris of his heed to be schauen & þanne I anoyntide al þe heed wiþ. iij. parties of oile of rosis, & oon partie 16 of vynegre hoot medlid togidere, & I castide aboute poudre of mirtillis, & leide aboute a sotil lynnen cloþ þinne, wett in þe same

² Lat.: nec sciebat aliquid de scripturis. O.Fr. lettreure. See *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat. Gloss.

³ Lat.: meo tamen addens iudicio quod pro centum marchis argenti non dimitterem, quin adhuc probarem in eo, si meus esset frater, iuamenta medicinæ inducens.

Add. MS. 12,056. breche of eny bon, þan do þou as dyde y to a Chanoun of þe ordre of seint Austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lopyn vpon an hye 20 hors and haue seten in þe sadyH, þe hors areryde vpon hys two ³hyndere fete, & þilke chanoun fel down bakwarde vpon þe erthe on hys hed; & alle hys bodye was y-brusyde, and namlye aboute þe hed þat anon he lost þe ffelyng & þe meffyng of alle his bodye. 24 þanne a lewyde leche þat was frende to þilke Chanoun was y-clepyde, & he couþe helpe hym nozt, for he had neuere seyne þe same cas, ne he ne couþe nozt on lettre. And at þe laste y was clepte, & y fonde hym nozt heryng ne spekyng ne nothyng 28 meuyng, I demyde hym for ded, and napeles sauýde, zif þat he were my broþere y nolde nouzt for an hundrede mark¹, but y sayede in hym þe godnesse & þe helpyng of medicynes; ffor ofte tymes kynde with gode wekys helpith preueliche þat semyth vnpossible 32 to a leche. And þenne þey preyede me with gret Instaunce, and y made the herys of hys hed to be schaffen and þenne y anoynt aH þe hed with þre partye of oyle of roses, & on partye of vyneger hot y-medlyde togedyre, & y caste abouen þe poudre of mirtylles, and y 36 leyde abouen a sotyH þenne cloth y-wet in þe same oyle & vynegre,

[³ fol. 79 b]

- oile & vynegre, & aboute þat tow3 smal tosid, & I boond al þe heed a bandage,
 wiþ a boond, & aboute I leide a lambis skyn. & so I chaungide it and a lamb's
 þries ech day in anoyntyng þe nolle & þe necke into þe myddil¹ skin.
 4 of þe rigge-boon bihynde wiþ hoot' oile of camonille / In þe
 ij. day he openede a litil hise yzen, & he bigan to loken aboute On the 2nd
²him as it hadde be a deef' man þat' were in a wondring' / & þanne his eyes.
 summe wolden haue asaied if' þat' he myzte haue ete / & I wolde [2 ff. 73, bk.]
 8 not suffre him to ete / & I seide þow3 þat' he wolde ete þat' he
 schulde not' / In þe iij. day I spak to him / he answeride me babe- On the 3rd he
 lyng as a child þat' bigynneþ to speke, but' he myzte forþ wiþ no babbled.
 word³ / In þe iiij. dai he spak boistousliche⁴ / & þanne I 3af him to On the 4th he
 12 drynke hoot' ypocras⁵ þat' is maad of sugre & of watir / In þe v. spoke
 day he took þikke tizanne⁶ / In þe vj. dai I 3af' him broþ of a boisterously.
 chiken; and þanne he bigan to strenkþe litil & litil, & litil & litil From the 6th
 to meuen / & neuer-þe-lattere he myzte not' walke not' manye daies him strength-
 16 aftir. & whanne þat' he myzte take sufficiently mete, I comaundide euing food,

¹ of þe myddil, inserted.

³ See below, note 8.

⁴ *boistisliche*. Lat.: balbutiando, stammering, seems to connect the sense of O.Fr. *boistous*, lame, with boisterous.

⁵ *ypocras*, error for *ydrosacre*. See below. "*Hydrosaccharum*, a Syrup made of Water and Sugar." Phillips. *Hippocras*, a kind of "Artificial Wine, made of Claret or White Wine, and several sorts of Spice." *Ibid*.

⁶ Lat. *ptisanam spissam*. Matth. Sylv.: "Tisanna i. aqua ordeï uel fariola."

- & aboute þat tow3 smale y-tosyde, & y bonde alle þe hed with a band, Add. MS.
 & abouen y leyde a lambys skyn, & so y chaungede yt twyes euerye 12,056.
 day; in anoyntyng þe nolle & þe nekke into þe myddeþ of þe
 20 rygge-bon byhynde wiþ hote oyle of Camamyll. In þe secunde
 day he opnyde a lyte his eyzen, & he bygan to loken aboute hym
 as it hadde be a deff' man, opere ellys a man þat were in a
 wondryng; and þenne some wolden haue assayede 3if þat he wolde
 24 eten, & y wolde nouzt⁷ Suffren hym to eten, & y seyde þow3 þat he [7 fol. 80 a]
 wolde eten he scholde nouzt. In þe þridde day y spak' to hym, &
 he answerde me bablyng as a childe þat begynneþ to speke, but he
 myzte formen nouz worde.⁸ In þe fourþe day he spak' bostynglyche,
 28 and þenne y gaf hym to drynke hot ydrosacre, þat ys y-mad of Sugre
 & of watyre. In þe ffyfte day he toke þikke⁹ tysan. In þe sixe day
 y gaf hym þe broth off' a chykne, & þenne he gan to strengþe litel
 & lytel & lytel, & lytel to meffen, & neuere þe latere he myzte nouzt
 32 walkyn by manye dayes. And whanne þat he myzte take Suffi-
 sauntlye mete, y comaundyde hym to take Pylulas Cochias, for to

⁸ Lat.: *verbum non potuit formare*.

⁹ MS. þilke.

purgative pills,
and brain of fowl and kid.

him to take pilulas clochias¹ for to resolue bi euaciacion þe matere þat I-gaderide togidere in þe heed bi þilke fallinge / & I comaundide him to ete ofte þe braynes of briddis heedis, & of hennys & of smale briddis & kedis / & in þis maner he was hool; neþeles he was 4
neure so sotil of witt as he was tofore /

Evil symptoms
[3 lf. 74]

are: cramp, immobility except of the muscles of the chest.

Three ways of treatment:
1. the way used by Anselme.

2. trepanning.

3. my own way,

In þis ben yuel signes as þe face to be to² crokid, & þe yzen to loke asquynt³ eiper crokidliche, apoplexie, crampe, to schite wipoute felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outcept þe lacertis of 8
þe brest þat monn be saaf⁴ / He þat rediþ þis book may chese aftir his owne wil oon of iij. weis þe whiche þat ben now vsid / þe toon is þe wey þe whiche þat is seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle, þe which wey manye vsen, & a leche of Ianewe⁵ þat is clepid anselme 12
vsip þis wey, & þerbi he gate myche money / neþeles I wiste weel þat manye men dieden in hise handis bi þis wey / þe secunde maner is in almaner hurtyng of þe heed to vsen terabracioun⁶ eiper remeu-
nyng of þe boon wip handliche instrumentis / þe iij. is my wey þe 16

¹ *Cochia*. An ancient name for several officinal purgative pills. Dunglison, *Medic. Lex.* κόκκος, a pill. Alex. Trall. Compare Fr. cochée.

² be to, added in margin.

⁴ Lat. : præterquam lacertorum pectoris qui sallire videntur. The translator evidently read *salvere* instead of *sallire*.

⁵ Anselmus de Ianua. A. de Porte, quoted by Guy de Chauliac as Anserinus de Ianua, XIII. cent. Ianua is Genoa, see Eloys Dictionn. historique.

⁶ “*Terebration*, a boring or piercing; a Term more especially used in Surgery.” Phillips. “*Terebra*, an Awger or Wimble, a Piercer; also an Instrument to engrave on Stones; also a Surgeon’s Trepan or Trepaniron.” *Ibid.*

Add. MS.
12,056.

resolfe by evacuacion þe matere þat was y-gadrede togedire in þe hed by þilke fallynge. And y comaundyde hym to eten ofte þe braynes of briddys hedys, as of hennys & of smale bryddes, & also of kyddes; and in þis manere he was hol; napeles he was neuyre 20
so sotyl of wyt as he was tofore. In þis cas buþ yuele signes: as þe face to be crokyde, & þat on eyze to loken asquynt oþer crokydlyche, apoplexie, crampe, to schyte wipoute felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outsept þe lacertes of þe brest þat 24
mowe be saff. He þat redith þis bok may chesen after hys owne wey, one of þre weyes whiche þat beþ now y-vsye, þat on ys þe wey whiche þat ys seyde in þe bygynninge of þis chapitell, þe whiche weye many vsen, and a leche o Ianewe þat is y-clepyde 28
Anselme vsith þis weye, & þereby he gat myche moneye, napeles y wyste wel þat manye men dyzeden in his handys bi þis wey. þe
[7 fol. 80 b] ⁷ secunde weye is in alle manere hurtynges of hed to vsen tere-
bracioun, opere ellys remeffynge of þe bon with handlyche Instru- 32
mentes; þe þridde ys my weye whiche þat y haue tolde opynlye in

which þat I haue told openliche in almaner caas / & I bileue, if ^{where fewer people die.} þat he take hede to alle þese weyes & þat he wole wisely discussen alle þe opynyons of auctouris, þat he schal seen fewere die bi my 4 .iij. wey þan bi ony of þe opere .ij. weyes // Almyȝti god lede þe redere of þis werk in þe best wey, þoruȝ whos myȝtis, wordis takis sentencis & also vnderstandinge.

þoruȝ þat we han bihoten to tretyn of ano^tamie of membris ^[1 ff. 74, bk.]
 8 þat ben compound, in þe bigynnyng of eueri chapitle of þis secunde tretis, nepeles we leeuē² it for þe bettere for to treten of anotamie of þe visage, to þe þridde tretise, where we schulden treten ^{The anatomy of the face is given in the 3rd treatise.} of sijknes þat comen to þese membris, þe whiche syknessis ben non³
 12 woundis // //

The secunde chapitle of woundis of þe face & ¶ Cap. ij.
 anotamie of þe same.

Woundis þat ben maad in þe face, or þei be maad wiþ a swerd
 16 or wiþ sum dinge⁴ ellis þat woundis, or þei ben maad wiþ pricknyge of a knyf, arowe, eiper spere. It is necessarie þat a surgian haue ^{Wounds of the face must be treated carefully.} more diligence in þe woundis of þe face, for it is a place þat is myche seen, & it is wel to do make⁵ a sotil⁶ cicatrice / A wounde

² Lat. relinquimus tamen propter melius.

³ MS. *now*.

⁴ *dinge*, in margin.

⁵ Compare: *þis instrument may ȝe do make wiþoute grete cost.* Quinte Essence, p. 62.

⁶ *a sotil*, in margin.

20 alle manere of cas; and y beleue ȝif þat he wyl take hede to alle þese weyes, & þat he wyȝt wyslye discussen þe opyniouns of Auctores, þat he schal se fewere dyȝe be my þridde weye þenne by enye opere. Almyȝtie god lede þe redere of þis werk in þe beste
 24 wey, þorwe whose myȝte, wordes takyth sentence & echyn vnderstandyng. þoruȝ þat we han behoten to treten of Anotamie of membres þat ben componed, in þe bygynninge of eueri chapyteff of this secunde tretys, nepeles we leuen yt for þe bettere for to treten
 28 of þe Anotamie of þe vysage, to þe þridde tretys, where we schulle tretyn of seknesse þat comyth to þis membres, whyche seknesse beþ non woundes.

Add. MS.
 12,056.

¶ Cap. off woundes of þe face & Anotamie of þe same.

32 Woundes þat ben made in þe face, opere þey beþ mad with a swerde, ore wiþ sum thyng ellis þat woundes, opere þey ben mad wiþ prikyng of a knyf, arwe, opere spere. Yt is necessarye, þat a surgyne haue more diligence in þe woundes of þe face, for it is a
 36 place þat is myche y-seyne, & yt ys wel y-do to make a sotyl cicatrice. A wounde þat ys mad with a swerde opere with sum þyng

þat is maad wip a swerd or wip sumping^t semblable þat is alwei in lenkþe, a man muste sotilliche sowen & gaderen þe parties of þe wounde togidere / & for þat manye men lizen of þe wounde of þe nose, þei seien þat' oon bar his nose kutt of in his hond, þe which nose was afterward sett azen in his owne kynde ; þe which is an open lesyng / For þe spirit' of lijf' of felynge & ¹meuyng passip, whanne a membre is depertid from þe bodi / I wole bigynne at a wounde of þe nose þat' is kutt' in lenkþe, þe which cure is lizt' to hele / Brynge þe 8 parties togidere of þe wounde & sowe hem, & worche aboute þe wounde as I haue seid tofore in þe chapitle of woundis / & if' þat' þe nose were kutt' ouerþwert' doun to þe ouer lippe, & nepeles þat' þe ouer lippe & þe nose were kutt' al away, but þat' it' held faste at' boþe þe eendis 12 of þe eendis of þe wounde, þanne sette azen þe nose in his propre place, þe noseþrillis ech azen opir as þei weren toforn, & make two smale tentis of wax & putte on eipir noseþrille aboute þe wounde, if' þat' þou maist', & þanne make a'poynt' bi þe space of a litil fyngre from þe oon 16 eende of þe wounde, & anoþer poynt' at' þe oþere eende of þe wounde, & anoþir poynt' in þe myddil of þe nose azen þe forheed ; and aftirward a poynt' on eipir side of þe nose, aftirward make [a poynt']* bitwene eueri poynt', so þat' þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntis 20

² Heading to this page : *Off wondes off the fface & Anotomy off þe same from the face to the ffote.*

semblable þat is alweye in lengthe, a man moste sotylliche sowyn & gedre þe parties of þe wounde. And for þat many men lyzen ³ of þe wounde of þe nese, þey seyzen þat on bare hys nose y-kytte of in hys hande, þe whiche nose was afterwarde y-sette azeine in hys 24 owne kynde ; þe whiche ys an opyn lesyng, for þe spiryt of lyf of felynge & of meffyng passith awaye, whanne a membre is departyde from þe body. I wylle begynne at þe wounde at þe nese þat is y-kutte in lengthe, wose cure ys lyzt to hele ; brynge þe parties togedre of þe wounde & sowe hem, & wirche aboute the wounde as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of wondes. And zif þat þe nese were y-kutte twarte offere doun to þe ouere lippe, & napeles þat þe ouyre lippe & þe nose were nozt kutte al away, but þat it helde 32 faste at boþe þe endys of þe wounde, þanne sette azeine þe nose in his propre place, þe noseþrellys yche azeins oþere as þey were tofore, & make two smale tentys of wax, & putte in boþe þe noseþrellys aboute þe wounde, zif þat þou maist', & þenne make a poynt 36 by þe space of a litel fyngere from þat on ende of þe wounde, & an oþere poynt at þe oþere ende of þe wounde, and an oþere poynt in þe myddel of þe nose anentys þe forhede ; & afterwarde a poynt on eipere syde of þe nose, afterwarde make a poynt* 40 betwene evry poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntes,

There is a lie about replacing a nose cut off.

[l. 75]²

Wounds of the nose : a longitudinal cut,

a transverse cut, the nose still hanging.

Adjust the nose, retain it in position by splints of wax,

sew it,

Add. MS. 12,056.

[fol. 81 a]

- whanne þei ben ful maad, .ix. Caste þe poudre þat^t is tofore seid vpon þe wounde, þat^t is maad of ¹line, frank encense, & sandragoun / & take þe white of an ey & oile of^t rosis, & bete hem togidere, [1 ff. 75, bk.]
- 4 & wete þerinne a lynnene cloþ & leie aboute þe wounde / Aftirward bynde* þerto þre plumaciols, oon vndirneþe, anoper on þe oon side, anopir on þe toþir side / & þanne bynde þe nose wiþ two bandis / þe toon schal holde vp þe nose þat^t he may not discende douward / apply three pledgets, and two bandages,
- 8 þe toþir schal be leid aboute þat^t he mowe kepe þe plumaciols, poudre, & þe sowynge / & þilke boond þat^t is vnder þe nose þat^t halt^t þe nose vpward, schal be knytt² aboute vpon þe heed, & aftirward he schal be turned ouertwert^t ouer þe forheed, þat^t he mowe holde þe boond, þat^t one holds the rose in position,
- 12 þe nose decline to neiþir³ side. & þe boond þat^t is leid aboute þe nose, schal be bounden bihynde in þe nolle / & aftirward he schal turne azen aboute þe nose, holdynge þe plumaciols þat^t þei moun not wagge to neiþir side aboute þe sowynge; & aboute þe forheed, þou schalt^t leie the other the pledgets.
- 16 þe defensif^t of hole, & aftirward þou schalt^t worche on þe wounde of þe nose, as I haue seid in a wounde of fleisch in þe fourþe⁴ tretis / þe woundis þat^t ben maad in opere parties of þe face ⁵as wiþ a swerd or ony þing^t semblable, brynge hem togidere & sowe hem & cure hem, as it^t is conteyned in general chapitlis of^t woundis, takynge [3 ff. 76] Wounds on other places must be carefully stitched,

² MS. *kutt*.³ MS. *þe neiþir*.⁴ *fourþe* for *firste*.

- whenne þey ben ful mad, .IX. Caste þe poudre þat^t is tofore seyde vpon þe wounde, þat^t is y-mad of lym, frank ensence, sandragoun, & take whyte of an ey & oyle of roses and bete hem togidere, & 24 leye þereynne a lynne cloþ & leye aboute þe wounde, aftirwarde [bynde]* þereto þre plumaciolus, one ⁶vndireneþe, & on on þat o syde, an opere on þe opere syde; & þanne bynde þe nose wiþ tweye bandys, þat^t on schalt^t holden vp þe nose þat^t he may nouzt descendyn dun- 28 ward, þat^t opere schal be leyde aboffe þat^t he mowe kepyn þe plumacyolus, poudere, & þe sowynge. And þilke bande þat^t ys vnder þe nose þat^t halt^t þe nose vpwarde, schal be knett aboute on þe hed, and aftirwarde he schal be turnyde twarte offere þe forehed, þat^t he 32 mowe holde þe bande, & þe nose declyne to neiþere syde. And þe bande þat^t ys leyde aboffe þe nose, schal be bounden behynden in þe nolle; and afterwarde he schal turnen azeyne aboffe þe nose, holdynge þe plumacyoles þat^t þey mowe nozt wagge on neythere syde 36 aboute þe sewynge; & aboute þe forhed þou schalt^t legge þe deffensif of bol, and aftirwarde þou schalt^t worche on þe wounde of þe nose as y haue seyde in a wounde of fleisch in þe firste tretys. þe woundes þat^t beþ y-mad in opere partye of þe face as *with* a swerd 40 ore opere þynge semblable, brynge hem togidere, sowe hem, & cure hem, as yt ys conteyned in generall chapitle of woundys, takynge Add. MS. 12,056. [6 fol. 81 b]

hede herto þat þe sowynge þat is maad in þe face schal be more
 sotil & fairer þan in ony opere partie of þe body / & þou maist
 make a sowynge in þe face, if þat þe wounde be not to myche, on
 þis maner / Take mastik, sandragoun & poudre hem & tempre hem
 togidere wiþ þe white of an ey to þe þickenesse of hony, & wete
 þerinne two pecis of lynnyn cloþ as longe as þe wounde / & leie þe
 toon on þe oon side of þe wounde, & þe oper on þe toþir side & lete
 hem drien / & aftirward make þe wounde sumwhat to blede, &
 þanne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togidere; & sowe þilke .ij.
 pecis togidere, & caste aboute poudre of lyme, frankencense, san-
 dragoun tofore seid, & wete a cloþ in þe white of an ey & oyle of
 rosis, & leie aboute al togidere, & kepe þe partee wiþ ligature &
 prosede forþ in alle þingis as I haue tofore seid /

Nota bene

or brought
 together by
 an adhesive
 plaster.

A wound
 made with
 a dart or an
 arrow.

[¹ If. 76, bk.]

If the arrow
 head is
 hidden,

try to find it,

& if þat þe wounde be maad wiþ a dart or wiþ an arewe & þe
 arowe be drawe out & þe wounde be myche sene, þanne þe cure is
 þe same þat was seid in þe same chapitle or elles in þe firste tretis,
 wheþer þat þe be a senewe prickid eiþir noon. But if þe arowe
 heed were entriged in ony priuy place of þe face, so þat it myzte
 not be seen, þanne euery man bisie him to knowe bi his witt how
 þat þe sike man stood, whanne þat he was smyte, & whens þat þe
 arowe cam, & to what partie þe wounde strecchþ, þat he mowe loke

hede hereto, þat þe sowynge þat ys y-mad in þe face, schal be more
 sotyl & fairere, þanne in enye opere party of þe body. And þou
 maiste maken a sowynge in þe face, zif þat þe wounde be nouzt to
 myche, on þis manere. R mastyk & sandragoun & poudre hem &
 tempre hem togidere wiþ þe whyte of an eyze to þe þyknesse of
 hony, & wete þereynne tweye pecys of lynnyn cloþ as longe as þe
 wounde, & leye one on þat o syde of þe wounde, & þe opere on
 þe oþere & lete hem dreyzen, and afterwarde make þe wounde sum
 what to blede, & þenne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togedires;
 & sowe þilke two pecys togedres, & caste aboute þe poudre of lym,
 franc ensence, sandragoun tofore seyde, & wete a cloþ in þe whyte
 of an eyze & oyle of roses, & leye aboue al togedyre, and kepe þe
 parties with ligature, & procede forþ in alle þynges as y haue tofore
 seyde. And zif þat þe wounde be y-mad with a dart opere with an
 arwe, & þe arwe ben y-drawe out and þe wounde be myche y-sene,
 þenne þe cure ys þe same þat was seyde in þe same chapytel opere
 ellys in þe firste tretys, wheþere þat þe be a synwe prikyde opere
 none. But zif þat þe arwe-hed were entrygede in enye priuy place of
 þe face, so þat yt myzte nouzt ben seyzen, þenne euerye man bisie
 hym be his wyt, to knowe how þe seke man stod, whanne he was y-
 smete, & whennys þat þe arwe come, & to what party þe wounde
 strecchith, þat he mowe loke zif þat he mowe fynden enye manere

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[² fol. 82 a]

if þat he mowe fynde ony maner wey how he may drawe out þilke
 arowe-heed; & þanne drawe him out þe best maner wey þat he
 may / & if he may not, heelde he in þe wounde oile of rosis & þe
 4 3elke of an ey togidere medlid; & wip þis medicyn worche in þe
 wounde, til þat kynde schewe sum maner wey / Manye men han
 born an arowe-heed in þe parties of her face bi longe tyme; &
 after longe tyme kynde hap cast out þe arowe heed, or ellis he hap
 8 schewid sum wey bi þe which wey þilke arowe-heed myzte be taken
 out. & þou must take hede bi al þi miȝt þat, whanne þat þou
 sowist þe woundis of þe face, þat þe mouþ be not crokid, but make
 so sliȝly þi sowynge þat þilke accident may ¹not fallen; & þat þou
 12 maist do weel, if þat þou cowdist ordeyne weel þi sowynge / & if
 þat þou canst, kepe weel þi sowynge wip plumaciols and wip
 byndyngis // // //

and draw
 it out;
 if you fail,
 apply
 Ollium
 Rosarum
 till nature
 works.

Beware of
 disfiguring
 the mouth in
 making the
 suture.

[¹ If. 77]

The þridde chapitle of þe secunde tretis is of
 16 woundis of þe necke & anotamie of the same.

¶ Cap^m 3^m

Bi þe necke is conteyned al þe place þat is bitwene þe heed &
 þe schuldris, þe which anotamie I wole telle as I haue bihiȝt /
 Summen maken difference bitwene þe necke & þe wesaut² & þe

Anatomy of
 the neck.

² *wesaut gula; wesande, ysophagus.* Wright W., page 676, XV. cent.
 See *Vicary*, page 47, note 4.

20 wey, how he may drawen out þilke arwe-hed; and þenne drawe
 hym out þe beste manere þat he may. And ȝif he may nouȝt, helde
 into þe wounde oyle of roses, & medle he oyle of roses & þe ȝolke
 into an eyȝe togedre, & helde into þe wounde, & wip þis medicyne
 24 worche in þe wounde, tyl þat kynde schewe sum manere wey.
 Manye men han born an arwe-hed in þat partyes of here face by
 longe tyme; and aftere kynde hap cast out þilke arwe-hed, opere
 ellys hap schewyde sum weye by whom þilke arwe-hed myzte be
 28 taken out. And þou moste taken hede be al þy myght þat whanne
 þat þou sowyste þe woundes of þe face þat þe mouþ be noȝt crokyde,
 but make so slylye þy sowynge þat þylke accident may noȝt ³fallen;
 & þat þou maiste do wel, ȝif þat þou couȝest ordeyn wel þy sowynge
 32 & ȝif þou couȝest kepen wel þy sowynge wip plumacyolus & wip
 byndynges.

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[³ fol. 82 b]

¶ Cap. iij. tretis ij is off woundes of þe nekke &
 Anotomye of þe same.

36 ¶ **B**y the nekke is contynwede alle þe place þat is bytwene þe
 hed & þe schuldris, whose Anotamye y wyȝt tellen as y haue
 behyght. ¶ Some men makyȝtli dyfference bytwene þe nekke & þe
 SURGERY.

In the neck
are
vij spondilis,
or Vertebrae,
the 1st is
articulated
with the oc-
cipital bone.

prote-bolle, & alle þese ben comprehendid vndir þe name of þe
necke. In þe necke þer ben .vij. spondelis þat' is to seie whirl-
boonys / whirlboonys of þe rigge. þe firste of þe boonys is bounde
wiþ a boon of þe heed þat' is clepid passillare¹ with manye smale 4
feble ligamentis; & þei were feble bi-cause þat' þilke ioynt' next to
þe heed myzte meue many weies. & þe cause whi þat' þer were
smale ligamentis multiplied in þat' ioynt, þat' manye smale myzten
susteyne a greet' burþun as weel as a fewe greete; & if þat' þer were 8
a fewe greete, þei weren not' so able to be meued / þe firste spon-
dile² is bounde to þe secunde / þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to
þe fourþe / þe fourþe to þe fifþe, þe fifþe to þe sixte / þe sixte to þe
seuenþe / þe seuenþe is bounde loseliche to þe firste spondile of þe 12
rigge, þat' þe necke myzte more liztliche meuen, which þat' is clepid
þe .vij. spondile / whanne þat' þou rekenest' [from þe hed dun-
warde]* Seuene peire of' senewis proceden out' [by þese .vij. spon-
delis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeþ out]* bitwene þe firste 16
spondilis and³ þe boon of þe heed þat' is clepid passillare / þe secunde
peire of' senewis is bore bitwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, &
so euery peire passen out' bitwene ech spondile / þese senewis ben

[² If. 77, bk.]

.1.
.2.3.
.4.5.6.
7

From the
cervical
vertebrae
spring 7 pairs
of sinews,

¹ See *Vicary*, page 44, note 2.

³ MS. of. Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*þ he is vnterberyng in þe kynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, þ þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp or pawillus.*"

Add. MS. 12,056. wesant & þe prote-bolle, and alle þese be comprehendyde vndire þe 20
name of þe nekke. In þe nekke þere ben vij spondiles—þat is to
say, whirle bonys of þe rigge. þe furste of þe bonys ys y-bounde
wiþ a bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passillare wiþ manye smale
feble ligamentys; & þey weren feble bycause þat þilke Iuncte 24
nexte þe hed myzte meffe manye weyes. And þe cause why þat
þere were manye smale lygamentes multeplyede in þat Iuncte, þat
manye smale myzte susteyne a grete burthynē as wel as a fewe
grete; & zif þat þere were a fewe grete, þey were nouzt so able to 28
be meffyde. The firste spondyle ys y-bounden to þe secunde, þe
secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe, þe iiij. to þe v., þe v. to
þe vi., þe sixte to þe sevenþe, þe vij. ys y-bounden loselyche to þe
fyrste spondile⁴ of þe rugge, þat þe nekke myzte more liztlyche 32
meffen, whiche ys clepyde þe vij. spondile, whenne þat þou reknyste
from þe hed dunwarde.* vij. peire off' synwes growiþ out by þese
.vij. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeþ out* bytwene
þe fyrste spondile⁵ & þe bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passillare; 36
þe secunde peire of synwes ys y-bore bytwene þe firste spondile &
þe secunde, & so euery peire passith out bytwene euery spondile.

[⁵ fol. 83 a]

⁴ MS. Whenne þat þou reknyst from þe hed, struck through, after spondile.

dyuydid in many weies bi þe heed, þe necke and þe face, & þe brest, schuldris & þe armes; þe braunchis of þe senewis of þe heed in sum place ben conteynued & ioyned with þese senewis / & þese 4 senewis ben clepid meuyng, riȝt¹ as þe senewis þat comen of þe fore partie of þe brayn ben clepid felynge, & þese han also felynge. Of þese senewis þat comen of þe spondilis of þe necke þere ben maad braunnys, þe whiche ben instrumentis of meuyng of þo 8 parties. In ¹þe necke bihynde, þere ben ordeyned open² veynes comyng fro þe lyuere þe whiche þat ascenden into þe heed / & vndir þe veynes þer ben arteries priuylliche³ comyng fro þe herte & goyng to þe heed for notable profitis. & whanne þat þei han⁴ doon al her office in þe heed þei discenden down bi þe place þat is bihynde þe eeris & þei bringe partie materie spermatife: þat is to seie mater of sperme, down to þe ballokis / & þefore it is seid if þat þo veynes weren kutt, a man schulde neuere engendre⁵ / On þe 12 riȝtside & also on þe liftside of þe necke ben ordeimed. ij. nollis⁶ whiche⁷ ben of ligamentis matire, þe whiche proceden out of þe

communicating with the sinews of the head.

[1 If. 78]

The neck contains veins and arteries, ascending from the heart,

and bringing spermatic matter to the ballocks,

it contains also ligaments,

² open, Lat. manifestæ, superficial. ³ Lat. arterie occulte. ⁴ MS. *ben*.

⁵ Avicenna quotes Hippocrates as authority for this curious belief: "Et Hip. quidem dixit in suis intentionibus quod plurimum materie spermatis est ex cerebro & quod descendit ex duabus venis que sunt post ambas aures. Et propter hoc abscondit phlebotomia ambarum generationem & facit incurrere sterilitatem." *Canon Lib. III, Fen XX, Tract. 1, Cap. 3, ed. Ven. 1523, fol. 5.*

⁶ *nolles*, Latin cervices, seem to be the transverse processes.

⁷ *whiche*, struck through after *nollis*.

þese Synwys buȝ deuyded manye weyes by þe hed, & þe nekke, & þe face, & þe breste, schuldres, & þe armes; þe braunches of þe 20 synwes of the hed in some place beȝ contynwede & Ioynde with þese synwes. And þese synwes buȝ y-clepyde meffyng ȝȝte as þe synwes þat comyȝh of þe fore partye of þe brayn beȝ y-clepyde felynge & þese habbiȝ also felynge. Of þese Synwes þat comyȝh 24 of þe spondlis of þe nekke þere beȝ mad brawnys, þe whiche beȝ instrumentes of mevyng of þe partyes. In þe nekke beȝhynde, þere ben y-ordeynde opyn veynes comyng from þe lyffere whiche þat ascendyn to þe hed, and vndire þo Veynes þere ben Arteryes y- 28 hud priuelyche, comyng ffrom þe herte & goyng to þe hed for notable profetes. And whanne þat þey han do al here office in þe hed, þey descenden down by þe place þat beȝ behynde þe erys & þey bryngen materie spermatice, þat is to say mater of sperme, don 32 to þe ballokes, & þefore it ys y-seyde: ȝif þat þo Veynes weren y-kutt, a man scholde neuere engendre. On þe ȝȝt syde & eke on þe lefte syde of þe nekke þere ben y-ordeynde tweye nolles, þe whyche beȝ of lygamente mater, þe whiche procedep out of þe bonys

Add. MS. 12,056.

to support
the sinews.

Gula,
[³ lf. 78, bk.]
gullet run-
ning from
the mouth to
the stomach.

The gullet
has 2 coats.

The windpipe
is made of
gristle,

boony of þe heed & of þe spondilis, & þei strecchen doun to þe eeris¹ in lenkþe biside þe spin boon, & þei ben a couche & a restyng place to þe senewis þat comen out of þe nucha. In þe fore partie of þe necke þere is gula, þe which þat strecchiþ from þe chyn⁴ doun to þe forke of þe brest²; & bitwene þe necke & gula wiþinneforþ þere is ordeyned mary,³ þat is to seie þe wesant; þe which þat discendiþ of⁴ a smal skyn enuerouzyng⁵ al þe mouþ wiþinneforþ & so goyng doun to þe stomak, & he is hool & conteyned wiþ þe stomak, & is of substance of þe same stomak, & he discendiþ doun bi þe hyndere partie of þe necke cleuyng to þe spondilis til þat he come to þe fifþe spondile of þe rigge; & þere he is departid from þe spondilis, & he declineth into þe ynnere partie til þat he peerse¹² þoruþ þe mydrif⁶, & is compounned of .ij. panniclis, & in þe ynnere cloþ þere ben braunnys in lenkþe bi þe whiche drauþtis is maad of mete & of drynk, & þe vttere cloþ þere ben brawnys in brede bi þe whiche is castyng out of superfluytees; & he haþ noon tran-¹⁶suersarie, þat is to seie goyng ouerþwert, for wiþholdyng is not nedeful to him. & in þe fore partie of þe brest þere is sett þe canne⁷ of þe lungis, þe which is compounned of gristil ryngis bounde

¹ *eeris* for *ers*.

² *the forke of the brest*, the clavicle.

³ *mary*, Lat. *meri siue oesophagus*. Arab. *marî*.

⁴ MS. *of*, twice.

⁶ *mydrif*, diaphragma. Wright W., *Gloss.*, page 578, l. 22, XV. cent.

⁷ MS. *same*. Lat. *canna pulmonis*. See *Vicary*, page 47, note 7.

Add. MS. of þe hed & of þe spondiles, & þey strecchen doun to þe ers in 20
12,056. lengþe besydes þe spyne bon, & þey ben a couche & a restyng place to þe synwes þat comyth out of þe nucha. In þe fore partye of þe nekke þere ys gula whiche þat strecchiþ from þe chyn doun to þe furcle of þe brest; and bytwene þe nekke & þe gulam wiþynne-

[⁸ fol. 83 b.]

forþ þere ys⁸ y-ordeyned mery—þat ys to seye þe wesand; þe whiche þat discendiþ of a smal schyn environyng alle þe mouth *wiþynne*-forþ, & so goyng doun to þe Stomak, & he ys hol & conteynde wiþ þe Stomak, & ys of Substance of þe same stomak, & he dissendiþ²⁸ doun by þe hyndere partye of þe nek' cleuyng to þe spondelis; tyl þat he come to þe .v. spondile of þe rugge, & þere he ys departyde from þe spondelis and declyneth into þe Innere partye tyl þat he perce þorwe þe mydryff⁴, & he ys componed of twey pannycles, and³² in þe Innere cloþ þere ben brawnys in lengthe, by þe whiche drauþte ys made of mete & drynke, and in þe vtter cloþ þere bene brawnys in brede by whom ys made castyng out of superfluyte; and he haþ non transversarye, þat ys to seye goyng twartoffere, ffor wythhold-³⁶yng ys nouþ nedful to hym. And in þe fore partye of þe brest þere is y-set þe canne of longes, þe whiche ys componed off grustlye

- togidere wiþ pannicleris ligamentis, hauynge in þe ymere partie a ful smeþe pannicle ioynynge togidere pilke gristili ryngis. & pilke ryngis whanne þei ben ioyned wiþ merie, þei ben defaultif azens þe merie / & þe foorme of þe canne of þe lungis is* as it were þe foorme of a cane, ¹þat is to seie a rehed,² of þe which rehed þe fourþe partie were kutt away in lenkþe, & aftirward pilke caane is wrie with a sotil clooþ þat whanne þat a greet mussel of mete passe doun bi þe merye, he schulde not haue lettinge, but pilke pannicle of merye 3eueþ stede³ to þe greet mete passynge doun to þe stomak. þe prote-bolle⁴ is maad of iij gristlis, & is sett aboute þese two weies. & boþe on þe riȝtside & on þe lift side of þe caane of þe lungis þer ben ij. greete veynes þat ben clepid organice or ellis guydes⁵; & vndir þe veynes þer ben greete arteries, & of þe kuttynge of pilke veynes & arteries þer comeþ ofte tyme greete perels, & sumtyme deep; for þe grete affenite þat þei han wiþ þe herte, & þe greet noyousnes⁶ þat þei han to þe lyuere, bi hem sonner⁷ blood is euacued, wherfore spiritus exalip, þe whiche þat ben
- [¹ ff. 79]
- and gives way to great morsels.
- The 2 Vene organice (Jugular Veins) and 2 great Arteries go along the windpipe. An incision into them is dangerous, for they are near the heart and the liver.
- ² Read reed.
- ³ 3eueþ stede, Lat. cedere. See *Catholicon Angl.*, page 155, to giffe stede, cedere, locum dare.
- ⁴ prote-bolle. See *Vicary*, page 48, note 1.
- ⁵ guydes, Lat. guidegi, *Ibid.* p. 48, note 3. Compare Arab. widädsch, vena jugularis. *Matth. Sylv.*: "Guedegi sunt vene guides. Alguidegi in collo flobotomantur."
- ⁶ noyousnesse. See *noyous*, *Cathol. Angl.*, page 256. The Latin has: *propinquitatem*, and the translator seems to have been influenced by the preceding *affenite*.
- ⁷ sonner, in margin.

- rynges y-bounde togedire wiþ panycleris ligamentes, habbynge in þe Innore partye a ful smeþe pannicle Ioynynge togedire pilke grustly rynges. And pilke rynges, whenne þat þey ben ioynede with mery, þey ben defaultyf anonde þe mery. And þe forme of þe canne of þe longes [is]* as yt were þe forme of a cane—þat is to say a reed, of þe whiche reed þe fourþ part were kutt away in lengthe, & afterward þe canne ys y-wreye wiþ a sotyl cloth, þat whanne þat a grete mosseff of mete passe doun be þe mery, he scholde han non lettynge, but pilke pannicle of mery 3euyth stede to þe grete mete passynge doun to þe stomak. þe protbolle þat is mad of þre grustlys, ys y-sette aboute þese ⁹two weyzes. And boþe on þe ryzte syde & eke on þe lefte syde of þe cane of þese longes, þere beþ tweye grete veynes þat beþ y-clepyde **organice** opere ellys **guydes**. & vndire þe veynes þere ben grete arteryes, and of þe kyttinge of pilke Veynes & Arteries þere comyth ofte tymes gret peryle & sumtyme sodeyne dep; for þe grete afynite¹⁰ þat þey han in þe herte & þe grete noyousnesse þat þey han to þe lyffer, sennore by hem blod ys euacued, wherfore spiritus exaleþ whyche þat buþ frendys, boþe to þe body &
- Add. MS. 12,056.
- [⁹ fol. 84 a]
- ¹⁰ a, above line.

The muscles,
nerves, and
vessels of the
neck

[⁴ ff. 79, bk.]
pass in its
longitudinal
direction.

Wounds on
the neck are
either longi-
tudinal or
transverse.

In the latter
case staunch
the blood,

sew the vein,
and the
nerve,

and apply a
preparation

freendis boþe to þe body and also to¹ þe soule² / þe ligament³ of þe þrote is clepid emanence eipir þe heizþe of þe epiglote, & in þe sidis of þe þrote þere is sett gula. &³ þe goynge of þe brawnys, senewis and cordis, veynes & arteries & her braunchis bi⁴ parties of þe heed 4 proceden aftir þe ordour of⁵ eeris,⁵ & þei ben ordeyned in þe necke & in gula aftir her lenkþe. & herbi þou maist⁶ se þat it⁷ is necessarie a surgian to make hise kuttyngis & hise breunnyngis bi lenkþe of þe necke & of þe þrote, & þat þe woundis þat ben maad ouerþwert⁸ 8 ben more perloous, þan þo þat ben in lenkþe /

Now we wolen tretyn of⁹ woundis þat ben maad in þis place, wiþ a swerd or wiþ sum þing semblable to him, or wiþ an arowe or sum þing semblable to him. & if it¹⁰ be wiþ a swerd, eipir it¹¹ is ouer- 12 þwert¹² eipir in lenkþe / & if it¹³ be ouerþwert¹³ & þere be kutt¹⁴ greete veynes eiper arteries, it¹⁵ is to dreden. Neþeles þou schalt helpe to staunche þe blood & consowde þe veyne, aftir þe techinge tofore asigned in þe chapitle of¹⁶ flux of blood. & if¹⁷ þer be a senewe kutt¹⁸, 16 þazne brynge boþe parties of¹⁹ þe senewe togidere & sowe þe pelliclis of²⁰ þe senewe wiþ þe sowynge of²¹ þe woundis, as I haue tauzt tofore in þe place of²² sowynge of²³ senewis, & leie aboue lumbricus of²⁴ þe

¹ to, above line.

² Lat.: qui est inter corpus et animam amicabile ligamentum.

³ in, inserted.

⁵ eeris for heeris.

Add. MS.
12,056.

eke to þe soule. þe ligamente of þe þrote ys y-clepyd þe⁶ eminance 20 oþere þe hekþe of þe epiglote, & in þe sydes of þe þrote þere is y-set gula. & þe goynge of brawnys, cordys, synwes, veynes, arteryes & here braunchys by parties of þe hed proceden aftyre þe ordre of heres, & þey ben ordeyned in þe nekke & in þe gula affire here 24 lengþe. And hereby þou maiste ysene, how þat yt is necessarye a surgyn to maken hys kuttynges, & hys breunnynges by lengþe of þe nekke & of þe þrote, and þat þe woundys þat ben y-mad twarte offere beþ more perylose, þen þo þat bene in lengthe. 28

Wonde of þe nekke. ¶ Now we wyl tretyn of woundes þat beþ mad in þis place wiþ a swerd oþere with sum þynge semblable to hym, oþere wiþ an arwe, oþere with sum þynge semblable to hym. And 3if it be wyth a swerde, oþere yt ys twarte offere ore in lengthe ; 32 and 3if it be twart offere, and þere ben y-kutt grete Veynes oþere arteryes, hit ys gretly to dreden. Napeles þou schalt helpe to staunche þe blod & to consoude þe veyne, aftere þe techynge tofore asygned in þe chapytle of³³ flux of blod. And 3if þere be a synwe 36 kutte, brynge þe parties of þe synwe togedyre, & sow þe pellykles of þe synwe with þe sowynge of þe wounde, as y haue tauzt tofore in þe³⁷ place of sowynge of synwes, and leye aboffe lumbricus of þe

[⁷ fol. 84 b]

⁶ þe, above line.

- erþe, þat' beth erþe-wormes staumpid & boilid wiþ oile of' rosis, & of earth-wormis. [1 lf. 80]
 kepe þe sowynge ¹with byndynge, & so procede forþ in al þing' of
 þe cure, as it' is told in þe chapitle tofore schewid / & if' þat' þe If the wound
 4 wounde were in lenkþe, it' is not' necessarie but' for to sowe þe is longitudi-
 wounde & caste aboue þe poudre of' lyme, frankencense, & sandra- al it needs
 gown, & kepe þe poudre & þe sowynge wiþ byndynge, til þe wounde sewing and
 be ful consowdid / & if' þe wounde were maad in þe parties wiþ an puluis
 8 arowe or wiþ a knyf, or with a spere or sum þing' semblable to hem,
 & if' þer be an arowe, drawe him out'; & if' an arowe be drawe out, An arrow
 loke if' þer folowe emorosogie,² þat is to seie, a gret' flux of' blood, must be
 & þanne staunche it' aftir þe doctryne þat is told tofore / & if' þer drawn out,
 12 be no flux of blood, loke if' þer be akþe / & if' þer be acþe, putte in and if
 þe wounde a litil tent' þat' may holde þe wounde open al a day, þat' Emorogie
 þou maist' seen þat' þe woundid man schal haue noon acþe / & if' (hemorrhage)
 he haue noon acþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid; for sumtyme it' ensues,
 he haue noon acþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid; for sumtyme it' staunch the
 he haue noon acþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid; for sumtyme it' blood,
 he haue noon acþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid; for sumtyme it' if there are
 he haue noon acþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid; for sumtyme it' pains, tent
 he haue noon acþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid; for sumtyme it' the wound.
 16 happiþ, þat' an arowe or sum þing' semblable passiþ þoruþ þe necke
 & þe þrote, & he touche not' þe senewe, arterie, ne veyne, & þanne it' [3 lf. 80, bk.]
 nedip not' but' þat' þe wounde be ³consowdid. & if' þer were akþe If there are
 eiper bigynnyng of' swellynge, þanne it' were necessarie to fulfillle painis and
 20 þe wounde wiþ hooto oile of' rosis & to putte in a tente not' to swelling,
 þe wounde wiþ hooto oile of' rosis & to putte in a tente not' to tent the
 þe wounde wiþ hooto oile of' rosis & to putte in a tente not' to wound and
 þe wounde wiþ hooto oile of' rosis & to putte in a tente not' to apply oil of
 þe wounde wiþ hooto oile of' rosis & to putte in a tente not' to roses.
- ² Lat. emorosagia. Matth. Sylv.: "Emorogia. Emorosagia .i. sanguis fluxus vel discursus."

- erthe þat' beþ erthe wormes y-stampyde & boyled wyth oylle of Add. MS.
 roses, & kepe þe sowynge with byndynge, and so procede forþ in alle 12,056.
 þynge in þe cure, as yt is tolde in the chapitle tofore schewyde.
 24 And 3if þat' þe wounde were in lengþe, yt ys nozt necessarie but
 forto sowe þe wounde & to casten aboue, þe poudre of lym, frank
 ensence & sank' dragoun, & to kepe þe sewynge & þe poudre with
 byndynge, tyl þat' þe wounde be ful consouded. And 3if þat' þe
 28 wounde were y-mad in þo parties with an arwe opere a knyff', opere
 a spere, opere sum þynge semblable to hem, and 3if þere be an arwe,
 drawe hym out, and 3if þe arwe be drawen out, loke 3if' þere folwe
 emorosogie, þat ys to seye, a gret flux of blod, & þenne staunche hym
 32 aftere þe doctryne y-told tofore. & 3if þere be non flux of blod,
 loke 3if þere be akþe; & 3if þere be akþe, put into þe wounde a
 lytel tente þat may holde þe wounde opyn al day, þat þou may se
 þat þe wounded man schal han non akþe. And 3if he haue non akþe,
 36 lete þe wounde be consoudyde; ffor sum tyme it happiþ, þat an
 arwe, oper sum thynge semblable passith þorwe þe nekke & þe þrote,
 & 3it he touchiþ nozt veyne, arterye, ne synwe, & þenne it nedip
 nozt but þat þe wounde be consouded. And 3if þere were akþe opere
 40 ellys a bygynnyng of swellynge, þan yt were necessarie to fulfillle
 þe wounde wiþ hot oyle of roses & to put in a tente nozt to grete,

greet, wet in þe 3elke of an ey & oile of rosis hoot, & so holde þe wounde open, til þat he 3eue quytture, & aftir clense him & aftir consowde him / Vndirstonde þe perilis þat comen for [wondys]* þat ben maad in þis place / þe firste perel is: if þat þe necke be kutt' 1
 The wound is mortal if the Spinal Cord is cut,
 and generally mortal
 if a great blood-vessel is cut,
 [3 lf. 81]
 or the wind-pipe.
 Nota.
 Hoarseness follows the cutting of the "reversif nerve" (auricularis posterior).
 1 Lat.: est periculum amissionis sensus et motus. 2 haec, in margin.
 4 hosnesse. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 248. "hoorsnesse, Rancor."

greet, wet in þe 3elke of an ey & oile of rosis hoot, & so holde þe wounde open, til þat he 3eue quytture, & aftir clense him & aftir consowde him / Vndirstonde þe perilis þat comen for [wondys]* þat ben maad in þis place / þe firste perel is: if þat þe necke be kutt' 1
 The wound is mortal if the Spinal Cord is cut,
 and generally mortal
 if a great blood-vessel is cut,
 [3 lf. 81]
 or the wind-pipe.
 Nota.
 Hoarseness follows the cutting of the "reversif nerve" (auricularis posterior).
 1 Lat.: est periculum amissionis sensus et motus. 2 haec, in margin.
 4 hosnesse. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 248. "hoorsnesse, Rancor."

Add. MS. 12,056.
 [3 fol. 85 a]
 y-wett in þe 3olke of an ey3e & oyle of roses hot, & so holde þe wounde open to þat he 3yfe quytter, & afterwarde clanse hym & afterwarde consowde hym. Nota: vndirstande þe peryles þat comeþ from wondys* þat ben maad in þis place. þe firste 5 Perel ys: 3if 24 þat þe nekke be kutte twarte offere with a swerd, so þat þe nekke-bon & þe marye of þe nekke-bon be y-kut al atwo, yt is dedlyche; and 3if þat nucha, þat ys þe marye of þe nekke-bon, is no3t y-kut al atwo but ys y-hurt, yt is peryle of leosynge, ffelynge & meffynge, & 28 at þe laste to be ded, but 3if þe medycines þat y schal tellen afterwarde mowe helpen. And 3if þat enye Veynes oþere enye gret synwe be y-kut twart offere, y suppose þat he be helyde, þe nekke schal neuere haue hys fre meffynge; and 3if enye of the veynes 32 organyk' whiche þat beþ clepyde guydes, oþere ellys enye of þe arteries þat beþ vndire hem beþ y-kut, yt ys drede of sodeyne deþ, ffor sodeyne exalacioun of þe spirites & also for Afynyte of þe herte; & also 3if þat þe canne off' þe longes be y-kut twarte offere al 36 atwo, for þe more partye it is dedlyche; & so it ys seyde 3if þat þe veynes þat beþ behynde þe eres be y-kut al atwo, he schal nevire engendre. Also sum tyme ys y-kut oþere y-prekyde þe synwe þat is clepyde reuersiff', þat ys vndire boþe þe sydes of þe ere, of whose 40 kuttynge oþere prekyunge euere more ys mad horsnesse. And 3if

ben peersid *with* an arowe, & þou3 þat trache arterie be peersid or ellis ysophage, so þat nucha be nouzt prickid bi þe mydle, þanne zitt¹ he may be heclid wiþ gode medicyns & acordynge.

4 þou schalt helpe nucha þat is hurt in þis maner: þou schalt helde into þe wounde, in þe bigynnyng, oile of rosis, & aftirward do yn cile of rosis & zelke of an ey medlid togidere, and þou schalt be bisy in al maner to aswage akþe; & whanne þat quytture is

Treatment if the spinal marrow is hurt.
Apply
Olium
Rosarum.

8 maad, þanne leie a mundificatif wiþ medicyns confortatiuis & incarnatiuis maad in þis maner / Take oile of rosis colate 3. iijj., wex, rosyn of ech two dragmis, terbentine .iij. 3, frankencense, mastik of ech .i. 3, mirre, sarcocol,¹ mummie² of ech 3 .f.3., barly mele 3 f.,

R
Modus
confortandi
& mundifi-
candi vul-
nera Nuche.

12 streyne it on a clop & ³leie it on þe nucha þat is hurt. & þei þat hereof⁴ pronosticacioun schulde go tofore, þe which schulde schewe to yuel, neþeles bi þis medicyn þer comþ a rectificacioun to þe nucha, & melioracioun of meuyng of lymes, þat ben byneþe þe place of þe nucha þat is hurt, more helpinge, þat semeþ possible to þe leche. For þer is no þing vnpossible to stalworpe⁵ nature; namely,

[3 lf. 81, bk.]

Tho' the prognosis is unfavourable, yet medicine,

Nota
nature and the physician may help.

¹ *Sarcocolla*, Gr. Σαρκοκόλλα, "is the Gumme or liquore of a tre growyng in Persia." Halle, *Table*, p. 109.

² *mummie*, *mumia*. See Halle, *Table*, p. 72, and Notes.

⁴ MS. of here.

⁵ *stalworthe*. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. *Stalwart*.

þat place ben y-perced *with* an arwe, & þow3 þat trachea arteria be y-percyde oþere ellis ysophage, so þat Nucha be nozt þrilled be þe mydle, þey mowe ben y-helyde *with* gode medycines & acordynge. þou schalt helpe Nucha þat ys y-hurt in þis manere: þou schalt helden into þe wounde in þe bygynnyng oyle of roses & afterwarde leye aboffe oyle of roses & þe zelke of an eyze, and þou schalt be busy in alle manere to aswage akþe; & whenne þat quyter ys y-mad, þenne leye a mundificatyff wiþ medicynes confortatyff and ⁶Incarnatyfes y-mad in thys manere: R. oyle of rosis colat .3. iijj, *with*⁷ resyne ana. 3. ij, terbentyne 3. iij, frank ensence, mastyk ana. 3. i, mirre, sarcocolle,⁸ mumie ana. 3. f.3, barly mele .5. f.3; streyne it on a clop & leye yt on þe nucha þat is hurt. And þaw3 þat hereof euere more pronosticacion scholde go tofore whiche scholde sownen to yuele, napeles by þis medicine þere comyþ rectificacioun to þe nuca, & amelioracioun off meuyng of lymes þat beþ beneþe þe place of þe nuca þat ys y-hurt, more helpinge, þenne semyþ possible to þe leche. For þere ys no þyng vnpossible to Stalworth nature; namlyche whanne þat yt is holpen wiþ a gode leche & wiþ þynges, þat beþ

Add. MS.
12,056.

[6 fol. 85 b]

⁷ *wiþ* for *wex*.

⁸ MS. *sarcticolle*.

helpinge & acordynge to a good intenciuon / Here vndirstonde þat
 Wounds of the brain, the Spinal Cord,
 and the principal nerves
 [* If. 82] are mortal.
 A void such hopeless cases.
 al maner wounde þat¹ peersip to þe substaunce of¹ þe brayn or ellis
 to þe nucha, so þat¹ bi þer hurtyng of¹ þe nucha þe meuyng & þe
 felyng of summe lymes ben lost, nameliche from þe whirle-boonys 4
 of¹ þe rigge, of¹ þe reynes vpward, & al maner wounde þat¹ is maad
 in þe extremittees of¹ þe lacertis² as .iij. fyngir mele³ brede vndir þe
 schuldris, eiper .iij. fyngir mele brede aboute þe elbowe eiper byneþe,
 eipir .iij. fyngir mele aboute þe kne or byneþe / & ech wounde þat¹ is 8
 in a senewe place with strengest akþe & hardnes, ⁴schal be deemed
 deedlich, for þe nobilte of þilke brayn, & for þe affinite of þe nucha
 wiþ þe brayn, of¹ þe which nucha passip as a reuere⁵ from a welle,
 & for þe affinite of þilke senewe wiþ þe brayn bi mene of¹ nucha, of¹ 12
 þe whiche þei passen out as a flood / Wherfore þou schalt¹ euermore
 in sich maner woundis pronosteken deth, & euermore fle as miche
 as þou myzt¹ from vnresonable curis, but¹ if¹ þou be with¹ þe more
 instauce y-preied / Nepeles sumtyme nature wiþ good helpinge 16
 worchip þat¹ semeþ to þe leche vnpossible, neuer-þe-lattere loue noon
 sich [cures]* but¹ if¹ þou be greetliche preied & þanne entermete of¹
 þe cure of¹ þe sike man //

¹ MS. *as*. Lat. in extremitatibus lacertorum.

² *lacertis*, the sinewy part of the arm. See *Vicary*, p. 57, note 1.

³ *iij* fyngir mele brede. Lat. tribus digitis.

⁵ MS. *rēuere*.

Add. MS. 12,056.
 of woundes þat ben dedlich
 helpynge & acordynge to a gode entenciuon. Here vndirstande þat 20
 alle manere wounde þat persith to þe substaunce of þe brayn oþere
 ellys to þe nuca, so þat by þe hurtyng of þe nuca þe meffynge &
 þe ffelyng of some lymes ben y-lost, namlyche from þe whirle-
 bonys of þe rugge, of þe reynes vpwarde, & alle manere wounde þat 24
 ys mad in þe extremes of þe lacertes as þre fyngremele brede in
 þe schuldres, oþere þre fyngre mele brede aboute þe elbowe oþere by-
 neþen, oþere þre fyngre mele aboute þe kne oþere byneþene, & euery
 wounde þat ys in a synwe place with strengest akþe & hardnesse, 28
 schal be demyde dedlyche : ffor þe noblete of þilke brayn, & for þe
 Affynite of nuca wyth þe brayn, of þe whiche nuca passith as þe
 Ryuere from a welle, & for þe Afynite of þilke Synwes wiþ þe brayn,
 by mene of þe Nuca, of whom þey passen out as of a flood, where- 32
 fore ⁶þou schalt eyre more in swiche manere woundes pronostiken
 deþ, and euere more fle as myche as þou mayst¹ from vnresonable
 cures, but zif þou be wiþ þe more Instauce y-preyede. Napeles
 sumtyme nature with gode helpinges wrchith þat semeþ to the 36
 leche vnpossible. Neuere þe latere loue non swiche cures* but zif
 þou be greetliche y-preyede, and þenne entyremete of þe cure of þe
 syke man.

[⁶ fol. 56 a]

THe .iiij. chapitle of þe .ij. tretis is of woundis ¶ Cap^m .iiij^m
of þe spaude,¹ schuldre, arm, handis, fyngris,
brawnys, veynes, & her anotamie /

- 4 þe spaude is oon of þe .iiij. boonys, þe which þat makþ þe
foorme of þe schuldre / & þe spawde-boon is þinne & brood two-
ward þe schuldris & in hise endis gristly. On þe vpper side of
him he hæp an egge sumwhat greet & toward þe arm <sup>1 The Shoul-
der-blade.</sup> ^[2 ff. 82, bk.] þe place
8 of þe schuldre he is greet & round; & þilke eende is holowe as a
box, & þis boon is lich to a pele³ wiþ þe whiche men setten breed
into þe ouene, & on þe hyndere partie of the schuldre he hæp an
eminence. & in þe box of þis boon — —⁴ þe which is clepd adiu-
12 torium; þe which is oon boon sumwhat crokid, greet & holowe /
þis boon is greet for necessite of strenkþe, & of schap holowe, þat
he were liþt, þat he schulde not þoruþ his heuynes lette þe worch-
inge of lacertis, & þe round extremite of þis boon entriþ into þe
16 holownes of þe spawde. & þei ben bounden togidere wiþ a bowable
ligament. þe canel-boon⁵ of þe brest is in þis maner maad, hauynge

² The Ad-
jutor
(Humerus)

is strong and
hollow.

The Canel
bone (Clav-
icle)

¹ *spaude*, spatula = scapula, shoulder-blade. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 352.
“*spawde* Armus.” O.Fr. *espalde*.

³ *pele*, Lat. *palla*. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 273, note 4.

⁴ Some words are wanting in both MSS. (*entriþ þe extremite of a boon*).
Lat.: In hac pyside sive concavitate huius ossis, intrat extremitas ossis
adiutorii.

⁵ See *N. E. Diet.* This is the earliest reference for *canelbone* = clavicle.

- ¶ Cap^m .iiij. tretis .ij. is of woundes of þe spaude, Add. MS.
schuldre, arme, handis, ffigres, brawnes, veynes, 12,056.
20 and here Anotamye.

- þe spawde ys one of þe .iiij. bonys whiche þat makþ þe forme
of þe schuldre, & þe spawde-bon is þenne & brode toward þe
schuldris & in hys endys grustly. On þe vppere syde of hym he
24 hæp an egge sumwhat gret & toward þe arme in þe place of þe
schuldre he ys grete & rounde. And þilke ende ys holwe as a box,
and þis bon ys lyche to a pele, þe whiche men settyth brede into
þe ovyne, and on þe hyndere partye of þe schuldre he hæp an
28 emynense. & in þe box of þis bon — —* whiche ys y-clepyde adiu-
torium þe whiche ys a bon sumwhat crokyde, gret & holow. þis
bon ys gret for necessite of strengthe, & of schappe holwe, þat he
were lyzte, þat he scholde nouzt þrowen his hevynesse lette þe
32 wirchyng of lacertes, and þe rounde extremite of þis bon entreþ in-
to þe holwenesse of the spaude. & þey bep y-bounde togedere with
a bowable ligament. þe canel-bon of þe brest ys in this manere

an additament^t *sum*what^t round in þe neþer partie, þe which entriþ a maner box, þe which is in þe ouer partie of^t þe ouer boon of þe .vij. boonys of þe brest^t. Euery extremite of^t þilke vij. boonys ben ioyned *with* þe spawde, þat^t þe schuldre myzte be þe more strengere, 4
 & forto make þis place more strengere, þer ben sett^t .ij. smale boonys, þe whiche ben clepid *rostralia*¹ to þe lijknes of^t þe bele² of a crowe, & for to fastne þe schuldre, þis boon rostral is putt^t in maner of^t a wegge / But^t þe boon of^t þe adiutori haþ in þe neþer partie twoward 8
 þe elbowe .ij. eminentis, & þe oon of^t þe eminence is more hizere þan þat^t oþer ; & boþe þese eminence ben as þei it^t were holf^t a boket³ wip þe which *men* drawen watir / & þilke .ij. additamentis ben ioyned wip þe boonys of^t þe arm / þe arm from þe elbowe douward haþ .ij. 12
 bonys ; & þe ouer boon, þe which þat^t areccliþ fro þe þombe to þe boon þat^t is clepid *adiutorium*, is þe smallere boon ; & þe nepir boon þat^t strecchiþ from þe litil fyngir to þe elbowe is þe grettere boon. & he haþ in þe ouer ende twoward þe elbowe an additament^t lijk twoward 16
 a bille or a pike ; & þilke pike makip þe elbowe scharp whazne þe arm is folden, & it^t lettip þat^t þe arm may not^t be bowid [bakwarde]*.

joins with the Os Rostrale (Coracoid),
 [2 lf. 83]

and has 2 eminences.

The Forearm has two bones (Ulna and Radius),

and an "Additament"^t (Olecranon),

¹ *rostralia*. Coracoids. "*Rostriformis Processus*, a Process of the Shoulder-blade, and of the lower Jawbone."—Phillips.

³ Compare *Vicary*, p. 49, l. 18, where the word *polly* is substituted for bucket.

Add. MS. 12,056. [4 fol. 86 b] y-made, habbynge an additamente *sum*what⁴ rounde in þe neþere partye, þe whiche entryth a manere box, þe whiche ys in þe offere 20
 partye of þe ovyre bon of þe vij. bonys of þe brest^t. And euerye extremyte of þilke vij. bonys beþ y-ioyned wip þe spawde, þat þe schuldre myghte be þe more strenger ; and forto make þis place þe more strengere, þere beþ sette two smale bonys whiche beþ y-clepyde 24
rostralis to þe lyknesse of þe byle of a crowe, & forto fastne þe schuldres, þis bon rostrale ys y-put in þe manere of a wegge. But þe bon of þe adiutorie haþ in þe neþere partye towarde þe elbowe tweye emynences, and þe on of þe emynence ys more herre þenne 28
 þe othire ; and boþe þese emynence beþ as yt were half^t a bokett^t wip þe whiche *men* drawip water ; and þilke tweye Additamentis beþ y-ioyned *with* þe bonys of þe arme. þe Arme from þe Elbowe dunwarde, haþ two bonys, and þe offere bon whiche þat strecchiþ 32
 from þe þowmbe þat ys clepyde *adiutorium* is smallere bon, and þe neþere bon þat strecchiþ from þe lytel fyngere to þe elbowe is þe grettere bon. & he haþ in þe offere ende towarde the elbowe an additament like to a byle oþere a pyk^t, and þilke pyk^t makyth þe 36
 elbowe scharpe, whezne þat þe arme ys y-folden, and it lettet þat þe arme may nozt ben y-bowyde bakwarde.*. þese tweye bonys beþ

þese .ij. boonys ben so ioyned togidere, þat it' semeþ as þouȝ it' were but' oo. boon. & þe neþir ende of' þese boonys ben ioyned with þe boonys of' þe hand, þe whiche ben clepid rasceta,¹ þat' ben

4 .viiij. boonys, .iiij. of ²hem ben ordeyned & ioyned with summe additamentis to þe .ij. boonys of' þe arm / & þe oþere .iiij. ben conteyned³ with þe boonys of' þe hand þat' ben clepid pecten ⁴ / þe firste boon of' pecten is ioyned with þe first' boon of' rasceta,⁵ & þe

8 oþere .iiij. in þe same maner outaken þe þombe. —⁶ þat' haþ .iiij. boonys as þe oþere fyngris han, conteyneþ³ his firste boon wiþ þe extremite of' þe ouer fosile,⁷ & þe þombe euenliche azenstondiþ þe strenkþe of' þe oþere fyngris in clicchinge.⁸ & alle þese boonys þat'

12 menciouen is maad of, þat' ben in ioynturis, as þe schuldris, elbowis, raschet, & þe knottis of' alle þe fyngris, ben ioyned togidere bi mene of' ligamentis, as it' is seid tofore / & þese boonys ben cloþid wiþ symple fleisch & brawnys after þat' þe dyuersite of' foorme of' lymes

16 askiþ /

To the arm-bones are joined the 8 hand-bones, the *Rasceta*.

[² If. 83, bk.]

The wrist articulates with the 4 metacarpal bones.

The thumb has 3 phalanges.

The Sinews, Ligaments, and simple flesh form the Muscles.

[⁹ If. 84]

The Upper Arm has 4 Muscles.

When the inner Muscle contracts,

& alle þe greete senewis proceden out' of' nucha, þe whiche senewis ben compounned wiþ ligamentis & wiþ symple fleisch, makyng brawnys meuyng þe parties; of þe whiche brawnys

20 summe ben open to a manys siȝt, & summe ben hid; for þei ben departid in two ⁹þe leeste parties¹⁰ / þere ben .iiij. brawnys open in þe fleischy partie of' þe arm, bitwene þe schuldre & þe elbowe: oon on þe ynnere half, anopir on þe vttre half, anopir on þe lowere

24 half, anopir on þe hizere half. Whanne þe ynnere brawn is drawe togidere þanne is þe arme foldid ynward, & þe contrarie brawn on

¹ *Rasceta*, Arab = carpus. Castelli, *Lexicon medic.*, p. 139. See Littré: "rchette," and Devic Suppl. to Littré. *Dict.*

³ *conteyned*, *conteyneþ* for *contynued*, *contynueþ*.

⁴ *pecten*, Latin, pecten manus. See Halle, *Treatise of the Anatomye*, p. 62 (A.D. 1562). "And after these bones Rasceta, are constitute the bones of the palmes of the hands, called Ostea metacarpis. i. Postbrachialia, Palma, vel manus pectus." The corrupt form *Patinis* occurs in *Vicary*, p. 50, l. 9.

⁵ MS. *passecta*.

⁶ Two words (*þe þombe*) are wanting. Latin: Nam pollex tria habens ossa. . . . He counts the metacarpal bone of the thumb as a phalanx.

⁷ *fosile*, Latin: facile. See *Vicary*, p. 49, note 3.

⁸ *in clicchinge*, Latin: (pollex) ut sit solus ex opposito comprehendens cum aliis firmius, et firmius retinens apprehensum.

¹⁰ Lat. in tres partes minimas diuiduntur.

so y-ioynede togedire, þat it' semyth as on bon. And þe neþere ende of þese bonys beþ y-ioyned wiþ þe bonys of þe hande, whiche beþ

28 y-clepyde rasceta þat **beth viij bonys.**

Here the Add. MS. ends.

the outer ex- tends. þe vttere half is maad long; & whanne þat þe vttere brawn of þe¹ arm is maad schort, þanne is þe arm drawe outward & þe ynnere is maad long; & in þe same maner by² opere .ij. brawnys, þe arm is houe vp & lete falle down / & whanne þat alle þe brawnys traueilen 4 liche myche, þe arm stant euene ritzliche & declyneþ to no partie / & pese brawnys,³ .iiij. fyngir mele from þe ioynture of þe schuldre, ben nakid cordis, & þei ben þe same from þe ioynture of þe elbowe & in þe myddil of þe adiutorie, þat⁴ is þe place þat is from þe 8 schuldre to þe elbowe; þe cordis ben multiplied dyuersliche wiþ fleisch to þe composicioun of þe same brawnys, .iiij. fyngir mele [¶ fr. 84, bk.] aboute þe elbowe. & .iiij. fyngir mele by⁴neþe þe elbowe ben nakid cordis; & þere þei maken anopir⁵ brawn; & in þis maner ben 12 N maad nakid cordis & generacioun of brawnys, til euery lyme haue his meuyng, after þat it nedij him.

In boþe þe armes ben .iiij. open veynes þat comen from þe lyuere, & ben scharpeled⁶ þoruþ þe arm. For þere is a braunchid 16 veyne þe which wexij on þe vttere partie of þe lyuere, & is dyuydid in two parties: oon arisyng, anopir descendyng; þe veyne arisyng comeþ to þe mydrif; & sum partie of hir is sparpoiled⁷ þoruþ þe mydrif & þe lymes of þe brest / þat⁸ opere partie of þe veyne passij 20 to þe arm-hoolis, & þere he is forkid. & þat veyne passij byneþe the arm to þe elbowe, & þere sche may be seen; & he is clepid basilica⁸ or ellis epatica, & aftirward he strecchiþ bi þe neþir partie of þe arm to þe hond, bitwene þe lital fyngir & þe leche⁹ fyngir, & 24 sche is clepid saluatella¹⁰ or ellis epatica in þe righthond, & in þe lift-hand splenatica. þe toþir partie of þis veyne þat is dyuydid fro þis assellari strecchiþ to þe vttere partie of þe schuldre: & þere is

From the Vena Cava one branch runs to each armpit,

where it divides into 2.

1. at the elbow called Basilica,

In the right hand Salvatella, in the left hand Splenatica;

¹ *brawn*, struck through after *of þe*.

² MS. *ben*.

³ *ben*, inserted.

⁴ *corde*, cancelled, after *anopir*.

⁶ *ben schorpeled*, Latin: disperguntur—O.Fr. escharpiller, mettre en pièces. See Godéfroy.

⁷ *is sparpoiled*, Latin: dispergitur—O.Fr. esparpeiller. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 351, note 6.

⁸ *Basilica*. See *Vicary*, p. 52, note 5. There is one reference for φλέψ βασιλική given in *Stephanus Thes.*, from Synesius, De febribus, which is a translation of an Arab. treatise by Constant. Africanus.

⁹ *leche fyngir*. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 291, note 4. O.E. *læcefinger*, *Leechd.*, vol. i. p. 394. See Notes.

¹⁰ *Salvatella*. See *Vicary*, p. 53, note 1. Dufresne gives one reference for *Salvatella* with a different meaning: "Pellicula involvens cerebrum." It occurs frequently in the Latin translations of Arab. authors, and translates Arab. sceilem or osaillemon.

- ¹dyuydid. & þe oon partie goip to þe heed & þe opir partie to þe arm. & þilke is eftsoones dyuydid, & þe oon partie is spred bi þe arm manye weies wiþoute forþ, þat is clepid funis²; & þe opere
- 4 partie strecchiþ euene to þe elbowe, & þere sche is schewid bi þe ouer partie of þe arm; & so sche strecchiþ to þe hand, & þere sche apperip bitwene þe fyngir and þe pombe, & is clepid cephalica. ij.
- 8 cephalica. þe opere from assillari,³ þat is basilica, maken oon veyne þat is clepid mediana eiþer purpurea. & þere ben .iiiij. veynys, as it is seid bifore, *scilicet*, finis⁴ brachij þat strecchiþ bi þe vttere partie of þe arm, & sephelica þe which þat strecchiþ bi þe ouer partie, &
- 12 basilica þat strecchiþ bi þe lower partie & communis seu mediana seu purpurea seu fusca quod idem est is comun veyne eiþir myddil veyne, þe which þat is compounned of basilica & cephalica tofore seid, & sche apperip openliche in þe foldyng of þe myddil of þe
- 16 arm. // ¶ þe veynes þat comen from þe lyuere han manie departingis⁵ & dyuers placis, & for to telle alle þe departyngis, it is not profitable for a sirurgian / Saue it suffisip for a sirurgian, for to knowe in what place þe grete veynes sitten & þe arterijs, so þat he mowe
- 20 saue him-silf from perel & helpe hem, whanne þei ben kutt / þis þou schalt wite, þat from þe lyuere þer comeþ a veyne to euery lyme bicause of nurischinge. & for to make þe lymes ful of lijf, Arterijs comen þerto also. & þerfore in euery place þere þat ben
- 24 grete veynes, in þe same place ben arterijs.
- ¶ Bi þes þingis þat ben aforseid, þou maist wite wel þat þere comeþ greet perel of woundis, þat ben aboute þe schuldris & vndir þe arme-pittis,⁶ & in þe boon of adiutorie, & in þe arm, & in þe
- 28 hondis / for whi: if woundis be maad in adiutorijs & in þe arme ouerþwert, it is greet perel lest þe braun be kutt away, wherby þe arme schulde haue his meuyng; & it is perel of kuttyng of veynes and arterijs, lest þe blood myzte not be staunchid. ¶ And
- 32 if it be maad a wounde with a þing þat prickide, & falle vpon a

[¶ If. 85]
2. the other runs a. into the head;
b. one branch, funis, outside the arm; another branch, Cephalica, along the arm, between the thumb and the 1st finger.
The Basilica with the Cephalica form the Mediana.

Besides these 4 chief Veins,

there are many smaller ones,

[¶ If. 85, bk.]

which a Surgeon needn't know.

With every vein there is an Artery.

Off perelles off woudees an quettes,

If an important muscle is out

or a blood-vessel,

if a Cord or Tendon is wounded,

² funis, Castelli, *Lexic. Medicum*, p. 351. "Arabes venam Medianam vocasse Funem brachii, testatur Ioh. Zecchius, lect. ii. in sect. 1. *Sph. Hipp.* p. m. 109." On this place *funis* evidently means not the vena mediana, but one of the recurrent veins.

³ *Vena ascellaris*. Matth. Sylv.: "Vena communis nigra purpurea media — dicitur communis quoniam componitur ex assellari et humerali."

⁴ *finis* for *funis*.

⁶ *þe arme-pittis*. See *Wr. W.*, 627. 3. xv. cent.

[¹ lf. 86] corde þat is in þe ¹ende of þe braun, & is clepid thenantos,² þanne
 where cramp
 may arise, it' is greet drede of þe spasme & aftirward of deef, for þe akyngē
 entriþ in þe corde þat is prickid, & so þe akyngē arisiþ vp to þe
 especially if
 it is the ten-
 don of the
 elbow. brayn, & þanne comeþ spasme. ¶ Also it' falliþ many tyme þat' a 4
 man is hurt' þe brede of' iij. fyngris wiþinne aboue þe elbowe, þer
 is þe eende of' þe braun & þere ben cordis; & þanne þer wole come
 greet' akyngē, & þanne þe spasme aftir, & þese woundis ben mortal.

Treatment: ¶ If' þat wounde be maad endlongis in þe arme & in adiutorio, 8
 A wound
 along the
 arm is not
 dangerous, þanne it' is not' so greet' drede, þerof, þerfore it' is necessarie for a
 sirurgian to knowe þe perel of' woundis þat' falliþ in þis place, &
 wheþer þe wounde be ouerþwert' or endelongis. & if' þe wounde be
 and must be
 sewn. endelongis, þanne he schal ioynē þe wounde togidere & sewe hem, 12
 & sprynge þeron þe poudre of' lyme & ofere þingis, as it' is aforeseid,
 for to kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis togidere & alle þingis as it' is
 aforeseid in þe wounde of' fleisch. ¶ If' þer be ony nerues, or
 If nerves or
 blood-vessels
 are cut,
 arterijs, ouþer veynes kutt' ³ ouerþwert': þanne þou schalt' worche 16
 [³ lf. 86, bk.] with þingis þat' streyneþ blood, & þou schalt' sewe þe hedis of' þe
 staunch the
 blood,
 join the
 nerves or
 cords
 and apply a
 defensive
 medicine. nerues togidere or of' þe cordis. & þe pacient' schal be kept' from
 akyngē wiþ good kepinge & with reste, & he schal ligge in an euene
 bed. & þou schalt' leie aboue þe wounde a defensif' of' bole & of' 20
 oile of' rosis þat' is aforeseid / And þou þis defensif' be forzete in
 ofere woundis, in þis wounde it' may not' in no maner. ¶ þou
 schalt' kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis with poudre & lynet, as it
 is aforeseid / Also þis þou must' knowe if' þou sewist' sich a maner 24
 wounde of' nerues & cordis, & if' þe akyngē go not' away, þou
 muste rippe þe sewyngē azen, & þou þis be contrarie to þe soudyngē
 of' þe nerues, zitt' it' is bettere to do⁴ þus, þou he lese þe meuyngē
 of' sum lyme, þat' þe nerue seruēde þerfore, þan falle in þe spasme; 28
 for þanne it' were drede of' deef / þerfore it' is necessarie for to
 opene þe wounde & fille it' ful of' oile of' rosis & of' zelke of' an ey.
 & vpon ⁵ þe wounde leie of' þe same medicyn til þe wounde quyt-
 ture, & þanne make þe wounde clene with mundificatiues, & þanne 32
 regendre fleisch as it' is aforeseid // If' it' be so þat' þere come ony
 hoot' apostymes vpon woundis in þis place: þanne þou schalt'
 worche as it' is aforeseid in a propre chapitre // If' it' so be, þat' þou
 leie vpon þe wounde oile of' rosis, & zelke of' an ey for to do awei þe 36

² thenantos, sinew. Matth. Sylv.: "Tenantos gre. est chorda que in capitibus musculorum aggregatur." It is a corrupt form of Gr. *τένοντες* (Suidas Gloss.).

⁴ do above line.

akyngē, & if þere falle a flux of blood, & þanne if þou leidist þerto
 ony constreyning þingis, þe akyngē wolde be þe more, & if þou
 leidist þerto þe zelke of an ey & oile, þat wole make þe flux of
 4 blood þe more—In þis caas what is for to done? þou schalt brenne
 þe hedis of þe veynes & of þe cordis with an hoot yrn, but þou
 schalt not touche þe lippis of þe wounde wij iren in no maner; &
 þanne þou schalt leie in the wounde þe zelke of an ey & oile of
 8 rosis, til al þe rynde of þe brennyng¹ falle awei. & þanne þou schalt
 leie þerto mundificatiues, & þanne þou schalt regendre fleisch, and
 þanne þou schalt soude þe wounde /

If oil causes
hemorrhage,
and styptics
pain,

then use the
Cauterium
actuale
(red-hot
iron).

¹Of woundis of thoracis & of þe brest & of þe
 12 membris þat ben conteyned in it, & anothamia.

[1 ff. 87, bk.]

THorax is maad of .vij. boonys & euery boon at þe eende is
 cartilagosum / þese .vij. boonys ben ioyned togidere in þis
 maner þat euery leeneþ vpon oþir, & wij þese .vij. boonys ben maad
 16 fast .vij. ribbis þat ben grete ribbis, & þo .vij. ribbis ben maad fast
 in þe rigge boon bihynde, & þese ribbis ben crokid / Wijinne² þese
 .vij. ribbis ben v. ribbis þat ben lasse, & ben clepid lital ribbis, &
 ben maad fast bihynde with .v. boonys of þe rigge, & in þe forside
 20 of a man þei haue no fastnyngē to no boon, saue þei ben maad fast
 with lacertis.³ & bitwixe þe .vij. boon & þe .ix. boon, diafragma is
 maad fast, for to bigynne tellyngis of boonys aboueforþ. & þis
 diafragma departiþ þe spirituals from þe guttis. & in þe holownes
 24 þat is aboue liggij þe herte & þe lungis /

¶ V. Co.

The Brest has
7 bones with
gristly ends,

7 true,

5 false Ribs,

and the
Diafragma,
which divides
the Spiritual
Members
from the
guts.

þe herte⁴ is maad of hard fleisch & strong¹ & of lacertes þat þei
 mihte be hard, þat it ne schulde take a greuance listli.⁵ & þerfore
 sunnen seiden þat it is al braun; but it is not so, for þe braun of
 28 a man meueþ whanne he wole, & restiþ, & þe herte is alwei meuyngē
 & not reste. & þe herte is schape aftir a pyne, & hangij in þe
 myddil of þe hizere holownes, & hangij sun-what to þe liftside-
 ward; & þe hizere þerof is brood, & þat place is medlid wij car-
 32 tilaginosi ligaturis, & is maad fast in þe lungis⁶; & þe lungis
 touchij not þe herte, saue in þe aboue, þere it is maad fast togidere,

[4 ff. 88]

The heart is
made from
muscular
fibres,

is like a pine,

is surrounded
by Pannicles
(Pericardium),

² wijinne. The Latin has *infra*, which the translator took for *intra*.

³ lacertis. See *Vicary*, page 57, note 1.

⁵ Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen XI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Venet, 1527, f. 204:

“Cor quidem creatum est ex carne forti ut sit longinquum a nocumento.”

⁶ lungis, a mistranslation of *panniculi*. The pericardium is also called *panniculus cordis*.

and has
ij. ventriclis.

& þe lunge defendiþ þe herte from greuance. & þe herte haþ two ventriclis .i. two holowe placis wiþinne, & þat^t oon ventricle sittip in þe rihtside of þe herte, & þat^t oþer in þe listside¹; & þese ventriclis holdiþ & resseyueþ eir & norischip þe herte / In þe riht ventricle 4

Into the right
one comes a
Vein from the
liver,
[⁴ 1f. 88, bk.]

comeþ a greet veyne þat^t is clepid ramosa² þat^t comeþ from gibbo³ epatis, & comfortiþ diafragma, & peersiþ þoruþ diafragma. & þis veyne is ful of greet⁴ norischinge blood & hoot, & it^t norischip lymes of greet^t substaunce. & þis veyne goiþ bi þe rihtside of þe 8

and fills the
Heart with
nourishing
blood,
which is
refined
into a clear
spirit between
body and
soul.

herte, & filliþ þe herte ful of norisching^t blood. & þanne þe blood in þe herte sutilliþ⁵ & filliþ ful þe two ventriclis of þe herte, & of þis clene blood þe spirit is engendrid; which spirit^t is more cleer & more schynyng^t & more sutil, þan ony bodi þat^t is maad of þe iiij. 12
elementis. & þerfore it^t is turnid⁶ into heuenly bodies, & it^t is

From the left
Ventricle
springs
arteria
venalis

bitwixe a mannys bodi & his soule a louely byndynge. ¶ And of þe list^t ventricle þere wexiþ out ij. [arteries]⁷ and þat^t oon þerof haþ a maner coote, & þerfore of summen it^t is clepid arteria venalis.⁸ & 16

and the Aorta
from which
all other
Arteries pro-
ceed.

þis arterie beriþ sutil blood to þe lungis & norischip þe lungis / And þat^t oþere arterie haþ .ij. cootis. & of þe ilke⁹ comeþ alle þe arteries in a mannys bodi, & ben departid in euery lyme of a mannys bodi. & þese arterijs makip alle a mannys lymes to haue lijf & spiritis; 20
& alle þes arterijs & alle þese spiritis þat^t ben aforeseid; and þese arterijs goiþ to þe brayn¹⁰ & þei goiþ to þe lyuere & zeueþ him vertu ful myche & makip defynge / And þese arterijs goiþ to a mannys ballokis & zeueþ him vertu for to engendre; & in þis place 24
þe vertu of alle þe spiritis of a mannys bodi ben ioyned togidere.¹¹

[¹⁰ 1f. 89]

¹ The translator has omitted the following passage: "In medio illorum duorum ventriculorum est quedam fouca: & vocatur a quibusdam ventriculus tertius, super ventriculo dextro et sinistro. Item duo additamenta cartilaginosa fortia et flexibilia quandam habentia concauitatem, et constringuntur & dilatantur, & recipientes & retinentes nutrimentum et aerem ad nutriendum et temperandum cor."

² The translation is not correct. Lat.: "ad dextrum nanque ventriculum venit una vena ex ramosa vena." This vein is the vena cava inferior, which gets the blood from the liver by the vena cava hepaticæ. "The seconde veyne is called Vena choele, or Vena concaua, and of some Vena Ramosa." Halle, *Anatomic*, page 78.—1565.

³ gibbus. See *Vicary*, page 69, note 1. ⁵ sutilliþ. Latin: subtiliatur

⁶ MS. turid. Latin: vergit in naturam supracelestium corporum.

⁷ arteries, wanting. ⁸ Arteria venalis. See *Vicary*, page 58, note 1.

⁹ MS. inserts, ij cootis

¹¹ The translation is corrupt. Lat.: Iste namque spiritus cordialis, qui per viam quæ dicta est a corde sumit originem, sicut omnes virtutes, quarum est instrumentum, cum ad ventriculos peruenit cerebri, aliam ibi recipit digestionem, quæ meretur formam suscipere spiritus animalis, & ita ut ad epar dirigitur, in ipso formam recipit nutritiui, et in testiculis generatiui, donec

- ¶ þe lungis ben maad of .iiij. substauncis: of fleisch þat is þe lungs
 recchingē,¹ & braunche of arterijs, & of veynis,² & of cartilaginīs are made of
 þat ben holow, & þese goþ out of canna pulmonis as it is afore- 3 tissues,
 4 seid. ¶ þe profit þat þe lungis doip a man is þis: þe lungis drawiþ flesh, vessels,
 eir into þe herte, for to do awei þe fume & þe vntemprid heete of and liga-
 þe herte, & makip þe herte in tempre hete / And in tyme whanne 8 ments.
 þe herte is constreyned, þanne it is necessarie for to drawe coold eir
 8 to þe herte; & if þe lungis myzte not drawe eir to þe herte, þe
 spirit of lijf schulde be stoppid, & so a man schulde be deed / & The air ought
 þerfore it is necessarie þat a man haue clene eir, for þe eir passiþ to be clean.
 þoruþ þe lungis þat ben tendre & goiþ to þe herte; & þerfore vnclene
 12 eir doip harm to þe lungis & also to þe herte. & þerfore þe lungis
 ben ³departid into .ij. placis, & if þer falle ony harm to þe oon
 partie of þe lungis, þanne þat opere partie beriþ al his charge // [³ lf. 89, bk.]
- ¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þe brest. If þe wounde go into þe
 16 holownes, þanne it is miche to drede þerof, for þanne it miȝte falle
 þat sum substaunce of þe herte miȝte be harmed, & þanne þe wounde
 were mortal // ¶ Ouþer if þe wounde ȝede into þe lungis, þere were
 greet perel: for þe wounde mai not be helid but if it be soudid
 20 anoon // ¶ And if þe wounde go þoruþ diafragma, it is mortal /
 And if it be so þat þe herte be hurt, þere lijþ no⁴ cure þeron, saue
 he schal die anoon; for þe herte takip no lijf of no lyme of al þe
 24 herte ordeyneþ alle lymes to vertues, & þe herte is þe welle of lijf;
 & þerfor þe herte mai suffre noon harm, saue ioie ouþer sorowe /
 þerfore if þe herte be kutt wiþ a swerd ouþer ony greet arterie þat
 is nyȝ þe herte, þe wounde is mortal; for þe arterijs goiþ to þe herte
 28 ⁵& þanne al þe blood of þe herte & þe spirit passiþ out bi þe arterijs,
 as þou myzt se bi ensaumple of a candel. For if a candel þat
 brenneþ, ouþer a weke, be putt al in oile ouþer in grese, þe fier þerof
 wole out; in þis same maner is þe spirit of lijf queynt, whanne þe
 32 herte is hurt, for þe greet flux of blood, þat falliþ to þe herte &
 stoppiþ þe spirit of lijf / Ouþer if þer be greet flux of blood com-
 ynge fro þe herte, þanne þe spirit passiþ out þerwiþ; as þou miȝt
 se bi ensaumple of a candel: whanne þe talow of a candel is doon,
 36 or wex, or oile, þanne þe liȝt wole passe, & in þe same maner it
- Woundis mad in the brest
- Wounds of the lungs are dangerous,
- wounds of the midriff, or the heart are mortal.
- When the heart, the well of life, is hurt,
- [³ lf. 89*]
- either the blood rushing to the heart quenches the flame of life,
- or the blood and the spirit of life flow out from the wound.

omnis spiritus, omnisque particularis virtutis perfectio cum virtutum operationibus coniungatur. ¹ recchingē. Latin: rara.

² braunche of arterijs & of veynes. Latin: ramis arterie venalis.

⁴ MS. do. Lat.: Cor autem vulneratum curam non recipit.

When the lungs are hurt the wound must be stitched before it suppurates.

[² If. 89*, bk.]

Medicines reach the lungs by a long way, and therefore the patients get phthisis.

The midriff is to the heart what bellows are to a fire.

Symptoms if the herte be wounded,

[⁴ If. 90]

and if the lungs be wounded.

Throw a powder into the wound,

and close the wound when the lungs are healed.

De vulnera dia. diafragma.

Symptoms of a wounded midriff.

fariþ bi a mannis lijf, as it is aforseid. ¶ þe lungis wolen take no souding¹ whanne þei ben hurt, but² if þe leche be þe more kunnyng³ & soude þe wounde or it⁴ quytture. For if⁵ it⁶ qutture, þe lungis moun not⁷ be maad clene but⁸ wiþ cowzyng⁹, & þe more þat¹⁰ þe 4 patient cowzeþ, þe more þe wounde wexiþ // ¶ Also þe lungis ben euermore meuyng¹¹; & [if] woundis¹² schulen be soudid in lymes, þe lyme¹³ mote reste; & þerfore for þe contynuel meuyng¹⁴ of þe lungis, þe woundis þerof¹⁵ ben seid incurable // ¶ Also þou¹⁶ a man wolde 8 soude þe woundis of þe lungis wiþ ony medicyne þat¹⁷ is consolidatif, it¹⁸ ne mai not¹⁹ come þerto but²⁰ bi a long²¹ wey as bi þe stomak, ouþer bi þe lyuere, ouþir bi veynes, & so þe vertu of þe medicyne ne may not²² come to þe lungs, but²³ bi þe forseid weies; & þerfore men þat²⁴ 12 ben hurt²⁵ in þe lungis falliþ in þe tisik²⁶ / ¶ If²⁷ a man be hurt²⁸ in diafragma, þer is no remedie þerof²⁹; for diafragma is alwei meuyng³⁰, for þat³¹ is an instrument³² of wijnd to the herte, rizt³³ as a belowe is an instrument³⁴ for a fier / For rizt³⁵ as a below, whanne he is opened, 16 he takiþ in wijnd, & whanne he is closid, he puttiþ out³⁶ wijnd & blowiþ þe fier /

¶ If³⁷ þe herte be wounded, in þis maner þou schalt³⁸ knowe: þe patient³⁹ schal swowne, & þe blood þat⁴⁰ comeþ out⁴¹ is blak, & he schal 20 size sore, & þanne he is but⁴² deed //

¶ If⁴³ þe lungis ben hurt, þou schalt⁴⁴ knowe in þis maner bi cowzyng⁴⁵, & þe blood þat⁴⁶ goiþ out⁴⁷ of þe wounde wole be spumous & cleer / If⁴⁸ þe wounde hereof⁴⁹ be streit⁵⁰ wiþoutforþ, make it⁵¹ largere, 24 & þanne in þe wounde of þe lungis caste poudre of mastix. & olibani,⁵² draganti, gumme arabici, fenigreci ana; & he schal ete no mete saue þat⁵³, þat⁵⁴ he mai soupe, & penidis⁵⁵ medlid þeron, & loke þat⁵⁶ he haue sciencence & good reste, & þat⁵⁷ he traueile not⁵⁸; & þou 28 schalt⁵⁹ not⁶⁰ close þe wounde wiþoute, til þe wounde of þe lungis be sowdid, & þanne soude þe wounde wiþoutforþ //

¶ If⁶¹ þat⁶² a wounde be in diafragma, þes ben þe signys þerof⁶³: streit⁶⁴ secching⁶⁵ of breeþ, & greet⁶⁶ agreuance for to drawe his 32 breeþ, & greet⁶⁷ akyng⁶⁸ in his side, & greuous cowzyngs; alle þese ben signys of deeth, & principali if⁶⁹ þese signys be greet⁷⁰ & greuous /

¹ þat inserted. Lat.: et vulnerata membra indigent ut quiescant.

³ "Tisica, Italis et Hispanis Phthisis."—Dufresne. "Tissick, an Ulceration of the Lungs, accompany'd with an Hectick Fever, and causing a Consumption of the whole Body."—Phillips, 1706. *tysyk*, Hampole, 701. "þat man þat hath þe tisik & þe etik," Quintess, p. 17, 7.

⁵ *Olibanum*. Thus masculinum. Arab. al-louban (Devic. Dict.). N.E. oliban.

⁶ *Penidium*, barley sugar.

- If þese signys ben but litil & not strong^t greuou, þanne zeue him metis & drynkis þat mowe swage¹ þe cowze, & þanne take a tent þat he not to greet, & wete it in þe zelke of² an ey & oile of rosis, [2 lf. 90, bk.]
- 4 & þanne cure þis wounde as þou doist^t oþere woundis /
- If it so be þat a wounde be in a caua³ & noon of þe forseid lymes ben not hurt, þanne wete a tent in oile of rosis hoot & putte in þe wounde; & whanne þou remeuest þi medicyne ouþer leist^t If a wound enters into the hollows of the chest
- 8 þerto ony medicyne, be war þat þer passe out noon eir þoruþ þe wounde, ne entre in noon eir into þe wounde, & þerfore or þou change þi tent, loke þat þou haue þingis þat ben necessarie þerfore redi, þat þe wounde mowe be stoppid anoon, þat þere go no breeþ beware that no air passes through the wound.
- 12 into þe wounde, ne out of þe wounde / For if þer go ony breeþ out, it wole afeble þe patient, & if þer go ony breeþ þere, it wole do harme to þe spaulis. Leie vpon þe wounde oile of rosis & þe zelke of an ey, & herwiþ wete þi tent til þe wounde quytture. & þanne
- 16 euery dai make him to turne vpon his side, & make him cowze & spitte out þe quytture, & awoide þe quytture bi þe wounde also. & if þere be myche quytture, & may not be avoidid bi þe wounde, þanne þou schalt make sich a maner waischinge & putte it yn wiþ [4 lf. 91]
- 20⁴ an instrument maad lijk a clisterie / R .mel ro. ʒ iiij., mirre, R
- fenigreci, farine lupinorum ana ʒ ʒ, boile hem to þe consumpeioun of þe .iiij. part in li j. of swete wijn, & li j. of water, & þanne cole hem & putte in þe colature as it is aforseid. Vpon þe wounde
- 24 wiþoutforþ, from þe tyme þat it quytturiþ, leie þis mundificatif planed vpon a cloof.⁵ R mel ro. li j., farina ordeï substillissimi. ʒ R
- iiij., mirre, fenigreci ana. ʒ j., be þei encorperat⁶ & boilid at esi fier / & whanne þei ben weel boilid, & weel medlid togidere so þat
- 28 it be þicke, do hem doun of þe fier, & do þerto ʒ .iiij. of terbentyne waischen & medle hem weel togidere. þis emplastre þou schalt vse, & þe waischingis þat is aforseid, & þou schalt holde open þe wounde with a tent wet in oile, til þe quytture þat is withynne be
- 32 perfitli drier / þis þou schalt knowe bi þe vertu of þe patient & bi þe sauour of his breeþ, & whanne his cowzyngge goiþ awei, & whanne One knows by the odour of the patient's breath

¹ swage. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 372.

³ MS. *canna*. Lat.: Cum autem vulnus est in cassum penetrans. *Cassus*, Pecten. Semibarbaris ex Arabico. Castellus, Lex. Med. *Casse*, Arab. Kas, cup, calice.—Devic. I would rather trace it from Lat. *cassus* adj. void, hollow, and *cassum*, i = *cassa*, orum sb. the hollows. The latter form *cassa* gave origin to Ital. *cassa* f. See *cassa del cranio*, etc.

⁵ &. Lat.: super pannum distensum. O.Fr. *planer*, Lat. *planare*.

⁶ *encorperat*. Lat. *incorporatus*, O.Fr. *encorperer*.

if the wound is clean. [1 lf. 91, bk.] his vnkyndely heete goiþ awei / If þou doist alle þese þingis to him þat¹ ben aforseid, & þe quytture¹ be not wiþdrawe þerwith, & his cowzyng & his akyng be not aswagid, & his vertu be feble, & his spirit¹ be nouzt, þanne do þou nomore þerto, saue he schal al turne 4
 When sup-
 puration con-
 tinues, a weak
 patient dies. him to goddis merci // ¶ Saue if it¹ so be þat¹ he haue þe cowze & greet¹ quytture in þe wounde, & he be strong¹, & principali if þer wexe ony swellyng¹ in his side bihinde bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib, þan þere þou schalt make a newe kuttyng¹ & lete out¹ þe quytture, 8 & bi þis place drawe out¹ þe quytture, & holde þe wounde open, & lete þe olde wounde close togidere. & if it¹ be nede, caste yn þe forseid waischinge bi þis wounde & leie a mundificatif wiþoute til þe quytture be al aweie, & þis cure þou schalt folowe / It falliþ 12
 If the patient is strong,
 make a new
 incision. ofte tyme þat¹ a man is hurt¹ an hiz aboue in þis place, & þanne þe blood & þe quytture falliþ vpon diafragma & gaderiþ togidere, þanne þou schalt kerue him bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib as it¹ is aforseid, for þe blood & þe quytture mai haue no cours to þe wounde 16
 Do the same,
 if blood and
 pus gather on
 the midriff. mai be drawe away; ² & if þou doist¹ not þus þe pacient¹ schal die, & if þou doist¹ þus þe pacient¹ schal be delyuerid wel // Whanne woundis ben in thorase ouþer in þe brest, & þe woundis ne goon 20
 [4 lf. 92] not þoruþ, þanne þou schalt cure him as it¹ is aforseid in oþere woundis //

Of woundis of þornis³ ouþer spondilium, & of þo þat
 ben conteyned in him & anothamie /⁴ 24

¶ vj: c° /

The spinal
 column is
 composed of
 30 Spondles
 or Vertebrae.

BOnys of þe necke, as we haue aforseid, ben .vij, & rigge boonys of þe brest ben .xij, & of þe reynes ben .v. riggeboones, & vndir þe reynes ben .iiij. riggeboones, & vpon þe place þat is clepid⁵ — þe boon of þe tail is maad of .iiij. rigge boones, & þere ben .xxx. 28
 ¶ Eueri boon of þe rigge is an hole þoruþ, & þoruþ þe ilke hoolis nucha⁶ goiþ endelong¹ þe rigge; & every boon of þe rigge haþ .iiij. addiciouns to him, & summe han mo; þis is not¹ necessarie to telle to a sirurgian, saue it¹ is necessarie to a sirurgian for to knowe þis: 32

³ MS. þorais. Lat.: De vulneribus spinæ seu spondylium & eorum anatomia. The scribe changed þornis, the translation of 'spinæ,' into þorais, for thoracis, as in the heading to Cap. V. The words: *þ of þo þat ben conteyned in him* are taken from the same Chapter-heading.

⁴ See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 74.

⁵ One word is here wanting. Lat.: super locum qui dicitur aboratur alahume. *aboratur* is perhaps a corruption for *ab arabis*, *alahume* is the Os sacrum.

⁶ *nucha*, Arab. *nukha*, spinal marrow.

- pat' every rigt-boon hap a greet' hole, & nucha goiþ þer þoru3. & Through the Vertebrae passes the Spinal cord. [1 ff. 92, bk.]
- þer ben opere snale hoqlis in þe boones bi þe sidis aboutforþ, & þere þoru3 goon nerues for to holde þe lymes faste ¹togidere. & so þese
- 4 .xxx. boones ben bounden togidere wiþ stronge ligaturis, & þei ben so strongeli bounden togidere þat' þei semeþ al oon boon. þese The Spondles form the Back-bone.
- 8 ¶ Woundis þat' ben maad in þis place. If nucha be kutt' þoru3 ouerþwert', þe wounde is mortal for þe nobilte of nucha þat' comeþ fro þe brayn rizt' as a ryuer comeþ of wellis.² ¶ And þou3 nucha be not' kutt' al þoru3 saue hurt, it' is greet' perel þerof, for
- 12 þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuyng, for þe nerues þat' ben aboute þe boones of nucha ben kutt'. & also þe rigge-boones ben kutt' & herof cometh greet' perel / And if þe braun þat' sittip endelongis þe rigge in boþe sidis of þe rigge-boon & durip³ from þe heed
- 16 adoun anoon to þe tail eende, & if' ony of alle þese be kutt' ouper prickid, it' is greet' perel for þe spasme, for þe causis þat' ben aforseid / þe curis herof ben lijk to þe curis þat' ben aforseid of opere
- woundis, saue it' is necessarie for a cirurgian to knowe pronosticatiuis
- 20 of þis ⁴place, & also if' a man be hurt' in þat' place, he mote haue for þe causis aforseid //

Of woundis of þe stomac / & *intestinum* & wombe, & anothamia /

- 24 **I** Haue seid heretofore in what' maner mery⁵ goiþ doun þoru3 þe necke wiþinnesforþ, and goiþ þoru3 diafragma, & is maad fast' with diafragma, & diafragma goiþ aboute þe mouþ of
- 28 þe stomak. & þe stomak is schape in þis maner,⁶ & in oon side he is gibbous, & in þe toper side he is more playn. & þe stomac is maad of .ij. clopis. & þat' oon clop sitt' wiþoute & þat' oper wiþinne, & þe clop þat' sittip wiþinne is villosus & neruous, & þe clop þat' is wiþoutforþ is fleischi / ¶ In þe yinner clop ben longe villis wherof comeþ drawyng, & þere ben villis ouerþwert', wherof
- 32 ¶ vijo. 00.
- The stomach is made of 2 Membranes
- with longitudinal and transverse fibres.

² Rases, Liber ad Almansorem, Tract. I, Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 2. "Cerebrum quasi fons sensuum est et motus voluntarii, Nucha vero sicut fluuius magnus ab eo manans."

³ durip. Lat. distenditur. As to the local sense, compare O. Fr. durer.

⁵ mery, oesophagus. Arab. *marijun*, windpipe.

⁶ In the margin is a diagram of the shape of the stomach.

comeþ wipholdyng' / In þe clooþ þat' is wipoutforþ, þere ben longe villis, & þat' makip expulcioum. þe ynner clooþ is neruous, þat' it mowe fele whanne it' is ful; wipoutforþ it' is fleischi for to make him hoot' & moist', þat' he miȝte helpe for to make digestioun. 4 þat' skyn þat' is wipinne þe stomak is norischid with moisture of mete 1 þat' is resseyued into þe stomac / The skyn þat' is wipoute þe stomac is norischid of blood, þat' comeþ fro þe lyuere in smale veynes & goip al aboute þe stomac. ¶ Also þere comeþ arterijs 8 from þe herte to þe stomak & makip him to haue lijf, & of þese .ij. pingis, þat' is to seie vena & arteria, gibbus² is maad þat' gouerneþ þe stomac & þe guttis wip his fatnes, & makip hem hoot. ¶ In þe botme of þe stomac þere is a mouþ, and þat' mouþ is more 12 streit' þan þat' aboue. & þe firste gutt' is maad fast' to þe lower mouþ, & þis gutt' is clepid duodenum.³ þis is þe skille whi he is clepid so, for he is of þe lengþe of' xij. ynchis; & þanne þere ben .vj. guttis bineþe him; & þanne þis firste gutt' is maad of .ij. cootis, 16 as alle þe opere guttis ben, but' þe .ij. gutt' is smal & folde togidere. þe .iiij. gutt' is clepid ieiunum,⁴ id est, fastyng, for he is euermore voide,⁵ & þat' is for he is nȝ þe galle & resseyueþ myche colre⁶ for to awoide him, & þere goip to him manye veynes, wherbi he is 20 voidid / Aftir him þere comeþ a gutt' þat' is clepid orobum⁷ 8 ouper a sak, & it' haþ but' oon mouþ, & he resseyueþ alle þe fecis; & þere is fulfillid þe firste digestioun of' þe guttis / Aftir þis gutt' þer is a gutt' þat' is clepid colon, & lijþ ouerþwert' þe wombe & resseyueþ 24 feces / And aftir þis gutt' comeþ langaon,⁹ & is þe eende of' alle; & he haþ .iiij. brawnys, & þerof' he haþ vertu for to wipholde þe fecis yn, & for to putte hem out' whanne a man wole / Euery meuyng of' þe guttis is kindly & eueri gutt' of' þese þat' ben 28 aforseid haþ diuers kynde // ¶ þer ben manye maner causis whi þat' guttis ben folde with nerues: þe firste enchesoun is þis, þat' a man schulde not' as soone as he hadde ete, anon riȝt' go to sege as

Arteries
bring life to
the Stomach.

The Entrails
or Guts:
duodenum.

Ieiunum.

Orobum,

[³ lf. 94]

where the first
digestioun is
made

Colon.

langaon.

retains and
finally evacu-
ates the
feces.

The entrails
are nervous

.i.
that the food
may be
retained

² *gibbus*, mistake for *zirbus*. See *Vicary*, page 64, note 2; and page 86, note.

³ *duodenum*. See *Ibid.* page 65, note 1.

⁴ *jejunum*. See *Vicary*, page 65, note 2.

⁵ *Avicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. XVI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1527, f. 248. "et nominatur hoc intestinum ieiunum, quum ipsum inuenitur secundum plurimum inanitum et vacuum."

⁶ *colre*. Lat. cholera. Cholera, "Bilis."—Huloet.

⁷ *orobum*. Lat. orbum. The *Ileum* is here meant.

⁹ *langaon*. See *Vicary*, page 66, note 5. Lat. *longanon*, *longao* = the straight gut.

- doip a beest. þe .ij. cause is þat þe mete miȝte abide in þe stomak
 for to make digestion, & þat þat is not fulfillid in þe stomak is
 fulfillid in þe guttis. þe .iiij. cause is þis, þat it first abide in oon
 4 gutt / & þanne it is sent to anoþer & so forþ. & þanne for to holde
 alle þese þingis / þe stomak & þe guttis is ordeyned a skyn, þat is
 clepid þe siphac¹; & is a syngle skyn & is not² villous, & is engen-
 drid bineþe as is diafragma is aboue, as it is aforeseid, & is maad
 8 fast at þe rigge bihinde, for to holde vp þe stomak & þe guttis / In
 þis partie bineþe þis þer ben engendrid of siphac ij. þingis þat ben
 clepid dindimi³ & goiþ adoun al aboute þe ballokis, & is clepid þat
 ynner skyn of þe ballokis; & þoruþ þis dindimi goiþ arterijs &
 12 veynes to þe ballokis, & makþ hem haue lijf & norischinge &
 kynde of sperme // ¶ Alle þese þingis þanne ben comprehendid in
 a skyn þat is fleischi & of lacertis maad, & is clepid mirac, & is
 clepid þe vttere wombe in whiche ben lacertis, for to helpe putte out⁴
 16 þe fecis & wijnd & vine /
 þerfore woundis þat ben maad in þe stomac ben perilous, & in
 þe guttis, for manie causis / þe firste cause is þis, for her worchinge
 is necessarie to þe bodi, for þei ben þe firste instrument of digestioun,
 20 & her worchinge is so necessarie to þe bodi, þat it mai in no maner
 be susteyned, ne abide wiþoute hem / þerfore if þere be ony woundis
 in þis place her worchinge is lost, but if þe wounde be soudid
 anoon; & þat is ful hard & sumtyme impossible for þei ben neruous,
 24 & þere is no fleisch on hem, & also for þei ben alwey meuynges, &
 principali whanne woundis ben maad in þe hindere partie of þe
 stomac ouþir in þe smale guttis / For if þe woundis falle in þe
 neþir partie of þe stomac þat is fleischi, ouþer in þe greeete guttis
 28 bineþe, if þe leche be kunnynges, þe pacient mai lyue /
 ¶ If it bifalle þat a man be hurt in ony of þese placis þat ben
 aforeseid in þe stomak ouþer in þe guttis, þe leche muste knowe
 wheþer þe substauce of þe guttis or of þe stomak be prickid þoruþ
 32 or no; þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe goyng out of þe fecis at þe
 wounde, & þanne þe wounde is iugid mortal. ¶ If a man be
 woundid in his stomak & þe wounde of þe wombe wiþoutforþ ne
 be not brood, þanne kutte it more & þanne sewe the wounde of þe
 36 stomak wiþ a nedele þat is iiij. squar & wiþ a sutil þreed, & þis þou
 schalt speciali, whanne þe wounde is in⁵ a fleischi place of þe stomak,

2.
and digested
in the
stomach

3.
and the guts.

[² If. 94, bk.]

Siphac
(Great Omen-
tum):

it is con-
tinuous in its
lower part
with the
dindimi
(Tunica
vaginalis).

ciffac is þe
inar sken,

mirac
the vtter.
(Peritoneum)

Wounds of
the stomach
and the
bowels are
dangerous,
as their func-
tional activity
is necessary.

[⁴ If. 95]

The patient
may recover
if the fleshy
part of the
stomach or
guts is
wounded.
Nota.

A wound
which per-
forates the
entrails is
mortal.

Sew the
wound in the
stomach,

[⁵ If. 95, bk.]

¹ siphac. See Vicary, page 62, note 4.

³ dindimi, used elsewhere to signify the Testicles.

for if þe wounde be aboue in a place of þe stomak þat is neruous,
 ne traueile þou not þere aboute þanne, for it is an idil / Whanne
 þou hast sewid þe wounde bineþe as it is aforseid, þanne springe
 þeron poudre consolidatif & soude þe wounde of þe stomak, & holde
 open þe wounde of þe skyn wipoute, til þe wounde of þe stomak be
 hool // ¶ If it bifalle þat a man be hurt in þe greete guttis bineþe,
 so þat þe wounde be not to greet, þanne þou schalt sewe þe gutt, &
 þe eendis of þe þedis schulen hange out, & þe vtter wounde schal
 be holde open, til þe wounde of þe gutt be soudid ¶ If it so be þat
 þe wounde of his wombe wipoutforþ be so brood þat þe guttis falle
 out, putte hem yn anoon while þei ben hote / If it be so þat þe
 guttis be colde, or þat þou come þerto, & þe wounde of þe wombe
 be to swolle, & þe guttis be chaungid wip þe eir, wherfore þe guttis
 wolen not in azen, þanne þou must sutilli make þe wounde of þe
 wombe a litil more, þat þe guttis ¹mowe listly falle yn azen wipoute
 greuance. Whanne þe guttis ben ynne, sewe mirac & siphac in
 þis maner togidere, so þat þei moun boþe be soudid togidere; for if
 mirac were soudid & not siphac, þanne aftir þe tyme þat þe wounde
 were soudid, þere wolde leue a crepature.² þerfore þou must sewe
 in þis maner / Take þat oon side of mirac & siphac togidere so
 þat þei be euene, & loke þat þi nedel be .iij. squar, & þanne make
 oon poynt þoruþ hem ij. togidere, in þe same maner in þe toþer, &
 þus þou schalt make þeron as manie pointis as þou þenkist neces-
 sarie / And whanne þou hast sewid mirac & siphac togidere in a
 good maner, þanne knytte þe þedis togidere þat þei vnknytte not,
 as þou seest þat is to doing; & lete þe eendis of þe þedis hange
 out, & þanne springe vpon þe sewynge þe poudre consolidatif þat
 is aforseid, and holde open þe wounde wipoutforþ til mirac & siphac
 be perfitli soudid, for in þis maner mirac & siphac moun be soudid
 bi þis cause: Siphac is neruous & haþ ³no fleisch, & mirac is fleisch,
 & bi þe vertu of him siphac is soudid; & þanne do þe cure herof
 aftir as it is tofore // ¶ Summen seien þat þe smale guttis moun
 be sowdid in þis maner: make a pipe of eldre, & putt wipinne þe
 gutt, & þanne soude þe gutt þer vpon. & I seie þat it is not soþ,
 for þis þing, þe smale guttis wolen not soude, & to þe greete guttis
 þis queyntise is nouzt; þerfore triste to þe maner þat is aforseid,
 & take kepe of þe perels þat ben forseid.

and keep the
 external
 wound patent
 while the
 stomach
 heals.

When the
 bowels fall
 out from the
 wound, re-
 place them,

[1 lf. 96]

Nota.

sew the
 Siphac and
 Mirac to-
 gether,

and keep the
 external
 wound patent.

[3 lf. 96, bk.]

Some phy-
 sicians put a
 reed-pipe
 into the
 wounded in-
 testine before
 sewing it.

² crepature, hernia.

Of woundis of þe lyuere & splen & reynes & þe
bladdre, and anothamia¹ /

- T**he firste schapinge of þe lyuere is maad of þe .ij. spermes as ¶ viij. Co
 4 **B**en þe opere principal lymes, saue þe greetnes of þe lyuere is The Liver is
 principali maad of blood & is in þe hardnes of fleisch. & þe sub- made of
 stance þerof is fleischi, & it is in þe maner as it were blood runne, blood.
 & chilus comuneþ fro þe stomac to þe lyuere for to zeue him
 8 norischynge, & þe lyuere is gibbous wipoute, & wipinne holow þat² [2 lf. 97]
 it miȝte be þe more closynge to þe stomac. & þe heete of þe ²lyuere The Liver is to
 makip þe stomac to sepe as fier makip a furneis to sepe.³ ¶ The Stomach,
 lyuere haþ addicioun, & ben diuers; for in summe ben .iiij. & in what fire is
 12 summe ben .v. & in summe ben .iiij. Of sperme þe mater of þe to a furnace.
 lyuere wipinne is gaderid. & þerof comeþ a greet veyne & is en- lyuer.
 gendrid in sima⁴ epatis, & is clepid þe zate of þe lyuere. & of þis From the
 veyne summen seien þat⁵ þere ben engendrid .viiij. veynes, & sum- spermat-
 16 men seien þat⁶ þere ben mo; & þus veynes ben zatis riȝt⁷ as rootis ic part of
 of a tree.⁵ & þese veynes ben clepid miseraice / & summe of þese The Mesen-
 veynes ben maad fast wip þe botme of þe stomac, & wip a gutt⁸ þat are branches
 is clepid duodeno, & summe wip þe smale guttis, & summe wip þe of the Vena
 20 gutt⁸ þat⁸ is clepid ieinum, & summe wip orobo ouþir wip þe sak // Porta.
 ¶ þe lyuere is maad fast to þe riȝt side of þe stomac, & in þe The Spleen
 liftside of þe stomac sitt⁹ þe splene, & is schape along, & is maad fast with
 fast with o partie of þe stomac. & oon partie þerof is maad fast
 24 toward þe rigge in þe liftside, & haþ .ij. poris, & þoruþ þat⁹ oon draws the
 pore he drawip malancolious blood of ⁶ þe lyuere, & clenip þe Melancholic
 lyuere of malancolious superfluite, & þerof þe splene is norischid. blood from
 & þere is anoþer pore þat⁹ goip to þe mouþ of þe stomac, & makip the Liver,
 28 þe mouþ of þe stomac to haue appetite⁷ // [2 lf. 97, bk.]
 and incites
 Appetite in
 the Stomach.

¹ See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 68.

³ "for his heate is to the stomacke as the heate of the fyre is to the Potte or Cauldron that hangeth ouer it."—*Vicary*, p. 69.

⁴ *sima*, concavitas hepatis. Matth. Sylv., see Dufr. *σμός, ή, όν*, hollow, concave: *τά σμά τοῦ ήπατος*, the bottom of the liver. Poll. 2. 213, Galen. It is used opposite to *κυρτός*, convex, curved, in Galen ad Glauc. 2.—See *Stephanus Thesaurus*.

Sloane 2463, fol. 40: "*Syma of þe lyuer is as it were þe palme oper þe holwenesse of þe hond. The xtilite, whi þat it is of suche forme oper schappe is because þat it schulde ben aplyed oper leyen to þe stomak as þe hond lieth to an appull, when þe appull is in þe hond.*"

⁵ Lat.: *venæ quæ sunt ipsi portæ sicut radices arbori*.

⁷ *De propr. rer. Trevisa*, Lib. V., Cap. 41, Add. 27,944, fol. 57 b: "*þ Constantyn seiþ þat þe melte is i-set in þe lift side, & þe schap þerof is*

The Reynes

þe reynes ben set, þat oon in þe riȝtſide & ſittip hiȝere, & þat oon in þe liſtſide & ſit lowere, & ben maad of hard fleiſch, & ben ſett in two ſidis of þe rigge boon. Boþe þe reynes hauen .ij. veynes ouþir .ij. neckis, & þat oon is aboue, & þat oþere is bineþe. Þoruȝ 4
 þe necke aboue of þe reynes is drawe watri blood & comeþ from draw watery blood from the vena ramosa, and transmit urine to the vena ramosa¹; & þis watri blood is vryne, & from þe reynes it goip to þe necke of þe bladdre þoruȝ a veyne þat is clepid kylym,² & in þis maner þe vryne comeþ into þe bladdre / 8

bladdre via the ureters.

þe bladdre is maad of .ij. þinne ſkynnes, & boþe ſkynnes ben neruous, & þe necke of þe bladdre is fleiſchi. In men þe necke is long, for it paſſip þoruȝout þe zerde, & in wymmen þe necke of þe bladdre is ſhort, & is maad faſt to the cunte.³ / þe necke of þe 12
 bladdre hath oon braun, & is in þe mouþ of þe bladdre⁴ & þat

The Bladder has a neck, longer in men than in women.

[* If. 98.]

galle.

makip a man holde his vryne whanne he wole, & putte cut his vryne whanne he wole, wiþ help of þe wombe þat preſſip, & of lacertis // ¶ Of þe galle we makip noon anothamie, for al oure 16
 ſcience makip noon menciou of a wounde in þe galle /

¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þe lymes aforeſeid ben euermore perilous / For alle þeſe lymes, ouþir þei ben principal lymes as is þe lyuere, ouþir þei ſerueþ principal lymes, wiþoute whiche lymes þe 20
 bodi ne mai not be ſuſteyned / If þe lyuere be hurt in þe depe ſubſtaunce, þanne þe lyuere ſchal leſe al hir worchinge, & al þe blood þerof wole be diſturblid þat is matere of þe ſpirit, & in þis maner þe ſpirit of liȝt is diſturblid & þe foundement of alle hiſe vertues; 24
 ſaue if þe wounde of þe lyuere be but litil it may be ſoudid, ſo þat þe wounde be freiſch & not oold hurt, forwhi a principal lyme mai not ſuffre longe ſijknes // ¶ Þouȝ a man were hurt in þe ſplene, 28
 zitt he miȝte be wel curid, & þouȝ þere were a gobet þerof kutt away, ſo þat it ne were not to myche and ouerþwert, for þerof ofte tyme fallip þe dropesie; ouþir if þe poris were kutt, it wolde afeble þe ſtomac. ¶ Woundis þat ben in þe reynes ben not curid,

Only small and recent wounds of the Liver can be healed.

Even severe wounds of the splene can be cured. [* If. 98, bk.]

euelong, and is ſomwhat holouȝ toward þe ſtomak & bunchinge toward þe ribbis. In þeſe tweye places he is i-bounde with certeyn ſmale cloþinge, & me ſeiþ þat þe mette haþ tweye reynes, by þe on þerof he drawip blak colera of þe blod to þe lyuour, & by þe oþir he ſendiþ what ſufficeþ to þe ſtomak to comforte þe appetite þerof."

¹ *vena ramosa*, Vena Cava.

² Lat.: per venam chylim quæ a quibusdam pori uritides dicitur = Meatus Urinariæ = Ureter. *Kylym*, from *χυλός*, juice. See also *Vicary*, p. 72, note 3.

³ 'Hęc vulva, cunte.' Wright, *Voc.*, p. 677. 32, xvth cent. O.Fr. *cunne*, Lat. *cunus*, *cunte* is a diminutive form like *cunetta* of *cuna*.

- for þei ben norischid wiþ watri blood, for þat' is *contrarius* to
 soudinge / & for þe reynes ben alwey in meuynge, & also vryne þat'
 alwei is bitynge goiþ þoruþ þe reynes. ¶ þe bladdre ne mai not' be
 4 souldid if' it' be kutt', for it' is a lyme þat' is neruous & haþ no fleisch,
 & is alwei meuynge, & for he is alwei resceuynge vryne & also þe
 vryne fretiþ & þat' lett'iþ þe souding' / For ypoeras seiþ / If' þe
 bladdre be kutt', or þe brayn, or þe herte, þe wounde is mortal. ¶ If'
 8 a leche be sent' aftir, for to come to a man þat' is woundid in ony of
 þese forseid / if' þe leche be a man of' good loos & a kunnyng' man,
 he schal, whanne he comeþ to þe pacient', & seeþ þe perel þerof', he
 schal telle þe perel of' þe wounde to þe pacientis frendis, & he schal
 12 sei to þe man þat' is hurt' þat' he schal ascape & fare weel ; and
 first' he schal make him haue hise rihtis¹ ²of' holy chirche, & lete
 him make his testament', or þat' his vertu faile / þanne he schal
 bigynne wiþ his good worchinge, riht' as he took no drede þerof' /
 16 for ofte tyme kinde worchiþ, þat' þat' semeþ vnpossible to þe leche,
 & principali if' he worche wel. Neþeles þouþ þe leche se goode
 signys bi þe pacient', he schal alwei haue his owne pronosticacioun
 as it' is aforseid, til þe man be al hool, if' he schal ascape / for ofte
 20 tyme whanne þe pacient drawiþ toward þe deef, his passioun wole
 aswage ; & also þe contrarie þerof' is seen, þouþ þe pacient' haue
 greet' peyne & þe signes of' deef, zitt' he mai ascape / & þefore for
 þese perels þat' ben aforseid, he mot' be war of' vndirtakyng & of'
 24 biheest' // ¶ If a leche be in straunge cuntre, he ne schal bi no maner
 wei take sich a cure. & also he schal forsake alle maner of' curis
 þat' ben harde to do, & also he schal forsake curis þat' ben longe for
 to make ony perfeccioun þerof', & he mote be war þat' faire biheste,
 28 ne veyn glorie, ne coueitise ne bigile him not' /

Wounds of
the kidney

and bladder
are incurable,

as ypoeras
says.

The physician
shall warn
the patient's
friends,
but cheer the
patient,

[2 lf. 99]

and advise
him to
arrange his
spiritual and
temporal
affairs.

nota.

The phy-
sician must
never despair,
and always
remember his
first prog-
nosis.

He must be
cautious in
a foreign
country.

³ Of woundis of þe 3erde & of ballokis, & of þe region
 of þe bladdre and anothamia.⁴ [lf. 99, bk.]

- 32 **G**Od almyzti þat' alle pingis knewe tofore þe making' of' þe
 world ouþir of' man, he knewe þat' a man schulde be maad
 of' moist' substaunce, as of' sperme, in which natural hete schal
 worche.⁵ & for to resseyue þe mater of' sperme, it' is necessarie þat'
 Man's generative organs.

¹ Lat.: primo tamen ipsum faciat confiteri.

⁴ Comp. *Vicary's Anatomy*, p. 81.

⁵ Compare *Auicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. XX., 1. 1., ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 279:
 "Sublimis deus creauit duos testiculos," etc.

a man haue ballokis / He made ballokis as it was necessarie, & 3af hem schap & complexioun for to engendre / & he 3af a man greet delite for to lie bi a womman, so þat a man schulde not haue abhominacioun þerof, saue a man schal do it with greet will & wiþ 4 greet loue, so þat generacioun miȝte be multiplied wiþ greet delite¹ /

The Yard has ¶ Also god almiȝti schop in a man a 3erde. & in þe bigynnyng þerof ben cartilaginis & ben maad fast to þe laste boon of þe rigboon, & is maad of nerues, veynes & arteries, & is somewhat holow, 8 þat he miȝte be fulfillid wiþ spirit. & in þe heed þerof is fleisch a Gians þat is felynge, & a skyn þat goiþ ouer & is clepid prepucium. & and Prepuce. þe meuyng of þat skyn² & of þe fleisch tofore helpiþ for to putte
[² If. 100] out þe sperme / þe risynge of a mannes 3erde comeþ of a mannes 12 Erection is caused by man's passion. herte, & witt of þe brayn, wilnyng, & greet desier; & watri The yard has two passages, u. for urine, b. for sperm; humour comeþ of þe lyuer. & haþ .ij. open holis; & þoruþ þat oon hole goiþ out vryne & comeþ fro þe bladdre, & þoruþ þat opir hole comeþ sperme and comeþ fro þe ballokis. & þese .ij. holis ben 16 Auicen mentions a 3rd one. good for to knowe / And auicen seiþ: þat þere is þe .ijij. hole, & þoruþ þat hole passiþ a maner of superfluite þat a man felip not, as whanne he halsiþ a womman wiþ hise hondis; saue þis þridde hole is not knowen of a cirurgian³ // 20

The structure of the Testicles. þe .ij. ballokis ben maad of hard fleisch in þe maner as ben wommans brestis, & þat oon ballok of a man is grettere þan þe toþer & stronger, & to þe ballokis comeþ veynes & arterijs, & makip hem haue lijf & norisching. & superfluite of good blood & clene 24 They make sperm of the purest blood. comeþ þerto of alle þe lymes, & gaderiþ togidere in a mannes ballokis, & þere it bicomeþ whiȝt & turneþ into sperme, riȝt as blood bicomeþ
[⁴ If. 100, bk.] mylk in a wommans brestis / And þer ben maad fast wiþ þe The Seed passes along the excretory ducts (Vas deferens). ballokis .ij. vessels, & ben brode vpon þe ballokis, & narowe toward 28 þe 3erde, & ben clepid þe vessels of sperme, & ben clepid of auicenne

¹ *De propr. rer.*, Lib. V., Cap. 48, Add. 27,944, fol. 60 b: "For as Constante seiþ, to covenable getynges & gendringe of bestis god haþ ordeyned & i-made couenable membres, in þe whiche he haþ i-sette þe cause & mater of generacioun, þe whiche may not come forþ in dede wiþoute affeccion of loue. ¶ In þe membres genytal god haþ send such an appetite inseperable, þat eueriche beest schulde be comfortid to multeplic beestis of his owne kynde, and þat is i-doo by schevinge of god, lest 3if þe doynge of generacioun were abhominable, generacioun of best were i-lost." This passage is taken from *Constantinus Afric. De morb. cog. et. cur.*, Lib. VI., Cap. I, ed. Basil, 1536, p. 122.

³ *Auicenna l. c.*, "Et in virga sunt meatus tres, meatus vrinæ et meatus spermatis et meatus alguadi." *Matth. Sylv.*: "Alguedi est humor ille qui egreditur, cum aliquis tangit mulierem."

barbachi,¹ & of þese vessels cometh sperme into þe 3erde; & þoru3 þe 3erde is born into þe matris of wymmen / In þese .ij. vessels sperme is fulfillid, saue þe hete þerof cometh of þe ballokis; & to þe ballokis 4 as it is aforseid cometh veynes & arterijs, & goiþ þoru3 dindimous, þat ben maad fast to þe siþhac as it is aforseid //

Auicenn calls them Barbachi.

- ¶ Þe maris in a womman is maad neruous & is schape as it were a 3erde þat were turned a3enheer.² & þe necke of þe maris is 8 fleischi, & brawny, & felynge, & gendring; & in þe necke of þe maris ben veynes þat ben to-broke whanne a womman lesiþ hir mayden-hode. & þe botme of þe maris is schape as it were þe case of a mannes ballokis / And þe maris haþ .ij. brode ballokis in þe necke, 12 & wiþ þe ilke .ij. ballokis ben maad fast .ij. vessels of sperme, & ben more schort þan a mannes vessels of sperme / And of þese ³ vessels, a wommans sperme goiþ to þe botme of þe maris / And in þe tyme of conseuyunge þe wommans sperme [is] medlid wiþ a mannes / 16 And þe maris of a womman haþ wiþinne .ij. grete concautees / And þe maris haþ manie veynes, & þoru3 þe ilke veynes, whanne a womman haþ conseyued, cometh blood to⁴ þe lyuer for to norische þe child. And whanne a womman is not wiþ childe, þoru3 þe same 20 veynes cometh blood of þe veynes menstrie & is putt out, & in þis maner a womman is purgid of superfluite of blood; & it is maad fast bitwixe þe grete gutt & þe bladdre, & is hizere þan þe bladdre, & is maad fast to þe rigge wiþ ligaturis, & in tyme of child berynge 24 þe ligaturis recchiþ, & aftir þat tyme⁵ *—— /

Female generative organs.

The Matrix has two ballokis (Ovaries), and two spermatic ducts (Fallopian Tubes). [³ If. 101]

The Embryo is nourished by blood from the liver.

Menstruation removes superfluous blood.

If þere be woundis in ony of alle þese placis, þei ben stronge perilous for her sutil complexioun, & for her nobilte of worchinge.

Wounds of generative organs are dangerous.

- ¶ If it so be þat a man be hurt in his 3erde or ouerþwert in a 28 litil quantite, þou schalt sewe þe wounde, & sprynge þeron poudre, & leie þerto defensiuus, & lete him blood, & diete him with þinne mete, & cure him wiþ good diligence // ¶ If it so be þat a mannes 3erde be kutt al off ouerþwert, þanne it is greet drede þerof / for 32 þe veynes þat cometh þerto & þe arterijs & manie nerues, for sumtyme þe pacient mai be deed, or þe blood mowe be staunchid / Saue

Treatment of a wounded yard.

[³ If. 101, bk.]

If the yard is cut away, death from hæmorrhage may ensue.

¹ *barbachi*, Arab. *bārbāh*, 'conduit of water, canal of the urine.'

² Galen (ed. Kuehn, vol. IV., p. 635) has originated this curious comparison, which has been copied by the Arab. authors. *Aric.*, Lib. III., Fen. XXI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, Ven. 1527, fol. 285 b: "Matrix est quasi conversum instrumentum virorum."

⁴ *to*, mistake for *from*. Lat.: per quas sanguis ei venit ab hepate.

⁵ Some words are wanting. Lat.: partusque completo tempore constringatur.

in þis cas þou schalt take hede for to do awci þe akyngþe wip oile of
rosis, anoynte him aboute þe ers & þe regioun of þe 3erde, & brenne
þe 3erde wip an hoot irn for to constreyne þe flux of blood; for a
cauterie streyneþ blood tofore alle þingis. ¶ Woundis þat ben in 4
þe ballokis, þei roten hem anoon, & þou3 a man be not in perel of
deep þoru3 þe hurtyng of hem, 3itt his generacioun is lore / A
wounde in þis place schal be curid in þe same maner as woundis in
oþere place of þe bodi, & þe cure schal not be chaungid þerof // ¶ If 8
it so be þat a womman be hurt in her marijs wip a swerd, ouþir wip
a knyft, ouþer wip a dart, þe wounde is mortal // ¶ If it bifalle þat
colon¹ be hurt wip sum scharp þing² ouþir wip hardnes of humouris,
he may wel be curid þe while þe wounde is freisch, with putting³ 12
of² vnguentum album rasis of ceruse distemprid wip ius of arnog-
lossa.³ & if it so be þat þe wounde of þis place be olde, þanne it
is for to make a mundificatif þerto, wip castyngþe yn of gotis whay
ouþir watir of barley // 16

Wounds of
the Testiclescause Impo-
tence.Wounds of
the Matrix
are mortal.Treatment
of wounded
Colon.[² If. 102]

Of woundis in þe haunche and of þe coxe of þe knee,
and of boonis of þe feet and of anothomia.

¶ x. c° /
The Haunch-
boneshave each a
box (aceta-
bulum) which
contains the
head of the
thigh-bone.[⁶ If. 102, bk.]The thigh-
bone

BOnys of haunchis ben maad fast wip þe lattere boon of þe
rigboon / & rizt as þe rigboon susteyneþ alle þe boones aboute, 20
so alle þe boones bineþe ben maad fast to him / þese boones ben
cartilaginous & sutil toward þe fore partie, & bineþe þei ben more
greet; & eueri of hem haþ a box þat is clepid paxis haunche &
vertebrum sit þeron.⁴ & þat is þe eende of þe hiþe boon. & wip 24
this boon is maad fast þat boon þat goiþ ouerþwert vndir þe ars
aboute þe 3erde, & is clepid os pectinis. & as summer seien þere ben
iiij. partis, saue in cirurgie it is seid al oon. & þe place of þe con-
iuncioun of þese boones is clepid þe scie.⁵ & sumtyme þese boones 28
goon out of þe ioynt, as þou schalt haue a perfit teching⁶ herof in
þe .iiij. tretis in þe chapter of dislocacioun / þis hiþe boon, as it is

¹ Lat. Se si collo vulnus fieri accideret. Phillips. "Collum Uteri, the Neck of the Womb."

² *arnoglossum*. Wr. Wü., p. 559. 27 (XIII. cent.) "*Arnoglosa*, i. plauntein," O.E. *wegbrade*, waybread.

⁴ Sloane 2463, fol. 42 b: "þei ben cleped ylia other ossa yliorum, and in þe etter partie of þe myrdward of hem ben concauytes other holenness, þe whiche ben clepid boystes, in þe whiche þe endes of þe bones of the þyzes ben receyved inne."

⁵ *scie*, Med. Lat. *scia*, from *ἰσχίον*, it means the hip-joint. Wr. Wü., 610. 11 (XV. cent.), "*Scia* an^{ce} the whyrlebon."

aforseid, is maad fast' aboue wip ligaturis & pannyclis & nerues, & it' is a greet' boon & miche holow wipinne, & is ful of' marow ; & it' is hollow and is greet', for it' schulde be strongt ; & it' is holow, for it' schulde be
 4 lizt. & pis boon is maad fast' in þe knee, & þere þe boon of' þe hiþe is joined with the leg-bone in the knee. & þe boon of' þe leg' ben ioyned togidere in a box as it' is aforseid.
 & þese boones ben bounden togidere wip ligaturis & senewis, & vpon þe ioynt' of' þese boones & for to kepe þis ioynture from harm, is
 8 ioyned þeron a round boon & is clepid rotula, & of' summen it' is clepid þe y3e of' þe knee, & alle þese boones ben bounden togidere wip strong' ligaturis // ¶ Vndir þe round boon of' þe knee ben ordeyned
 .ij. boones in þe leg', & þat' oon þerof' is grette & sittip tofore in
 12 þe leg', & þe toþer is smaller & sittip bihynde in þe leg'. & in þe neþer partie þei ben maad fast' wip þe boon of' calcanei þat' susteyneþ alle þe boones, & with alkarad,¹ & þat' is a boon þat' fulfillip þe ioynture & is ²ioyned wip þe boon þat' is clepid naucula /
 16 ¶ Racheta³ of' þe foot' is maad of' iiij. boonis, & ben bounden togidere wip ligaturis. & wip þese boonys ben maad fast' þe bonys of' þe toos þat' ben .xiiij., for eueri boon haþ .iiij. boones, saue þe boon of' þe grete too, & þat' haþ but' .ij. boones / to alle þese boones
 20 comeþ nerues fro þe riggeboones—& wip þese nerues, & with þese ligaturis, & wip symple fleisch þese boones ben maad fast' togidere —& 3eueþ to þese lymes meuyng & felyng. & þer ben grette brawnes in a mannes leggis & in hise hipis, & ben ful of' grete
 24 veynes & arterijs & senewis, & ben departid into alle þe leggis & to þe feet' / & summe of' þese veynes comeþ fro a veyne of' þe lyuer, þat' is clepid vena ramosa as it' is aforseid in armys. & þerfore þese placis ben swiþe perilous, whanne þei ben woundid, for þe perels þat'
 28 ben aforseid. & þese veynes ben departid in þe foot', & .ij. þerof' ben in þe holow of' þe foot' wipoutforþ, & þat' oon veyne þerof' is clepid sciatica, & þat' oþere is clepid renalis, ⁴& pis is þus miche to seie : þat' oon veyne serueþ for þe scie, & þat' oþer for þe reynes /
 32 þanne þer ben ij. oþer veynes in þe holow of' þe foot' withinne, & þat' oon is clepid sophena, & þat' oþer is clepid vena ventris, id est a veyne of' þe wombe. ¶ Þe veyne þat' is clepid renalis scheweth itsilf bitwixe þe list' too & þat' oþer too next, & þe blood-letyng
 36 of' þis veyne is good for þus manye þingis : for cancrena þat' ben in

Rotula.

The two bones of the leg

articulate with the Calcaneus and Astragalus.

[² If. 103] Naucula.

The Racheta has four bones articulating with the fourteen Phalanges.

The nerves confer movement and sensation to the leg.

The veins of the lower limbs start from the Vena Ramosa (Vena Cava), which divides into the

Sciatica and the Renalis. [⁴ If. 103, bk.]

Saphena, Vena ventris.

¹ alkarad, Lat. alchaab, from Arab. *al kab*, a die.

³ Racheta, Lat. Rasceta, from Arab. *rusgh*, which means the carpus or the tarsus. The Rasceta pedis is not exactly our tarsus, as it comprises only the three Cuneiform bones and the Cuboid bone.

þe hipis & for a mormal¹, & for varices & for vlcera þat^t ben in þe hipis ouþer in þe leggis.

Wounds of the lower extremity are dangerous.

Bi alle þese skillis þou myzt wel se, þat^t woundis þat^t be maad in þese placis ouerþwert^t ben swiþe perilous for þe kutting^t of nerues⁴ & of cordis & braun, & of veynes & of arterijs, for alle þese þingis goiþ endelong^t þe leggis & þe hipis, & þerfore woundis þat^t ben maad ouerþwert^t in þis place ben swiþe perilous as it^t is aforseid //

Treatment of such wounds.

¶ Woundis þat^t ben maad in þes placis þat^t ben curable, schulen be⁸ curid in þe same maner as it^t is aforseid in curis of armys & of hondis / Saue of o þing þou schalt take kepe, þat^t woundis þat^t ben maad iij. fyngris brede wiþinne þe knee, for þe² nobilte of þe place & for þe causis þat^t ben forseid, þe wounde is iugid mortal / þerfor¹² woundis þat^t ben in þese placis þat^t ben forseid & ben curable þou must do good diligence þerto, & be wel war of woundis þat^t ben mortal as it^t is aforseid //

[2 ff. 104]

¶ The teching of þe .ij. tretis is fulfillid þoruþ þe help of god, 16 & now schal bigynne þe teching of þe .iij. tretis & schal conteyne .xvij. chapitris /³

the þerd book conteynes viij. c.⁴

Here bigynneþ þe þridde book.

¶ i^o. c^o /

Of þe engendryng of heeris //⁵

20

Heeris ben engendrid of greet fume & of viscous mater, & þe more hoot þat^t a man is, þe more heer he schal haue⁶ / & þer falliþ manie amendementis of heeris.⁷ ¶ First we wolen speke for to make heer fair, & aftirward of oþere sijknessis þat^t falliþ in placis²⁴ of heeris.

¹ for a mormal, ad malum mortuum, a severe form of leprosy. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 343.

³ Inserted by the translator; the number of the chapters is incorrect. Lat. Add. 26,106, f. 44 b: "Incipit tractatus tertius, et erit de curis morborum, qui non sunt vulnera, qui possunt accidere diuersis membris a capite usque ad pedes, que veniunt ad curam cyrurgici, qui continet tres doctrinas et est capitulum primum doctrine prime, tractatus tertii de ornatu capillorum."

⁴ The marginal note ought to be: þe firste doctrine of the þerd book conteynes VIII. C.

⁵ A list of passages on the same subject from works of Lat. and Arab. authors is given by Adams, *Paulus Aegineta*, vol. I, p. 339 (for "Rhases ad Mansor, VI. 1.", *ibid.*, read "Rhases ad Mansor, V. 1.").

⁶ De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b: "And here is i-bred and comep out of fumosite hoot & arie." Compare *Vicary*, p. 24.

⁷ Lat.: quibus multa accidunt corrigenda.

- ¶ If þou wolt make longe heeris, ouþer if þou wolt make heeris wexe long, dissolue a litil mustard in water of decoccioun of *bletarum*¹ & waische þerwith ofte, & þanne anoynte with comoun oile.
- 4 ¶ If þou wolt make heeris 3elow, þou schalt do in þis maner. R. mirre ʒ iiij., *lupinorum amarorum* ʒ vj., ²flos salicis, fecis vini combusti ana ʒ .iiij., grinde hem wel togidere & distempere hem wip lie maad of askis of vinis, & herwith anoynte þe heeris aftir þe 8 tyme þat þei ben wel waissche wip þe forseid lye //
- ¶ If þou wolt make hem blac³ R. *stercus irundinum*, & *enulam siccam*, & *orobum*,⁴ *semen raphani* & *sulphurus*, & *florem capillaris*⁵ succus, grinde alle þese wip a galle of a bole ouþer of an oxe & tempere hem wip vinegre, & herwith anoynte hise heeris, & first þou schalt fumie⁶ hem wip sulphur, & þus þou schalt do ofte. & þou schalt anoynte him with oile of sambuci, þat is maad of whit flouris of ellern, & leid in oile rizt as me makip oile of rosis.
- 16 ¶ If þou wolt kepe þe eendis of þe heeris fro fretynge, kutte hem alle euene & 3eue þe pacient good mete, & anoynte ofte his heed with oile & watir medlid togidere, & anoynte herwith ofte / & anoynte it with muscillage *seminis lini* & psillij⁷ //
- 20 ¶ If þou wolt make heeris crisp R. *farinam fenigreci*, & mirre, & *semen raphani gallarum*, *gummi arabici*, *calcis abluti*, & wynde alle þese þingis & frote þe heeris, and þei⁸ wolen bicomme crisp.
- ¶ If þou wolt kepe heeris þat þei schulen not falle awei. R. 24 *ladani*⁹ .ʒ j, & resoluē it in ʒ iiij of oile of mirtilles & herwip anoynte þe rootis of þe heeris / ¶ If þou wolt saue heeris fro hoornes so þat þei bicomme not whit, þanne it is necessarie for to kepe him fro al maner þingis þat engendriþ fleume, & fro greet 28 studijnge,¹⁰ & fro fisch þat is rotid, & fro roten wijn, & he mote ofte

A wash to make the hair grow long.

An ointment to dye the hair yellow.

R
[² ff. 104, bk.]

R
An ointment to dye the hair white.

A treatment to keep the ends of the hair from splitting.

R
An ointment to make the hair crisp.

[⁸ ff. 105]

R
An ointment to keep the hair from falling off.

R
Feed well in order to prevent the hair from getting gray.

¹ *bleta*, *Alphita*, p. 22, "*Beta major*, uel *bleta* uel *bletis*, *atriplex agrestis* uel *domestica*."

³ *blac*, O.E. *blac*, *albus*.

⁴ Lat. : *orobum*, qui appellatur in gallico *uicia*.

⁵ Lat. *florum cappa*; *capillaris* is a mistake for *cappar*, the caper plant. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. *Caper* 1.

⁶ *fumie*, Lat. *suffumigare*. Compare *Maccr. Engl. Translat.*, xvth cent., Sl. 2527, f. 251: "*make therof a suffumygacyon*."

⁷ *psillie*, Wr. Wü., p. 559. 6 (XIII. cent.), "*psillium*, i. lused." Cooper, "*psyllion*, the herb called fleawort."

⁹ *Ladanum*, *Laudanum*, *Labdanum*. "A gumme that runneth from the hearbe Lada, and is much used in Pomanders."—Cooper.

¹⁰ *fro greet studijnge*, Lat. a *fastidio*. The correct explanation is given in *De propr. rer. lib. VII. Cap. 44. Add. 27,944. fol. 91^b*: "*And fastidium is unskiful abhominacioun & wlatsonnes of mete & drinke and most greueþ þe vertu of fedinge and of norischinge, for as Isidir seiþ, fastidium is i-seide as it were makinge nywe & disese, for a man þat haþ abhominacioun haþ nywe and disese in þing þat anothir haþ solas in & lykinge.*"

R purge fleume with turbit, and vse strong^t wijn & a litil, & vse sutil sauce, & vse of pese pingis: R. mirabolanorum,¹ kebulorum indorum, emblicorum, & bellicorum² ana,³ & grinde hem alle with oile of almondis longe, & panne tempere hem vp with wijn & hony, & eueri 4 morowe he schal take þerof þe quantite of a note / And þow schalt die hise heeris if þei ben white, wiþ tincture þat ben forseid //

A hair-dye. ¶ If a man desirij for to haue blac heeris as doij greuis⁴ & R spaynardis, panne make þis tincture. R foliorum mirti, foliorum 8 papaueris rubij, capilli, ciperi, spice, seminis bletarum, apii, ana ʒ j., seþe hem in iiij li of watir, til þei come to o pound, & panne cole⁵ ¶ If. 105, bk.] hem & do þerto li. j. of oile of violet⁶ & boile hem in a double vessel til al þe watir be waistid away; panne caste into þe oile ʒ f 12 of acacie, & make aischis of pyne applis, whanne þe kirkels ben taken out þerof, & medle hem alle togidere, & kepe þis oynement. & herwiþ anynte heeris þat þou wolt make blake.

Of allopecia þat is namys of fisik þat signifieþ 16 diuers passiouns /

¶ ije

The falling
off of the hair
called Alo-
pecia is a
sort of
Leprosy.

N Amys of phisice þat signifieþ diuers passiouns vndir oon name ofte tyme bigilij a leche, & bringij him into greet errour / For comounli al maner lesing^t of heer is clepid allopecia⁷; saue for 20 to seie þe soþe, allopecia is a maner spice⁸ of lepre þat comeþ of rotid fleume / Saue in þis chapitre I wole speke of allopecia þat fallij onli in þe heed. Allopix in grew, is seid a fox in latin, for a fox in sum tyme of þe ʒeer his heer pilij awei, & þerfore fallyng^t 24 awei of heer is clepid allopecia / ¶ Tinea⁹ is as miche to seie as a

The disease
is called

¹ *Mirabolans*, a kind of Plums.—Phillips.

² *Cebuli*, *Emblici*, and *Bellirici* are different kinds of Mirabolans. See Tommaseo Diz.

³ Lat. ana partes equales.

⁴ Greeks.

⁵ *cole*, Lat. colo, strain through a sieve.

⁷ De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "And if suche fumosite failþ nouzt, but is infect or i-lette by som opir humore, þan failinge and lak of heer is nouzt propirliche ballidenes, but a special yuel þat phisicians clepen allopiciam. ¶ By þat yuel þe nurtur of heer is corrupt & failþ, & þe heer falleþ & þe ferþe partye of þe heed is bare, and þe furþer skyn of þe heed is þe foulere. ¶ Soche men faren as foxes, for þe heer of hem fallij happiliche for inmoderat and passinge hete. ¶ Allopes in grew, vulpes in latyn, a fox in englische."

⁸ *spice*, Lat. species. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 355, "a Spyce; species." As to the pleonastic use of *spice*, compare: *a maner kynde of sponges* (leaf 109).

⁹ De propr. rer., *ibid.*, fol. 80: "Also þe heed is ofte disesid wiþ an famuler passioun, þat children haven ofte, and by constantin þat yuel hatte squama, skalle, & we clepiþ þat yuel tynea, moppe, for it fretij & gnaweþ þe ouer partie of þe skyn of þe heed as a moppe fretij clop & cleueþ þerto wiþoute departinge & holdinge þe skyn wel faste."

reremous, for þe heeris of a reremous ben alwey aboute þe heed, & þerfore cirurgians makij difference bitwixe allopuciam & tineam, for þei clepid tineam þere þat þere is corrupcioun in þe skyn wip harde crustis & quytture / Saue allopucia is whanne þe heeris fallij awei wipoute ony wise of þe skyn.²

Tinea when attended by corruption of the skin. [1 f. 106]

¶ Allopucia þat is wipoute cometh of þe skyn,³ & sumtyme it cometh in þe ende of a siknes for defaute of norischinge of þe bodi þat schulde helpe to norische þe heeris, ouþir it cometh, for þe poris openeth to myche / In þis cas it is necessarie for to augmente norischinge of þe bodi wip good metis þat engendrij good blood, & frote wel þe heeris of his heed wip þin hond & anoynte it wip oile of mirtillorum / If þis suffice not, frote wel þe heeris of his heed with þin hond til þe skyn of his heed bicometh reed; & þan frote it wip ryndis of an oynoun til it bicometh drie, & þanne þere wole arise þere vpon, as it were, bladdris, & þanne anoynte þe place wip grece of a maulard. & whanne þe heeris wexen azen, lete schauwe hem ofte, for miche schauynge is good þerfore /

Alopecia arises from want of nourishment.

Treatment of this disease.

If it so be þat allopucia cometh of vijs⁴ of humouris, þat þou miht knowe bi þe teching⁵ þat is aforseid in allopucia þat cometh of long⁶ sijknis; for if it come of vijs of humouris, þanne vlcera wole be in þe skyn. þan þou must loke of what humour it cometh, þat þou miht knowe bi disposicioun of al þe bodi & bi þe colour of þe place, as if þe pacient be fleischi & wel colourid, & if þe fleume of his mouþ be swete, & þe pustulis þat ben in his heed be reed, & if his vryne be picke & reed, & if he be zongt, & if he etij metis þat engendrij miche blood, & if vlcera be in þe skyn, & if al þe skyn be reed & ful of quytture, alle þes ben signys of aboundaunce of blood. If it so be þat his bodi be leene, & þe colour of þe place be rufus ouþer zelow, & vlcer be drie, it is signe þat colre is þe cause / If his bodi be sumwhat whijt, & if he haþ smale veynis, & if he haue miche moisture in his mouþ, & if his vryne be whijt & picke, & if he þirstij not, & if þe place be whijt & neische and miche moisture þeron wipouten ony breynynge, it is a signe of fleume / If þe colour of his bodi be derk ouþer blac, & if he be leene, & if his vryne be pale & þinne,⁶ & if he haþ greet appetit, & if his blood be blac, & if he vsij miche for to ete beef & caul, &

The skin is ulcerated, [5 f. 106, bk.] if the disease is caused by bad humours.

Signs for telling

whether it is caused by superabundance of blood, by choler,

by phlegm,

[6 f. 107]

² withoute ony wise of þe skyn, Lat. absque cutis vitio apparente; of viis of humouris, Lat. propter humorum malitiam.

³ Mistranslated from the Lat. alopecia quæ sine cutis est vulnere.

⁴ See note 2.

opere pingis þat engendriþ malancolie, & if þe place of þe siknes be
 or by melan- ledy & hard, þat is a signe of malancoli, saue þis passioun comeþ
 choly. ful seelde of malancoli, but if it be of greet corrupeioun, & þanne
 it is worse þan ony oper aforseid / 4

Whanne þou knowist of what humour it comeþ, first þou
 must auoide¹ þat humour, for þis is a general rule of .G., for as .G.
 seip / First, þou must do awei þe cause, & I woole teche þee to
 auoide þe matere with fewe medicyns þat ben approued & ben 8
 laxatiuis, profitable, & ben necessarie for a cirurgian for to knowe
 alle þe maner of purgaciouns, for ellis he schal neuere wel worche
 in sich maner causis / If it sq be þat a man be ful of humouris, þou
 must first bigynne for to lete him blood, if he be strong & in age, 12
 þat is, & not to zong' ne to oold. & þan lete him blood, ouþer garse
 him, & þan afterward purge him, saue it is bettere to purge him
 first, & þanne wipizne a few daies lete him ²blood / If it so be þat
 blood be oonli þe cause, þanne it suffisip ynow for to lete him 16
 blood / ¶ If it so be þat þou dissoluest þe water wip a laxatif, &
 if þou letist not him blood tofore ne aftirward, þanne þou art not
 sure; for ofte tyme þe medicyne laxatif wole engendre a feuer, &
 principali if it be hoot / 20

¶ Colre schal be purgid in þis maner / R̄ violarum ʒ j., pruno-
 rum ʒ j & ð, sebesten .xv. in noumbre, iuiubas .xx., seþe hem in
 iij li of water, til þei come to li j, & cole hem, & resoluē þeron
 cassia fistula³ ʒ j., thamarindorum, manne ana ʒ ð., & boile hem a 24
 litil togidere, & þan cole hem, & aneuen do þeron poudre of mira-
 bolani citrini ʒ. j., & of rubarbe, & amorowe cole hem, saue chaufe
 it a litil first, & distempere it with ʒ ð of sugre rosarum, & lete
 R̄ him drynke it⁴ / ouþer wip þese pelottis⁵ / R̄ aloes cicotri⁶ .ʒ j., 28
 mirabolani citrini, rosarum rubearum ana .ʒ ð., scamonie quintam

To purge
 coler
 R̄

R̄

¹ *auoide*, Lat. *evacuare*. See *N. E. Dict.*, *avoid*, 1.

² *cassia fistula*, see *Alphita*, p. 35, and *Adams l. c.*, vol. III., p. 429. It is *Cassia fistula* L., the pudding-pipe tree.

³ The following prescription is omitted in the text, but written in a different hand at the bottom of lf. 107 bk.: *pro colera R̄ cantaridarum, mane, medulle cassia fistule ana ʒ ðs, myrbol, cytri[ni] ʒ ij, boylle in li ðs watir, to the halfe put therto ʒ j sugre & ðs ʒ, & drenk yt.*

⁴ *pelottis*, Lat. *pillis*, Fr. *pelote*, a little ball. Phillips. "Pellota (in the *Forest Law*) the ball or round fleshy part of a Dog's Foot." *Charta de Foresta*, 1225: in *Annales de Burton. Annales Monast. Luard*, vol. I., p. 233: "Talis autem sit expeditatio [canum] per assisam comitatum, quod tres ortilli abscondantur siue *pelota* de pede anteriori."

⁵ *aloes cicotri⁶*, Lat. *sucotri⁶*, for *socotri⁶*, so called from the island Socotra.

- partem .3. j., þat' is to scie þe .v. part' of 3., & make þerof' pelottis
with sirupo violaceo. & þis is good to zeue to a strong' man / Also
þese ben good pelottis for to purge elene colre / R̄ mirabolani R̄
4 citrini .3. j., scamonie cocte .᠓ ḡ, masticis ¹grana iij., grinde hem & [1 ff. 108]
tempere hem vp wip ius of iouis barba,² & make þerof' pelottis &
þis ius, but' collige on zest.³ ¶ þis þou must' wite þat' whanne þou
wolt' purge colre, first' þou muste make a preparatijs' tofore with
8 oxisacra⁴ & wip metis þat' ben colde & moist' & wip reste.
- ¶ If' þou wolt' purge fleume þou schalt' to þis medicyne þat'
Maister William of' Salerne vside / R̄ turbit' albi gummosi .3. j &
᠓ j, diaziniberos .3. ij., & medle hem togidere & make herof' a gobet',
12 & medle þerwip a litil of' sirupe of' rosis. ¶ It' is good forto medle
ziniberos wip turbit' for þat' wole comforte þe stomac & defie
fleumatik humouris, & also it is good for to ete euery dai fastyng'
wipouten ony medlynge of' ony laxatif' / R̄ ziniberis albi .3. j., R̄
16 liquericie rase .3. ij., gariofili cardamoni, nucis muscati, granorum
paradisi .3. ij., zucare albissime .li. ij., & make herof' a letuarie not'
to hard soden; oupir wip þese pelottis: pulueris pigre,⁵ turbit' electi
ana .3. x, pulpe coloquintide .3. ij & ᠓ j, grynde all þese & sarce hem,⁶
20 & tempere hem vp wip oile of' almondis & make þerof' pelottis, &
herof' þou myzt' zeue at' oonys 3 ij. ¶ þe poudre of' pigre þat' goip [1 ff. 108, bk.]
to þese pelottis is good þouz it were bi it-silf.⁸ & it' is swiþe
comoun, & Rasis & A. acorden þeron, & hali abbot' & serapion⁹ / R̄
24 rosarum rubearum, masticis, xilobalsami, spice, cassie lignie, azari
ana,¹⁰ aloes þat' it' be good, double to alle. ¶ If' fleume be medlid wip

To purge
Flem l. h.

A prescrip-
tion of Wil-
ham of Sa-
lerne

R̄

R̄

[1 ff. 108, bk.]

A powder
used by
Rasis &
Auicena

R̄

² *iouis barba*, med. L. for *Sempervivum tectorum*. Add. 15,236, fol. 4 :

“*Iouis barba. semperuiua idem. G. Iubarbe A. siluegrene.*”

³ *zest*, Lat. et sit dosis una. “Zest, a chip of orange . . . it is also some-
times taken for a short afternoon sleep or Nap : as to go to one's zest.”—
Phillips. Zest (chip of orange), Fr. zeste, Lat. schistus—zest (nap), Esp.
siesta, Lat. sextus.

⁴ *oxisacra*—Oxysaccharum, a Composition of Sugar and Vinegar.—
Phillips.

⁵ *pigre*, *πικρός, η, όν*, sharp, bitter. Matth. Sylv. : “*Pigra Gal. in dina-
midis .i. amara, quæ amaritudine sua morbos & humores expellunt.*”

⁶ *sarce hem*, Lat. eribellentur. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 318. “a Sarce, colum.”
Phillips. “Scarce or Sarce, a fine Hair Sieve.” Lat. serica, Ital. sargia,
Fr. sarge.

⁸ *be it-silf*. The *N. E. Diet.* s. v. by 4, gives examples for the early
occurrence of ‘by oneself’ = alone. The first reference for ‘by itself’ is
quoted by Shaks.

⁹ *hali abbot & serapion* are not named in the Latin text. Hali abbot,
also called Hali þe abbot, is Ali the son of Abbas, a Persian physician
(994), the author of ‘al muluki’ = the Royal. See *Sprengel II.*, p. 412.

¹⁰ Lat. ana partes equales.

colre, þanne do [perto]¹ þe forseid pelottis of turbit, of scamonie .3 ij. & ð, sticados arabici² .3 .v, & þanne þou schalt do þerto turbit .3 .v.—& it was aforseid .3 x in þe resceit tofore—& þese pelottis ben clepid *cochium rasis*, & þis is þe beste þing þat mai be 4 for to purge dyuers humouris þat ben in þe heed / I ne knewe no medicyn laxatif þat is so good, þat is so profitable for to purge ij. humouris þat ben medlid togidere as þis medicyn is / For þere ben opere medicyns as sure as þis, saue þei ben not so myzty. Also 8 þere ben opere medicyns more myzty, saue þei ben not so sure. ¶ þou schalt purge malancoli wiþ þis list medicyn þat is ofte zeue / R̄. *epithimi* .3 j., & boile it in li j. of gotis whey, saue þou schalt boile it but a while, & lete hem stonde so al nyzt, & a morowe 12 chaufe ³ it a litil & cole it, & zeue it to drynke; ouþer make it wiþ a decoccioun of *Epithimi Rasis* R̄ *mirabolanorum indorum* .3 x, *pollipodij* 3 .v, *sene* 3 vij, *turbit* 3 iij, *sticados* .3 x, *sepe alle* þes in ij li of watir, til it come to j. li., & þanne do þerto *epithimi* 16 3 .x, & lete it boile a litil, & þan sette it adoun fro þe fier; & whanne it is cold cole it & do þerto sugre ro. 3 j., & zeue it to drynk in diluculo / If þou wolt make a medicyn þat is more strengre, zeue first bi iij. houris þese pelottis. R̄ *aloes* 3 j., *salis* 20 indi 3 .ñ., *agarici* .3 ij., *ellibori nigri* þe .iiij. part of a 3., & make herof pelottis wiþ hony, ouþer make herof a sirup.

Whanne þou hast wel purgid þe mater, þanne þou must go to þe cure in þis maner / Loke if frotynge and list medicyns þat ben 24 seid in þe firste bygynnyng of þis chapter suffise in *alopucia* þat ben not vlcera, saue oonli fallyngt awei of heeris. If þe forseid medicyns wolen not serue, þan þou muste make stronger / R̄ *spume maris*, þat is a maner kynde of sponges,⁴ saue it is more sutil & 28 more whit, 3 x. *baurac*⁵ .i. ⁶*nitrum*, in þe stide herof we moun do þerto *sal gemme*, *sulphuris*, *euforbij ana* 3 .ij., *staphisagrie*, *cantaridarum ana* 3 j, grynnde alle þese togidere & make hem wiþ oile, & anoynte herwiþ his heed. ¶ If þou wolt worche more stronglich 32 aboute þe place þat þe heeris ben pilid awei, & princpaly if he be a riche man : R̄ *olium de ben*.⁷ 3 j., *cantaridarum* & kutte awei þe

¹ Wanting.

² *stecados* or *stickadone*, Cassidonie or French Lavender. Minsheu.—*Stochas d'Arabie*. *Pharmacopœa Gallica*.

⁴ See page 179, note 1.

⁵ *baurac*, Arab. = *nitrum*.

⁷ "*Ben* or *Behn*, the Fruit of a Tree, like the Tamarisk, about the bigness of a Filberd, which the Perfumers bruise to get the Oil out of it, not so sweet smelling of it-self, but proper to receive any sort of Scent."—Philipps.

cochium
Rasis.

To purge
melancolie
R̄

[³ ff. 109]

R̄

A stronger
medicine:
R̄

After having
purged, proceed
to the
local cure;
use rubbing
and mild
medicines,
if necessary—
stronger ones

R̄

[⁶ ff. 109, bk.]

R̄

For rich people
use an
ointment of
Cantharides.

- hediz perof^t & þe wyngis ana .3 j., stampe a litil cantarides & leie hem in oile of violet,¹ & sette þe viol² vpon soft colis & lete hem boile, & putte in a smal sticke, and alwei meue hem & it wole
- 4 bicome al into an oynement, & make it haue a sote smel wij musco, & herwij anynte his heed; & þis wole make bladdris arise peron, & it wole make heeris to growe. Saf^t þou must take hede, þat in medicyns þat ben cantarides yme, þei wolen make a greet
- 8 brennyngt, and þat brennyngt wole be yuel to take awei. & sumtyme it falliþ þat þoruþ þat brennyngt comeþ a feuer. First, þou schalt helpe þis caas³ in þis maner: þou schalt anynte þe place with vnguentum⁴ album þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie /
- 12 ¶ Vlcera þat ben in allopecia ouþer tinearum⁵ summe ben curable & summe ben incurable; if it be so þat þe substauce of þe skyn be not to hard, þanne þou schalt traueile pereaboute. Also if þe skyn be hard & calose,⁶ þanne it is seid incurable // ¶ If þere ben
- 16 pustulis þat ben hote & ful of blood, & þe skyn be ful of humouris & neische, þanne it is good for to garce þat skyn, & þanne waische al his heed with þat blood hoot, & þanne hile⁷ his heed wij caule leuis. & þanne aftirward anynte al his heed wij oile of notis
- 20 ouþer of camomil hoot, til al þe scabbis perof^t be wel tobroke. & þanne bigynne for to drie with þese drynge medicyns / R̄, argillam rubeam þat it be neische & clene wijouten grauel & wijouten stoonys, & distempere it with strongt vinegre, & make it as it were
- 24 an oynement, & þerwij anynte his heed // ¶ Item, argillam partes ij., sulphuris viui, cineres corticis, cucurbite siccos⁸ pulpe colloquentide ana partem j., distempere hem with vinegre⁹ & anynte herwij. þis is good þing^t þefore & driep swiþe vlcera þat ben
- 28 hoot, & alle pustulas þat ben in þe heed & in þe face; þis driep & soudiþ // ¶ If þe matere be corrupt^t & swiþe hoot & brennyngt, first þou schalt aswage þe heete wij vnguentum album rasis þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & anynte þerwij al his heed, &
- 32 þanne leie þerevpon a lynnyn cloþ wet in þe iuys of stooncrope,¹⁰

Inflam-
tory symp-
toms, such as
fever,
to be treated
with unguen-
tum album.

[¶ If. 110]

Ulcers accom-
panying
Alopecia or
Tinea are
sometimes
incurable.

Treatment, if
there are
blood-pus-
tules, and if
the skin is full
of humours.

R̄

[¶ If. 110, bk.]

Cool with un-
guentum
album

and a lotion.

¹ in oile of violet, Lat. in oleo in fiala.

² viol, Lat. fiala. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 129, s. v. fialle.

³ Lat.: Primo casu succurre cum unctione . . . in secundo casu ponas egrum in balneo.

⁵ Lat.: Vlcerosarum autem allopiciarum seu tinearum.

⁶ calose, Lat. callosus. The references in *N. E. Dict.* are later.

⁷ hile, O.E. helan.

⁸ MS. sicceage.

¹⁰ stooncrope, Wright W., 712. 35. "Hec vermicularis, stoncrope." Lat.: crassula minor Add. 15,236, fol. 175 b.: "*Cussula minor* frigid. sic. teste de soriz. stoncrope."

& lete þis lye þeron til al þe brennyng be aweie, & þanne aftir þis anoynte his heed wiþ oile of violet. & þanne hele his heed wiþ leuys of bletarum til al þe skyn bicome moist & neische & wiþoute brennyng, & þanne drie it vp & soude it wiþ þingis þat ben afor-

Treatment of Tinea in an early stage.

R̄

seid // ¶ Item, if tinea be¹ newe, þou schalt do þerto anoper maner cure / R̄, abrotani agrestis,² fumiterre, lappacij acuti,³ artemesie⁴ ana .ij. j. boile alle þese in oile til þei bicome al drie þeron, & wiþ þis oile anoynte his heed manye daies, & þanne spryng þeron 8 ; poudre of staphisagre & of elleboro ; wiþ anoynting⁵ of þis oile þe matere schal be⁵ taken out of þe skyn, & wiþ frotyng⁶ of þis

[⁵ If. III.]

Treatment, if there is much phlegmatic (liquid) matter in the skin.

poudre it schal be dried // ¶ If þe mater be fleumatik þat is in þe skyn, & if þere be⁶ myche corrupcioun þeron & if þe skyn be 12 crusty,⁷ þanne waische his heed wiþ a decoccioun of malowis in watir, & þanne anoynte his heed wiþ oile of camomille & oile of notis medlid togidere ; & whanne it is anoyntid, hile his heed wiþ caule leuis, & þus þou schalt do manie daies til þe skyn be more 16 scabbid⁸ þan it was. & þan frote it wel wiþ an oynoun til þe skyn bicome hoot & reed, & þan þou schalt waische his heed wiþ lye maad wiþ aschis of a vine, & þeron schulen be dissolved wijn-drastis Brent.⁹ & whanne þou hast waische his heed herwiþ, þan 20 :

An ointment for removing the hair.

R̄

þou schalt anoynte his heed wiþ þe oynement þat wole pile awei þe heeris / R̄, calcis vi⁸ .̄. 3 iij., arsenec 3 j., aloes 3 .iij., & make herof a poudre & tempere hem togidere wiþ seþing⁹ hoot water, & herwiþ take awei hise heeris, & þan waische his heed azen wiþ þe lye þat 24 :

Another for restoring the hair and skin.

[¹⁰ If. III, bk.] to mak heres grow

R̄

is aforseid til þe matere be wel dried / þan for to make þe heeris 10 wexe & for to regendre skyn & soude it, þou schalt anoynte þe place with an oynement þat is maad þus / Take aischis maad of a mannes heer 3 j, fecis of oile, lynseed ana. 3 iij, mirre 3 j & f, 28 staphisagre .3 .ij., euforbij .3 j., make þerof an oynement // ¶ If þe matere come of malancoli, þou must take hede to make þe matere neische and moist wiþ waisching⁹ of a decoccioun of violet & fumi- terre in water, & anoynte it wiþ oile of violet til þe matere be 32 resolued & þe skyn bicome neische, & þe pacient schal ete moist

¹ not, erroneously inserted. Lat. Item fit aliter cura tinea novæ.

² abrotani agrestis; Wr. Wü., p. 544. 20, superwude. Add. 15,236, f. 14 bk.: "Abrotanum. gallice aueroy. anglie suthernewode." See Alphita, p. 1.

³ Add. 15,236, f. 17 bk.: "Lapacium acutum. anglie reddoke."

⁴ Ibid., fol. 12: "Artemisia. A. mugwort."

⁶ be, in margin. ⁷ crusty, Lat. crustosus.

⁸ scabbid, Lat. ulceratus. See Cathol. Angl., p. 320.

⁹ Lat.: in quo dissoluta sit fex vini combusta.

metis, & þou schalt baþe him in swete watir, & þan þou must drie it vp wiþ medicyns þat drien þat ben aforseid /

þis is a medicyn þat is approued of G. & is good for tineam & A general prescription of Galien for skin-diseases.
 4 vlcera þat ben harde in þe heed, & for pustulis þat ben clepid saphati,¹ & for impetiginem & morpheat,² & for fallyngt awei of heeris, & for al maner scabbe. R̄, gallarum .3 iij., seminis secute R̄
 3 .ij., baurac .3 j. & þe iiij part of [3 i],³ sulphuris viť 3 ij. & ű,
 8 arsenec rubij, aristologie rotunde ana ʒ ij, salis armoniaci, fuliginis, amigdalorum ⁴amarum, colloquintide, eris vsti, venarum [4 lf. 112]
 citrinarum, & in stide þerof þou miȝt take lumbricos terestres brent, litargirij, capparum foliorum, fice sicce,⁵ radices canne siccarum, flos
 12 eris, alumnis sicci, rosarum, mirre, aloes, olibani ana ʒ ʒ, picis liquide, foliorum oliue, vellis vaccini, ana .3 j., grinde hem sutilly & tempere hem wiþ eysel, & sette hem in þe sunne in a vessel of glas, ouþer in a vessel of erþe glasiđ⁶ wiþinne, & mene hem wel in þe
 16 sunne, til it bicome al an oynement, & herwiþ anynte his heed, til it be perfitly hool, saue þou muste take kepe of þingis þat ben aforseid þat þe humouris be purgid /

Of þe fallynge of heeris //

20 **C**Aluiciem is a fallyngt away of a mannis heeris tofore, & is as 7 miche to seie as ballid. & oon cause herof [is]⁸ kindly as Baldness is caused by old age, whanne a man is oold for to be ballid, & oon þerof is vnkyndly, as whanne a mannis heeris falliþ awei for sijknes as it is aforseid & by sickness,
 24 remedijs þerfore in þe nexte chapiter here tofore. & if þis cause come for elde þanne it is incurable // ¶ Also ballidnesse ⁹comeþ of [9 lf. 112, bk.] humouris rotid þat ben vndir þe skyn as it is in alopecia & tineam, by a corruption of the humours. & þe cure herof is bi avoidyngt of humouris as it is aforseid.¹⁰ ¶ þe

¹ *Saphati*, Hebr. Sapathath.—Philipps. “Saphatum, a dry Scurf in the head.”

² *morphea*, a skin-disease. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 243, s. v. Morfew.

³ Add. 26,106, fol. 46 b.: et quartam partem 3 iiii.

⁵ *fice sicce*, Lat. fisti sicce. Halle Table, p. 87: “Fistakia so named bothe in Greeke and Latine, and vulgarly Fistici, are the frutes of a tree.” Fisti-nut, from fistick-nut.

⁶ *glasiđ*, vitreatus.

⁷ This paragraph is omitted in the printed editions of Lanfranc's Surgery and in Add. 26,106. It is preserved in Roy. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32, where it forms part of cap. II, but with a separate heading. The translator took it for cap. III, but did not alter the following chapter-numbers. ⁸ *is*, wanting.

¹⁰ De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 66, Add. 27,944, fol. 67: “*Ballidnes is prinacioun and defeaute of heer, and comeþ of defeaute of moist fumosite in þe formere partye of þe heed; so seiþ constantyn. . . . Ofte þe heer of men*

cause whi þat^t makijþ a man ballid ben þese / as whanne þe skyn
 recehijþ along, & if^t his bodi be drie & þinne & his skyn hoot, þan
 Rꝝ þou must^t do þis cure / Take olium mirtinum & olium de mastice
 ouper olium ladani, & anointe þerwith his heed. & if^t þe tyme of 4
 þe ȝeer be coold, þou muste anointe him wijþ olium de spica //

Treatment, if
 the patient is
 young,
 if the skin is
 tender.

¶ Whanne a mannes heeris fallijþ awei so in vnkyndeli tyme, as þe
 while he is ȝong^t, þan make him a baþ & anoynte him wijþ camo-
 mille & wijþ bittir¹ almondis & wijþ oile maad þerof^t // If a man 8
 bicome ballid for cause þat^t his skyn is to neische, þese ben þe
 signys þerof^t as whanne a man haþ fewe heeris & sotil / þanne take
 olium mirtinum & olium mastice^s wijþ oilio laurino, & herwith anointe
 his heed, whanne hise heeris ben schauen awei // ¶ Item, take 12
 capilli veneris, ladani ana, grinde hem & medle hem with wijn &
 [2 ff. 118] with olio mirtino / If a mannes heed be waischen ²herwijþ, it^t wole
 make hise heeris longe & make hem sitte faste / Also take water
 þat^t bletis ben soden yn & a litil mustard, & þerwijþ waische hise 16
 heeris & after anointe him wijþ oile // ¶ Also to make heeris þat^t þe
 falle not^t / take leuys of mirte & sette hem in water til þe watir
 þerof^t bicome al troublly þan take li .j of þe water & olium infantini
 or of oile þat^t is vnripe & medle hem togidere. & þan seþe hem til 20
 þe water waaste awei, & þanne caste þerto canel & ladanum grounden
 & resoued in wijn, & make herof^t an oynement^t & anointe herwijþ þe
 rotis of þe heeris /

An-ointment
 for preserv-
 ing the hair
 from falling
 off.

Of litil pustulis þat wexijþ in a mannes face or in 24
 children hedis /³

¶ iij^o. c^o / Saphati ben litil pustule þat^t wexijþ in a mannes heed & in
 Saphati, a
 scab on the
 head and face.
 also in mennys facis þat^t ben moist, & makijþ sumtyme crustis / For 28
 to cure þis passioun, here þou schalt^t haue a good medicyn of .G.
 þat^t is aforseid of aischis of cucurbite & argilla // ¶ Children moun
 be holpen þerof^t if^t her norice absteyne hir fro salt metis & scharpe
 & fro strong^t wijn⁴, & þe child schal be bapid in a decoccioun of 32

Treatment of
 Galion.

þat ofte seruen venus fallijþ and bredijþ ballidnes litil & litil. . . And if a
 man is withoute hed-her, he is i-holde þe more vnkhonest."

¹ MS. butir. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32 bk.: cum amigdalibus amaribus.

³ Lat., Add. 26,106, fol. 47: "pustule parue que nascuntur in capite fronte et facie puerorum."

⁴ Gul. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 2, Sl. 6, fol. 55 b.: "This seknesse is not bred but in children, when þei souken, and it ys clepid a crost, and it ys mad in hem in þe forhed and in þe hede. . . The cure of it ys þat euery

camomile ¹ & rosis & fenigreci, & þou schalt anointe þe place wiþ [¹ lf. 113, bk.]
 oile of camomille hoot // ¶ Furfurea ben a maner of squamis .i. Furfures
 schellis þat comeþ of brennyng þat is in þe skyn; if þei be frotid (dandrif).
 4 wel wiþ a manys nailis, þei wolen falle awei, & sumtyme þei ben liȝt
 & wolen falle awei wiþ þe heeris, whanne þei ben schauē & wiþ
 waischingis of hoot water / If þis suffise not þerfore, anynte his Ointment.
 heed with an oynement maad of farina ciceris & þe seed of malowe
 8 uisci temperid with vinegre / If it be not remeued herwiþ, anynte
 him wiþ þis oynement // Take farine ciceris .ȝ iij, farine fenigreci, R̄
 sulphuris viui, nitri croci,² sinapis ana .ȝ .iiij., tempere hem wiþ
 vinegre and watir /

12 Of cloop³ þat is clepid fraclis or goute roset.

Pannus is a superfluite þat falliþ in a wommans face, & comeþ iiij. eo.
 ofte in childberyng, & also whanne hir menstrue is wiþholde,
 & is as it were a maner ledi⁴ colour or purpur, & sumtyme it is Pannus, a
 16 medlid myche wiþ blak, & it comeþ alwei of malancolious matere. skin-disease
 & þou schalt first purge þe matere with a decoccioun of epithimi & on the face,
 gotis whey, & þou schalt make þat⁵ he leue metis þat engendriþ which affect
 malancoly, & þanne take seed of raphani in a newe lȝnnen cloop, women, when
 20 bittir almoundis, mele of benis, seed of melonum & curcubite, they are with
 stampe hem alle togidere & tempere hem wiþ water & dissolue a lital child.
 safron & hony & make þerof an oynement, & herwiþ þou schalt Apply a
 24 face with a colature of bran // ¶ If it so be þat þis passioun be purging
 oold, þanne þow schalt make a stronger oynement wiþ þe same medicine,
 oynement, & do þerto eruca þe seed þerof, & argentum viuum [³ lf. 114]
 slayn⁶ wiþ spotil, & pepir & mirre,⁷ & tempere hem wiþ oximel, &
 28 sumtyme it is nede to sette vpon þe place watir lechis. & after and leeches.
 þat anynte it wiþ þe poude of catapucie⁸ & staphisagre temperid

day þe place most be anointed with oyle of camomille hoot. And þe norȝe
 absteine hyre fro flesses, and fro chese, and fro scharp metis."

² croci, for crossi.

³ cloop, translated from Pannus. Lat.: De pannis, cossis et gutta rosacea et de lentiginibus et cicatricibus vulnerum.

⁴ ledi, from "lead." Lat. lividus.

⁶ slay, Lat. extinguerē, precipitate. Comp. H. G. Niederschlag.

⁷ mirre, mistaken from Lat. nitro.

⁸ catapucie. Add. 15,236, fol. 74 bk.: "Catapucia, semen spurge, cata-
 puste, spurge sed." The original meaning "a medicinal preparation" is
 shown in Aelfr. Gloss.: "Catapodia, a swylfende drenc." Compare N. E. D.
 s. v. catapuce.

with hony // ¶ Also a medicyn of A. for þis passioun / Take argenti viui .5 j. g̃m amigdalorum 3 ij. medle hem togidere & stampe hem til þou se noþing¹ of þe quik siluer; & do þerto seed of melonis maad clene .3 iij., stampe alle þese togidere & anoynte herwip hir 4 face aneue & amorowe; waische hir face wip watir ¹þat violet¹ hap leye þeron / Lentigines² ben purgid wip a strong¹ purgacioun & wip a strong¹ medicyn þat ben forseid for pannum //

¶ Cossi³ ben litil pustulis & harde þat ben engendrid in þe face, 8 & principali aboute þe [nose],⁴ & þei makip þe place reed, & þefore þis medicyn is good. R̃, sulphuris viui 3 j, & make it to sutil poudre, & leie it in a pound of watir of ro. in a glasen vessel, & stoppe wel the mouþ þerof, & hange it in þe sunne in þe monþe of 12 Iulij & august bi xv. daies, & euery dai þou schalt meue þe vessel, & with þis watir þou schalt anoynte his face þere þat þe passioun is //

¶ Gutta rosacea,⁵ þat is a passioun þat turnep þe skyn of a mannys face out of his propr colour & makip þe face reed. & þis 16 passioun comeþ of humouris brent & abidiþ in þe skyn, & herfore is a good purgacioun þat purgip salt humouris. & þis is þe medicyn / R̃, litargiri, auripigmenti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris ana⁶ & poudre of 20 litil meis⁷ brent, & of þis poudre half so miche as of alle þe oþere. 20 & þis schal be poudrid wip .ij. partis of trifolij⁸ & þe .iiij. part¹ of swynys grese freisch, & make of alle þese an oynement. & on euen anoynte herwip his face, & amorowe waische his face wip a decoccioun of semina frigidorum⁹ & wip a litil campher, & þan make his 24 face clene, & þan anoynte his face wip olio tartarino,¹⁰ & al þe

Auicē.
R̃
vnguntum
amegdala-
rum.

[1 ff. 114, bk.]

Cossi are
small pus-
tules on the
face.

dubium
R̃

Gutta rosacea
changes the
colour of a
man's face.

A purging
medicīne.

[6 ff. 115]

² "Lentigo, a Pimple, or Freckle; a small red Spot in the Face, or other Part, resembling a Lentil."—Phillips.

³ Gulielm. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 63, Sl. 277, fol. 12, mentions as skin-diseases: þe ampte, þe teter and þe ryngworm. Dunglison identifies the ringworm with cossi, deriving it from Lat. cossis, or cossus, m., a worm that breeds in wood. The description given by Gul. de Sal. differs entirely from Lanfranc's description of cossi.

⁴ nose, omitted in MS., but space left free. Dubium in margin refers to it. Lat. circa nasum.

⁵ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 65, Add. 27,944, fol. 100 b.: "And nurphea is al in þe skynne, & lepra in þe fleische & in þe skynne; þis infectionn is but litil diuers from infeccioun þat hatte gutta rosea, þat infectiþ þe face wip smale pymples, and comeþ of a gleymy & a MS. & bloody & colerik humours, þat ben bytrene felle and fleische." Sl. 563, fol. 17 b.: "þo rose goute." Gutta rosacea vel rosea, Rosy Drop or Whelk. (Dunglison.)

⁶ The dose is omitted, so it is in Add. 16,106, fol. 47 b. Prints: unc. 1.

⁷ meis, "mice." Lat. pulueris parvorum suricum. meis is probably an error for miiis.

⁹ MS. fin.

¹⁰ The translator has omitted the prescription of oleum tartarinum, given

remenaunt^t herof^t þou schalt do of þis cure & fulfille wiþ medicyns
as it^t is aforseid / ad pannum /

¶ Cicatrices vulnerum ben remeued wiþ litargirum nutricum, & To remove
4 is good for manie maner þingis, for it^t doijþ awei wennys, and it^t doijþ the scars of
awei scharpnys of þe browis & gendrij good fleisch in woundis & wounds.
fretijþ awei wickid fleisch, & is maad in þis maner / Take litarge & R̄
grinde it^t sotilli in a morter & caste þerto a litil vinegre & þanne
8 a litil oile of ro., & þus þou schalt do til it^t come to a perfit^t
oynement^t /¹

Of icchinge & smertynge² and scabbe.

¶ Cap. vo.
pruritus

12 **I**Cchinge & scabbe comeþ of salt^t humouris, & a mannys kynde Itch and
haþ abhominacioun þerof^t, & putteþ³ hem out^t of þe skyn,⁴ & scabs arise
þis fallijþ ofte of salt^t metis & scharpe metis & of ⁵wijn þat^t from acid
is strong^t; & it^t fallijþ ofte to hem þat^t wakijþ & traueilijþ & humours,
16 vsijþ no baping^t & werijþ no lynnyn cloþis, & þis is oon of þe and are
siknes þat^t is contagious, for o man mai take it^t of anoþer / þis maner caused by
sijknesse comeþ sumtyme of blood, sumtyme of fleume, sumtyme of salt meat,
colre, sumtyme of malancolie / Also scabbe, sum is drie & summe strong wine,
is wet / If^t it^t be drie, it^t schal propirli be clepid icche / And if^t it^t be and filth.
20 moist, it^t schal be clepid scabbe / To þe cure herof^t þou schalt avoide They are
salt^t fleume, þou schalt defie þe matere wiþ þis sirup / R̄, abstinthij, contagious.
scabbe, R̄

Dry scab is
called itch.
Treatment of
scabs.
R̄

in the Lat. Original. It is written by a later hand on the margin of lf. 114,
bk.: "oylle off tarter. R, tarter off whyt wyn made in powder temperd wt
venygre as past, bynde yt in a clothe & put yt under embers, to yt be nelle
brent; þan put yt in a ston pot with an hulle benethe. & þis ys oylle off
tarter."

Two prescriptions, which are not in the Lat. Original, are added on the
same place:

"aqua pro guta rosacha: R, lytargiri, argenty vini ana ʒ iiij, acety alby
li. i, boyll yt to conschoun⁶ in an ertthen veselle, let stande & clere & keep yt."

"R. salt ar. ʒ i, saltpeter ʒ i, salt comun ʒ i, clere water ʒ iiij, mixte
togeder with y⁷ seate part off a ʒ off camffer, let colle, put thes ij waters
togeder."

¹ The following prescription, translated from the Lat. Original, is written
by a later hand on the margin of leaf 115: "Item gos gres & dow & diaculum,
alle sycatryues it rectifyes."

² smertyng, Lat. pruritus.—Prurigo, emertung, Wr. W., 114. 3.—emertung,
is probably a mistake for smertung, to O.E. smeortan. ³ MS. putte.

⁴ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 62, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "Schabbe is
corrupcioun of þe skynne, & comeþ of corrupt humours þat beþ bytvene felle
and fleissche, & hurtijþ & greueþ & defoulijþ þe body. For as Constantine
seijþ, kynde puttijþ out eucl humours to þe vtter parties of þe body to clenze
and to purge þe inner parties."

⁶ consumption.

abrotani, cuscute, fumus terre, ana m .j., & take xx. damascenes & xij. figis, & vj. datis, sene 3 j, thimi, epithimi .3 fl., seþe hem wel in li iij of water & li j. of vinegre til þei come to li j. & di. cole hem & do þerto iuys of fumi terre & sugur li .j. & fl, & make þerof 4 a sirup & herwiþ defie þe matere / & þan þou schalt purge him wiþ þese pelottes, R, aloes optimi, cortices mirabolani, citrini, ana .3 j stampe hem & tempere hem with iuys maad of fumi terre, til þei be picke as it were hony, & lete it drie til þer mai be maad gobetis 8

[¹ lf. 116] þerof & maad þerof pelottis, & herof þou schalt 3eue þe ¹weizte of ij. 3. at oonys, & þis medicyne mai be rehersed ofte. ¶ Also blood leting is good þerfore, if oþere particlis acordiþ þerfore // ¶ Also gotis whey is good þerfore, in which be leid mirabolani wiþ sugre, & ofte 12

R take, for þat clensiþ miche, & is maad in þis maner / In li .j of gotis whey leie 3 j. of mirabolani citrini powdrid an eue, on þe morowe heete hem & cole hem & do þerto 3 .j of sugre ro. // ¶ If it be drie scabbe, hoot watir is good for to baþe him ynne, in which is soden 16 fumi terre & enula, lappacij acuti, & in þe baþ anynte him with oile of ro. & iuys of ache & vinegre, & herwith his bodi schal be wel frotid in þe baþ ouþer in a stewe // ¶ Also an oyment þat rasis made for þe scabbe þat is drie / R salis communis, salis gemme, 20 ellebori, nigri costi, 3 .j., picis liquide 3 vj., olium violarum & aceti, & herof make an oynement / & anynte herwiþ in his stewe & frote him wel, & aftir lete him be þerinne by an hour, & aftir baþe him in a decoccioun of bran & lappacij acuti, enule campane² & arthe- 24 misie // ¶ If þe scabbe be moist / þan make an oynement of rasis / R, argenti viui extincti, ³ & in þis maner þou schalt sle⁴ it: leie it in a peuter disch & spete þeron, & frote it wiþ mannes heeris, & do þerto: whit litarge, elleborum nigrum, alumen⁵ vetus, oleandrum ana, 28 grynde alle þese togidere & tempere hem with vinegre,⁶ & herwiþ al his bodi schal be anyntid at euen, & at morowe he schal be stewid,⁷ and whanne he swetiþ his bodi schal be frotid wiþ vinegre // ¶ Also

Treatment of dry scab.

An ointment made by Rasis.

R

de scabi humida.

R

[¹ lf. 116, bk.]

eleborus nygr.

² MS. compare.

⁴ sle = slay. See p. 189, Note 6.

⁵ alumen, on margin.

⁶ The following passage omitted by the translator is written on the bottom of lf. 116, bk., by a later hand: "*¶ olio communi miscantur de quo totum corpus unguatur in cero, mane intret stupyam et cum sudaueret fricet corpus cum usne et aceto. vsne i. mosse off the oke.*"

usne, Arab ouchna. See *Littre-Devic*.—"Usnea, a kind of green Moss which grows upon Humane Skulls that have been lying in the open Air for some years, and which is used in Physick."—Phillips.

⁷ he schal be stenid, Lat. intret stupham. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, s. v. stew.

azen scabbe & icching, first lete þe pacient blood, & make him þis oynement / R̄, sulphuris viui & t̄m¹ de sale & tartaro, grinde hem wel togidere til it bicomē in þe maner of an oynement, & wiþ þis 4 oynement anoynte þe pacient, & þis wole delyuere him fro icching // ¶ Also if þe pacient haue greet brennyng & greet icching, þanne anoynte al his bodi wiþ oile of ro. þat ben good, & lete him reste so .vij. daies // ¶ Also for þe same cause / R̄ succus affodillorum & 8 distempere it wiþ whit hony & anoynte him herwith, whanne he goiþ out of his stewe; for þis oynement doip away filþe of þe skyn and clenþ myche /

Of morpue² and impetigine³ //

12 ⁴ **N**OW we han medycyns drawen of .ij. wellis & of manie maistris, þat is to wite: of Salerne, & of Costantyn, & Platearij, & of Iohannes de sancto Paulo & of opere manie auctouris, as of Ipcras, Galien, & Serapion, & Isaac, & Iohanne[s] Mesue, 16 Auicen / Hali þe abbot, & Rasis, & of opere manie auctouris / Alle þese auctouris speciali 3eue it us, saue þei acorden not in names / ⁵ Forwhi impetigo, serpigo & morphea ben seid in salerne diuers names, for þat men of salerne clepen albam & arabes clepen im- 20 petigo morphea / & men of salerne clepen morpheam / men in arabie clepen it albarec /⁵ & þerfore I wole in þis book teche þe

[41r. 117]

¶ vj°. cº

The school of Salerno

and the Arab physicians differ as to the names of the diseases.

¹ MS. *t̄m*, tantum. This prescription is neither in the prints nor in Add. 26,106, but preserved in Roy. MS. 12 C XIV, fol. 33 b.

² *morpheu*. See p. 187, Note 2. N.E. morphew, Med. L. morphea, Fr. morphée, Ital. morfea, is probably the Latinized form of an Arab. past part. marfu, connected with marf, 'thin.' See *Lane Lex.*, p. 1132.

The derivation given by Tommas: *μορφή*, is unsatisfactory. Phillips: "Morphew, a kind of white Scurf upon the Body, from the French Word *Mort-feu*, i. e. dead Fire; because it looks like the white Sparks that fall from a Brand extinguished."

³ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 63, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "And þis eucl hatte impetigo, for it lettij and greueþ þe skyn and þe fleisch, namliche with tikelingē and icchingē. Also þis eucl hatte serpigo, as it were a crepinge eucl, for it crepiþ into þe skynne al aboute as it were a serpent oþir an addre, & infectiþ þe skynne and defouleþ it wiþ smale skales aftir cracchingē and clawinge."

Lib. VII., cap. 65, fol. 100: "*Morphea* is speckes in þe skynne, and comþ of corrupcioun of mete and drinke, and what is lepre in þe fleische is morphea in þe skynne. Also som morphea is white & comþ of fleume, & som is blak & comþ of malencolia, & som is red & comþ of colera oþir of blood."

⁵⁻⁵ The passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam serpigo, impetigo, morphea sumuntur aliter apud salernitanos aliter apud arabes. Quod enim salernitani vocant

Serpigo is an acidity of the skin.

Treatment:

[¹ ff. 117, bk.]

R

Impetigo, a disease, where the skin gets white.

Morphea, a kind of leprosy confined to the skin.

Albaras.

Nota

[⁷ ff. 118]

Albaras is a local disease of the flesh and the skin.

difference of euery of hem, & after þat þe curis of hem / & I seie þat serpigo is a scharpnys of a mannes skyn, & it is clepid serpigo, for it passij fro place to place. þou schalt cure it wj gumme of cheritrees distemperid wj vinegre, ouþer gumme of 4 plumtre & anoynte wj buttir & turbentyne. & þis oynement is good þerfore / Take gres ¹ of a doke elene purid, ysopi humide, olium ro., zelow wex, terbentyne, mussilaginis *seminis citoniorum*² ana, make of alle þese an oynement, & anoynte him þerwith amorowe, 8 & þanne waische him in watir þat þer hæþ leie þeron semen melonum & violet. & be he ofte bapid wj sich swete water. & good swete mete is good for hem þat engendrij good humouris //

¶ Impetigo is anoþer maner passioun, as whanne a mannys 12 skyn chaungij in oþer colour þan it schulde, & propirli into whit colour & wipouten ony harmyng of þe skyn. & þer is no þing þeron þat harmeþ a man, saue only þe colour of þe skyn chaungij oþir þan it schulde be //³ 16

¶ Morphea is a passioun þat þe skyn is out of his propir colour & þe skyn is harmed þerbi. & morphea is a spice of lepre þat sitt in þe skyn; for rijt as lepre sittij in þe fleisch, in þe same maner rijt so morphea sittij in þe skyn.⁴ 20

¶ Albaras.⁵ Not only þe skyn, saue þe fleisch is harmed þerbi / þis is þe difference of albaras & morphea / In morphea þe vertu of expulcion⁶ is strong / & þe mater ⁷þerof is but lital, & þerfore it is al putt into þe skyn / In albaras þe vertu of expulcion is but feble & 24 þe matere is corrupt, & þerfor it is boþe in þe fleisch & in þe skyn, & þer is but lital difference bitwixe albaras & lepre, saue albaras abidiþ alwei in oon place, & lepre goiþ into al þe bodi / In boþe þese causis it is nede for to awoide humouris þat ben in þe cause⁸, 28

serpiginem, arabes vocant alunda. Et impetigo apud arabes est morphea, et apud salernitanos aliter et aliter apud nos. Quod autem Salernitani vocant morpheam, arabes vocant albaras.

² *Citonia* = *Cydonia*, quince.

³ Lat. Add. 16,106, fol. 48 bk. : et non peccat ibi nisi color.

⁴ Not in the Lat. Origin.

⁵ *Albaras*, Arab. al-baras, leprosy. Compare *Avicenna*, lib. 4, fen. 7, tract. 3, cap. 9, and ff.

⁶ MS. *expulsif*. Lat. : virtus expulsiva.

⁸ *humouris þat ben in þe cause*. Lat. : *Conveniunt in hoc quod omnis humoris indigent euacuatione peccantis*. *N. E. Dict.* s. v. cause, q. b. gives references for *to be in cause* : to be to blame.—*Littre Dict.* (14th cent.) ils en sont en cause.—*Dufr.* gives several references for *in causa esse* : to be ill, from *Causa*, morbus.

- sauē þat' oon mote haue stronger medicyns þan þat' oper. ¶ Impe-
 tigo muste haue abstynence fro þingis þat' engendriþ fleume, & he
 muste haue a *purgacioun* for to purge fleume / Anoynte þe place
 4 wip oile of whete þat' is maad in þis maner / Take whete & leie
 bitwixe two platis of iren hoot' / & presse hem togidere & þerof
 wole bicomē oile // ¶ Also in anoþer maner / Take .ij. vessels of
 erþe, so þat' þe mouþ of þe oon vessel go to þe mouþ of þe toþer
 8 vessel, & þat' oon vessel schal stonde in þe erþe, & in þe vessel
 aboute þou schalt do þi whete, & þou schalt stoppe þe mouþ of þe
 vessel þat' is aboute þat' þe whete is ynne with a plate of bras ouþer
 of iren þat' is bettere,¹ & þe plate schal be ful of smale holis. & [1 ff. 118, bk.]
 12 þan þe mouþ of þis pott' schal be ioyned to þe mouþ of þe pott' þat'
 is in þe erþe with good lute, þat' þere mowe noon eir out' þerof. &
 þan make a fier aboute þe pott' þat' is aboute þe erþe, & þere wole
 distille oile into þe pott' þat' is bineþe in þe erþe, & wip þis oile þou
 16 schalt anoynte þe place ofte, & frote harde. & if' þis suffise not,
 þanne þou schalt sette vpon þe place watir lechis ofte, for to do
 away þe fleumatik blood / If' þis suffise not, leie þer vpon a mun-
 dificatif' of cantarides stampid wip whete, til þe place schyne², &
 20 þan cure it' vp wip an oynment' of ceruce / Frote him wip an oyme-
 nent' maad of armoniac & with þe sournes of citri, & nitro is
 good þerfore //
- ¶ þe white morphu is curid wip *purgacioun* þat' purgiþ roten
 24 fleume, & wip þis special medicyn / R̄, trifere minorum .3. .iiij.,
turbit, pulueris pigre .3. .ij., *colloquintide* .3. .ij., make herof pelottis
 wip hony, & he schal take þerof .iiij. pelottis euery wike, & eueri
 dai bitwixe he schal take .3. .ij. of trifere minorum, & he mote
 28 absteine him fro metis þat' engendriþ³ fleume; & þe place schal be
 frotid in þe sunne wip an oynement' of tapsia, & þe seed of raphani,
 rubie maioris / *elleboro nigro* & mustard, & distempere hem wip
 vinegre / Also froting' wip squillis is good þerfore //
- 32 ¶ þe blac morphe is curid wip ofte *purging'* of malancoli, wip
 gotis whei, & wip *epithimo*, & opere medicyns þat' purgiþ malan-
 colie, þat' be forseid in *allopucia*; & his dietyng' schal be moist, &
 he schal absteine him fro metis þat' engendriþ malancolie, & he
 36 schal be bapid ofte in swete watir, & he schal be anoyntid & frotid
 as it' is aforseid //
- ¶ Albaras þat' is whit' is curid wip þe same þingis & with

Treatment of Impetigo.

Purge and use an ointment.

R

R

Oil of wheat obtained by distillation.

Treatment of the whyt Morphea.

R

[3 ff. 119]

Treatment of the black morfue.

² til þe place schyne, donec locus excoꝛietur.

Treatment of
white
Albaras
stronger medicyns þat ben aforseid in þe cure of þe white morphu, & niche castyng is good for hem, & þou schalt frote wel þe place with squillis in a stewe, & after þat spryng þeron poudre maad of tapsia, & staphisagre, & þe wombis of cantarides, & seed of eruce, 4 & tordis of a culuere, & þou schalt anoynte him wip blood of a blac serpent, for þat is bi prop'rtē good þefore /

Black
Albaras
is incurable,
[1 f. 119, bk.]
the attendant
discoloration
of the skin
may be cured.

Albaras þat is blak is incurable, for it is a particuler lepre, & but 1 if it be so þat it mowe be take awei wip alle rootis, it schal 8 neuere be curid; saue þe colour of his skyn mai be amendid / R7, aloxanti, þat is þe flour of þe wipi,² mirram, feces of wijn brent, reed cley, & alyme, poudre alle þese, & herwip frote þe place til þe pacient fele prickyng & brennyng. þis wole deye þe skyn for 12 manie daies, & whanne þis failiþ reherse it azen.

// Of lepre and of þe domys of lepre³ //

¶ vij^o. c^o
Leprosy
arises from
the corrup-
tion of the
melancholic
humours and
affects the
whole body.

Lep⁴ra is a foul sjuknes þat comē of malancolie corrupt, ouþir of humouris þat ben brouzt to þe forme of malancolye⁵ 16 corrupt. & it goiþ into al þe bodi, rizt as a cancre is in oon lyme of a mannes bodi / For whanne malancolie multipliē⁶, & a mannes guttis ben not strong for to putte it out, & þe weies bitwixe þe splene ben stoppid & þe poris of þe skyn closid, þan malancolious 20 blood wole rote wipinne, & rotiþ complexiouns of þe lymes. & þe bigynnyng of þe mater myzte be of blood ouþir of fleume, colre, ouþer of malancolie, neþeles whanne þe mater is fulfid 7 it is malancolie corrupt. & þis is oon of the syknessis þat ben contagious / 24 ¶ In þis place I wole sette curis of lepre þat ben profitable for a cirurgian to kuzne, & also curis þat comē ofte to a cirurgian handis /

[1 f. 120]

² Lat. aloxantum, quod est flos salis. The translator read *salicis* for *salis*. ἀλόσανθον, τό, brine. Matth. Sylv.: "Alosantus i. flos salis et inuenitur super petras nili fluminis."

³ Lat. de lepra et indicis leprosi The translator read *iudicis*.

⁴ Add. 27,944, fol. 99 b.: "Lepra mesclrye is an universal corrupcioun of membres & of humours." Four different kinds of Leprosy are distinguished, "1. the *Elaphantia*; 2. the *Tiria* or *Serpentina*, and haþ þat name of an adde þat hatte tyrus, for as an adde leneth liztliche his skynne and is skaly, so he þat hath þis maner lepra is ofte i-strept and i-hulde, & ful of scales; 3. *alopicia* & *vulpina foxissch*; 4. *leonina*, it fretiþ as a lyon & destroyeþ all þe membrs."

⁵ & inserted.

⁶ *multipliēþ*, Lat. multiplicatur.—Multiplie, fructificare, multiplicare. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 246.

- Men þat ben leprous,¹ in þe bigynnyng^r her heeris of her heed fulliþ awei, & þe heeris of her browis, & þe heeris of her berd; & her forheed bicomēþ reed & as it were schynnyng. ¶ Also in
- 4 summe þe face wexiþ reed & swellþ & is sumwhat ledi, & principali aboute [þe nose]² // ¶ Also her vois is row³ ouþer suntyme it is wondirly scharp, & þe whit^r of her izen bicomēþ al detk, & þe
- 8 heeris goon awei of her browis / Her noseþrillis bicomēþ smal, ouþer wondirly greet, & her noseþrillis ben streit^r for to drawe yn wijnd, & her nailis bicomēþ ledi / Also her breeþ wole stynke & her sotes / Also her pisce wole be streit³ & þei schulen haue greet snesyng^r / Also þei wilneþ myche to comne⁴ wiþ wommen / Also
- 12 þei schulen be heuy, & if her skyn be in þe coold eir, it wole bicomē as it were þe skyn of a gaudir⁵ þat þat hise feþeris weren pilið away / Also þese ben priuy þingis: if þou prickist his leg^r bihynde, he ne schal not fele it / & if þou waisschist hise lymes in watir,
- 16 anoon riȝt it wole drie yn // Also þese signes ben comoun: his yzen wolen bicomē rounde, & þer wolen wexe pustulis in his tunge, & her nailis wolen bicomē greet, & þer wolen wexe scabbis aboute-forþ. And þe fleisch þat schulde be bitwixe þe þombe & þe nexte
- 20 fyngir þerto schal be wastid away, & if þou prickist him in þe hele he schal not fele it, & if he be lete blood, her blood wole be scharpe & as it were ful of grauel. & if þou waischist her blood, in þe botme þerof wole leue as it were grauel. & þis sijknes aftir
- 24 þe tyme þat it is confemed is incurable, saue in þe firste bigynnyng^r it mai be curid wel //

Signs of
Leprosy:
the hair falls
off,

the face gets
red and
swollen,
the voice gets
hoarse,

the nostrils
are dis-
figured,

the breath is
foetid,

[^r 1f. 120, bk.]

the legs lose
their feeling,

pustules grow
on the
tongue,

the blood is
sharp and
leaves a sedi-
ment like
sand.

Treatment of
Leprosy.

[^r 1f. 121]

Strong medi-
cines are
dangerous.

¹ The symptoms of leprosy are similarly described by Avicenna, lib. IV., fen. 3, tract. 2, cap. 2.

² þe nose, wanting.

³ her pisce wole be streit, Lat. item accidit eis strictura pectoris.

⁴ comne for comune.

⁷ Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b.: Scias quod in egritudinibus fortibus si fuerint cronice fortes non competunt medicine, nam licet propter egritudinis fortitudinem medicina sit nocciua tamen dari non debet, quia medicinam oportet sepius iterari.

Light purg-
ing medi-
cines.

wole falle for to purge þe humour listli // A medicyn maad of gotis whey wiþ epithimo, þis medicyn is rizt^t & good, for it^t purgip malancolie lital & lital, & also a man schal not^t be greued þerebi // Pelottis þat^t be maad of epithimo þat^t ben aforseid in þe tretijs of 4 allopuca ben good herfore, for þin entent^t schal be oonly for to purge malancolie þat^t is corrupt^t, & amende his complexioun wiþ good dietyng^t. Blood letyng^t is not^t good þerfore, but^t if^t þe cauce

[² lf. 121, bk.]

come miche of blood / If^t his breeþ be streit, þanne it^t comeþ of þe 8 veyne þat^t goip to þe herte / Sumtyme it^t is in þe veyne of þe nose¹ / þou schalt^t zeue to men þat^t ben drie lepre & comeþ myche of colre,

Give the pa-
tient nourish-
ing food.

þou schalt^t zeue him gotis whey ofte for to drynke, & ²þou schalt^t, in as miche as þou miht^t, make his complexioun moist^t & baþe him in 12 tempere baþ & lete him swete þerinne; & þan þou schalt^t anyonte

A preparation
made from
the flesh of a
black snake

him wiþ oile of violet^t & oile of cucurbita, & þou schalt^t zeue him good metis þat^t engendriþ good blood, & hese metis & hise drinkis schulen be in tempere heete, not^t to hoot^t ne to coold // ¶ Summen 16

is given, until
the patient
becomes
giddy.

Then let him
lie down and
give a re-
viving medi-
cine in case
of collapse.

curiþ hem wiþ þe fleisch of a blac eddre³ þat^t ben in drie lond & among^t stones, & þan þei kutten away þe heed & þe tail of þe eddre & doip awei þe guttis wipinne / & þan þei doon hem in⁴ a vessel of erþe wiþ a lital peper & galyngale & salt^t & vinegre & watir & oile, 20 & so þei seþe þe eddre til al þe fleisch þerof^t be dissolved. þanne þe broþ herof^t is zeuen to drynke, & þe fleisch for to ete til þe pacient^t haue scotomiam⁵ & al his bodi to-swolle / Whanne his bodi is to-swolle & he haþ had scotomiam, þan leie him in a bed & lete 24 him ligge; & if^t þere falle ony ping^t to him as syncopis, ouþer greet cooldnes of hise lymes wipoutforþ, or if^t his herte quake, þan zeue

¹ Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b: "Flebotomia namque non convenit nisi quum scis lepram esse valde sanguineam cum hanelitus strictura tunc fit de uena cordis et de duabus guides timendo suffocationem: alia fit de venis nasi propter palliandum faciei colorem."

³ De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 100: "To hele opir to hide lepra as plato seiþ, best is a rede adder wiþ a white wombe; 3if þe venym is awaye & þe tail & þe heed i-smyte of, þanne þe body i-sode in leke, 3if it is ofte i-take & i-ete; in þe same wise wyne in þe whiche it rotieþ, 3if þe patient drinke ofte þerof, and þis helpiþ in many iueles, as he telleþ of a blind mannes wif þat wolde slee here housbonde, and 3af him an eddre with garlek in stede of an ele, þat it myzte slee hym, & he eet it, and aftir þat by moche swete he recovered & had his sirt goode & clere." The flesh of vipers is commended by Galen for the treatment of elephantiasis. Lib. II., Simpl. de carne viperæ.

⁴ in, in margin.

⁵ *scotomia*, σκότωμα, αρος, τό, dizziness. Vigo Interpret.: "They shoulde saye Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth before the eyes, and when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

him tiriaca maior wip a litil musco ouper hoot' wijn // In pis maner
 al his ¹fleisch wole pile & alle hise heeris wolen falle awei & newe [1 lf. 122]
 heeris wolen come vp azen / & pis medicyne schal be rehersed so
 4 ofte, & kepid wip dietyng' til he be perfilti hool / Forwhi manie
 men moun be delyuerid of' manye greet' sijknessis, if' her leche is
 kunnyng' & diligent' aboute hem, & bi negligence & defaute of
 help manie men ben perischid / Cauterijs herfore þou schalt' fynde
 8 ynowe in þe chapiter of' cauterijs, & oynementis þat' makij' clene &
 soudij', all þese þingis þou schalt' fynde in þe antidotarie.

A skilful
 physician
 often cures,
 where a neg-
 ligent one
 fails.

¶ Of waastyng' off membrs and bicomen smal /

12 **A** Mannes lyme bicomēþ smal wip greet' streyng' of' ligaturis ¶ viij^o. c^o/
 þat' takij' awei þe norisching' of' þe lyme, or of' long' akynge Limbs be-
 of' ioynt' þat' enfebliþ al þe lyme / þese þingis makij' a mannes lymes come swollen
 to bicomē smal // ¶ Also a mannes lymes bicomēþ greet' oþer þan after a
 þei schulde be,² whanne veynes ben feble & matere fallij' þerto & streight
 16 þe vertu of' souding' failij', & in pis maner þe lyme swellij', & þe ligature,
 mater is fleumatik, & for defaute of' heete it turneþ not' into they become
 quitture ³saue it' abidij' in þe lyme & swellij' þe lyme / larger by
congestion.

[3 lf. 122, bk.]

¶ A lyme þat' is bicomē smal, in pis maner þou schalt' make it'
 20 greet': if' þere be ony þing' to take awei þerof' as akynge ouper ony
 strictture, ouper ony byndyng', þan remeue away þat' first' in þe
 manere as it' schal be seid in þe chapiter of' ioyntis. Whanne þe
 akynge is doon awei, þanne waische þe lyme wip a decoccioun of'
 24 malowis & violet' & rotis of' bismalue in watir, saue his lyme schal
 be in þe water no lenger þan it' bigynneþ for to bicomē reed & sum-
 what' to swelle, & be war þat' his lyme be not' so longe in þe water
 til þat' he swete, & þan drie his lyme wip a lynnen cloop & frote it'
 28 a litil wip þin hond, & þanne take a litil smal 3erde & bete þe lyme
 þerwip til þou drawe blood þerto, & make a plastre þerto in pis
 maner. R̄, picis naualis, picis grece, resine albe ana, & melte alle
 þese in a panne. & whanne þei ben molten cole hem þoru3 a cloop
 32 into coold water, & þanne anoynte þin hondis with oile & þan take
 it' vp of' þe watir & tempere it' togidere & make þerof' gobetis &
 kepe hem for þin vss⁴, herof' þou schalt' plane vpon ⁵a leþer, &
 leie it' to þe lyme þat' is forseid, & so lete it' ligge adai, & aneuen

apply a wash

To restore a
 wasting limb
 remove the
 cause of the
 disease,

and an adhe-
 sive plaster.
 R

[5 lf. 123]

² Lat. ingrossatur etiam membrum aliquod ultra debitum. Compare þe
 colour . . . chaungij' opir þan it' schulde be, p. 194, Note 3.

⁴ vss.

There is no perfect cure in case of an old dislocation.

If the swelling of a limb is caused by the phlegm,

use a purging medicine,

a bandage and compresses, soaked in lye,

R

[1 ff. 123, bk.]

or in a solution of saltpetre,

R

or bruise lily-leaves, and apply them.

If the swelling arises from melancholic blood, purge and use a softening ointment.

[2 ff. 124]

drawe it away, & so lete þe lyme be til amorowe, & þanne reherse þe waischinge þat^t is forseid & þe froting^t & þe beting^t. þis wiþouten ony drede wole bringe [þe lyme] azen to his greetnes as it^t schulde be, but^t if^t þe lyme be out^t of ioynct^t & haue be longe tyme, þan it^t wole be hard, þan it^t is yuel to make þe lyme greet^t azen as it^t schulde. & þou³ it^t mowe not^t be maad greet^t as it^t schulde be, neþeles bi þis maner it^t may be myche amendid //

¶ If a mannes lyme is gretter þan it^t schulde be, if^t þe cause þerof^t be of fleume þat^t þou miȝt knowe bi neischenes of þe lyme, for if^t þou þriste yn þi fyngir, þer wol leue a pitt^t þerafter, it^t may be brouzt azen to greetnes þat^t it^t schulde be, if^t it^t be purgid ofte wiþ a medicyn þat^t is clepid trociscus de turbit^t þat^t is aforseid, & þe pacient schal kepe him fro alle metis þat^t engendriþ fleume, & he schal be war of greet replecioun of metis & drinkis, & þan þou schalt cure him wiþ medicyns þat^t schulen be seid in þe chapitre of apostemes of fleume / Take lye maad ¹of aischis of wijn or of an ook, & leie þeron a double lymnen clooþ & wete it^t wel, & þerwiþ folde þe lyme, & þan streyne þe lyme wiþ a boond, & every dai þou schalt wete it .ij. siþis in þat^t lie & bynde so his lyme, & in þis maner his lyme schal drie. Ouþer in þis maner / Take sal nitre & distempere it wiþ watir, & þanne take a sponge þat^t it^t be so myche þat^t it^t mowe lile al þe lyme & þan lete þe sponge drie so þervpon, & þan wete þe sponge azen & leie it^t on þe lyme azen, & lete it^t drie azen & alwei bynde wel þe lyme; & þis þou must do manye siþis. Or take þe leues of lillie celestie & grynde hem wel and þanne leye it^t vpon þe lyme, & þanne bynde wel þe lyme, & in þis maner þe matere wole waaste away & þe lyme wole bicomme smal as it^t schulde / If it so be þat^t þis greetnes come of malancolious blood or of greet fleume, make him a purgacioun with gotis whey & epithimo, or anopir competent medicyn. & first^t þou schalt make þe lyme neische wiþ oile of lillie, or wiþ oon of þe oynementis þat^t ben mollificatiuis þat^t schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, þanne go to þe cure þat^t is forseid. Whanne þe swellyng^t of þe lyme is doon aweie, if^t it^t be in hond or in arme, þat^t falliþ ofte tyme, or in þe foot^t & in þe leggis & in þe knee, þanne þou schalt make bitwixe þe fyngiris cauterijs þat^t ben clepid cauterium cultellare, as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of cauterijs // þe greetnes of a mannes foot^t þou schalt cure as it^t schal be seid in elephancia as it^t is conteyned in his propre chapitre /

pe firste chapiter of engendering of humours & þe
kindis of hem, & conteyneþ .xviij. chapiters /

þe .2. doo-
trine.

- E**Veri enpustym is engendrid of .iiij. humouris, oupir of water,
or of wijnd. & it is impossible for a cirurgian for to kune
a cure, but if he knowe þe cause þerof, & þerfore me pouzte
þat it was necessarie for to make a propre chapitre of þe generacioun
of humouris¹ & alle þe propurtees þerof, þat þe redere of þis book
mai knowe þe causis of apostyms & þe curis þerof & metis & drinkis
þat ben necessarie in þis cause for norisching¹ & augmenting² of þe
lymes & for to engendre natural heete / // Whanne þe mete fallip
into a mannes stomac & þou haddist anothamie þerof, þan in þe
stomak þe mete is soden, & þan fro þe stomak it goip into þe guttis,
& þerof þou haddist anothamiam, & þan þe mete goip anoon to þe
gutt þat is clepid orobum or þe sak. Veynes þat ben clepid
miseraice & þere ben manie maners þerof as it is forseid, & þei ben
maad fast wip þe botme of þe stomac & wip þe gutt þat is clepid
duodeno, & wip þe smal gutt, & wip þe gutt þat is clepid ieiunium
as it is forseid, & wip þese veynes bigynneþ þe .ij. digestioun &
berip a veyne þat is clepid kilus³ to þe lyuer, & þat veyne goip to
þe stomac fro þe lyuer. & þe .iiij. humouris of .iiij. substauncis ben
engendrid in þis place of digestioun⁴ / For þere is engendrid þere a
maner spumous substaunce whanne þe digestioun failip heete; &
þere engendriþ anoþer partie þat is sutil as it were wijn; & þe
greet substaunce goip adoun & stynkip. If þere be engendrid greet
fleume⁵ & miche, þat is cause for it quenchip þe hete of þe stomac /
Also in þe same placis is engendrid a subtil substaunce, & scharp
hete worchip þeron & gaderip him hete & scharpnes, & þis is clepid
collera rubea; & if humouris wexip to miche, it wole achaufe þe
lyuer / & causis of engendring¹ of colre ben hote metis & drinkis &

¶ 1o. co.

Impostems
ingendred
off þe .iiij
humors.

A disease can
only be cured
if the cause is
known.

[2 lf. 124, bk.]

The first
digestion.

The food is
sodden in the
stomach,
and passes
through the
guts.

Inoipit ij
dyg^o

The mesaraic
veins carry
the chyle to
the liver.

nota

The four
humours
are produced
in the liver.

1. Phlegm,
[5 lf. 125]

2. the
Choleric
humour,

¹ De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 6, Add. 27,944, fol. 33: "Pise foure humores beþ i-bred in þis manere: whan mete is i-songe in þe place of seeþinge, þat is þe stomak, first þe more sotil partie & fletinge þerof, þat phisicians clepiþ pthismaria, þat is i-drawe be certeyn veynes to þe lyuore, & þerby þe worching of kinde hete it is i-chaungid into þe foure humoures; þe bredinge of hem bigynneþ in þe lyuer, but it endiþ þere atte fulle."

³ The translator mistook *kilus* for the name of the Vein, perhaps in reference to the *Vena cava*, called *Vena chillis* by the translators of Arab. medical works, from *κοιλη*.

⁴ Lat.: Ita in hepate ex chyllo veniente a stomacho quatuor humorales substantie generantur.

3. Blood, traueile & fastyng^t & stronge saucis // ¶ Also þer is a clene sub-
staunce engendrid þat kyndeli hete worchip þeron, & þat is blood.
& þe matere herof is good metis & drynkis þat ben swete // ¶ Also
4. the Melan-
cholic
humour. þer is engendrid anoþer substaunce þat is sumwhat^t stynkyng^t & is 4
clepid malancoli & is engendrid in .ij. maners: oon maner is þis of
greet hete þat is brennyng^t & of greet cooldnes þat wexiþ hard¹;
& þe cause herof ben grete metis,² & metis þat engendriþ malancoli /
And þes .iiij. humouris Sanguis, Colera, fleumtica & Malancolia, & 8
euery of hem haþ diuers qualitees, for blood is hoot & moist, fleume
coold & moost^t, Colre hoot & drie, Malancoli coold & drie // ¶ Also
- [³ If. 125, bk.] of þese humouris ³summe ben kindeli & summe ben vnkyndely, &
þerfore in þis chapitre we wolen make mencion of alle, ffor bi 12
gending^t of þese humouris enpostyms ben engendrid //
- Phlegm is
either natural
or unnatural.
The natural
Phlegm
quiets a
man's nerves.
It is chiefly
in the back
of the head
and in the
spine.
- ¶ Of fleume þere ben ij. kyndis, oon is natural & þe toþer
innatural / Natural fleume is coold & moist^t & whit^t, & goiþ sum-
what^t to swetnes,⁴ of which lordschipe⁵ þer folowiþ a litil wilnyng^t 16
for to comoun wiþ wymmen, & þe palesie, & [he is]⁶ pesible, &
loueþ wel for to haue reste⁷ / Saue þe moost^t part^t of fleume is in
a mannes brayn, & in hise lungis, & in his stomac, & in hise guttis,
& in hise ioynctes. And þe lordschip of fleume is in þe hynder 20
part^t of a mannes heed, & in þe rigbonys. & fleume doiþ þre pro-
fitis, þe .j. is þis: sumtyme a mannes kynde failiþ blood, & þan
kinde worchiþ vpon fleume & makij blood, & of oþere humouris þis
mai not be do / þe .ij. profit^t of fleume is þis: for fleume goiþ wiþ 24
blood for to norische diuers lymes / þe .iiij. profit^t of fleume is þis,
þat it acoldiþ þe ioynctis & makij hem moist^t, for ellis in greet
meuyng^t þei schulden wexe drie / Of fleume þat is innatural ben
[³ If. 126] .iiij. maners ⁸as: fleume dulce, fleuma acetosum, fleuma ponticum, 28
fleuma dulce. fleuma salsum // ¶ fleuma dulce is in .ij. maners. þe firste maner

¹ of greet cooldness þat wexiþ hard. Lat. ex frigiditate ingrossante.

² grete metis, Lat. cibi grossi.

⁴ swetnes, a mistake for whitnes. Lat. ad paucam tendens albedinem. De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 9, *ibid.* fol. 35: "Kyndeliche fleume is coolde & moist, & white in colour, and fletinge in substaunce, a litwhat swete in sauour, oþir al werisch & vnsauoury."

⁵ of which lordshipe, Lat. de cuius dominio.

⁶ he is, wanting.

⁷ *Ibid.*, fol. 35 bk.: "a verray fleumatik man is in þe body lustles, heuy & slowz, dul of wil & of pouzt forzetteful, neissche of fleissche and quarry, bloo^a of colour, whitliche in face, ferdeful of herte, ful of spittinge snyuel & rokeinge, ful of slouthe & of slepinge, & of a litil appetite & of litil þurst."

^a bloo, MS. bood.

is pis: as whanne fleume is medlid wip blood, or as whanne hete
 worchijp wip fleume to turne it into blood // ¶ **fleuma acetosum** fleuma
acetosum.
 is seid in .ij. maners / as whanne ebullitiun¹ comeþ to fleume dulce
 4 & makijp him to rote, & it [is] herto as it bifallijp in oþere pingis
 þat ben swete, as to swete winis whanne sournes comeþ þeron it
 bicomeþ coold, & in þe same manere fleuma acetosum makijp fleuma
 dulce coold // ¶ **fleuma salsum** is moost^t drie of alle, & pis is fleuma
salsum.
 8 whanne þer is ony part^t of colre medlid wip fleume, þan it is
 clepid fleuma salsum, for þe hete of þe colre makijp it salt / ¶ **fleuma**
vitream was liquide fleuma, & wip cooldnes it is congilid, or sum
 partie of malancolie is medlid & congilijp it hard // ¶ **Colre sum**
 12 is natural & sum^{is} is innatural / Natural is list & scharp & reed in
 colour &² in substaunce, & þe more hoot þat it is þe more reednes
 it makijp / þanne vertues of colre ben þese / A colerik man schal
 haue hasti entendement & sotil³ of witt, & hardi & hasti þouzt, & [¶ It. 126, bk.]
 16 hasti answer, & listly meued to wrappe⁴ / Of colre innatural ben .v.
 maners, as *citrina*, [vitellina]⁵, *adusta*, *prassina* & *eruginosa* / **Colera**
citrina is medlid wip subtil fleume / **Colera vitellina**⁶ is medlid Colera
innaturalis.
Colera
citrina.
Colera
vitellina.
Colera
adusta.
 wip greet fleume / **Colera adusta** is in .ij. maners; oon is pis, þat
 20 it is to miche brent^t in⁷ þe lyuer; þan wip pis brennyng^t þe subtil
 partie departijp fro þe grete parties, & in pis maner it takijp a spice
 of malancoly // ¶ In anoþer manere, partijs of malancoli þat ben
 brent, [ben]⁸ medlid þerwip // ¶ And þer is iij. maner of colre
 24 adust, & is whanne his blood is adust^t *id est* brent^t as it schal be seid
 here after // ¶ þer is anoþer maner of colre þat is clepid **prassina**,⁹
 þat is swiþe bittir // ¶ *Eruginosa* is lijk þe rust of copur, & pis
 maner of colre is miche freting^t & scharp, & G. seiþ þat þis maner
 28 colre is engendrid of hoot metis & scharpe as oynouns, garlek,
 mustard, & oþere mo // ¶ Of malancoli þer ben .ij. maners—as Collera
prassina.
Colera
eruginosa.
Galien.
Malancoli.
The natural
Melancholy.
 malancoli natural & malancoli innatural / Malancoly þat is natural

¹ *ebullitiun*, Lat. *ebullitio*.

² MS. *colour*, erroneously inserted.

⁴ De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 10, Add. 27,944, fol. 36: "And so colerik men be generalliche wrappful, hardy, vnmeke, list, vnstable, inpetuous; in body long, sklenadre & lene; in colour brown, in eer blak and crips, hard and stif; in touche hoot, in puls strong & swift."

⁵ *vitellina*, wanting.

⁶ *colera vitellina*, called *yellow colera*, in De propr. rer. *ibid*.

⁷ MS. & for *in*. ⁸ *ben*, wanting.

⁹ De propr. rer., *ibid*. fol. 35 b.: "þe þridde maner of colera hatte *prassina*, & is grene of colour and bittir scharp as an herbe þat hatte *prassium*, & *marubium*, & *porrus* in latyn."

[² ff. 127] hap þese signis / þe .j. is as it were fecis of blood,¹ ² & her colour is as it were ledi & blac, & her bodi schal be leene & drie, & þei schulen haue good appetit for to ete, & þei schulen haue good mynde for to kepe þingis in her þouzt, & þei schulen be dredeful & 4
 The un-
 natural
 Melancholy.
 ful of enuye & gile & sorowe & coueitous / Malancolie innatural comeþ of humours brent & corrupt. Of euery of þese humours ben engendrid diuers maners of enpostyms / & euery maner postyme hap diuers cure as it schal be seid here-after. 8

A general word of enpostyms /

¶ ij. c^o. **A** Postyme hap manie diuers names of diuers men, for lewid cirurgians³ seien, þat þer is noon apostym but þat, þat makip quytture / Saue I seie, & alle auctouris seien þat eueri swellyng⁴ in 12
 Any swelling
 in a limb is
 called Apos-
 tema.
 Auicen.
 .A. seiþ: litil swellyngis schule be clepid litil apostyms, & grete swellyngis schulen be clepid grete apostyms / þerfore apostym is seid swellyng⁴ in lymes, ouþir inflatioun⁴ þat chaungip þe lyme oþer 16
 It arises from
 the humours,
 [³ ff. 127, bk.]
 or from water
 or wind in the
 body.
 þan it schulde be; & þe mater herof comeþ of manie diuers þingis; ouþer it comeþ of humouris, or of watir,⁵ or of wijnd / If it comeþ of humouris, þan it comeþ of blood, ouþer of fleume, or of colre, or of malancolie // Also enpostyms þat cometh of humours: summe 20
 comeþ of natural humours, & summe of innatural; & summe of sngle humours, & summe of humouris medlid togidere / And summe enpostyms cometh of causis wipinneforþ, & summe of causis withoutforþ / þe causis wipoutforþ is falling⁴ ouþer smiting, or of a 24
 The exciting
 cause is either
 external or
 internal.
 wounde, or chaunging⁴ of eir / Of þe causis wipinneforþ: as of wickidnes of humours, or to ful of humouris, or to ful of water, or of wijnd / or whanne a man is hurt wipoutforþ: or wip greet hete þat brenneþ, or wip greet cooldnes of eir þat constreineþ, or of 28
 greet drienes þat constreineþ, for alle þese causis humouris gaderip togidere & makip enpostyms // Also if a man falle vpon a stoon or vpon an hard þing, or if a man be smite wip a stoon or wip a staf, or þoruþ prickyng⁴ of a venimous beest: alle þese þingis moun 32
 [⁷ ff. 125] engendre venimous⁶ enpostyms / In þis maner þou schalt knowe

¹ De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 36: "þe kyndeliche malencolie is coole and drye, þat is i-bred in blood as drastes in wyne."

³ lewid cirurgians, Lat. rurales cyrurgici.

⁴ inflatioun, Lat. inflatio, O.Fr. inflation. *Vigo* l. c. "Inflatus, Puffed vp, swellyng."

⁶ a venimous, cancelled.

diuers enpostyms of what humouris þei comeþ / If superfluite of blood drawe to a lyme, as is clepid flegmon,¹ & þes ben þe signes þerof: þe place wole be reed for lijknes of blood, akyngge for þe greet replēcious þerof, beting² for þe greet depnes of mater, or for greet akyngge / He may haue greuauce of a feuer³ / If þe blood be pinne in substaunce & hoot in qualite, þan it makip herisipulam. & þis is þe signe þerof, þat in þe hiȝest place þerof, it wole be moost reed and hoot; & if þou leist þi fyngir þeron, & whanne þou remeuyst þi fyngir, þe skyn wole be whit þere þi fyngir was, & anoon it wole bicomme reed aȝen, for þe mater þerof is subtil, & þe pacient haþ greet brennyng þerof & akyngge // Blood in his owne substaunce is more gretter & makip more hete, & makip apostym, þat is clepid carbunculus / þis enpostym comeþ to a man whanne he haþ haboundance of greet blood, & þerfor whanne he is replete of mete, he schulde baþe him or traueile him-silf, þat þe blood miȝte falle out, & for his greetnes & hardnes it mai not be resolued with hete, & þanne it leueþ in þe skyn & makip apostym.⁵ þe signes herof ben þes: þe enpostym is hard for þe þiknes of blood, & þe colour þerof is swart reed for þe greet hete, & þe greet heete⁶ herof makip a man sumtime to haue a feuer þerwiþ; & sumtyme it makip a man to haue sincopin,⁷ & þis is speciali whanne þe matere is brent, & in þis maner þe matere þerof is turned into venym /

Superfluity of blood causes flegmon.
Symptoms.

Poverty of blood causes herisipulam.
Symptoms.

Fullness of blood causes carbunculus.

[4 ff. 128, bk.]

Symptoms.

¹ Halle. Table, p. 84. “*φλεγμονή*, id est inflammatio uel collectio, *απο του φλεγμου*, hoc est a sanguine dicta, written moste commonly hither vnto (with muche rudenes) *Flegmon*, is properly a symple tumore (as Galen sayeth) and an affecte of the fleshie partes, comming of a greater fluxe of bloude then they nede or can naturally susteyne.”

² *beting*, Lat. pulsatio. See *N. E. Diet.*, s. v. beat, 13.

³ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 97 b.: “*And somtyme it comeþ of ventosite & of wind, & hatte bubo; somtyme of a symple humour, as of blood, and hatte flegmon; þe tokenes þerof beþ^a: rede rednes comeþ of þe colour of blood, hardenese comeþ of multitude of matiere & of hete þat wastip watry matiere, quappinge & lepinge^b of ventosite & fumosite, schrustyngge & puttinge, sore ache of þe^c stretchingge of þe place; hete comeþ of hote matiere, & swellinge comeþ of multitude of matiere.*”

⁵ 26, 106, fol. 52 b.: hoc apostema fit cum homo habundat sanguine grosso, et balneatur post ciborum repletionem aut laborat, ita quod sanguis ad extrema movetur et propter suam grossitiam et duritiam non potest a calore resoluti remanens in cuti facit apostema.

⁶ *heete*, in margin.

⁷ Halle. Table, p. 122. “*Syncope. Συγκοπή*, id est animi deliquium, uel præseps uirium lapsus, that is the defecte of the mynde, or a sodeine slyding away of the strengthe of the body, and commonly called swoundyngge.”

^a MS. *by*.

^b Lat. pulsus i. saltus.

^c MS. *ofte*.

Natural
colre
causes Ery-
sipelas.

Natural colre makij herisipulam,¹ & þe signe þerof is hardnes for þe greet drienes of colre. & þe heed of þe enpostym is schape as it were a pyne, for þe grece þat it hap.² & þe colour þerof is reed medlid wiþ þelow // 4

Phlegm
causes
vdimia.
(oedema).

An enpostym þat comeþ of fleume, is clepid vdimia³ or zima,⁴ & is a neisch enpostym, & þe colour þerof is sumwhat whizt. & if þou pressist in þi fyngir, þer wole leue þere a pitt for þe gret neischenes; & whanne þi fyngir is aweie, it wole arise vp azen. 8 þis enpostym is wiþout akyngge, saue it makij a greuauce /

Natural
malancoli
causes
Sclirosis.

[^c If. 129]

A watery
apostema.

¶ Natural malancoli makij an hard enpostym, & is clepid Sclirosis.⁵ & þe signe þerof is hardnes, & þe colour þerof is as þe colour of malancolie ledi or blac / 12

Enpostym þat comeþ of blood & watir medlid togidere. þis is þe signe þerof: if þou settist þeron þi .ij. fyngiris of þi .ij. hondis, & first pressist þat oon fyngir & þanne þat oþer, þou schalt fele þe watri mater remeue fro þat oon fyngir to þat oþer // 16

These are
the simple
Apostemas.

¶ þese ben þe differencis of apostyms þat ben symple, þat comeþ of oon matere at oonis; & þese ensaumplis ben schewid tofor, for þou schalt þe bettir knowe enpostyms þat comeþ of double matere // 20

Apostemas
arising from
more than
one cause:
Apostema
flegmonides
and
herisipilades

¶ þer comeþ an empostym of blood & colre; & if þe more partie be of blood, þan þe enpostym schal be clepid flegmonides; & if þe more partie þerof be of colre, þanne he schal be clepid herisipilades. & þe signes herof þou schalt knowe bi þe signes of 24

¹ De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*herisipila, þat is holy fure per antifrasm, þat is contrarie spekinge.*"

² Lat. propter igneitatē ipsius.

³ *vdimia, οἰδημα*, tumour.—Vigo, Chirurgery. The Interpretation: "Undimia is a barbarouse terme, in greke it is called oedema, in latin tumor. For it is softe swellynge wythout payne."

⁴ *Zima*. Sinonoma Barth, "*Zima est apostema flancorum molle sine dolore.*" From *ζῆμα*, that which is boiled, decoction. De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*In þe same manere aposteme comeþ of fleume, and hatte zimia oþur palus; for rizt as in mures and in mareys is moche superfluyte of styme & of wose, so in þis posteme is moche superfluyte; and if þou þurstist by fyngre þer vpon, hit dyueþ inne, for þe rennyngge matiere wiþdrawiþ & lettij þe vingre entre, & þanne in þe myddel is a putte as hit were þe bore of an hole; & whanne þe finge is aweye, þe matiere comeþ azen & fillij al þe place.*"

⁵ Add. 16, 106, fol. 53: *apostema quod vocatur scliros ab aliis sephiros vel sclirosis. Halle. Table, p. 114.* "*Scirrhus Σκίρρος και σκληρότης, id est durities, written of old Sclirosis, is (as I gat her of Galen in diuers places) a tumore against nature, and an affecte of harde and thicke partes.*"

þe symple apostyms // ¶ Also blood & fleume natural [ben]¹ medlid are caused by
 togidere, & makij an enpostym þat¹ is vdimia. & þe signe herof¹ the blood and
 [is]² þat¹ þe heed of þis enpostym is reed, & þat¹ opere wole be cholur.
 4 whit³ / ¶ Also blood is medlid wip greet fleume & malancolie, &
 engendrij glandulas & Scrophulas.⁴ ¶ Colre medlid with fleume
 5 makij fleume rennyng⁵, & makij þat¹ fleume goij wip him into [¶ If. 129, bk.]
 ioynctis. & herof¹ þou schalt¹ haue a pleyner teching¹ in þe chapitre
 8 of ioinctes. ¶ Also greet fleume is medlid with malancoli, & þerof¹
 comeþ glandula & Scrophule / Also malancolie & blood, colre & **Glandula &
 Scrophule.**
 fleume ben medlid alle togidere & makij an enpostym þat¹ is clepid
 antrax ; & þe malice þerof¹ is diuers after every humour. Saue if¹ **Antrax
 is caused by
 Melancholy,
 Blood Cholur
 and Phlegm.**
 12 blood & colre be feruent¹ togidere & malancolie be malicious, þan
 þere fallij manie harde pingis þerto, as quaking¹ of þe herte, &
 sincopis, & out¹ of hise wittis, & sumtyme deef. & þe signes herof¹ **Symptoms of
 Anthrax.**
 ben greet hardnes of þe enpostym, & þe schap þerof¹ as it were a
 16 pyn, & greet akyng, & sumtyme he schal not fele it. And þerfore
 .G. seij : hote apostyms, if¹ þei be not felid, ben incurable. & **Galion.**
 veynes þat¹ ben þeron wolen be of diuers colouris, & vpon þe
 enpostym þere wole be as it were a litil bladdre,⁶ & þe colour þerof¹
 20 wole be as aischis, & it semeþ þat¹ it is drawe ynward wip a þreed.⁷
 & þis enpostym is seid contagious. **Anthrax is
 contagious.
 [¶ If. 130]**
 Of humouris þat¹ ben [in]⁸ natural, þese pingis⁹ folowij þerof¹ /
 Of fleume þat¹ is corrupt cometh Bocia & testudines / Of malancolie
 24 comeþ scrophule & glandule, as it is aforseid. & of alle þese þou
 schalt¹ haue propre chapitris / Of colre þat¹ is brent¹ & of opere
 humouris þat¹ ben brent¹ & corrupt þere comeþ manie pustulis, &
 summe þerof¹ ben ful malicious after þe malice of þe matere / Herof¹
 28 comeþ ignis persicus, miliaris, formica, herpes, herpes estiomenus.
**Bocia &
 testudines
 caused by cor-
 rupt Phlegm.
 Diseases
 arising from
 corruption of
 the humours :**

¹ *ben*, wanting.² *is*, wanting.³ Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 53: facit apostema quod videtur vdimia, nisi quia in superficie magis rubet.⁴ *Halle. Table*, p. 115. "*Scrophula* (so called by Auicenna, Guidone de Cauliaco, Bruno, Theodorico, Lanfranco, and others a *Scropha*, a pregnant soowe: because it or the lyke, is a disease common to hogs) is a harde Scirrhous tumore, in the glandules of the share or arme holes, but chiefly in the necke."⁶ Compare *Guilelm. de Salic.*, I. 59. Sl. 277, fol. 11: "*In þe antrax . . . þer been smale bladders aboute þe copp of it, as þouȝ fier hadde touched þe place.*"⁷ De propr. rer., lib. 7, cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 93: "*And also it semeþ þat hit is i-drawe to þe ground þerof wip a maner þrede, i-fastned to þe vltir partye of þe bladder in þe myddel.*" Not in *Guilelm. de Salic.*⁸ *in*, wanting. Lat. De humoribus autem non naturalibus.

ignis persicus. Ignis persicus is a signe¹ þat þere ben manie pustule þeron & venymous water. & þe pustule ben reed al aboute & zelow, & occupieþ al þe lyme. & it¹ is wiþ greet¹ brennyngt. & þis comeþ of colre brent and pinne / Miliaris haþ lital pustulis, & haþ not so 4 greet¹ brennyngt, ne þe place þerof¹ is not so reed. & þis comeþ ofte of fleume medlid wiþ a lital colre // ¶ fformica is a pustula þat¹ is swiþe feruent, & haþ a cruste aboue, & it¹ comeþ of colre brent. & þis is goynge & fretiþ þe lyme aboue, & it¹ hath greet¹ brennyngt // 8

Pruna. ¶ þe firste² is a pustula þat¹ comeþ of malancolie & is blac or ledi, & it¹ comeþ of þe venemous mater of malancoli / ³Herpes esthiomenus is as miche to seie as fretyngt him-silf, & þis comeþ in manie maners / It¹ comeþ in medlyngt of colre þat¹ is brent & 12 malahcolie innatural & brent & sutil. & whanne þis falliþ into a lyme, it¹ fretiþ þe lyme for þe greet¹ malice þat¹ it¹ haþ // ¶ Also þer is anoper maner passioun þat¹ haþ manie diuers names, for summen clepen it¹ cancrum, & summen lupum. & men of fraunce clepen it¹ 16 malum nostre domine⁴ / And lumbardis clepen it¹ fier of seint antony, & summen clepen it¹ herisipulam. Of alle þese diuers names is no charge of, saue þe signes of þis sijknes ben þese : fretynge & brennyngt & blac colour & stynkyngt, & þat¹ rizt¹ foul 20 stynkyngt. & or þe skyn þerof¹ be to-broke, it¹ wole not¹ stynke, saue þe place þerof¹ wole be ledi. & if þou felist¹ þe place wiþ þi fyngir, þou schalt fynde þe fleisch þerof¹ al corrupt¹ // ¶ Cancer is a postym þat¹ is swiþe corrupt¹. & is in .ij. maners : as cancer 24 vlceratus, & cancer þat¹ is not¹ vlceratus. ¶ A cankre þat¹ is not¹

¹ *signe*, probably mistaken for *siknesse*. Lat. ignis persicus est egritudo in qua sunt multe pustule.

² Lat. Pruna similiter est pustula. The translator read : prima.—Phillips. “Pruna, a burning or live Coal; also a Carbuncle, Plague-sore, or fiery Botch.”

⁴ *malum nostre domine*; This name, given to *Erisipelas*, is due to the miraculous cures of this disease by intercession of the Holy Virgin. They are first reported by *Hugo Farsitus*, a canon of Saint Jean des Vignes, in Soissons. In his book, *De Miraculis Maria Suessionensis*, he relates the miracles, as seen by himself in the year 1128, and mentions several instances where women suffering from a severe skin-disease have been cured by the help of the Holy Virgin. Further account of a plague known under the name “mal des ardents” and of cures by the help of the Holy Virgin, is given by *Gautier de Coincy*. See G. d. C., ed. *Foquet*, p. 138.

The same disease is also called *fuoco di Sant Antonio*. See Tomm. Dict., *Maladie S. Antoine* (Godefr. Dict.). The Saints Germain, Main, Othoïne and Verain, have likewise given their names to the *erisipelas*. *Quinte Ess.*, 8. 23 : “fire of St. Antony, a brennyngt sijknes clepid þe fier of helle.”

viceratus is in .ij. maners: oon comeþ of malançolie rotid, & bigynneþ for to wexe in þe mychilnes of a fecche or of a pese. & þanne it¹ wole wexe alwei in a maner brennyng; & euere as þe [¶ If. 131]

4 matere wexiþ, so wole þe brennyng^t wexe forþ. & it^t wole haue veynes of diuers colour. & sum colour þerof^t wole be ledi, & sum wole be purpur, summe þerof^t wole be grene. & þan þis is ful of colerik matere corrupt. & it^t haþ greet akyng, & if^t þou pressist^t It has variously coloured veins,

8 it^t with þi fyngir, þe malice þerof^t wole be miche more / þis passioun comounly wole wexe in placis þat^t ben glandule / þis maner enpostym comeþ ofte in a mannes pies & in a wommans brest^t & in opere placis / Cancer viceratus. Alle þe signes þerof^t ben tofore and chiefly affects glandulous parts.

12 seid in his propre chapitre /

Now alle þe signes of enpostyms ben seid, go we to þe curis / Treatment of apostema.

þou must take kepe, wheþer þe enpostym come of causis wiþoutforþ or wiþinne / If þe enpostym comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, Nota.

16 þanne þou must purge þe matere or þou leie þerto ony repercussijf^t or ony maturatif^t or ony resoluynge^t þing^t / forwhi a repercussijf² mai not do awei al þe matere, þou; it^t somewhat aswage þe akyng in þe firste bigynnyng^t / neþeles itt^t makij þe matere hard, & aftirward þe When the causes are internal, purge before using medicines.

20 patient³ schulde haue þe more penaunce / A resoluynge^t in an vnclene [¶ If. 131, bk.] bodi drawiþ more matere þerto þan it^t resolueþ. ¶ A maturatif^t makij þe enpostym to wexe more, if^t his bodi be vnpurgid, & makij þe matere of þe enpostym feruent / In what maner þou schalt

24 purge diuers maters, in þe chapitre of allopuacia þou schalt fynde it, & in þe chapitre de doloribus iuncturarum, þat^t schal be seid here aftir / þou schalt worche in enpostyms þat^t fallij in a mannes bodi wiþoutforþ. If þou wost wel þat^t his bodi is replet, þis schal alwei

28 be þin^t entencioun, for to drawe þe matere awei in þis maner: / If^t þe enpostym be in a mannes mouþ, þan þou schalt make him no gargarisme;⁴ & if^t it^t be in his ers, þan þou schalt make him no laxatif^t medicyn / & if^t it^t be in a wommans maris,⁵ þan þou schalt When the causes are external use a contrarious medicine, i. e.

32 zeue hir no medicyn for to make menstrie; saue þou schalt alwei go to þe contrarie herof: as if^t enpostyms be in partijs aboue, þan þou schalt zeue catarticum / If^t þe enpostym be bineþe, þan zeue a purgative, when the apostema is in higher parts,

² MS. repercussist.

⁴ *gargarisme*, a gargle. Vigo, Chirurgery, Interpretation: "A gargarisme is when we cause water to bubble in our throtes, not sufferynge it to go downe."

⁵ *maris*, Lat. matrix, O.Fr. marris. Sloane 2463, fol. 194 bk.: "The moder is a skyn, þat þe childe is enclosed in his moder-wombe. And manye of þe sakenesses that women hauen, comen of greuauences of this moder, that we clepen þe marice."

an emetic, when it is in lower parts.

[¹ lf. 132]

Repelling medicines must not be used in the following cases:

- .1.
- .2.
- .3. .4.
- .5.
- .6. .7.
- .8.
- .9.
- .10.

In case of a blood-apostema use a repelling followed by

[⁶ lf. 132, bk.] a solvent medicine.

In case of suppuration apply a maturing medicine.

Open the abscess when it is ripe.

.1.
Take care not to cut, if the abscess is near a joint, looke weH upon thes Rulles

him medicyns for to caste. ¶ Whanne þe matere is purgid, þan bigynne we curis of hoot' enpostyms / þou must¹ be war of reper-
cussiuus in ten maners. ¶ Þe j. cause is þis, if' his Lodi be replet /
as it' is aforseid. ¶ Þe .ij. is, greet' fume of humours & venymous. 4
¶ Þe .iiij. is gretnes² of humours rotid. ¶ Þe .iiij. cause is, if'
apostym wexe in a noble lyme as in a mannes eere, or in a wommans
tetis, or in þe rigge abouteforþ. ¶ Þe .v. cause is: if' þe enpostym
be in þe þrote, or ny3 þe brayn, or in ony place ny3 þe herte, or ny3 8
ony lyme þat' norischeth / ¶ Þe .vj. cause is in a child. ¶ Þe .vij.
cause is, if' it' be in an oold man. ¶ Þe .viij. cause is if' it' be in a
man þat' risiþ vp of' sijknes. ¶ Þe .ix. cause is if' it' be apostema
creticum.³ ¶ Þe .x. cause is, if' an enpostyme be in a noble 12
membre, & be putt' fro þat' place to anoþer. ¶ In noon of' þese .x.
causis, þou schalt' make noon repercussif' in hote enpostyms as þou
schalt' fynde þe maner in þe antidotarie of' repercussifs / ¶ To
enpostyms of' blood, þou mi3t' do medicyns repercussifs & dis- 16
solutiuus sotilly, so þat' þe firste bigynnyng⁴ repercussifs ouercome
þe mater of' enpostym myche, & in þe stat⁵ of' þe enpostym lasse, &
in þe ende þerof' þou schalt' ⁶vse clene resoluynge þingis / If' þou
mi3t' not' wiþ repercussiuus do awei þe enpostym ne resolue him, 20
sauē he bigynneþ to quytture, þan þou schalt' do þerto medicyns
maturatiuus, til it' be wel quytturid. ¶ Of repercussiuus resolutiuus
maturatiuus & þe manere of' worching' þerof' þou schalt' fynde in þe
antidotarie. ¶ Whanne þe enpostym is quytturid & sufficiently 24
rotid, þis þou mi3t' knowe whanne þe akyngē is al aweie, & whanne
þe matere is neische þerof', & þan opene þe enpostym, þat' þou seest'
moost' competent' // Saue or þou opene ony enpostyms, þou must'
be war of' þus manie þinges: ¶ Þe j. is, þou schalt' opene noon 28
enpostym or he be perfitli rotid, but' if' þe enpostym rotid ony opir
lyme, or þat' he were ny3 ony noble lyme, or ny3 ony ioynct' // In
opere causis þou schalt' abide til he be perfitli rotid. & in þe
kuttinge þou schalt' loke where þe skyn is most' þinne and moost' 32
hangyng', & þere þou schalt' opene þe enpostym.⁷ ¶ Þe .ij. enten-

² gretnes, grossities.

³ creticum, Lat. criticum.

⁴ þe firste bigynnyng, determination of time denoted by accusative. Add. 10,440, fol. 20: "and be war, þat þe tyme of chaungynge of þis medycyn þou take it not away with violence."

⁵ in þe stat, Lat. in statu. Add. 27,944, fol. 98: "whan þe posteme is in state."

⁷ Lat.: facias apertionem ubi materia magis dependet, et ubi pellis est magis tenuis.

- cioun is þis, þat þou schalt be war, whanne þou openest¹ an enpostym, þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine ne noon arterie. ¶ Þe .iiij. cause is, þat þou schalt not avoide al þe mater at oon tyme, & principali whanne þer is myche matere, & þe enpostym is greet // ¶ Þe .iiij. is þis, þou schalt alwei opene þe enpostym in endelong þe lyme & not ouerþwert. Whanne þou hast opened þe enpostym, þan þou schalt cure him vp² as it is aforseid in þe cure of 8 vleus virulentum. þan þou schalt fille þe wounde þerof with oold lynnen cloof þat is whizt, anoon to .iiij. daies [wip] mundificatiuis of 3elkis of eiren & mele, aftir .iiij. daies wip vnguentum apostolorum³ & oon of þe mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, & 12 wip regendring pingis & drijng pingis. ¶ A colerik enpostym comeþ late to rotyng, but if it be rotid wip ony mater leid wipout forþ; þou schalt cure þis enpostym in þe same maner as þou schalt enpostyms of blood, saue þis mote haue coldere medicyns / Car- 16 bunclis schulen be curid as antrax, & þe cure herof schal be seid hereafter. ⁴Vdimia schal not be smiten yn wip repercussiu⁵ saue it schal be waastid awei in þe firste bigynnyng in þis maner. þou schalt purge him with trocis⁶ de turbit, or wip anoþer medicyn þat 20 purgijþ fleume. þan stewe⁷ þat lyme wip a decoccioun of absinthij, abrotane, sticados, & squinanti. & take aischis of a vyne or of an ook, & make þerof lie & wete þerinne lynnen cloþis & leie hem vpon þe place hoot, & binde hem streite þerto þat it hile al þe 24 enpostym, & in þis maner þe matere þerof schal be drawn awei // If it so be þat þere be ony blood medlid þerwip, or if þer haþ be leid þerto ony maturatif so þat þe mater þerof be rotid, þan opene it. Whanne it is opened, it mote haue stronger mundificatiuis þan 28 ony oþer for þe hardnes of þe quitture & þe greetnes þerof / þis is a mollificatif þat rasis made & A. R. bdellij, galbani,⁸ opoponac

[1 If. 133]
 2. not to injure a blood vessel.
 3. to evacuate the pus slowly.
 4. to cut in the direction of the limb.

R
 Choleric apostemas ripen slowly.
 Nota.

Carbuncles
 [* If. 133, bk.]
 Udimia (Oedema) shall be treated with purging medicines.

Apply compresses.

A softening plaster used by
 Rasis
 Auicen.

² cure him vp. Compare Sloane 277, fol. 1 b.: "be it flesched vp wip povāres & oynementes incarnatīfes."

³ Phillips. "Apostolorum Unguentum, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelue Drugs, according to the Number of the Apostles."

⁵ Lat. vdimia proprie non repercutitur.

⁶ trocisce, Lat. trociscus. Sloane 277, fol. 1 b. (xvth cent.), "a trosce of þe trosces maad azens serophules." Vigo l. c. "Trochiscos in Greke is a lyttle whele. Amonge the apothecaries, it is a confection made of sondry pouders and spices, by the meane of some lyquoure. In latine they call it Pastillum."

⁷ stene, Lat. evapora.

⁸ "Galbanum, a kind of strong scented Gum issuing out of a Plant call'd Fennel-Giant, which grows in Syria." Phillips.

ana, & make hem neische with oile of lilie in a mortar, & grinde hem wel togidere. & þan do þerto fenigrecum & lynseed as myche as alle þe oþere & medle hem wel togidere, & herof^t leie an enplastre vpon an hard enpostym wip þis oonly, or medle þerwip fatte ¹figis 4 & leie þis enplastre þerto til it^t be resolued & maad neische / þis medicyn makij an hard enpostym to bicomme neische & resolueþ him wipout ony swellynge / þer ben oþere manye medicyns þat^t ben mollificatif^t & resoluynge þat^t þou schalt^t finde in þe antidotarie // 8

a watri
empostym
must be
treated like
oedema.

a windi
empostym

Internal
treatment;
external
treatment.

R

A watri apostym schal be curid as vdimia, saue it^t schal haue drier medicyns, & þou schalt^t cure him in þe same maner as it^t is seid in þe chapitre, whanne a mannes lyme is to gret^t, for to make it^t smal // Ventosum apostema, þat^t is apostym þat^t is ful of wijnd. þou 12 schalt^t cure it^t wip medicyns þat^t consumeþ wijnd wipinne & wipoute / wipinneforþ as of vsyng^t of comyn & carui, & he mote be war of growel² & metis þat^t swellij; wipoutforþ wip oilis þat^t consumeþ wijnd, or with þis oile, R̄. rue, cimini, *seminis* fenicli, anisi, carui, 16 ameos³, apij, ana ʒ ſ., cold oile li. ſ., do alle þes in a viol. of glas, & do þat^t glas in a vessel wip wáter, & make þe water seþe & kepe wel þe glas þeron þat^t it^t breke not, & wip þis oile anynte þe place hoot / Item .R̄. calcem and ⁴distempere it^t wip swete wijn, & make 20 þerof^t as it^t were an enplastre & leie þer vpon / R̄. olii anetini⁵ .ʒ ij., cere. ʒ ſ., ysope þat^t it^t be drie & poudrid. ʒ j., & make herof^t a plastre. ¶ Herisipilades⁶ or flegmonides schulen be curid in þe same maner þat^t ben herisipulam & flegmon / Of glandulis & scrophulis, 24 we wolen speke in her propre chapitre //

[⁴ l. 134, bk.]

R

R

¶ Antrax schal be curid wip avoiding^t of noious matere, & wip þinges þat^t confortij þe herte & þe vertu. Neþeles at^t þe firste bigynnyng^t her vertu failij, & summe þat^t ben late blood or purgid 28 ben lost / þerfore manie men ben agast^t for to lete hem blood or ʒeue hem ony medicyn laxatif / Ech mesel⁷ if^t þe pacient be strong^t, I wole lete him blood adai, & in þe same nyzt I wole ʒeue him a medicyn laxatif // Saue herof^t þou schalt^t take kepe if^t he be feble, 32 & his herte quake, & his pous falle, þan it^t is folie for to lete him

Treatment of
Anthrax.

First remove
the evil
matter by
bleeding and
purgings,

if the patient
is strong,

² growel, Lat. legumina. See *Prompt. Parv.*, "Growelle or grewelle, Ligumen."

³ ameos. See *N. E. Diet.*, s. v. ammeos.

⁵ oleum anetinum, oil of Fennel.

⁶ Phillips. "Erysipelatodes, a Swelling like the former [Erysipelas], the Skin being of a darker Colour, and the Symptoms more gentle: a Bastard Erysipelas."

⁷ ech mesel, Lat. ego vero. Compare *selwylyly*, *Prompt. Parv.*

- blood or zeue him ony medicyn laxatif, saue take þe cure oonly in
 goddis hand // ¶ I wole telle an ensample þat' bifel in þe citee of
 mediolanensis þat' it' mowe be ensample to þee & lernyng' / þer was
 4 a man of xxx. wynter oold, ¹ & an antrax come vpon him in þe riȝt-
 side of' his necke, & he was so greet' woxe aboute his necke & his
 þrote, & he was so swollen, þat' þere was but' litil difference bitwixe
 þe gretnes of' hise schuldris & his necke. & nepeles I fond his vertu
 8 strongt. & I wiste what' sijknes it' was bi a bladdre þat' satt' þer
 vpon, & was in þe riȝtside of' his necke, & þat' was þe firste bigyn-
 nyng' of' his sijknes / & nepeles þer is manye lechis of' greet' name
 þat' cowde not' knowe þat' passioun / Also I lete him blood in boþe
 12 his armis, & drowe out' blood ynow. & þo I dietide him as a man
 þat' hadde a feuer agu. & amorowe I ȝaf' þe colature of' fruit' of'
 mirabolani citrini,² þe which þou schalt' fynde in þe chapitre of'
 allopucia / Vpon þe enpostym þere þe bladdre was, I leide scabiose
 16 grounden wiþ grese. I foond neuere bettere medicyns in þis caas þan
 þese ben / For þe man was al dissolued of' his sijknes of' þe bren-
 nyng' & of' þe akyng'e, saue þe place þat' was to-swoollen, was not'
 þe lasse, & þe man was not' þe more feblid for his laxatif, ne for no
 20 medicyn þat' he hadde / & on þe morowe I lete him blood in his
 oon arm,³ & ȝaue him a medicyn laxatif in lasse quantite þan I dide
 rapere, & þan þe swellynge aswagide niche, & in þe place þere þe
 bl[a]ddre was I fond a maner cruste as it' were a þing' þat' were
 24 brent' with fier & was of' þe brede of' iij. ynchis. & wipinne a fewe
 daies þe cruste was arerid vp, & þe pacient' felide no greet' greu-
 aunce. & in þe same place þere þe bladdre was, þere was a deep
 vlcus. & þoruȝ þe greet' hole I siz þe þrote & þe gret' veines, & I
 28 putte yn myn hond / & I ȝaf' þe pacient' good norisching' metis, &
 I made hool vlcus wiþ mundificatiuis, til he was al hool bi þe help
 of' god //
- ¶ Pustule þat' comeþ of' humours corrupt' as ignis persicus⁴ &
 32 miliaris,⁵ & ⁶ fformica⁷ schal be purgid wiþ medicyns þat' purgij colre

and leave the
 cure of a
 feeble patient
 in the hands
 of God.

The author
 relates how

[1 ff. 135]

he cured a
 man, who
 had a big
 antrax on
 his neck;

first he bled
 him,

then he used
 several
 medicines.

Nota

[3 ff. 135, bk.]

A scab
 appeared
 on the part,

and under-
 neath a
 deeply-rooted
 ulcer, which
 he cured with
 cleansing
 medicines.

Ignis per-
 sicus, Miliaris
 and Formica

² MS. inserts *hinc*, referring to another chapter.

⁴ *ignis persicus*, Herpes zoster (Dunglison). Phillips: "a Gangrene, it is also taken for a Carbuncle or a fiery Plague Sore."

⁵ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 61, Add. 27,944: "*amonge auctoures þis euil is i-clepid herpes milii oþer graunlesus, an euil ful of graynes. But swiche bleynes beþ litil and smale as greynes of mylie.*" Phillips: "*Herpes Miliaris, or Pustularis, a sort of yellow Bladders or Wheals, like Millet-Seed, that seize the Skin, cause much itching, and turn to eating Ulcers.*"

⁶ MS. ¶ instead of *§*.

⁷ MS. *fornica*. Vigo Interpret. "Formica is a little excrescence, or

are treated
with purging
medicines.

[² ff. 136]

Strengthen
the patient's
heart.

herpes esti-
omenus cura

Auicēn

Apply a
medicine
which pro-
tects the
limb from
corruption,
and cauterize
the slough.

[ff. 136, bk.]

& malancolie. & þat same medicyn schal purge humours þat be brent, as fumus terre, cuscute, lappacium acutum, cene,¹ absinthium & opere mo / Also þou schalt voide þe matere wip medicyns þat comforten þe herte, & kepiþ þat þe venym ne smite not to þe herte; þan þou schalt cure þe place with þingis þat makij cold vpon þe place. & whanne vlcus is þeron þan it is no nede, saue drie it vp as it is aforseid in þe cure ²of vlcera. Saue abouteforþ þou schalt leie colde þingis til þe cure be perfitli do / & þere come ony 8 bifalling³ þerto,³ þan alwei zeue him medicyns for to comforte þe herte, þat ben forseid in antrace // Sumtyme tofore alle þinges pruna⁴ ben good / And formicam þou schalt brenne / fforwhi a cauterie drawij out al þe matere þat is corrupt & waastij it awei. 12 ¶ Herpes estiomenus⁵ is curid after þe purgacioun of þe matere, þat þou schalt algatis take hede for to do / if his vertu be strong. & þou schalt algate aboute þe sjuknes⁶ leie a defensif of bole & terra sigillata & oile of ro. & vinegre / þis defensif, as seiþ .A., & I 16 haue ofte preued it, þis defendij eueri lyme fro corrupcioun, & þis wole not suffre þat þe matere schal make noon vlcercioun ne no fretyng. & vpon þe place þat is corrupt & deed, þou schalt leie an hoot iren, & do awei alle þe partis þat ben corrupt. & þis þou myzt⁷ 20 do with a medicyne corosif, saue an hoot iren is bettere / Whanne þe rotid matere is aweie, þanne make clene þe place wip a mundi- ficatif of iuys of ache, & do þerto a litil mirre. & whanne þe place is wel clensid, þan do þerto a medicin⁷ for to regendre fleisch, & 24 þanne drie it vp /

Of empostyms of þe heed //

¶ iij^o co

THow; we han maad a general tale of enpostyms, neþeles apostym in eueri lyme haþ diuers curis / þerfore I wole make to euery 28

outgrowynge in the Skynne, somewhat brode aboute the botome, which when it is scratched causeth as it were the styngynge of an ante, or pismare, and therefore it is also called in greke myrmecea.²

¹ cene for sene.

³ Lat. si praua superveniunt accidentia. . .

⁴ Lat. : Aliquando super omnia adiuvat prunam et formicam urere. The translator misunderstood *pruna* (name of the disease) for *pruna* (plums). Compare page 208, note 2.

⁵ Vigo Interpret. "If the substance be grosse, and aygre it vlcereth the skynne vnto the fleshe, & is called herpes esthiomenos, that is eatynge or gnawynge herpes."²

⁶ Lat. : sed ponendo supra locum sanum iuxta *ægritudinem* defensium. . .

- enpostym a diuers chapiter // ¶ I seie þat in þe skyn of a mannes heed *ben* diuers enpostyms / If *þere* be¹ enpostym þerof sutil fleume, ful of fleume as it^t schal be seid heraftir in þe chapitre of
- 4 *bocium*² / þis maner sijknes is engendrid bitwene þe skyn & the fleisch, & it^t is su[m]what holow³, & ben clepid testudines for þe lijknes of a beest^t þat^t is clepid so, & ben engendrid of hard fleume, & ben, as it^t were, hard knottis þat^t were maad fast^t to þe scolle, as it^t
- 8 were hornis / For I seie a man came to me, & he hadde in his heed vij. suche maner þingis in diuers placis, & summe þerof weren as longe & as scharp as it^t were a gotis horn or þe lenkþe of a mannes pompe, & þei weren greuous to þe man, & I hadde miche wondre
- 12 þat þer were noon vlcera in þe skyn / Whanne I siz wel þat þei hadden her bigynnyng of þe scolle boon, I⁴ wolde not^t entermete þerwith of þe cure, & I counselide him þat^t he schulde putte him into no mannes cure for to cure him, for it^t þouzte to me impossible.
- 16 ¶ þe curis of al þe enpostyms in þe heed, ben þese / If it^t be of neische matere or of rotid matere, þan þou schalt^t not^t take hede for to drie it^t wiþ mollificatiuis, þou³ I seide so in enpostyms of fleume in þe general chapitre; for þat^t myzte schende⁵ þe scolle wiþ
- 20 liquid mater or corrupt^t matere. & if þe matere þerof is hard, make it^t neische wiþ maturatiuis, saue lete þou not^t it^t rotie to myche. & or it^t be rotid to miche, opene it^t in þe maner of a triangle þus; for þis empostym of þe heed for þe gretnes of þe skyn, and for it^t is ful
- 24 of pooris, it^t mai not^t wel be clensid, but^t if þe woundis were so miche þat þe mundificatif^t myzte come to þe botme. Whanne þe enpostym is kutt^t in þe forseid maner, þanne awoide þe mater & fille þe place al wiþ pecis wet^t in oil of *rosis*, & sugre molten þeron, &
- 28 alym & leie þis in þe botme þerof til⁶ þe place be wel maad clene. Aftirward wiþ vnguentum apostolorum & opere þingis þat^t engendriþ fleisch, cure him as it^t is forseid in þe cure of vlcers þat^t ben olde //
- ¶ Nodus is curid wiþ kuttyng^t of þe skyn endelongis vpon
- 32 þe place & drawe him out^t wiþ alle hise rotis. & if þer leueþ ony rote of him, þan leie þeron þe poudre of *affadillarum*, or of sun

The Testudines are between the skin and the flesh, and are like hard knots.

³ *reta mirabilis*

A man came to Lanfranc, with seven such knots situated on his skull.

[* ff. 137]

Lanfranc thought the cure impossible.

Treatment of Apostemas on the head.

If the swelling is hard, soften it with maturatives, open it, and cleanse the wound.

[* ff. 137, bk.]

Nodus. must be removed by cutting and by the use of a Corrosive.

¹ *be*, above line.

² This passage is corrupt. Lat.: *Nam fiunt ibi apostemata a subtili phlegmate vel ab alia phlegmatis specie ut mucilaginosi et pulnosi et est sicut cancerosi bocii erit dictum.*

³ *Vigo Chirurgery transl. Traheron, fol. 5:* "The sayde Rhete mirabile is like a nette, and is therefore called Rhete, for thys pannicle is compounded onely wyth Arteries, as Guido hath declared."

⁵ *schende.* Lat.: *quia sic posset cranium inficere liquida materia.*

Water in a child's head is fatal, when within the skull;

when outside the skull, it may be cured, with ointments, and caustics.

This affection occurs owing to the

[³ lf. 138]

particular position of the child in the mother's womb.

lizt' corosif' or vnguentum viride, þat' þe rotis þerof' mowe frete awei þerwip; & þan regendre & þan drie it' vp // Watir þat' is gaderid in children hedis,¹ ouþer it' is wipinne þe scolle or wipoute þe scolle / If' it' be withynne þe scole, it' semeþ to me so perilous, 4 þat I wole bitake þe cure to god / If' þe watir be withoutforþ, it' mai be curid wip anointing' of' oile of' camomille & solfre grounden togidere; & þanne make him .iiij. cauterijs: oon a litil aboue þe forehead, & oon bihinde þe nolle in þe welle² þerof', & oon aboue þe 8 hindere celle. þese cauterijs wip þe forseid anoyntingis drieþ & waastip þe matere of' þe watir // ¶ þe water þat' comeþ in children hedis, is engendrid in þis manere / whanne ³þe maris of' a womman is watri, & þe child þat' lijþ þerine lijþ foldyng' adounward his heed 12 vpon hise knees. & þan þe moisture falliþ adoun & fyndiþ a void place in þe childis heed & entriþ þerinne / & þis passion makip a child deed ofte, or he haue ony age for to be holpen /

/ Of enpostyms of þe rootis of a mannes eeris // 16

¶ .iiij. .co

An apostema on the roots of the ear occurs sometimes, when the patient is feeble.

It is often fatal.

[⁴ lf. 138, bk.]

Begin the cure with mitigatives,

apply oil of bitter almonds.

A Postyme þat' comeþ in a mannes eere or in þe rotis of' a mannis eeren. & þis comeþ sumtyme in die cretico, whanne þat' a mannes kynde is not' so miȝti for to putte out' þe gretnes of' þe mater bi sote ne bi noon oþer avoiding', & þan kynde worchiþ 20 what' it' mai, & driueþ þe matere an hiz to þe heed & abidiþ in þe rotis of' þe eeren, & þere it' engendriþ apostym. & in þis place it' is perilous, for it' is so nyȝ þe heed & veynes & arterijs & neruys / þis manere enpostym ofte sleep a man whanne þe matere comeþ 24 violently // þe matere of' þis enpostym, ouþer it' is colre, or blood, or fleume, or malancoli; & alle þe signes herof' ben aforseid / þe cure of' ⁴þis enpostym mai not' bigynne with repercussiuus, saue it' mote bigynne wip mitigatiuis, & with þingis þat' puttip out' þe 28 matere / Waische þe place wip a decoccioun of' camomille soden þerinne / & þanne aftir þat' anoynte þe same place with oile of' camomille, & þan wete wolle in þe same oile & leie þervpon, & bi no maner leue þou not' þat' þou leie in his eere oile of' bittir almaundis, 32 for it' is a greet' help // ¶ If' þe mater be deep & it' be hard for to drawe it' out', þan it' were good to sette vpon þe place a drie ventose

¹ Hydrocephalus and its cure is treated at some length by most of the ancient physicians. See *Paul. Aegineta*, ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 250. Our author's description is abridged from *Gulielm. de Salic.*, lib. I., cap. 1.

² *welle*, Lat. fontinella.

- for to helpe to drawe out^t þe matere, & aftir resoluē þe matere & leie þerto mitigatiuis for to do awei þe akynge / ¶ If þe matere wole not^t be resoluē in þis maner, saue it^t bigynneþ to be quittance þeron, If þis is formed, open the apostema, taking care not to injure a blood-vessel or a nerve.
- 4 þan wip tempere maturatiuis þat^t ben not to hote, make þe enpostym quittance / Whanne þe place is wel rotid abide þou no brekyng^t of þe enpostym, saue opene þe place sotilly wip an instrument^t þat is competent^t þerto / & þou muste be wel war þat þou touche no veyne, ne noon arterie, ne no senewe, for þerof^t miȝt come ¹myche perel, for þere ben nerues in þe same place, if þei were kutt^t or prickid, þe patient^t miȝte lese his vois for euere / & if þere were ony veyne kutt^t þerof^t, þer miȝt come greet^t perel þerof. & whanne þe place is
- 12 opened, þan make þe place clene wip mundificatiuis, þat^t schulen be seid in þe antidotarie / & whanne þe place is perfitli clene, þanne make þe fleisch wexe & do þe cure perfitli / For bi yuel curyng^t in þis place miȝt engendre a festre, þat^t ofte tyme comeþ of^t an
- 16 enpostym /

[1 lf. 139]

Then cleanse the wound.

Apostyms of þe necke and of þe þrote /

- A** Postyms þat ben in þis place, or it^t is wipoutforþ in þe senewis, or in þe braun, or it^t is wipinneforþ bi þe place þat^t ¶ v. c.
- 20 a mannes mete goiþ doun, or bi þe þrote, or it^t is bitwixe þe .ij. placis in a place þat^t is clepid ismon.² & comounli þe enpostyms þat^t ben in þis place, comeþ of^t blood, or of^t fleume, & ful seelden it^t comeþ of^t colre, & more lattere of^t malancoli. þe humours þat^t ben
- 24 in þe cause,³ þou schalt^t knowe bi signes aforseid / If þe matere be in þe braun of^t the necke wipoutforþ, þat þou miȝt knowe ⁴bi schewing^t of^t þe enpostym wipoutforþ. & bi þese signes þou schalt^t knowe whanne þe enpostym is wipoutforþ, if þer is no letting^t in ysophagus
- 28 þere þe mete schulde go adoun, & if wijnd be not^t stoppid, þan þou miȝt^t wite wel þat þe enpostym is wipoutforþ, & also bi þe schewing^t þat^t is outward / And if þe enpostym is wipinne, þan þe patient^t schal not^t swolowe adoun his mete, ne drawe wel his bleep /
- 32 If þe enpostym þat^t is wipinne swelle greetly, his izen wolen swelle þerwip, & he schal not^t suffre his tunge in his mouþ, & he ne schal

Apostemes of the neck or the throat, are either external or internal.

In the former case, an outward swelling will be seen, but the swallowing and breathing will not be affected.

If the apostema is internal, swallowing and breathing will be difficult.

² ismon. *Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 26, "Ysion est inter ysophagum et tracheam arteriam." Read *Ysmon*. From *ισμός*, neck, narrow passage. See *ισμός* in *Stephanus Thesaur*. De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 24, Add. 27,944, fol. 49 bk.: "ȝ it happiþ þat þis euēl matere is semtyme al i-gedred wipinne þe skynne þat departiþ þe weye of þe bleep from þe weye of þe mete ȝ drynke, þat hatte isophagus ȝ bredreþ squynancye, þat sleep in on day."

³ See page 194, note 8.

Some physicians
'break' this
apostema
with a piece
of wood,
but that is
dangerous.

First, bleed
the patient
either from
the Vena

[§ If. 140]

Basilica or
Mediana,

on the next
day from a
vein under
the tongue,

then give
a gargar-
isme,
mixed with
the excre-
ments of a
sparrow, hen,
dog, or a
child.

The patient
shall drink
barley-water
[§ If. 140, bk.]

R

and eat a pre-
paration of
wheat-bran.

not speke, & þer wole go out' miche spume of' his mouþ / þanne
summe lechis þat' ben hardi wolen putte a smal tree in his prote &
breke þe enpostym, & in þat' maner þe pacient' mai be delynered ;
sauē þis maner worching' is not' sure, for in þis maner manie men 4
dieþ, & þe deēp comeþ not' of' þe sijknes, sauē it' is defaute in þe
leche¹ / þis maner sijknes þat' is so hid wiþinneforþ, it' mai be helid
wel in þe bigynnyng' in þis maner² / If' þe enpostym be hoot, þou
schalt' lete him blood in þe veine þat' is clepid basilica, & if þe 8
patient' hap had þe ³sijknes longe or þou come to him, þan þou
schalt' lete him blood in þe middil veyne of' þe arm þat' is clepid
mediana, & he schal blede so longe til he swoune almoost, & prin-
cipali if' he be strong' & ful of' fleisch / In þe .ij. dai þou schalt' 12
lete him blood in þe veines vndir þe tunge / & loke þat' þou do no
þing' aftir her counseil þat' seien þat' in þe firste bigynnyng' þou
schalt' lete him blood in veines vndir þe tunge, & after þat' in þe
heed veine or in sum oþere place. For in þis manere letyng' blood, 16
if' his bodi were replet, he miȝt' liztli be achekid// ¶ Whanne þou
hast' lete him blood as it' is aforseid, þan make him a gargarisme
wiþ a decoccioun of' ro., sumac,⁴ balaustiarum, lentium, & galla-
rum wiþ þe which be distemperid þerwiþ diameron,⁵ or tordis of' 20
a sparrow, or of' an hen, or þe tord of' an hound þat' etiþ manie
boonys & noon oþer mete,⁶ or a childis tord dried while it' is souk-
yng'. ¶ Also take an houndis tord þat' etiþ oonly boonis & of'
hennis, satireye⁷ ana, & make þerof' poudre & distempere it' wiþ 24
water & hony, & make þerof' a gargarisme, & he schal drinke water
of' barley, & he schal no þing' ete, sauē a þing' maad of' wheete-⁸ bran
in þis maner⁹ / Take newe bran of' whete & caste þeron hoot' water
& hele it' & lete it' stonde so an hour, & þanne grinde it' in a mortar 28
wiþ a pestel & cole it', & þanne seþe it' wiþ a litil salt' & ȝeue it' þe

¹ *it is defaute in þe leche*, Lat. *medico imputatur*.

² Much of our author's treatment is borrowed from *Avicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. 19, Cap. 11, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 188.

⁴ *sumac*, Fr. *Sumac*; Arab. *Summāq*. "*Sumach* or *Sumack*, a kind of rank-smelling Shrub that bears a black Berry, made use of by Curriers to dress their Leather." Phillips.

⁵ *diameron*, *δαμόρων*. *Vigo* Interpretation, "*Diamoron*, a confection made of mulberries."

⁶ By this kind of food the *album græcum*, the white dung of a dog is produced.

⁷ *satureye*, savory. Wr. Wül. 609, 30 (xv), *sauereye*.

⁹ Lat.: *nihilque comedat nisi candarusium factum de fursure in hunc modum*. *Matth. Sylv.*: "*Candarus vel candarusium—est ordeum cui non est cortex*," from *χρόνδος*, grain, groat.

- patient / & do þeron penidis.¹ & if he mai not swolowe it adoun, þanne sette a lital ventuse in þe welle of his necke² with fier & þan he schal swolowe, & anynte al his necke tofore & bihinde wip oile
 4 of camomille. & vpon þe anyntyng³ leie wolle vnwaischen,³ & make a sutil plastre of a nest of irundinis, & is good for þe
 squinacie,⁴ & is maad in þis maner / Take a nest of irundinis & boile it longe in watir, & þanne cole it þoruȝ a seue þat þe grete
 8 gobetis moun be cast awei / þan take þe rotis of lilie & seþe hem in oþer water & rotis of bismalue, & þe rote of brionie & leues of malue & bismalue, & violet, & peritorie.⁵ & whanne þei ben boilid, grinde hem wel, & medle hem wip water of irundinum þat
 12 is forseid, & do þerto leueyne & mele of fenigreci, & þan do þerto oile or grese, & make herof an enplastre / þis enplastre is good to resolute enpostym & make it quitture, wheþer ⁶it be wipinne or wipoute, & make it abrood upon a cloop & leie it vpon hoot. &
 16 anointing⁷ is good wip oile of camomille medlid wip butter þat it be oold & not salt, & after þe anyntyng⁷ leie þer vpon wolle vnwaische // ¶ ⁷If þe enpostym be wipinne, it is good þat me leie þerto no repercussiuus, saue vse gargarismis maad in þis manere / R̄,
 20 ficus siccas, semen malue, semen lini, seþe þese in water & þan cole hem, & make þerof a gargarisme; or water of figis medlid wip butter, þat makip maturatif eueri maner enpostym.

Anoint his neck,

and apply a plaster made from a swallow's nest.

R

Irundines .id est swalows.

How to prepare this plaster.

[¶ ff. 141]

In case of an inward apostema use a gargle.

R

¹ *penidis*, Vigo Interpr. "Penidie are made of the Apothecaries wyth suggre wrethen lyke ropes." Fr. penide; Lat. penidium, from *πεινιον*: spool on which the woof is wound.—Compare *diapenidion* in *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, 1886, II. p. 77, note.

² MS. *tofore* inserted but deleted.

³ *wolle vnwaischen*, *vn*, in margin. Lat. *lana succida*, Lewis, *Latin Dict.*, gives a reference from *App. Apologia*: *recens lana tonsa succida appellata est*.

⁴ *squinacie*, Lat. *squinatia*, quinsy. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 357, note.

⁵ *peritorie*, Lat. *parietaria*; wall-pellitory.

⁷ The passage from ff. 141, l. 5 till ff. 141, bk., l. 8 (p. 220, l. 15), is repeated in ff. 143, with some alterations. The corresponding words from the Latin are quoted to show the independent character of the two versions. l. 18, 19. If þe — — manere] It is good if þe enpostym be wipinne or þe more partie be withynne, & if it mai not be resolued ne do awei wip repercussiuus, þan it is good to vse gargarisms, þat ben maturatifs, maad in þis maner. (*Bonum est etiam si apostema fuerit interius, aut maior eius pars, cum tempus prolongatur quod non repercutitur nec resolvitur: uti maturatiuis gargarismatibus ut hoc.*) 20, 21. seþe — — cole hem] putte hem in water & seþe hem in water (*coque in aqua*). 21. or] & medle þerwip. 21, 22. medled wip butter] & butter & wijn. þat makip — — enpostym] þis wole make enpostym þat is withynne in þe þrote maturatif (*maturat omne intrinsecum apostema siue in gutture siue in stomacho siue in intestinis fuerit generatum*).

Whanne þe enpostym is rotid; þat þou schalt knowe bi þe aswaging¹ of þe akyng, & if þe enpostym schewe wipoutforþ, þanne opene it wip an instrument, & be war þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine, ne noon arterie. & whanne it is opened, make it clene 4 wip mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie / And if þe enpostym be wipinneforþ, þan þou schalt not breke it wip þis gargarisme þat is aforseid, saue þou schalt make a gargarism þat haly vside / Take galle, acacie, psidiarum, balaustie, aluminis 8

R [² if. 141, bk.] iamini¹ & seþe hem in water & cole it & make ² perof a gargarism, for þis gargarism wole breke enpostym / Whanne þe enpostym is broke, þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater wip hoot water, & dissolue þerinne butter & oile of violets, & make þerof a gargarism, & 12 lete him vse þis gargarism til al þe matere be drawe out, & þan after þat make him a gargarism of liquiricie,³ yreos & tamarisci / If þe matere be coold, þan þou muste vse hottere gargarism, & þan þou muste vse mundificatiuis þat per be þerinne mirre, sarcocolle,⁴ 16 þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie in þe chapitre of mundificatiuis. ¶ It falliþ sumtyme þat for reume þat falliþ adoun of a mannis heed, þer wexiþ in þe rote of þe tunge a maner round þing in þe gretnes of an almaunde, & lettij a man þat he mai not wel 20 drawe his breeþ ne ete his mete / & in þis maner þou schalt cure him as it is forseid wip þingis þat voidiþ þe matere & wip resoluyng þingis. ¶ I wole sette in þis place a cure þat bifel in þe citee of mediolanensis of a ladi þat was .L. wynter oold, & hadde a squi- 24 nacie of fleume þat occupiede al hir necke tofore wipinne & wipoute,

If this apostema shows itself outwardly, it must be carefully opened and cleansed.

Ranula vnder the toung an apostema that affects the breathing and swallowing.

A Lady had an internal and external swelling on her neck,

1, 2, þe aswaging] cesing. and if] if. 2. schewe] be seen. 3, 4. be — arterie] be wel war of veynes & arterijs. 4. whanne it is opened] þan. 5. and] om. 6, 8. wipinneforþ — — galle] al wipinne & wole not breke wip þe gargarism þat is aforseid of butter & figis & water & wijn, þan þou schalt breke him wip a medicyn þat haly þe abbot vside as wip a gargarism of gallarum. (*Si fuerit intra, nec rumpatur: cum gargarismate predicto de butyro, ficuum aqua et vino rumpatur cum ingenio subtili Haly ab. scilicet cum gargarismate stypticorum sicut decoctionis gallarum.*) 9. & seþe — — perof a gargarism] om. 10. wole breke] brekiþ þe. 11. þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater] drawe out þe quitture. 11, 12. & — butter] & a litil butter þerinne. 12. & make þerof] & herof he schal make. 12, 13. & lete him vse þis gargarism] om. matere be drawe out & þan] quitture be drawen awei after þat. 14. of liquorice — tamarisci] wip liquoris & thamarisci soden in watir.

¹ *Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 1, "Alumen iamem, A. scissum, Alimen de pluma, idem."—*Matth. Sylv.* "Iamen est prouincia Iameni uel Aliamen."

³ *liquiricie*, lycoryce, *Pr. Parc.*, p. 303. See *lyquoris* in 2nd version.

⁴ *Sarcocolla* "Is the Gumme or liqoure of a tree growyng in Persia." *Halle. Table*, p. 109.

- ¹saue wipoutforþ þe swelling was moost, & þe womman miȝte not¹ [1 lf. 142]
 speke, ne swolowe in no mete. & þis womman was vndir þe cure of^{she could}
 a ȝong² man þat³ was my scolere, and he cowde not⁴ wel fare þerwip,^{neither speak}
 4 & þo he was in dispeir of hir lijf, I was sent⁵ after & found hir in
 wickide staat,² for sche eet⁶ no mete in manye daies tofore, & sche^{nor sleep for}
 durste not⁷ slepe for drede, lest sche schulde be achekid. þan I^{fear of}
 tastide hir pous, & it⁸ was wondir feble, & I tastide þe place of⁹ þe
 8 enpostym, & I knewe wel þat¹⁰ sche schulde be raþere achekid þan
 þe enpostym wolde breke wipoute or withynne, for þe matere was
 so greet / & þan I took a rasour, & lokide where þe matere was
 moost¹¹ gaderid for to engendre quittance, & it¹² was moost¹³ able vndir
 12 þe chyn, & I felide þe place wip myn hond & tastide it¹⁴ aboute þat¹⁵
 I miȝte be war of¹⁶ nerues & arterijs, & þere I made a wounde, &
 þere I drowe out¹⁷ matere þat¹⁸ was corrupt, & it¹⁹ was foul stynkyng
 matere, & al miȝte I not²⁰ avoide anoon. & þo þe pacient²¹ hadde
 16 bettere hir breeþ, & hir pous was confortid,²² for þe lungis miȝte take
 yn eir, & þerwip þe herte was confortid, & þan I ȝaf²³ hir broþ, &
 þat²⁴ ȝede out²⁵ þoruȝ þe wounde þe moost²⁶ part. þo I studiede how
 I miȝte best²⁷ do, & I lete make a pipe of²⁸ siluir, and putte it²⁹ in at³⁰
 20 hir mouþ & passide forþere þan þe wounde was, þat³¹ it³² miȝte fulfill
 þe place of³³ þe prote. & þan I leide al aboute hir necke mundifi-
 catiuis & maturatiuis for to quittance þe toþer deel of³⁴ þe matere, &
 so I kepte it³⁵ til þer come out³⁶ of³⁷ þe wounde a greet³⁸ gobet³⁹ of⁴⁰
 24 viscous matere & stynkyng⁴¹, & was schape as it⁴² were a greet⁴³ gutt.
 & þerinne þe firste matere was engendrid, & whanne þis was oute,
 þe stynking⁴⁴ wente awei þerwip, & þe womman bigan to be stronger,
 & whanne þe wounde was maad elene I driede it⁴⁵ vp & soudide it⁴⁶;
 28 & in þis maner þe pacient⁴⁷ was maad hool. ¶ Whanne þou fyndist
 coold matere rotid in þe forseid placis, þou schalt⁴⁸ not⁴⁹ abide til þe
 enpostym breke him-silf, saue þou schalt⁵⁰ opene it⁵¹ as it⁵² is aforseid /
 & if⁵³ it⁵⁴ be not⁵⁵ rotid, þan make it⁵⁶ more maturatif, & opene it⁵⁷ as it⁵⁸
 32 is aforseid / And þis þou muste wite þat⁵⁹ þou miȝte⁶⁰ not⁶¹ abide to
 longe wip þe openyng⁶²: for þe herte & þe spiritual lymes ne mowe
 not⁶³ longe endure wipouten eir.

Lanfranc
 opened the
 apostema
 with a razor,
 where it was
 most ripe.

The patient
 could breathe,
 [s lf. 142, bk.]
 but her food
 went through
 the open
 wound;

Lanfranc in-
 troduced a
 silver tube,

and the gan-
 grenous parts
 were removed
 by suppurati-
 on.

When cold
 matter sup-
 purates, open
 the apostema,
 before it
 breaks by
 itself.

[4 lf. 143]

² in wickide staat, in statu pessimo.

/ Of enpostym of subcilio /¹

¶ vj^o. c^o.
If there is a
hot apostema
in the arm-
pit, bleed
from the
Vena nigra
or basilica.
If the apos-
tema is cold,
use mild
medicines,

and open it,
when it is
ripe.

[* If. 144]

bubo.
is difficult
to heal.

Gation.

THIS maner of enpostym haþ nede of repercuſſiuus for causis þat^t ben aforſeid, ſaue it^t is² greet nede þat^t he be avoidid wel wiþ purgaciouſ / And if^t þe enpostym be hoot, þou ſchal^t lete him 4 blood in a veyne þat^t is clepid vena nigra,³ or in þe veyne þat^t is clepid basilica in þe arm. & if^t þe matere be coold, þan avoide þe matere wiþ medicyns maad of turbit^t or ſum oþer medicyn þat^t falliþ þerfore. & as myche as þou miþ^t þou ſchal^t take þerto wiþ 8 medicyns þat^t haue not^t to greet drawyng^t / For if^t þou leiſt^t þerto þingis þat^t ben to strong^t drawing^t, þan þe enpostym wole wexe þe more / þerfore þou ſchal^t anoynte him wiþ oile of camomille, & leie þervpon wolle vnwaiſchen. & his dieting^t ſchal be ſotil. & if^t 12 þis ſuffiſe not^t, þan leie vpon a maturatif^t / & whanne it^t is rotid þou ſchal^t opene 4it^t, & principali if^t it^t be of coold matere. Saue if^t 15 þere be glandule þeron, as it^t falliþ ofte, & it^t be not^t our al rotid, as in oon place hard anopir place neische, þan þou ſchal^t haue þis 16 in certain, þat^t þis passioun ſchal be clepid bubo, & þe cure þerof^t is hard.⁶ For if^t þou drawiſt^t out^t þe matere þat^t is neische,⁷ þe matere þat^t is hard is yuel to defie. & ofte þer comeþ þerof^t ſcliroſis or a feste, & it^t wole make a man yuel diſpoſid & feuerous, as G. ſeip.⁸ 20 & þerfore aſwage þe akyng^e & þan make rotyng^t wiþ maturatiuis ; for þe matere þat^t is rotid wole helpe to rotie þe matere þat^t is hard. & whanne it^t is al neische þanne opene it^t / If^t it^t ſo be þat^t it^t breke bi it^t-ſilf^t or it^t be ful rotid, þan do þerto mundificatiuis, & vpon þe 24 place þat^t is hard leie maturatiuis, & kepe wel þe place þat^t is open fro feſtrynge. Mundificatiuis & maturatiuis þou ſchal^t fynde in þe antidotarie pleyulier.

¹ Lat.: De apostemate sub titillico, id est sub ascellis. The translator made *subcilio* out of *sub ascellis*; *titillicium*, arm-pit, from *titillo*, tickle.

² is, above line.

³ Matth. Sylv.: "Nigra uena, purpurea, media communis." V. media = V. mediana.

⁴ save if, Lat. hoc saluo, si esset . . .

⁶ Lat.: tunc nullam habes viam tutam, quum tunc est bubo, cuius cura est difficilis.

⁷ MS. inserts &.

⁸ Lat.: "totum corpus in mala tenet dispositione febris et doloris; tamquam qui ad suam salutem, si nisi unam habuerit viam, ut dicit Galienus velit nolit, per eam, etsi mala fuerit, pertransibit." A more accurate translation of this passage is given in Sl. 2463 (xv. cent.) in a treatise on Surgery compiled from various authors, in which several chapters of Lanfranc's work are embodied. Ib. fol. 110 b.: "And as Galyene seith, he that hath but oone weye to his hele allthouge þat weye be nat good, he muste holde hit wille he nylle he."

An enpostyme of þe helpers /¹

- T**his enpostym if it be hoot, þan lete him blood in þe arm
 aforzens, & not in þe same side in þe veyne þat is clepid
 4 basilica, & þan þou muste surely leie þerto repercussiuus,² & if reper-
 cussiuus suffisen not, þan resolue it & leie maturatiuus þerto, & þan
 abide til it be perfittli³ quitturid, but if þe matere be so violent
 þat it were in poynt⁴ to schende þe lyme, þan opene it & be wel
 8 war of the braun þat is in þat place / Manie men þat ben vnkun-
 nyng⁵ & supposen þat place to be fer fro ony noble lyme,⁵ makij
 þeron a deep kuttyng⁶, & supposij to haue gret⁷ worschip þerof; &
 manie idiotis wolen preise hem⁶ wel þefore. & þan þe lacertis þerof
 12 ben hurt; & whanne þe lacertis ben soudid azen, þan þe lyme þat it
 seruede fore schal be contract, wherfore þe mannes arm mai be lost
 in sum partie or in al / þefore whanne þou wolt kutte þis en-
 postym, þou schalt but kutte abouteforþ in þe skyn, & not to depe
 16 bi no maner wei for drede of þe braun, & of senewis, & of veynes
 & arterijs, & whanne þe place is opened, þan leie þerto mundifi-
 catiuus. If þe openyng⁷ be ny3 þe elbowe, & þou3 þe enpostym be
 moost⁷ quitturid, þere be wel war þat þou opene not þe enpostym
 20 aboute þe elbowe .iij. fyngris brede, neiþer⁷ wiþinne ne wiþoute. &
 also ny3 þe poynt⁷ of þe elbowe it is perilous, for it is gret hap if
 it be euere soudid. & þou3 it be soudid, þe mouyng⁷ of his arme
 schal be lost. If þer falle ony enpostym in þis place, & it come of
 24 greet⁷ matere so þat his bodi be replet, þan he mote haue greet⁷
 avoidyng⁷ wiþ laxatiuus, & þan resolue þe matere, and worche as it
 is aforseid in þe general chapter. In þe same maner þou schalt
 cure þe enpostym of his armis & of hise hondis.
- 28 ¶ Panaricium⁸ is an enpostym þat is in þe heed of a mannes
 fyngir aboute þe nail / & is swiþe hoot, & greuou, & reed, & ful of
 fier, & sumtyme it makij a man to haue þe feuere, & sumtyme it
 fretij awei al þe poynt⁷ of a mannes fyngir / þe firste cure of þis
 32 enpostym is, þat first⁷ þou schalt lete him blood, so þat alle þingis

¶ *vije. ee/*In case of an
apostema on
the arm,
bleed the
Basilic Vein,
[2 lf. 144, bk.]and open the
apostema
when it is
ripe.Unskillful
physicians,
in cutting too
deep, hurt the
muscles, and
so the patient
may lose his
arm.

[7 lf. 145]

panaricium,
an apostema
of the fingers,
near the
nails.Treatment:
First bleed
the patient,¹ Lat. De apostematibus adiutorii.³ *curid*, erased.⁴ *in poynt*, Lat.: nisi materia esset adeo violenta quod esset ad corruptionem membri parata. "And in such poynt the body bileueth." Wright, *Popular Treatise*, p. 140.—"Engelond & normandie. in god point he brozte." *Rev. of Glouc.*, 8868. Compare Fr. embonpoint. ⁵ MS. inserts &.⁶ *silf*, erased. Lat.: & inde laudantur ab aliquibus idiotis.⁸ Vigo Interpret.: "Panaritium is an aposteme about the rootes of the nayles, and it is called in Greke Paronichia; in latyn reduuia." See Dufur, s. v. redubie.

If his condition allows, then apply a plaster, compresses or an ointment.

[² If. 145, bk.]

falle þerfore as elde & strenkþe & custum. & þan þou schalt make him an enplastre of vinegre & opium, & vpon þe plastre þou schalt leie a lynnene cloof wet in a decoccioun of psillij, or anynte it wif an oynement þat is coold. & in¹ al maner þou schalt² take hede to 4 do awei þe greet hete & saue his fyngir fro corrupcioun / If þe akinge & þe brennyng go not awei in þis maner, & it be in wei for to quittance,³ þan leie þervpon scabiose grounden wif grese & do þe cure þerto, as þou schalt fynde in þe cure of antrax & carbunculis. 8 & enpostyms þat comeþ in ioynetis þou schalt fynde in her propre place of akynge of ioynetes /

Apostym wifoutforþ aboute þe spaudis and þe gibbositees⁴ //

12

¶ viij. c.

If there is an apostema on the shoulders, purge the patient,

and open it when it is ripe.

[⁶ If. 146]

If a ripe apostema breaks by itself, a fistula will arise.

Treat this fistula with mundificatives by means of a syringe, after having widened the hole of the fistula by a tent.

¶ A Postym þat comeþ aboute the spaudlis wifoutforþ, leie þou noon repercussif þerto, saue it is better to drawe þe matere outward. First þou schalt purge him, for it is greet nede in þis place, & þan þou schalt leie þerto resoluunge þingis & maturatiuis; 16 & whanne þe enpostym is rotid þou schalt not abide, to it breke it-silf,⁵ & principali in a coold cause, saue þou schalt opene þe enpostym & drawe out þe quittance, & þan þou schalt leie þerto mundificatiuis, & fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid / In þis place þou 20 schalt take⁶ hede þat ofte tyme whanne þe enpostym is quitturid & is not opened wifoutforþ, þan it brekiþ inward bitwene þe .ij. ribbis, & whanne it is to-broke, þe pacient felip but litil greuance þerof, & þan þe quittance leueþ wifinne, & in long tyme herof comeþ a 24 festre. þerfore þou schalt not abide til it breke it-silf outward, saue þou schalt opene it whanne it is quitturid, & þan leie þerto mundificatiuis & cure it vp, as it is aforseid in opere enpostyms / ¶ If it so be þat þere engendre a festre þeron, or it be maad clene 28 & entre inward, þan he mote vse waischingis þat ben mundificatif, & caste it in wif an instrument maad in þe maner of a clisterie. & if þe hole þerof be streit wifoutforþ, þan þou schalt putt yn a tente of þe pip of eldre, or of a sponge, or of malum terre,⁷ or 32

¹ in, above line.

³ in wei for to quittance, Lat. in via maturationis.

⁴ Gibbositas, tumour. Duf. Gloss.—“Gibbosity, a bunching or standing out of any part, especially of the Back.”—Phillips.

⁵ Lat.: non expecta crepationem per se.

⁷ “Malum terre, ciclamen, panis porcinus id. g^e dilnote and erthenote.” *Alphita*, p. 107. mal. t. = galluc. Wr. Wü., 133, 20.

- brionie, or gencian, & putte into þe hole of þe festre. & þis wole make þe hole of þe festre to wexe more wide þan it was, þat þe ende of þe instrument mowe be putt þat schal be schape in þe 4 maner of ¹a clisterie. & þanne þou schalt seþe hony & mirre in watir, so þat þer be .x. partis of water, & of hony .ij. partis, & of mirre .ij. partis, & if þou doist þerto ysope & sauge, it wole be þe bettir / Sumtyme it is good for to do wijn in þe stide of watir, & 8 principali if þe place be wiþouten ony hete. & þis decoccioun þou schalt caste into þe festre wiþ an instrument as it is aforseid, & make þat þe pacient turne hidir & pidir, vpward & douward, þat it mowe waisehe wel þe place þere þe quittance is. & þan make þe 12 patient turne & ligge vpon þe hole of þe festre, & make him cowþe þat al þe quittance mai goon out wiþ þe decoccioun. & whanne it is al oute, þan þou schalt make him a tent & anynte it in oile þat þe wounde close not togidere. & þus þou schalt worche, til þou se þe 16 waisching come out of þe festre wiþoute ony quittance. & whanne þe festre is al clene, þan þou schalt fulfille þe cure with oynementis þat wolen regendre fleisch & fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid / If it so be þat þe wei of þe festre þat goiþ in & out ²be bicom hard & 20 callous so þat it be a verri festre, þan þou muste hete an hoot yren þat it be as greet as þe hole of þe festre & brenne al þe hardnes þerof, & aftirward make þe cruste falle awei with buttir & opere pingis, & þanne make it clene, & þan drie it & soude it.
- 24 ¶ Also it bifallip þat children han grete bocchis in her brest, & þat comþ of cowþinge þat puttþ out þe matere, & also it comþ of greet wynd þat puttþ out þe matere / þe cure herof in þe firste bigynnyng is in þis maner for to aswage cowþing, as almaundis 28 grounden wiþ penidis & temperid with a decoccioun of fenel, & þis he schal vse / Also take swete almaundis .ij. partis, dragaganti,⁴ semen citoniorum⁵ ana, oon parti, Iulip quod sufficit. & make herof a souping medicyn,⁶ þat it be as picke as hony. & whanne 32 þe cowþinge is aswagid, þan make him a baþ wiþ rotis of altea, &

Keep the wound dilated until it is perfectly cleansed.

When the passage of
[² If. 147]

the fistula is callous, use the hot iron.

Mitigatio³
Tussis

Children have apostemas in their chest in consequence of coughing and of wind in their body.

Allay the cough,

and apply a lotion.

³ MS. *Metegacho*.

⁴ Vigo Interpr.: "*Dragagantum*. *Tragacantha* is a brode. & a woddy rote appearyng about the earth, wher-oute manye lowe braunches sprynge, spreading themselves al about. There cleaueth to thys rote, a gummy liquour of a bright colour, & somewhat swete in tast, which they cal commenly *dragagantum*."

⁵ *citonium* = *Cotonea malus*, *Cydonea*, "Quince." Wr. Wü., 13, 19. "*Citonium*, goodaepel."

⁶ a souping medicyn, Lat. *medicina sorbillis*.

leucs of^t maluc, & fenigrec, & lyne seed soden in watir, & pis schal be cast vpon þe enpostym wip a vessel holden an hize þere from /
 [1^o lf. 147, bk.] þanne aftirward þou schalt¹ dissolue þe matere & make it neische with medycyns þat^t ben forseid in hard enpostyms, & þan cure it vp 4 as it^t is aforseid in þe enpostyms of^t wijnd. ¶ A greet boch þat^t comeþ of^t þe passioun of^t þe riggeboon, whanne þei ben of^t þe ioynct, is incurable whanne it^t is confermed /

Of an enpostym apperinge in þe mouþ of þe stomac / 8

¶ ix^o c^o
 If there is an
 Apostema at
 the stomach,
 the liver, or
 the spleen,
 strengthen
 the affected
 part,

apply re-
 solving
 medicines,
 but beware
 of repellents.

[3^o lf. 148]

This apos-
 tema easily
 gets indur-
 ated, and
 causes
 dropsy.

WHanne þere schewip an enpostym in þe mouþ of^t þe stomac & aboute þe regioun of^t þe lyuer & of^t þe splene: þou3 summen wollen take hede to þe contrarie, bi my general rule² it^t is good & profitable to comferte þe place wip oile of^t mastie, & oile of^t 12 spica, & oile of^t lillie, & wip cold enplastris of^t rosis, & of^t absinthio, squinanto, cipero, citonijs wip mele of^t barli & opere þingis. & þou schalt be wel war of^t repercussiuus, whanne þe enpostym is ny3 ony principal lyme, saue þou schalt^t leie þerto resoluyng^t & maturatif^t 16 þingis. & loke þat^t þei be not medlid wip no þingis þat^t ben repercussif; for if^t þou leidist^t repercussiuus vpon þe stomak, or³ þe lyuere, or þe splene, þei wolde be enfeblid þerwip, & to al þe accioun of^t þe bodi wolde be enpeirid; for þese lymes serueþ principaly for 20 to norische al þe bodi / þerfore þou schalt^t not vse in þis caas pure maturatiuis, ne pure repercussiuus, ne colde þingis / What schalt þou do in þis caas? þou schalt^t awoide þe matere, & þou schalt^t comferte þe place with stiptikis, & tempere attractiuus, & do awei þe 24 matere. & if^t þou mi3t not, þan resolue þe matere, for it^t is greet perel⁴ of^t þis enpostym, for it^t wole liztli turne in to sclirosym, & þan it^t wole be hard to resolue, & aftirward it^t wole be cause of^t þe dropesie / þerfore if^t þou seest⁵ þat^t þe enpostym bicometh hard, þan 28 þou muste leie þerto mollificatiuis & wip confortatiuis. & þou muste be in þis caas ful wijs. & whanne þe enpostym is maturid, þan opene it^t as it^t is aforseid, & leie þerto mundificatiuis & cure vp þe enpostym as it^t is aforseid. 32

// Of an enpostym þat comeþ in iguine .id est þe gryndis

¶ x. c^o/ **A** Postym comeþ often time in iguine for vlcera of^t þe 3erde & of^t þe feet, for⁶ þe place is discending^t adoun of^t humours to þat^t 36

² rule, above line.

⁴ perel, above line.

⁵ seest, in margin.

place,¹ & þan it is not so greet drede² þerof.³ Saf if his bodi be ful of wickid humours, þan it is greet drede þerof / þis matere þou muste resolute in þis maner. Take oile of camomille & anointe þer-
 4 wip þe enpostym, & leie þervpon wolle vnwaische, & if it resolute not in þis maner, þan leie þerto maturatiuis, as it is aforseide. ¶ If þe matere be hoot, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat is clepid sophena. & þou schalt sotille⁴ his dieting, & leie þerto resolyung
 8 þingis þat ben not to strong, & þat þei drawe not to harde. & whanne þe cours of humours ceessiþ, þan leie þerto stronge resolyung þingis. & in þis caas þis is good þerfore: lie of askis & of vryne, & wete þerinne stupis & leie vpon þe enpostym, for þis
 12 makþ maturatif & waastþ it sotilly & driep it / If þou myzt not resolute it, þan leie þerto maturatiuis & opene it, & þan leie þerto mundificatiuis & hele it vp as it is aforseid /

Apostemas in the groins are caused by ulcers of the yard or the feet.
 R7
 Apply resolving medicines; if the matter is hot, bleed from the Vena Saphina.

R7

Of an enpostym of þe haunche & of þe cox.

16 **I**N þis place ofte tyme engendriþ an enpostym, & þou schalt fynde⁵ þere þe curis þerof in þe chapitre of dolour of ioynetis; saue if þe enpostym be without þe haunche in þe hipe, or in þe leg, or in þe foot, þan þou schalt do þerto þe same cure þat is aforseid
 20 in þe enpostyms of þe arm. Saf herof þou schalt take kepe, þat oftetyms an enpostym gaderiþ in a mannes hipe al wipinne in þe depnes of it, þat a leche schal not knowe it, but if he be þe more wijs / þerfor ypo[er]as seip: in placis þere enpostym is, and þe quit-
 24 ture schewe not out, it is perilous / þerfor þou muste taste it wip þi fyngris, & loke where it is moost maturid, & opene it, and drawe out þe quitture, þan leie þerto mundificatiuis, & þan fulfill þe cure as it is aforseid /

¶ xi. co.
 [5 lf. 149]

Apostema on the legs are treated like those on the arms.

A deep apostema in the hip must be opened.
 ypocrus.

¹ Lat.: Saepe provenit apostema in inguine propter vlcera virgæ et pedum: propterea quod locus est descensus humorum ad illa loca. The translator mistook "descensus" sb. for descensus part.

² drede, above line.

³ Compare Guiliel. de Salic. I. 42. Sl. 277, fol. 5 b.: "This seekenesse is cleped bubo or draguncell, or aposteme of þe grynde, & it is maad as ofttest of cold matere whiche is cast out of þe lyuere to þoo places. & oþerwhile it is hoot. It is maad also, when a man is seek in his zerde for filþehede of wommen or of oþer cause."

⁴ sotille, Lat. attenuare. O.Fr. sotilier. Compare sotilen with the abstract meaning, "argue subtly."—Piers the Plowman, ed. Skeat, Gloss.

⁵ Duf. Gloss.: "Dracunculus, ulceris vel cancri species."

Apostym of þe 3erde & ballokis /

xij. c.

A windy apostema of the yard occurs frequently with children.

[² ff. 149, bk.]

R I³t as enpostyms comeþ in opere lymes, ri3t so þei comen in a mannes 3erde & in hise ballokis, of humours hoot or cold, as bi þese signes þou mi3t knowe. Sunntyme a mannes 3erde swellip 4 with wynd, þat þou mi3t knowe bi enpostyms of wynd þat ben aforseid. & it fallip ofte to 3onge children,¹ & also þis enpostym þou mi3t knowe ²in þis maner, if þe place be hard & heuy & þer is no difference bitwixe þe colour herof & of þat oper partie of his 8 bodi.

A hot apostema of the yard and the testes is treated with blood-letting, a suitable diet,

R
a hot plaster,

R
and dressings.

[³ ff. 150]

¶ In an hoot enpostym of þe 3erde or of þe ballokis, þou schalt lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe .ij. dai lete him blood in þe sophene / Also þou schalt forbede 12 him wijn & fleisch & al maner swete metis þat engendriþ blood or colre. þan þou schalt leie þerto medecyns to putt awei þe mater, þat ben maad in þis maner. R7, cortices granatorum, rosas siccas, & lentes & seþe hem in water til þei dissolue, & þan grinde hem in 16 a mortar wip oile of roses & a lital vinegre, & make herof an enplastre & leie it þeron hoot / Also take succi portulace siluestris, & olium rosarum & a lital vinegre, & wete heryn a lymen clooþ & leie it aboute þe 3erde & hise ballokis / Whanne þe cours of þe mater 20 ceessiþ, þan do þerto mele of barley & of benis, or distempere þese wip þe 3elke of an ey & wip iuys of morel & oile of roses, & leie þeron. & whanne þe enpostym goiþ away, þan leie þeron enplastre of mele of benis ³& of fenigrec & camomille distemperid with gotis 24 talow / If þis enpostym gadere quitture & vlcera, þan cure it as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of vlcers of þe 3erde.

A cold apostema of the testes is treated with an ointment and suppositories.

R
A plaster for an indurated apostema.

R

¶ A coold empostym þat is in þe ballokis schal be curid wip anynting of þe matere wip medicyns or wip scharpe suppositorijs; 28 for þis drawip þe mater fro þe ballokis / If it be so þat þe enpostym be woxen hard in þe ballokis, þan leie þerto þis enplastre þat I haue ofte preued / Take bran of whete & grinde it wel in a mortar til it bicome al poudre, & þan distempere it wip oximel 32 maad of .ij. partis of vinegre & oon partie of hony, & dissolue þerinne gum armoniac & make herof an enplastre & leie it on hoot, & þis schal be remeued ofte. þis is auicens medicyns.

¶ If a mannes 3erde be swollen wip wijnd & þe cause be hoot, 36 þan lete him blood; if it be coold, þan leie þerto enplastris, & in þis caas among alle opere þingis þis is good / Take oile of roses iiij.

¹ Add. 26,106, fol. 59 b.: accidit quibusdam iuuenibus calidis.

partis, of^t wex o part, melte hem togidere & þan waische hem in
 coold water til it^t bicomme as it^t were a whit^t oynement^t, & herwip
A plaster for
a cold windy
apostema.
 1 anoynte þe place / If^t it^t be hoot^t, þan þou schalt^t make him caste,
[1 lf. 150, bk.]
 4 & þou schalt^t zeue him agnus castus,² & seed of^t rue & comyn &
A plaster for
a hot windy
apostema.
 anise & opere pingis þat^t waastip wijnd, & make an enplaster of
 þese pingis þat^t distrieb wijnd / ¶ An enplaster þat^t gilbert^t made
 for swellynge^t of^t a mannes zerde & it^t is mitigatif^t .R̄, crummis of^t .R̄.
 8 whit^t breed & grinde hem in a mortar & tempere hem wip watir, &
A lenitive
plaster of
Gilbert.
 þan boile hem til þei bicomme picke, & do þerto a litil oile & a litil
 hony, & þan boile hem togidere & leie it^t vpon hoot^t // If^t a mannes
 zerde be swollen wip hete of^t ligginge^t bi a womman, þus þou schalt^t
 12 helpe him / Take leues of wipi & seþe hem in water & baþe his
R̄
 zerde herynne & binde þerto þe leues // Also seþe lynseed & leues
 of^t malue & grynde hem togidere & make herof^t a plastre /

The cure of scrophularum & glandulum /³

16 **C**ure of glandularum & scrophularum is almoost^t oon, saue
¶ xiiij.
 herof^t is a difference / Scrophule comeþ þe moost^t part^t of
Scrophula is
caused by
Melancholy;
Glandula by
Phlegm.
 malancoli & ben worse to dissolue. & glandule comeþ þe most^t
 part^t of fleume, & ben lizter to resolue / In boþe causis it^t is⁴ neces-
[4 lf. 151]
 20 sarie to purge þe matere. & þe medicyn laxatijf^t maad of^t turbit^t is
These apos-
temas are
treated with
purgins.
 good þerfore þat^t is aforseid in þe chapitre of^t allopecia, or in þis
 maner as .A. makip it^t / R̄ turbit^t zinzi,⁵ zucare .3 .ij, & zeue þis
 ofte, or trociscus de turbit^t maad wip diarubarbe, & þou must^t sotile
R̄
 24 his dietyng^t, & he schal not^t ete to miche, & he schal drinke no
The patient
shall neither
drink water,
nor weep,
nor sleep on a
full stomach.
 water, & he schal holde his heed an hiz, & he schal kepe him fro
 wepinge, & he schal not^t, whanne he is ful, slepe anoon þer vpon, &
 þou schalt^t anoynte þe place with oile of^t camomille, & wip oile of^t

² Besides the names given in *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. *Agnus castus*, there are:
 “*Agnus castus*, frutex est, i. bischopeswort.” *Simon. Barth.*, p. 1. “A. c.,
 toutsayne.” *Wr. Wü.* p. 562, 24 (xvth cent.). “Chastlambe” in *Maplet*. A
 greene Forest, fol. 39. *De Propr. Rer.* (Add. MS. 27944, fol. 216 a): “*Agnus
 castus* is an herbe hoot and dryue and hap vertu to kepe men & wommen
 chaste a plinius seiþ. ¶ Perfore wommen of Rome vsede to bere wip hem
 þe fruyt of þis herbe in dyrige and service for dede men, whanne þey moste
 nedes lyre chaste for comyn honestee. ¶ Dis herbe is alway grene as dy-
 ascorides seiþ, and platearius also, and þe flour þerof is nameliche y-cleped
 agnus castus.”

³ *Sl.* 2463, f. 97 (see p. 222, note 8): “Because þat þe cure of scrophules
 & glandules, as who seiþ, is bothe oone, but þer is a difference be as moche
 as scrophules ben for þe more partie of malancoleye . . .”

⁵ MS. ZZ.

.R̄. lilie, & wip þis oile þat is apreued / R̄, radices electerij,¹ radices malue visci,² & kutte hem smal & leie hem in oold oile of oliuarum & do hem in a vessel of glas, & sette þis glas in a vessel of water, & make þe water to seþe, & be war þat þou saue þe glas fro brekingt. 4

Use one of the following plasters. One prepared with goat's-dung.

.R̄. & wip þis oile anointe him, & þan leie þeron wolle vnwaische / And if þis suffise not, make him a plastre of gotis tordis & oximel, or quik lyme & swynys grese þat it be freisch / & oold,³ or þis medicyne / R̄ staphisacre, seminis-lini,⁴ farini orobi, resine⁵ albe & 8
 [5 lf. 151, bk.] R̄ make herwip an enplastre wip ole & vinegre / Also anoþer þat is swiþe good. Take radices lilij, & seminis lini, ana,⁶ boile hem in wijn til þei dissolue, & þan do þerto of culuer tordis & make it a þicke plastre, & þou schalt putte þerto culuer toordis more or lesse 12 as þou seest þat þe mater resolueþ more or lesse, as þou seest þat it nedip. ¶ Also diaculon⁷ rasis, & diaculon Iohannes Mesue þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, ben good for to resolue scrophulas / Whanne þou resoluest þe mater & sum þerof goip awei, & sum 16 þerof leueþ hard, þan þou schalt do þerto sumtyme mollificatiuis & sumtyme resoluyngt þingis //

Glandula and Scrophula must be opened when they are quite ripe.

[10 lf. 152]

¶ Glandule & scrophule ben parti of douce fleume or of blood ; it is ful hard to make hem clene, for sum partie þerof wole leue 20 hard & wole not bicomme maturatif. þou schalt [not]⁸ haste to opene hem saue þou schalt leue if þou miȝt, til it be al rotid, & þan open it & leie þerto mundificatiuis / & in þis place it is good to leie þerto vnguentum apostolorum & poudre of affodille & opere 24 lizt corosiuis, & þou schalt in no maner leie þerto realgar,⁹ ne noon violent¹⁰ þingis, & leie þeron a mundificatif in which be medlid rotis of lilie wel soden, for þis mundificatif makip clene & also quitturip þe remenaunt of þe matere / þou must take greet diligence for to make clene glandulas & scrophulas, for þei ben ful hard

¹ Lat. elaterium, ἐλατήριον. *Alphita*, p. 53, "Elacterium succus cucurbitæ agrestis idem. sed electerides sunt cucumeres agrestes tam fructus eorum quam ipsa herba." *Vigo Interpr.*: "Elaterium is the iuice of a wild cocomber."

² *malua viscum* = *Althæa officinalis*, marsh-mallow.

³ Some words omitted. Lat.: cum axungia porcina, sine sale antiquo.

⁴ MS. *staphisacre seminis. nitri*.

⁶ *partes æquales* om.

⁷ "Diachylon, a Plaister made of the Mucilages or pappy Juice of certain Fruits, Seeds, and Roots, whose Office is to ripen and soften." Phillips.

⁸ not om. Lat.: Non ergo festines in earum apertura.

⁹ *realgar*, Arab. See Skeat, *Et. Dict. Alphita*, p. 156, *Realgar* vel *risalgar* est uena terre." *Vigo Interpret.*, "Realgar is made of brymstone, vnslaked lyme, and orpigmente. It kylleth rattes."

to make clene, & ofte per engendriþ þerof¹ festrís / ¶ If þou desirist² to cure glandulas & scrophulas wiþ kutting, loke wher glandula or scrophula be neische, & be war of veynes & senewis, & loke þat
 4 per be no veine þere nyz. þan take him vp wiþ þi list³ hond & drawe him vp as hiþe as þou miþt⁴ & kutte þe skyn endelongis þe necke, & be war þou touche not⁵ þe cloop þat he is folde þerinne, & þane score¹ him & drawe him out⁶ al hool with þe cloop, & if þer
 8 leue ony þing⁷ þerof, caste þeron poudre of affodille or sum oþer list⁸ corosif, & þanne regendre fleisch & soude it⁹ vp / If it¹⁰ so be þat glandula or scrophula be closid with veynes or wiþ arterijs, þan kutte him not¹¹ in no maner, for þer miþt¹² come greet¹³ perel þerof.²

In extrirpating the apostema take care not to injure a blood-vessel.

12 // Pe cure of þe cancre not vlcetid & his cure /

CAusis & difference þou hast¹⁴ herd of a cankre³ & in what
 16 maner þou schalt¹⁵ cure cancrum þat¹⁶ is not vlcetatus / Rasis
 seiþ, & it¹⁷ is soop, & I haue seen ofte tyme, þat¹⁸ whanne ony man
 20 touchiþ a cancre wiþ iren or wiþ ony medicyn corrosif, but¹⁹ if þei
 kutte him away clene wiþ alle his rotis, ellis þei makij þat²⁰ þe
 cancre is vlcetatus / & for to make a cancre vlcetatum, it²¹ ne fallij
 for no goodnes, saue it²² makij þe patient²³ haste þe fastere to his
 24 deef, & schortij his lijf & bringij him in turment // ¶ þerfore if
 a cancre be in a place þat²⁴ he mai be kutt²⁵ awei wiþ alle hise rotis,
 whanne he is kutt²⁶ awei, þan þou schalt²⁷ brenne þe place wiþ an
 hoot²⁸ iren or wiþ gold, & þan þou schalt²⁹ fulfille þe cure as it³⁰ is
 24 aforseid in þe chapitre of a cancre þat³¹ is vlcetatus.⁴ ¶ If it³² so be
 þat³³ þe cancre be perfit³⁴ & greet³⁵, þan þou schalt³⁶ touche him wiþ
 noon iren ne wiþ no medicyn corrosif, saue þou schalt³⁷ kepe þe
 patient³⁸ wiþ good dieting³⁹, & he schal ofte tymes haue medicyns for
 28 to purge malancolie wiþ gootis whey & with epithimo, & sumtyme
 lete him blood, & þou schalt⁴⁰ anoynte þe place wiþ vnguentum rasis

¶ xiiij. c.

[3 lf. 152, bk. 1]

Rasis

Unless a non-ulcerating cancer is removed thoroughly, it becomes an ulcerating one.

Use the hot iron after cutting.

A large and fully developed cancer shall neither be cut nor cauterized.

¹ score. Lat. discarnare.

² Sl. 2463, fol. 98 : "But if þe glandule or þe scrofule be intrikes^a with reynes, arteries oþer synewes, so þat þei clene oþer be faste knytte to hem, for noþing þou schall nyze hem noþer with Iren noþer with noone oþer corosyne medecyne."

⁴ A different opinion is expressed in Sl. 2463, fol. 115 : "The cure of þe canker is done in two maners. The tone cure is for to kutte away all þe membre þat þe canker is inne, with all þe syknesse; and þis is an yuell cure and may be done, but it is not plesant." Ibid., fol. 115 b. : "And yf þer be noon oþer remedie but for to cutte hit away with alle þe rotes, me thenkith hit is more honest to leue hit þanne to do hit."

^a Lat. intricata.

[1 lf. 153] de thutia, þat is ^{1 2} aforseid in cura cancri vlcerati. & þou schalt leie peron colde leues, & alwei þis schal be þin entencioun, for to kepe þat þe cancre wexe not ne rotie not / I haue seen ful manye lechis þat hadden greet name in cirurgie þat founden cancris in men, and 4 wexe not, & þe cancris were not vlcerati & miȝte ful long tyme haue lyued if he hadde be kept aftir my teching in þis book; saue vnkunnyng cirurgians weneþ þat in kutting of a cancre þei schulde finde quittance & ben disseyued, & so disseyuen hem-silf & also þe 8 patient, & þan whanne þei han kutt þei fynde nouȝt saue fleisch corrupt wipout quittance in þe maner of a sponge, wherfore þe lippis of þe wounde wole come aȝen worse þan þei were tofore & more stynking. & wiþ þe greet stynkinge þe spirit is schent, & makip þe 12 patient þe rapere drawe toward þe deef / & if þe cancre were not vlceratus þe patient miȝte lyue longe þerwith.

Many patients would live a long time if they were not treated by unskilful physicians.

Bocium þat comeþ of humours corrupt.

¶ xvº cº. **B**Ocium is a postym þat comeþ of humours, & principali it is 16 engendrid of fleume corrupt / Sumtyme it comeþ of ³hote enpostyms, as whanne þei ben rotid & not opened. & þouȝ þe subtil mater be drawn out, þat opere part bicometh hard & leueþ þere longe tyme / & sumtyme a rume⁴ fallip adoun of his heed into 20 his necke & makip þe matere wexe more / þis maner enpostym haþ manie diuers signes / Sum maner þerof is lijk as it were cley, & summe is lijk schellis. Summe is as it were chese, & summe is as it were drastis of oile, & so þis enpostym in his corrupcioun takip 24 manie diuers colouris /

This apostema is treated with drawing and caustic medicines.

.Ry.
A caustic medicine.

þis enpostym schal be helid wiþ drawyng þingis & wastyng þat schulen be taken bi þe mouþ & leid to wipoutforþ / þou schalt ȝeue him bi þe mouþ a medicyn for to purge fleume, & þan þou 28 schalt ȝeue him a medicyn for to waaste þe matere & is maad in þis maner / Ry paruum plantam nucis a terra cum suis radicibus extirpatam id est take a lital plauntein of a note & take it vp of þe ground wiþ alle hise rotis, & grynde it wiþ greynes of peper, so þat if þer be 32 of þe notis .ȝ iiij., þan do þerto of peper ȝ j, & þis þou schalt boile

² In later hand at the bottom of the page: *contra fetorem cancri. R pulueris corticis quercus farine sileginis ana succi appii mell ana succus & mell inspissentur decoque super ynguem cum puluere farina. Item decoque puluerem corticis quersini in aqua et inde tepide laua canserem a fetore paliando.*

⁴ rume, rheum, O.Fr. reume.

in a quart of wyn ¹ of paris til it come to þe half, & þanne cole it, [1 ff. 154]
 & herof þe patient schal take euery dai ʒ ij. // ¶ Enplastris þat A caustic
plaster.
 wastiþ ben enplastris þat enpostyms of fleume be wastid þerwith /
 4 If þou desirist for to cure it wiþ kuttyng, þan þou must loke, wher
 þe matere þat is wipinne be neische or hard. & wher it be among
 veynes & arterijs, þou schalt touche it wiþ noon iren in no maner /
 If it so be þat þe mater be neische & if þou miȝte kutte it for In extirpating
this apostema
do not injure
the integu-
ment wherein
the tumour
is situated.
 8 perels þat ben forseid, þan kutte it & drawe out þe mater, & leie
 þerto mundificatiuis, & alle þingis as it is aforseid in þe general
 chapitre / If þe mater be hard & þe enpostym be hangynge & be
 fro veynes & arterijs, þan kutte þe skyn endelongis aboue, & be war
 12 þat þou touche not þe bagge þat bocium sittip þeron & scarre² it
 al abouteforþ & drawe him out with al his skyn. & if þer leue
 þeron ony þing of his skyn, þan caste þeron poudre of affodille, &
 make it clene wiþ poudre of sum lizt corrosif þerwiþ—vnguentum
 16 viride,³ & þan regendre fleisch, & þan drie it vp as it is aforseid /

⁴Of þe akyng of ioynctis.

[4 ff. 154, bk.]

Now it is seid pleyulier of alle enpostyms, now speke we of ¶ xvj^o ce.
 passiouns þat comeþ in ioynctis. & pis passioun is myche Diseases of
the joints are
similar to
apostemas,
 20 lijk to enpostyms in causis & signes & curis, & also it diuersiþ
 miche fro opere enpostyms / For þouȝ þe place be greet to-swollen,
 it comeþ but late or neuere to quittance. Swellynge & akyng of
 ioinctis, pis passioun is vnknouen to manie kunnyng lechis þat han
 24 greet name. Bi þe cause þat cirurgians ben clepid algate to pis
 manere passioun, þerfore I haue studied to make a general chapitre
 of passiouns of ioinctis. & I haue take miche þerof þe bokis of
 Rasis & of myn owne working þat I haue proued. ¶ þe causis but they
rarely termi-
nate in sup-
puration.
 28 þat makip akinge in ioynctis: or it comeþ of yuel complexioun of
 lymes, or it comeþ of hoot complexioun þat hetip, or it comeþ of
 coold complexioun þat cooldip / Drie ligaturis of ioynctis con-
 streineþ & makip akyng,⁵ & moistnes makip neuere akyng wiþ-
 32 outen oper⁶ mater / Mater þat makip akinge of ioynctis is ofte tyme
 haboundaunce of blood, & ofte tyme it is raw fleume, & moost
 principali colre or blood medlid with fleume / & it comeþ ful seelde
 of fleume, but if it be medlid wiþ ony oper þing as colre / In what [6 ff. 155]

² scarre. Lat. scarnare.

³ vnguentum viride. See Notes.

⁵ Lat. sicca (complexio) ligamento juncturarum astringendo dolorem aliquando generat.

maner þou schalt knowe which humour be in þe cause of akyng
 of iointis, þou schalt finde in þe chapitre of allopucia & in þe
 general chapitre of enpostyms, if þou takist good kepe of þe signes
 of þe forseid chapitris, what humour is in cause of akyng of 4
 iointis / Saue þis þou muste take hede, þat ofte tyme raw fleumatik
 humouris makij akyng of iointis as it is forseid, & þan þe colour
 of þe lyme schal be but litil¹ chaungid þerfore / & þan a leche but
 if he be þe more expert þeron mai be bigilid. & sumtyme a litil 8
 quantite of colre wole schewe vpon þe lyme, & þan þe leche wole
 leie þerto coolde pingis, & þan þe mater of fleume wole bicombe hard,
 & so þe greuance wole be worse þan it was / þerfore it is greet
 [² If. 155, bk.] nede þat þe leche be kunnyng² & knowe wel þe ²mater of passiouns 12
 of ioyntis.

Treatment,
 when the
 illness arises
 from a bad
 condition of
 the body.

¶ þe cure of akyng of iointis þat comþ of yuel complexioun
 only, þou schalt remeue with pingis þat ben contrarie to þat com- 16
 plexoun:³ as if þe mater be hoot, þan þou schalt remeue it with
 colde pingis, & if þe mater be coold, þan þou schalt remeue it wip
 hoot pingis, & if þe mater be of drienes, þan þou schalt remeue it
 wip moist pingis, & wip metis & drinkis þat makij fatt, & wip rest⁴
 & wip gladnes; for as faste as his bodi bicomþ fatt, he schal be 20

If it is caused
 by the hu-
 mours, soothe
 the pain.

Auicē

hool of þat passioun / þis passioun þat comþ of humours, is curid
 with mitigacion of þe akyng, & I fynde diuers opiniouns þeron /
 & þerfore I wole schewe hem in þis chapter / Auicē seiþ: þat
 whanne þou wolt worche in þis mater, þi principal entencioun schal 24
 be for to do awei þe akyng / And Rasis forbedij þat þou schalt
 leie þerto no repercussiuus, ne noon resolutiuus but if þe mater be
 avoidid tofore / For to do away þe akyng: saue awoide þe mater,
 or leie þerto a repercussif¹ or a resolutif. & þan Rasis seiþ þat 28
 þou schalt awoide him, & auicē for⁵bedij þat / In what maner
 schulen we worche þanne, whanne þou fyndist a man þat hap greet
 akyng? / First þou schalt leie a plastre to þe lyme þat it be
 mitigatif or an oynement þat be mitigatif, & þe difference herof 32
 schal be aftir þat þe mater is // Also þou miȝt zeue him sumwhat
 bi þe mouþ for to aswage þe akyng. & þou schalt fynde greet
 plente in þis chapitre of defensiuus & mitagatiuis to defende þe
 mater / And whanne þe akyng is perfiȝtli swagid lete him blood 36

and
Rasis
 differ in their
 treatment.



[² If. 156]

Apply first
 a lenitive
 plaster or
 ointment,
 or give a
 medicine.

then let blood

¹ A second *litil* deleted.

³ Lat.: Cura doloris iuncturarum quæ ex mala complexionē sola est, non est nisi cum contrariis complexionis malitiam remove.

⁴ MS. *rost*.

if þe cause be of blood. & if it be of anoper cause avoide it. & if
 if þou letist him blood, þou schalt do it in a lyme aforzens. & if
 þou wolt avoide þere matere, loke þat þou knowe þe cause / for þis
 4 is ful necessarie for a leche to kuzne / Whanne þe mater is avoidid
 & þe akyngce cessid, þan þou schalt bigynne wiþ resolyunge medi-
 cyns þat ben forseid. ¶ Also in curis of akyngce in ioyntis be wel
 war þat þou feble not his appetit, for þis sijknes cometh moost of
 8 humours þat ben vndefied. & þerfore þou schalt in as miche as
 þou miht make him haue good ap¹petite & good digestioun / If þou
 fyndist oonly þe mater coold, þat makip ful seelde ony gret akyngce,
 sauē it makip þe lyme heuy. þis þou schalt wite þat in a coold
 12 cause þat makip akinge in ioinctis, þou 3 it be hard to do awei,
 neþeles þou schalt zeue him no stronge medicyn ne he schal not be
 purgid hastili as manie men weneþ, sauē it schal be do wiþ a propre
 medicyn þat is sure. & it schal ofte be zeuen, so þat þou mai
 16 agate kepe his appetit, for þer is noon so stronge medicyn þat mai
 avoide þe mater al at oonys / And if þou zeuest him a stronge
 medicyn it wole afeble hise vertues. & þerfor þou must chese a
 lizt medicyn þat mowe comferte þe stomac & þat it mowe be zeue
 20 ofte //

¶ Of akyngce of ioyntis þou hast had general rulis; now we
 mote speke of curis here after. ¶ If þou be sent after to a man
 þat haþ arteticam,² þat is as myche to seie as a goute, first þou
 24 muste loke wher þe mater be hoot or coold, or wheþer he haue
 stronge akyngce or lizt akyngce / & if his akyngce be stronge, þan³ leie
 þerto mitigatiuis / In oon maner þou schalt zeue him medicyns bi
 þe mouþ þat ben mitigatif for to take away þe akyngce, & enplastris
 28 þat ben mitigatif, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ A good medicyn þat
 schal be zeue bi þe mouþ: R̄, glandes & leie hem in vinegre adai &
 anyzt, & after þat drie hem to þe sunne or in an ouene, & þan kepe
 it / & whanne þou wolt zeue it, grynde it & zeue þerof ʒ .j.; þis
 32 medicyn makip blood greet & remeueþ þer from / Also take lentes

& from the sound limb,

or evacuate any evil matter:

and attend to the patient's appetite and digestion.

[1 ff. 156, bk.]

Therefore do not give a strong purgative, but a mild one in several doses.

Arteticam.

When gout is attended with [3 ff. 157]

pain, give lenitive medicines, and apply plasters.

.R.

² *artetica*, arthritica, gout, *Trevisa De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII, Cap. 56 (Add. MS. 27,944, fol. 96 b.). "Arthetica is ache and evel in fingres and tone wiþ swelling & sore ache / and whanne hit is in þe fyngres, hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra, if hit is in þe whirlebones and ioyntes it hatte sciatica passio, and cometh of colerik blood & of fleumatik humours, & cometh most ofte of reumatik cause." The author of the Treatise on Surgery, preserved in Sl. 1736, mentions this disease as a hereditary one. Ibid. fol. 122 b.: "also yt ys often tymes sene þat þis arthetica passio gose by erytaunce as fro þe [fadyr] to the childur, and so furth to odyr."

A medicine only to be given in great need.

excorticatas, semen coriandri, succum glandulum, hermodactulis¹ wip sugre & coold watir, saue herof^t þou must take kepe þat þese medicyns schulen not be zeue but^t in greet^t nede, & whanne þe akynge is so greet^t þat^t it^t mai not^t be take awei. & þei mai be 4 moost^t sotilly zeue whanne þe mater is subtil & scharp / & if^t þe mater be greet^t & miche, þan þis medicyn schal not^t be zeue. ¶ If^t þe mater be coold & of^t greet^t akynge, þan take hermodactulis, thuris ana xx. partis, cucumeri partes .x, & zeue þerof^t ʒ .iij. vpon þe 8

[² lf. 157, bk.] R place / If^t þe matere be lital & scharp ²& subtil / Rʒ, amigdalas, camphore ana, grinde hem & tempere hem wip watir of^t roses /

R Also anopir in þe same kinde / Rʒ, mirre, panis albissimi & subtilissimi ʒ j, opij ʒ ʒ, grinde hem wel & tempere hem wip milk of^t a 12

R cow, & leie it^t þeron whanne it^t is greet^t nede / Item Rʒ, opij, cortices mandragorae ana .ʒ .v, grinde hem & tempere hem wip þe iuys of^t portulacae & oile of^t roses & a lital vynegre / Also an oynement^t for to ceesse þe akynge / Rʒ, olium rosarum ʒ iiij, cere ʒ j., melte þe oile 16

R An oynement^t þat^t sesses ache & þe wex togidere & waische it^t with oile of^t roses, & þan do þerto citrini ʒ j., opij ʒ ʒ / If^t þe mater be myche & be neiþer more in quantite þan in qualite, & þou wolt^t defende more þe cours of^t þe mater, þan do awei þe akynge.³ Rʒ, cortices granatoris, sandali⁴ 20

albi, & rue,⁵ & roses, boli armenici, ferrugine,⁶ opij, confice cum succo mirtilorum vel foliorum salicis, or with a decocciun of^t hem in watir wip a lital oile of^t roses & vinegre & make herof^t an oynement. & whanne þe akynge is aswagid, þan dissolue þe mater of^t blood wip 24

R dissolue in þis maner / Rʒ, mirabolanorum citrinorum .ʒ vj., ⁷grinde 28

[⁷ lf. 158] hem & leie hem al anyzt^t in li ʒ of^t sirup of^t viole, & ʒ .iiij. of^t wijn of^t pomegarnates þat^t ben swete, amorowe boile hem altil & do þerto 28

zuccare .ʒ ʒ, hermodactylorum .ʒ ʒ., & zeue it^t him in þe mornynge. & if^t þou wolt^t make itt^t more coold, do þerto .ʒ .ij. of^t musilaginis

¹ "*Hermodactyla*, crawanleac." Wr. Wü. 137, 3.—"Hermodactylus, a round-headed Root, brought from Syria, which is of an insipid Taste; and gently purges Phlegm." Phillips.

³ Add. 26,106, fol. 63: Si uero materia fuerit multa et times plus de quantitate quam de qualitate, et uis plus prohibere materiae cursum quam extingueri . . .

⁴ *sandali albi*, *σάνθαλον*. The d in sandal is explained by influence of Arab. sandal (Devic). Matth. Sylvat. mentions three sorts of Sandal: album, ruffum et citrinum. See *Alphita*, p. 161. *whit saunders* and *reed saunders* are distinguished in Sloane MS. 2463, fol. 155 b (c. c. 1450).

⁵ *rue* for *rubidi*.

⁶ Lat. foenugreci.

- pillij or ʒ .j. ¶ This is a good electuarie þerfore .Rʒ, citoniorum li .R.
 ʒ, & make hem to gobettis, & leie hem in vinegre adai & anizt / & A good
electuary,
to purge
cholere and
to strengthen
the stomach.
 þan wrynge hem & grinde hem smal, & do þerto scamonie þat it be
 4 good .ʒ .j, cardamomi, cubube .ʒ .iiij, spice nardi .ʒ .j, rosis .ʒ .v,
 zuccare li ʒ, make herof a letuarie þat purgij wel colre & comfortij
 þe stomac. þou schalt zeue herof .ʒ .ij. & þou miȝt scharpe it
 more if þou wolt with a litil hermodactylis. ¶ Þese ben good
 8 pelottis for þe same cause / Rʒ, aloes .ʒ .ij, hermodactylos .ʒ .j, .R.
Pills for the
same pur-
pose.
 scamonie .ʒ ʒ, rosis .ʒ .j, make herof pelottis with sirupo violarum,
 & þou schalt zeue herof .ʒ .j. Whanne þe passioun bigynneþ to go
 awei with þese medicyns, þan þou schalt leie þerto plastris þat ben Resolving
plasters:
.R.
 12 resolyunge: as of malue & bismalue, camomille, mellilotum, absin- [1f. 158, bk.]
 thium, peratorie, semen caulium, aneti, fenugreci, ¹semen lini,
 furfuris, & swynys grese, & gandris grese, & hennis grese, & oile of
 camfre, & olium aneti. & whanne þe cours of humours ceessiþ,
 16 þan þou schalt vse oonly resolyunge þingis & make þerof enplastris / .R.
 Also to do awaye residue of þe akinge, þis is a good medicyn / Rʒ,
 olium camomille ʒ .iiij, cere ʒ .j., seminis aneti & caulium, florum
 camomille ana .ʒ .iiij. & make herof an oynement / Also in anoþer
 20 maner / Rʒ, fenigreci, semen lini, aneti, & tempere hem with iuys of .R.
 caulium. & herof þou must take kepe, þat as ofte as þou wolt vse
 clene resolutiuis, þou schalt algate waische þe lyme þat is to-swollen A lotion for
the limb.
 wip a decoccioun of malue & bismalue, & florum of camomille &
 24 melliloti, absinthii & oþere mo, & þe lyme schal be waische þerwip
 til it bicome reed, & þan þou schalt anoynte him / And þis þou
 schalt wite þat as meuyngt & bapngt greueþ þe passioun in þe firste Moving and
bathing is
obnoxious at
the beginning
of the illness,
but useful at
the end of the
cure.
 28 to stuwe & baþe doiþ awei þe laste part of þe mater & makij
 a manys lymes haue her meuyngt as þei schulde haue. & also it
 is good whanne þe patient goiþ out of ²his stue, if hise ioinctis [2 1f. 159]
 akiþ, þan frote hem wel wip salt grounde / If þe mater be coold þou
 32 schalt dizte him wip diazinziberis þat is aforseid in allopuacia. &
 þan þou schalt dissolue wip trocisco de turbit wip hermodactylis
 maad in þis maner / Rʒ, diazinziberis predicti ʒ .j. & ʒ, turbit electi R
 .ʒ .j, hermodactulorum alborum solidorum ʒ ʒ, & viij greines of
 36 anise, & make þerof a gobet wip a litil hony. & þis schal be zeue
 in þe mornyngt. & þerafter he schal drinke a litil wijn hoot & a
 litil water; or wip þese pelottis / Rʒ, hermodactylorum, saturionis³ R

³ Saturion, iarus. See *Alphita*, p. 158.

sene ana .ʒ .v, ierapigre¹ þat' entriþ in pululas coehias .ʒ .x, pulpe coloquintide, centaurie. ana .ʒ .v, euforbij .ʒ .ij, turbit² .ʒ .ʒ., cassie,² sinapis, piperis, castorij ana .ʒ .j. & make herof' pelottis with hony. & þou schalt' zeue herof' .ʒ .j. at' oonys, & þis medicyn schal be 4 zeue manie tymes. & in daies bitwixe he schal take diazingiberum of' oure makinge þat' is forseid. & if' it' be in winter, þou schalt' zeue him diatrion piperion³ or anoþer hoot' eletuarie // ¶ Anoþer electuarie þat' dissoluiþ akynge in ioyntis þat' comeþ of' raw mater. 8

.R. Rʒ, camedrios,⁴ centaurie minorum ana. ʒ .viiij, aristologia longa. [5 lf. 159, bk.]⁵ gencian. ana. ʒ .vj, agarici .ʒ .ij, vtriusque spice ana .ʒ .j, make A lectuare þat' dysolues Ache in Iunnotes hem wiþ hony. þou schalt' zeue herof' þe quantite of a note eerli & late. Men þat' ben lene schulen not' take þis medicyn // Whanne 12 þe patient is purgid sufficiently, þan þou schalt' vse enplastris for to leie to þe place / Rʒ, oold swynis grese þat' it' be freisch li j., & medle þerwiþ quyk-lyme & make þerof' a plastre & leie vpon þe place / Also take stercus caprinum & distempere it' wiþ vinegre & 16 R hony ana, & leie it' þeron / Also Rʒ, aristologia, radices yrios, elleborus, & piper, boile hem in oile & do þerto zelow wex & make þerof' an oynement. ¶ Also diaquilon maad of' litarge & oile & iuys of' mustard seed. & if' þou wolt' haue mo remedies, go to þe 20 Rasis. book of Rasis, & þere þou schalt' fynde in þe chapter of ioyntis, medicyns ynowe þerfore. ¶ Also if' þou desirist' to comferte þe lyme & do awei þe coold mater wiþ repercussiuus, in þe laste chapter of þis book þou schalt' fynde repercussiuus & mollificatiuis ynowe // 24

/ Of sciatica passio⁶ /7

¶ xvij^o. 00
[8 lf. 160]
Pain in the
haunches

A kynge of' haunchis schal be curid wiþ avoidinge of' þe mater id est laxatiuis, for repercussiuus ben not' þerfore, for þe matere⁸ is in þe depnes of' þe lyme, &⁹ ne mowe not' come þerto. Resolutiuis 28

¹ "*Hiera Picra*, a purging Electuary invented by Galen, and made of Aloes, Spikenard, Saffron, Mastick, Honey, &c." Phillips. ² MS. cassif.

³ *diatrion piperion*, a medicine composed of three sorts of pepper.

⁴ "*Chamædrys*, the Herb Germander, or English Treacle." Phillips. Camedreos ance Teterwose. Wr. Wü. 569, 47 (xvth cent.).

⁶ MS. *passis*.

⁷ *De Propr. rerum*, Lib. VII, Cap. 57 (Add. 27,944, fol. 96 b.): "*Gutta sciatica is an yuel þat comeþ of humours þat falliþ down into þe grete senene þat is bytrene þe grete brawnes of þe hanche as constantyn seip. ¶ And comeþ ofte of gleymy humours i-gadred togedres in þe holouynes of þe ioyntes & of þe haunche / somtyme of bloddy humours i-medlid wiþ colera & alle þese bep ofte cause of ache þe whiche ache stretchiþ into þe legges & anon to þe hele & also anon to þe litil [too].*" ⁹ The subject is: *repercussivus*.

ben not þerfore, for þei mai not come to þe depnes of þe mater. & for þe mater is so greet, it schulde more drawe to þe place humouris þan dissolue. Saue þou must aswage þe akinge, & þou schalt do
 4 awei þe akyng with oile & hony & fatnes þat doib awei¹ akinge.
 ¶ If þe mater come of blood, þan lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe secunde dai lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid sciatica, & principaly if þe mater descende
 8 adoun wipoutforþ toward þe foot, for þan it mai principaly be holpen / If þe mater come of fleuma, þan purge him wip pelottis of hermodactilorum / Saue herof þou schalt take kepe þat bfore his purgacioun bineþe forþ² he schal haue a vomet. For if þou make
 12 him a medicyn laxatif bineþeforþ & no vomet tofore, þan it wole drawe more þe mater toward þe place þan awayward / þerfor first þou schalt make him a vomet, & aftirward a medicyn laxatif / And þerfore medicyns laxatiuis summe ben propre for akyng of þe
 16 haunchis, as coloquintida, yrios, sarcocolla, ³centaurea, agaricus, & infusioun of aloes. For infusioun of aloes wole make blood passe fro him at his sege, & þan þe akinge wole go awei & he schal be hool / & whanne he is perfitli maad clene wip medicyns laxatiuis,
 20 þan þou miȝt leie þerto enplastris maad in þis maner / R̄, nasturcij,⁴ peretri,⁵ capparis, grinde hem & tempere hem wip lie maad of askis of a fige tree, & make þerof a picke enplaster as it were hony, & anointe þe place til it be ful of bladdris & þe bladdris ful of water,
 24 riȝt as þe place were brent wip fier. & þan anoynte þe place wip butter, & leie þeron caule leues þat þe bladdris soude not togideris anon; for þe lenger þat þei leueþ þeron, þe bettir it wole be. Eiper anoynte þe place oonli with mel anacardi,⁶ & þat makip
 28 bladdris. & what maner þou schalt make mel anacardi, þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie þat techip to make medicyns & cauterijs / Saue herof þou must take kepe þat þou schalt not vse þese medicyns þat makip cauterijs, but if his bodi be wel avoidid wip medicyns
 32 laxatiuis tofore; for if his bodi be not purgid, it wole drawe more

must not be treated with repellent or resolving medicines.

Use blood-letting, if the illness is caused by the blood.

Purge, if phlegm is the cause, and first give an emetic.

[3 lf. 160, bk.]

When the patient is well purged, apply plasters.

R
A blistering plaster.

.Nota.

Purge the patient before applying the blister.

[7 lf. 161]

¹ awei, above line.

² bineþe forþ, Lat. per inferius. See *N.E. Dict.*, s. v. beneath-forth.

⁴ nasturtium, a kind of cress.

⁵ peretrum, Lat. piretrum. Anthemis pyrethrum (Dunglison), "Piretrum . . . pelestre."—*Alphita*, p. 145. "Pyrethrum, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot."—Phillips.

⁶ "Anacardus. Or after Ruellius *anacardium*: is the frute of a tre, growing in Sicilia, and Apulia, called vulgarly, Pediculus Elephantis. The iuyce wherof is called *Mel Anacardi*, which is a ruptory medicine."—Halle, *Table*, p. 10.

.R.
A plaster of
Avicenna.

mater to þe place þan awayward. ¶ Also agens þe sciatica passio here þou schalt haue an experiment^t preued of *Avicenna*. Take gotis tordis & drie hem, & make hem to pouder, & distempere hem wiþ strong^t vinegre & made hoot, & make herof^t a plastre, & leie it^t 4 vpon as hoot as þou maist^t suffre, & anynte þerwiþ his haunche. ¶ Also a medicyn þat^t is forseid of^t *camedrios* & *centaurea*¹ is good þerfore, for it^t wole drawe awei bi vryne / ¶ Item: cauterijs maad in þe nexte welle vnder þe place of^t þe akinge ben gode þerfor after 8 þe tyme þat^t his bodi is maad clene with purgaciouns, & tofore þou schalt^t make him no cauterijs.

Of þe maner of dieting of hem þat han passions in
ioinctes /

12

¶ xvij.º. 00
A patient
with a disease
of the joints
shall abstain
from wine,

[2 lf. 161, bk.]

and if there
is hot matter,
from meat
and fish;

and if the
matter is
cold he shall
eat only once
a day.

IN what maner þou schalt^t diete men þat han passions in iointis. þou schalt^t wite þat^t þer is no þing^t so greuou^t to þis passiouⁿ as is wyn, & it^t is principali forbede in an hoot^t cause, & so it^t schal be in a coold cause; for whanne it^t is 16 take, it^t persiþ liztli to þe iointis, & makij wei to þe mater for to falle þerto / Sauē if^t þe passion be coold, & þe patient mai not^t wel² defie his mete, þan þou schalt^t graunte him a litil wijn, & not to miche for þe causis þat^t ben forseid. ¶ In an 20 hoot^t cause make him drinke þat^t is forseid in þe chapiter of^t dieting^t of^t woundis, or he schal vse *vinum granatorum* wiþ coold water. & þe pacient^t schal absteine him fro fleisch & fisch & vse *lactucis*, *portulacis* / & if^t he be gretli feble, þan þou schalt^t zeue him litil 24 chickenys. & lete þou not^t him drinke wijn bi no maner if^t his passiouⁿ be hoot^t / & whoso haþ þe coold passiouⁿ herof^t, he schal holde him wel apaied³ for to ete oonys adai & not^t to miche. & lete him drinke ydromel wel soden / for if^t he mai suffre hungur & 28 þirst^t he mai soone be hool. & he schal in no maner ete, but^t if^t he haue wil þerto.

¶ The firste teching of egritudines of yzen, ouþer
passiouⁿ & anothami /


32

¶ iº. 00/

NOW wolen we make a tretice of^t passiouⁿ of^t lymes þat^t fallij for no woundis, & curis þerof^t comeþ ofte to cirurgians

¹ *centaurea*, written above *cauterie*.

³ he schal holde him wel apaied, Lat. sit contentus. See *N.E. Diet.*, s. v. apaid. O.Fr. apaier. Compare: je m'en tieng bien paiez. (Littre.)

- handis¹ / I wole bigynne of^t sjuknes of^t yzen & to speke of anatho-
miam þerwiþ þat^t was not forseid in þe .ij. book / þou schalt fynde
in summe bokis of^t auctoritees þat^t a mannes izen ben maad of^t .iiij.
4 humouris & of^t .vij. cootis. & in sum bokis² þou schalt fynde þat^t
þe izen ben maad of^t .iiij. cotis or of^t .iiij. or of^t .vij. or of^t .x., & alle
þei seien soop. Saue þe .j. coote þat^t maketh þe schap of^t þe izc,
ben but^t .iiij. þat^t scheweth out^t in þe hole of^t þe izc, & þerfore me
8 mai seic .vj. & also þre³ / And fro þe brain tofore comeþ .ij. bind-
ingis þat^t ben not of^t nerues, saue þei ben of^t þe substaunce of^t brain,
& þat^t oon comeþ out^t in þe rihtside, & þat^t oþer in þe liftside, & ben
schape as it were þe hedis of^t .ij. tetis, wherbi þe witt is take.⁴ &
12 after þese .ij. comeþ out^t ij. nerues, & ben fast^t to þe izen, & ben
schape in þis maner:  þan þat^t nerue þat^t wexiþ in þe
rihtside of^t þe brayn, whanne he goiþ out^t of^t þe scolle boon & entriþ
into orbitam, þat^t is þe holow place þat^t þe yze sitt^t on, & goiþ to þe
16 izc in þe liftside. & bi þes nerues comeþ þe spiritis of^t lijf^t & of^t sizt^t
to þe yzen / Of^t þe substaunce of^t dura matris is engendrid rethina,
þat^t is þe pinne skyn þat^t goiþ without^t þe izc, þat^t is clepid þe vilm
of^t þe izc. And þis serueþ of^t greet^t seruice, & þis vilm was maad
20 swiþe þinne þat^t it^t ne hurte not^t humouris, & þat^t it^t lette not^t þe
meuyngc of^t þe izc, and it^t ⁵byndiþ in al þe izc, & it^t defendiþ þe izc
fro harmyngc of^t þe boon // ⁶
- ¶ þere comeþ manye sjuknessis in þe izen, & summe comeþ of^t
24 causis wiþoutforþ, & summe of^t causis wiþinneforþ / Wiþinneforþ:
as of^t yuel complexiouns, or of^t yuel humouris; wiþoutforþ: as of^t
greet^t hete of^t þe eir, or of^t greet^t cooldnes of^t þe eir, or of^t poudre, or
of^t fume, or of^t wynd / And þere ben oþere maner sjuknes of^t þe izc,
28 & þat^t ben seid contagious: as obtolmia & blere ized, & alle þese
sijknessis comen to cirurgians handis. & **obtolmia** is clepid a whit^t
welke or a reed poynt,⁷ & icchingc & scabbe, sebel, vngula, cataracta,

The anatomy
of the eyes.The eye has
three
[2 lf. 162]
humours and
seven coats.Two pro-
cesses reach
from the
brain to the
eyes.Two nerves,
crossing
each other,enter the
Orbitam,and confer
the spirit of
life.The eye is
enveloped in
the Retina
(film).

[5 lf. 162, bk.]

The diseases
of the eyes
have partly
external,
partly in-
ternal causes.Obtolmia.
Icchingc.
Scabbe.
Sebel.
Vngula.
Cataracta.

¹ Lat.: Volentes tractare de passionibus membrorum particularium, que non sunt vulnera, quæ sæpe veniunt ad manus chirurgi. . . incipiemus ab ægritudinibus oculorum.

³ The passage is corrupt, and the corresponding Latin phrase differs: Tunica tres quæ in oculi formatione tres præcedunt humores, in ordine causant ex ipsis tres alias, quare dici possunt sex et tres.

⁴ Lat.: quibus sensus comprehenditur odoratus.

⁶ Lat.: Facta fuit ergo retina valde subtilis, ne læderet humores: et ne motum ipsorum in dilatatione comprimeret. Et facta fuit sclerotica: ut oculum totum cum cornea ligaret: et defenderet ab ossis oculi nocumento. The translator omits the description of the Anatomy of the eye. See Notes.

⁷ Lat.: ophthalmia, vlcus, albugo, macula simplex, punctus, rubedo. The

Dilatatio
Pulpe.
15 Inuersacio
Palpebra-
rum.
Ordelius.
Grando.
Nodus.
Pilus.
ffistula la-
crimalis
[3 lf. 163]
iiij maner
obtalimia

1. Mild
ophthalmia.
The eyes get
red, and feel
burning, but
there is no
swelling.

Treatment.

R̄

Apply an
eye-wash.

Nota.

a fomenta-
tion, and if
necessary
bleed the
patient.

[3 lf. 163, bk.]

2. Severe
Obtalimia.

dilatacion pulpe,¹ inuersacion, palpebrarum, ordelus, grando, nodus, & pilus, fistula lacrimalis. ¶ Also per ben opere manere sijknnessis of þe izen : as blind & hurtinge þat mowe not be curid /

It is forseid what ping^t is enpostym in þe general capitulo of 4 enpostyms. & it is forseid þat euery ping^t þat gaderiþ humour togidere & makij swellynge,² ³schal be clepid enpostym⁴ / In þe same maner obtalmia⁵ is clepid enpostym of þe ize. & pere ben .iiij. maners of obtalmia : as lizt^t, & streng^r, & alþer strong^t. Lizt^t, as whanne 8 a mannes ize bicomeþ reed & haþ brønnyng^e þerinne & prickinge, & þer is no swellyng^e þeron. & þis mai come of a cause withoutforþ : as of hoot^t eir or of coold, or of smoke, or of poudre, or of wakinge, or of traueile. & þe cure herof is but lizt ; for þis sijkn^es mai be 12 curid in þis maner. Take þe white of an ey & scume⁶ it, & loke þat þere falle no filþe þeron, & leie it into his ize ; for þis is þe best medicyn⁷ among alle medicyns þat ben clepid colliries, for it wole make coold his ize & do away þe akyng^e. & it abidiþ þe lenger in 16 his izen, for it is viscous // ¶ If þe cause be cold,⁸ þan þis cure suffisiþ : þanne lete him drynke a litil sutil wijn, & make him a fomentacioun of rosis & flouris of camomille, & fenigrec soden in water. & if þis suffise not, þan ⁹þou muste lete him blood, & awoide 20 awei þe humouris. & þou muste caste into his ize a whit collirium, & it is seid in opere spicis of obtolmia.

¶ Obtolmia þat is strong^t. þese ben þe signes þerof : greet reednes, & þe veynes of þe izen be ful replete, & þe corner of þe 24 ize schal watri, & he schal haue greet akinge & pricking^t, & sumtyme þere comeþ in þe first bigynnyng^t vlcera þeron, as it were

translator mistook this list of names of eye diseases for a definition of "ophthalmia." On the other hand he took the words "Dilatatio, Pulpe, Inuersatio, Palpebrarum" as names for four separate diseases.

¹ *pulpe*, for *pupillae*.

² On the bottom of the page: "*contra obtalmia Recipe, the inner rynde off the ceritre, sethe yt in venyger, & hold a sponffulle in thy mothe lucke warme, so do oft in þ^e day.*"

⁴ Sl. 2463, fol. 84 b.: "*As it is sayd of auctores in þe generall Chapter of enpostumes, þat euery flowyng of humore þat swellith a member ouer his kyndely beyng is an enpostume, rizt so obtalmia is cleped an enpostume of þe eye.*"

⁵ *obtalimia*, med. Lat. form of οφθαλμία, inflammation of the eye.

⁶ *scume*, despumare. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 450. "*scumwyn lyciurys, despumo.*"

⁷ Lat.: quod non dicitur vilipendi, quia est nobilior medicina. Sl. 2463, fol. 85: "*and sette not liztly þerby, for it is þe nobelest medicyne.*"

⁸ MS. *hoot*. Lat. si causa sit frigida. Sl. *ibid.*: "*and yf þe cause be of colde.*"

white prickis or reed, & sumtyme per ben noon sich pointis peron
 pat' a man mai se, saue al his ize is reed & to-swollen. & he schal
 haue greet' akinge & prickinge. & pouz per be noon vlcera peron, pe
 4 cure mai be do al in oon maner. ¶ If pe akyng be swiþe greet',
 þan accesse pe akyng, & þan lete him blood in pe heed-veyne¹ pat'
 sitt' in pe arme & in pat' same side pat' akip. & if' he haue passioun
 in boþe his izen, þan þou schalt' lete him blood in boþe his armys.
 8 & þou schalt' lete him blood pe quantite after his elde & after his
 strenkþe; or sette a ventuse vpon his schuldris, & pat' is more better,
 for pe mater comeþ more² of' blood þan of' colre. & pat' þou mizt'
 knowe bi pe signes of' blood pat' ben forseid // ¶ And if' pe mater
 12 come of' colre, pat' þou mizt' knowe bi greet' akinge & scharp, &
 litil swellinge. & pe mater wole be zelow aboute hise izen. & he
 schal haue but' litil reednes. & þan þou schalt' lete him blood in
 lasse³ quantite þan⁴ if' pe mater come of' blood. & blood letinge' is
 16 good in þis caas, for pe scharpnes of' colre mai be take awei wiþ pe
 blood letinge'. & þan þou schalt' purge him wiþ a decoccioun of'
 fruitis with mirabolanis pat' ben forseid in pe chapitre of' allopuca.
 & if' colre be medlid wiþ ony partie of' gret' mater, pat' fallip ofte
 20 tyme, þan per is no medicyn so good as cochie Rasis. & first' he
 schal do þingis þerto for to accesse pe matere / R7, a zelke of' an eij,
 & as miche of' oile of rosis, & as miche of' iuys of' verueine, & ʒ j.
 of' saffron, & ʒ j. opij; medle þese togidere, & make þerof' an en-
 24 plastre, & leie it' vpon a sotil lynnen clooþ, & leie it' on pe ize. & in
 his ize leie collirium album with wommans milk⁵ pat' noryschiþ a
 maide child; for .G. made þis medicyn⁶ / Rasis made collirium
 album in þis maner, ⁷& it' is good þing', for I haue preued it' ofte

The symp-
 toms are
 great painis
 and swelling.

Treatment.
 Soothe the
 pain by
 blood-letting

or by cup-
 ping.
 [2 lf. 164]

If choleric
 matter is
 the cause,
 use blood-
 letting and
 purging.

Purging
 Pills.
 Cochie Rasis

R
 Mitigatum
 optimum
 contra dolo-
 rem in oculis

Colirium
 album
 Galien.
 Rasis.

[7 lf. 164, bk.]

¹ vena cephalica.

³ Lat. maiori.

⁴ MS. þat.

⁵ The use of woman's milk for an eye-salve is mentioned by Galenus *De Compositione Medicamentorum*, Lib. IV. Cap. 3.

⁶ The translator has omitted the following prescription preserved in Sl. 2463, fol. 85 b.: *and he cleped hit helpyng, for he, þat he made hit fore, was holpen by one leyng therto. ¶ Take iiij. ʒ. of ceruse sarsed, and distemper hit wit water on a marbull stone tenne dayes, and kepe hit cuermore covered þat per falle no powder þerinne; thanne take ij. ʒ. and an halfe of gomme arabik and putte hit in pe water, to þat hit be molten in þat water, and þanne cole hit and medele yt as well as þou may wit þi forsayd ceruse; and whane þis medecyne is made liche paste, adde therto these thynges sotilly powdered and sarsed tryes or thryes thoruz a sotyll lynnen clothe. Take amidum .iiij. ʒ. sarcocolle, safran, opium ana pe iiij. partie of a .ʒ. grynde hem all wel togeder longe tyme, and make smale pillules and reserue hem, to þat þou haue nede, and vhanne yt ys nede dystempeve one of hem with (fol. 86) womannes mylk and administer yt.*

R
A Collyrium
used by
Rhasis.

tyme. Take ceruse waische .x. partis, sarcocolle greet .iij. partis, amidi .ij. partis, draganti¹ .j. parti, opij .j. ʒ / Grinde alle þese togidere & tempere hem wip rein water, & make þerof pelottis as gret¹ as it were a pese & kepe hem / & whanne þou wolt worche 4 þerwip, tempere oon þerof wip wommans milk þat it be as picke as it were must,² & leie þerof in hise izen þre sipis in þe dai. þis collirie accessip þe akinge. & in sumtyme it curiþ obtolmiam in oon dai as I haue preued itt manie tymes. & whanne he haþ slepe, if 8 hise izen cleue togidere, þan he schal waische hise izen wip water of rosis hoot, & þan leie in þe corner of his ize puluus citrinus, þat is maad in þis maner / R̄, sarcocolle x. partis, aloes, croci, licij ana partes .ij., mirre partem vnam, & make herof sotil poudre, & leie 12 herof a litil in þe corner of his ize /

'pulis
citrinus

The patient's
diet:
He shall take
neither meat
nor wine ;

[3 1r. 165]

he shall lie in
a dark room,

and take a
bath, when
the matter
has gone.

Bathing is
noxious,
when there
is a pustule.
Maturative
medicines:
Collirium
thuris

& whanne þe reednes & swellyng¹ of his ize is aweie, he mote be war of his dieting¹, for he mai ete no fleisch ne drinke no wijn, saue he mote ete colature of bran wip almaunde milk. & whanne 16 he lieþ in his bed his heed mote lie hiþe, & he schal ligge ʒvpon þe hool side & not vpon þe soor side / & if boþe his izen ben soor, þan he mote dizte him as sutilli as he may.⁴ & he mote ofte tyme haue þe sauour of water coold, & þe sauour of wipi & campher, & he 20 mote lie in a derk hous þat he mowe se no lizt. & whanne þe mater goiþ awei faste & his bodi [is]⁵ þan clene, þan sette him in a baþ of swete water, & lete him be þerin but a litil while⁶ / If it be so þat þe akyng¹ aswage not wip blood leting¹ & colliries & laxatiuis, 24 þan it is a signe þat þere is pustula woxe þerinne, & it is nede for to make it maturatif¹; for þe akinge wole not goon awei, til it be maad maturatif¹. & in þis caas þapinge is ful noious / For if akinge be go somewhat awei, it wole come aþen wip þaping¹; þerfore thou 28 schalt attende for to make maturatif.⁷ & putte in his ize a collirie

¹ draganti, Lat. dragaganthi.

² must, Lat. mustum.

⁴ Sl. 2463, fol. 86 : "and yef bothe eyen be sore he schal lye vþward, his hodes muste be wyde." Lat. : caputia vestium non sint stricta.

⁵ is, omitted.

⁶ Sl. ibid. : "And yef it be plesauit to hym lete hym abyde therinne, and lete hym foment his eyen and his heuede. And yf he veze rizt hoot in þe bathth, lete hym dwelle ther in not passyng an houre, but þenne þe pacient schal be purged ayen. ¶ And in þe laste ende of þe obtalmia yt ys good to take hoot salt water, þat rosen haue be enfusyd inne, and lete hit droppe doune fro an hyþe vpon þe hornes of his heued, þat yt mowe passe doune so by the eyen."

⁷ thou schalt attende for to make m., Lat. : ergo in tendas ad maturandum. Compare O.Fr. s'attendre à faire qu. ch.

- of^t thus wip al¹ togidere til þe quittance schauwie, for þan þe akinge wole accesse / For whanne pustula is to-broke, & quittance is gaderid, þan þou schalt putt^t þeron a collirie of leed. & þan þou schalt^t Colirium plumbe.
- 4 fulfille alle þingis þat^t schulen be seid wip vlceribus / A collirie of thus þat^t is maturatif for ²pustulis is maad in þis maner / R̄, thuris ^[² If. 165, bk.]
- albi gummosi grossi, partes .x, antimonij, sarcocolle ana. partes .v, croci partes ij, & tempere hem wip muscilage of^t fenigrec; & make R
- 8 þerof^t pelottis, & kepe hem for þin vss. & whan þou hast^t nede herof^t, þan tempere a pelot^t with þe forseid licour, & make it^t moist & binde it^t vpon his ize, & lete þis ligge til þe akyng go awei; & putte in his ize colirium de plumbo, þat^t is maad in þis maner / R̄, .R.
- 12 plumbi vsti, antimonij, zucare, eris vsti, gummi arabic, draganti ana partes .viij, opij partem ʒ, & make herof^t a sutil poudre, & þan tempere it^t wip reyn-watir & wip water of^t rosis, & make þerof^t pelottis. & whanne þou wolt^t vse hem, distempere oon þerof^t or
- 16 tweyne wip water of^t rosis, & binde it^t vpon his ize; for þis collirie soudiþ & gendriþ fleisch / Aftir þe tyme þat^t it^t is soudid, if^t þere leue a litil ampulle,³ þan þou schalt^t cure it^t as þou schalt^t fynde in his propre place. ¶ fleumatik mater makij ful seelden ony
- 20 enpostym in þe ize, & malancolie myche latter; nepeles we wolen telle curis of^t hem. ¶ Signes of^t ⁴fleum ben þese: greet^t swellynge & manie teeris, & litil reednes ouþer noon; & þe cure herof^t is to purge him wip cochijs or wip trocisco de turbit^t, saue cochie ben
- 24 more better. & þou schalt^t putte in his eere muscilaginem⁵ fenigrec, & putte in his ize zelowe poudre þat^t is forseid. & vpon his ize þou schalt^t leie enplastre maad of^t aloe, mirra, acacia, & croco ana; & distempere hem wip mussilagine fenigreci. & in þis caas good wijn
- 28 wole do him good, drunken in mesure / If^t it^t come of^t malancolie, þou schalt^t knowe bi blaknes of^t al þe bodi⁶ & leene, & bi drienes of^t hise izen, & ful litil reednes or noon in hise izen. & þe cure herof^t is for to purge wel malancolie, & baping^t & fomentacion wip rosis & violet, & flouris of^t borage & buglossa. & þis þou schalt^t wite þat^t in euery maner of^t obtalmia, in þe ende þerof^t baping^t ben good.

Apostemas
in the eyes
seldom arise
from phlegm.
[⁴ If. 166]

In this case
purge and
apply a
plaster.
R

Treatment of
an apostema
if Melancholy
is the cause.

Nota.

¹ Lat.: cum coto, donec super cotum sanies apparebit. The translator read "toto." Sl. 2463, f. 86: "with cotoun, to þat þe quytture scheve vpon þe cottone."

³ ampulle, a tumour in the skin of the hands or the feet. See Tomm. Dict., s. v. ampolla. The Lat. has *albula*. Matth. Sylv.: "*Albule id est macule oculi albe.*"

⁶ MS. \int inserted.

⁶ Sl. 2463, fol. 87: "*All þe body of þe pacient ys blakkyssh.*"

If pain and swelling follow an injury, apply blood drawn from a living dove.

[2 ff. 166, bk.]

de vlceribus
oculorum.

These ulcers are accompanied with continual pain.

vij maner
vlcus

The symptoms of an ulcer are pain and a red point in the eye.

Treatment:

Apply
Colirium
album
to relieve
pain;

and if this is
insufficient,

[4 ff. 167]

Colirium
Eliphur.

R

¶ If þat reednes of þe ize come of smyting¹ & akyng², & swellynge come þerwip, þan it is necessarie for to haue a zong³ culuer quyk, & lete hir blood in a veyne vndir hir wyng⁴ wip a nedle, & putte it in his ize as hoot⁵ as it comeþ fro þe culuer.¹ Þis 4 doip awei ²þe akyng², & þe reednes & þe brennyng³.

¶ Vlcera ben engendrid in a mannes ize. & þan þer comeþ greet akinge þerwip & abydyng⁴, & þis mai not be doon awei wip collirium album, ne wip noon mitigatif / And þere ben vij. maner 8 vlcera, & of alle we wolen telle her curis schortli & profitabli, of curis þat I am expert⁹ of³ longe tyme. ¶ The signes of vlcera þat pustula comeþ þerof ben þese: grete akingis þat mai not be swagid wip collirium album, & þer wole in his ize appere a reed poynt¹⁰ or a 12 corn. & if al his ize be reed, þan þe poynt¹¹ or corn wole be more reed, & þat point¹² wole make greet agreuauance, & greet swellinge, & greet betyng¹³, & manie teeris / It is greet nede in þis passioun for to sotille his dietyng¹⁴, & do þerto þingis for to make mitigatif, as 16 collirium album, & lete him blood, & do al þe cure as it is aforseid / If þou mizt not defende þe mater wip alle þese remedies ne aswage þe akyng¹⁵, or þer wexe a corn þeron or vlcus, & collirium de plumbo ne wole suffise for to soude vlcus, þan þou schalt leic þerto mitiga- 20 tiuis for to do awei þe akyng¹⁶. & do in his ize collirium ⁴eliser,⁵ for þat wole defende þat þe enpostym schal not wexe, þat is maad in þis maner / R̄, antimonij, emathitis,⁶ ana partes .x., acacie partes .iij., aloes partem .j., grinde hem sotilly & tempere hem wip iuys of 24

¹ The use of blood taken from a vein under the wings of a dove is mentioned by Galen: De Simplicium Medicamentorum medicamentis, Lib. X., Cap. II. 3. Trevisa translation of *Bart. de Propr.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16, (Add. 27,944, fol. 84), "Also philosophres telleþ as Constant, seiþ þat þe blood i-drave out of þe poynt of þe rizt wyng⁴ of a culcer, ober of a swalowe. ober of a lepwinke, & i-doo in þe bygynnyng⁴ vpon þat mole, clensiþ hit miztyly / for þe blood of þese foules hetep and dissolceþ strongliche."

³ of curis þat I am expert of, Lat. curam quam sum expertus.

⁵ MS. eliser, Lat. elesir, the form of Arab. eliksir as preserved in Ital. elisire. It means in its pharmacological sense an alcoholic liquor, in which aromatic substances are dissolved. Devic (*Dict. Ét.*) states, that the Arabic word is merely a transcription of Greek ξηρόν, dry. Lanfranc gives a curious explanation of the word in the present passage, which has been omitted by the translator: collyrium elesir: quod est dicere penetrativum, quod egressum uveae prohibet. Sl. 2463, f. 87 b.: "colirium eleser þat is þe seyne persyng⁴, þe wiche defendith þe egression of vvea."

⁶ emathites, hematites, bloodstone. Mentioned as a stiptic and an eye-medicine in Galen (ed. Kühn, vol. X., 330); in *Bart. De Propr.*, Lib. XVI., Cap. 39 (Add. 27,944, fol. 199 b), "Emathites is a reed stoon . . . & is good azeins þe flux of þe bladdre and to sore yhen."

corigiote,¹ & make þerof^t polottis; & dissolue herof^t wiþ watir of
roses, & binde it^t faste to his ize. þis collirium fasteneþ his ize, &
makip þat^t þe enpostym may wexe no ferþere / ¶ Macula² is a wem
4 in a mannys ize, & summe be white þerof^t & sittip vpon þe sizt^t of
þe ize,³ & summe bisidis þe sizt. & þis comeþ of^t an oold obtalmiam.
& herto principali is good collirium album of^t .G. þat^t is forseid. &
þis collirie is good þerfore / R̄, aloes, croci. ana partes viij, eris vsti
8 waischen, *gummi arabici*, opij, ana partes vj., mirre xij. partis,
climie⁴ partes iiij., thurus partes .iiij, grinde alle þese sotilly & tem-
pere hem wiþ swete wijn, & make þerof^t pelottis, & kepe hem : &
wiþ þis collirie I temperid collirium album. Galien & I haue curid
12 wiþ þese .ij. colliries, & wiþ cauterijs, & kuttingis of^t veynes, manye
men / & I curide þerwiþ a man þat^t was clepid sir Reynold Manesyn. A nobleman
& he hadde obtolmiam *id est* postym in his ize longe tyme to⁵fore,
& þerof^t came manye wemmys in his ize; summe þerof^t weren white
16 & summe þerof^t weren reed, & maden þat^t he miþte not^t se, &
anoþer man ledde him. & þouþ þer were leid mete tofore him vpon
þe boord, he miþte not^t se þerof^t / & þo I lokide to him; & wiþinne
a monþe he miþt^t se to pleie at^t þe tabler.⁶ & I dide awei alle þe
20 wemmys of^t his izen, so þat^t he miþte se as wel as euere he dide
tofore / & þere tofore he hadde manie oþere lechis, & leiden in his
izen stronge collirijs, & algate his sijknes was more & more : & so
his sizt^t was binome him þre zeer. ¶ Collirium .G. is good for
24 obtolmiam, as I haue apreued manie siþis; & it^t is good for vlcera
þat^t ben newe & not^t olde, & for wemmis.

& sumtyme sich a maner pricke comeþ of^t smytynge, or of^t greet
crijnge, or of^t blood as þoruþ brekyng of^t a veyne, & makip a poynt^t
28 in a mannes ize, & þerfore blood letyng is good. & do in his ize

Macula is a
white spot on
or near the
pupil of the
eye.

Galien

Collirium
album

Galien

A nobleman
who had lost
his eye-sight
[5 lf. 167, bk.]
was treated
by Lanfranc,

and after a
month he
could play
backgam-
mon.

Collirium
Galien.

If a 'point'
in the eye
is caused by
an injury,
use blood-
letting,

¹ "*Corrigiola*. So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas." Halle, *Table*, p. 29.

² *macula* as a name for an eye-disease is not used by the Latin authors. It occurs in *Bart. de Propr. rer.*, and is translated by *webbe, mole*. See p. 248, note 3.

³ *þe sizt of þe ize*, Lat. *cornea*. "The sight of the eye, that is, the hole of the skinne called *Ragoides*, out of which the vertue visible worketh his operation." Cooper. Compare O.E. *séo*, f., O.H.G. *seha*, f., the black of the eye.

⁴ *climie*. Matth. Sylv. "*Klimia*. *Cadimia*. *alkimia Auicenna*. est fumus seu fuligo adherens superioribus fornacis in purificatione cuiusque metalli. sioria vero est fex descendens ad inferiora."

⁶ *tabler*. Lat. : vide ipsum ludentem in vespertis ad tabulas cum taxillis. "*Tabler*, or table of play or game." *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 485.

and apply the blood of a dove and a woman's milk.

[² If. 168]
Redness of the eyes causes itching and vice versa.
Both occasion scab and vngula.

Galien

Scabies. The eye-lids are full of pimples.

Collirium rubeum
R

[⁵ If. 168, bk.]

Collirium viride
R

blood of a culuer, & waische his ȝen wip wommans milk warm, as it comep out of þe tete.¹

¶ *Rubedo id est* reednes, *pruritus id est* icchinge, sebel, sca²bies, & vngula, goip al in oon cours.³ & oon herof is cause of anoþer / 4 For of long¹ reednes tofore comep icchinge, & sumtyme icchinge is cause of reednes, & of þese .ij. comep scabbe in þe ȝe liddis; & if it gadere togidere in þe corner of þe ȝe, þan it is clepid vngula / þerfore þou must first cure hastily þe reednes & þe icchinge of his 8 ȝen, lest þer come ony oþer sijknes þerof / Reednes may be curid wip þe white of an ey & with collirium album / Galien seiþ: icchinge may be curid wip whit wijn, in which be grounden aloes, & leid in his ȝe wip soft linnen cloop, & bounden þerto. ¶ Scabies 12 is whanne þe ȝe liddis ben reed & to-swolle, & ful of reed pinplis. & þis passioun makip greet icchinge & brennynge, & manie teeris / þe cure herof is þis: waische hise ȝen wip wijn in which be resolued grene coperose, þat is clepid *vitriolum romanum*.⁴ & if 16 þis suffise not, þan þou schalt make collirium rubeum in þis maner / R̄, emathitis, vitrioli adusti ana partes tres, eris vsti partes duas, mirre, croci, ana partes x., piperis longi partem ʒ; tempere alle þes wip old ⁵ wijn, & make þerof pelottis, & kepe hem; and whanne 20 þou wolt vse hem, distempere hem wip oold wijn, & do it in his ȝe / If þe mater be greet & strong, þan þou muste vse collirium viride, þat is maad in þis maner / R̄, floris eris partes tres, vitrioli vsti partes .vj., arsenici rubei, baurac, spume maris, ana partes .ij. 24 armoniacum dissolued in iuys of rue; & grinde alle þe oþere sotilli, & medle hem þerwip also & make þerof pelottis, & dissolue oon

¹ *Trevisa l. c.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 17 (Add. 27,944, fol. 84 a), "Also it happip þat blood woosēp out of veynes & of pipes & comep to þe ȝen, & veynes brekep or be i-hurt in þe kertil þat hatte coniuunctiua, & þan suche vnhiztnes of þe ȝe comep of blood þat comep so to þe ȝe. ¶ Culuir blood or turtil blood dissolveþ & departeþ þis blood þat is so i-ronne as constantinus seiþ, & so doþ womman melk wip ensens, & so doþ freisch chese i-medlid with honey wip-outen salt, if it be laide þerto."

³ *Trevisa l. c.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16, "De lippitudine albugine de panno siue de macula. Another evel of þe ȝen þat we clepiþ a webbe, & Constantinus clepiþ it albugo, & brediþ in þis manere. ¶ fferst a rewme rennep to þe ȝen, & þerof comep an ȝeol þat hatte obtalmia, a schrewed blereynes & ache & aposteme; & if it is evel i-kept þerof leveþ a litil mole & infection, & longtyme turnep & growip into a webbe & picke, & occupieþ more place þan al þe blache of þe ȝe. ¶ This webbe turnep into cloop by more þienes & occupieþ more place, for it occupieþ al þe blake of þe ȝe, & at þe last it turnep into þe kynde of a naile of þe honde."

⁴ *Vitriolum Romanum*. "The one growyng of it-selfe in the earth by concretion, and is vulgarly called Coppa rosa." Halle, *Table*, p. 139.

- perof in watir of rue distillid & leid in his ize // ¶ **Sebel**¹ is seid, Sebel, an inflammation of the veins of the eye.
 whanne þe veynes þat' ben ioyned togidere in þe ize,² ben ful of blood & wexiþ greet, & sumtyme a clooþ þat' is in a mannes ize. For
 4 to cure þis passioun *collirium rubeum* is good þerfore, or *collirium viride* þat' ben forseid // ¶ **Vngula** sittip in þe corner of þe ize þat' Ungula, a web in the eye, sometimes covering the whole eye-ball.
 is next þe nose, & gooþ forþ vpon þe ize til it' hile al þe ize; & sumtyme it' comeþ of a superfluite of fleisch þat' wexiþ in þe corner
 8 of a mannes ize, & wexiþ forþ abrood as it' were a clooþ. & þer ben manie maners þerof, & oon is sotil & þinne, & goiþ ouer þe ize. & of sum men þat' is clepid a clooþ, & þat' ofþer maner is more fleischi & picke, & is clepid vngula / þe cure ³herof ben *collirium viride* & [3 ff. 169]
 12 *rubeum*, þat' ben forseid : & if þis suffisiþ not, þan it' mote be kutt' away wip instrumentis as miche as me mai kutte awei þerof, & If Collyriums prove insufficient, cut away the growth.
 aftirward cure him with collirijs / In þe kuttinge of vngulam be war þat' þou kutte not þe fleisch in þe corner of þe ize to depe; for
 16 if it' were kutt' to depe, his ize schulde watre, & be ful of teeris al þe while he lyueþ. ¶ Also in scabbe, sebel, & vngula, purgacioun is good, & blood leting; & þe patient schal absteyne him fro alle swete þingis & scharp, for al þese forseid passiouns comeþ of blood
 20 corrupt. ¶ **Cataracta**⁴ is water þat' falliþ down bitwixe þe .ij. skynnes of þe ize & abidiþ tofore þe place þat' is clepid pupilla, þat' Cataracta. Cataract is a water between the two skins of the eye.
 is þe poynt' of þe ize. & þan it' defendiþ þat' a man mai not' se; & it' is clepid cataracta, bi þe liknes of an instrument' þat' is a
 24 mille / & sumtyme þis passioun bigynneþ, & sumtyme it' is conformed / Signes of þe bigynnyng ben þese / It' semeþ to þe patient þat' he seeþ brizt' þingis tofore him, & him þinkip þat' oon þing' is At the beginning of the disease the patient sees double.
 .ij. þingis or þre / & sumtyme it' semeþ to him þat' þing' þat' he seeþ
 28 to be ful of holis / & sumtyme þese þingis ⁵mowe come of yuel [5 ff. 169, bk.]

¹ "Sebel idem quod Serasif i. vene rubeæ que sunt in albo oculorum." *Sinonima Serapionis*, ed. Venet, 1497. Arab. Pers. zabêl, Dung, a dried gourd, basket. (Johnson.) Fr. sêbile, basket.

² Lat.: Sebel dicitur quando venæ conjunctivæ et cornæ, quæ sunt in eorum superficie — — replentur sanguine. The translator mistook 'conjunctivæ' for 'conjunctæ.'

⁴ *Cataracta*. The Latin authors used this word for 1. waterfall, 2. flood-gate, sluice of a river (Scheller *Dict.*). In its pathological meaning, it is first found in *Platearius*, xiith cent. (*Practica*, Lib. II., Cap. VII., fol. 209 b, Lugd. 1525, quoted by Hirsch, *Klin. Monatsbl. f. Augenheilkunde*, 1869, p. 284). The explanations vary according to the above-mentioned Latin significations. Lanfranc adopts the meaning 'gate.' Lat.: "et dicitur cataracta per similitudinem illius instrumenti, quod est apud molendina: quod quando eleuatur, currit aqua per canalem: quando deponitur nihil currit." *Molendinum*, "a mylle." Wr. Wü., *Voc.*, 596, 27.

This irregularity may arise from a disordered stomach, and then it is easily cured.

When the Cataract is developed, a spot on the pupil of the eye is discovered.

disposicioun of þe stomac, & þan it is not so greet drede þerof; for whanne þe stomac is curid, þese signes wolen go awei / In þis maner þou schalt wite wher it come of þe stomac or of þe ize / If þese signes comen whanne þe stomac is ful, & whanne he is fastyng 4 & þei come not, it is a signe þat it comeþ of þe stomac / And if it is in hise izen contynuelli, þan it comeþ not of þe stomac, but it is sijknes of þe izen / ¶ Also purge him oones wiþ pululas cochias, & if it is neuer þe bettir, þan þou miȝt wite for certeyn þat þe 8 passioun comeþ of þe stomac. And if þis passioun haþ longe durid in a man, & if þou miȝt no þing se in his ize, þan þou schalt wite for certeyn þat it is a bigynnyng of cataracta / Whanne cataracta is confermed, it schal not be hid to a mannes witt þat is vsid in þe 12 craft. & in þis manere þou schalt knowe it: þou schalt se a maner colour vpon þe poynt of þe sizt of þe ize, þat wole sumtyme be whit, & sumtyme in þe colour of askis, & sumtyme a litil grene : & þis stoppiþ al a mannes sizt // 16

[1 ff. 170]

The Cataract can be cured by medicines at its early state.

Regulate the patient's diet, purge and apply a Collyrium prepared with the gall of several animals.

R

þis maner siknes schal be helid wiþ phisic or it be confermed, & whanne it is confermed, it mote be curid wiþ a mannes hand. þe patient mote absteine him fro sopers² & fro al maner fatte potagis, & from al maner moiste fruitis, & fro al maner fruitis þat 20 engendriþ moistnes / saue he schal vse hote þingis, & he schal ofte be purgid wiþ pillis cochie rasis, þat is þe beste þing laxatif þat mai be for izen, & þan make a collirie of gallis of beestis þat is maad in þis maner. R, fellis grue, fellis stelionis, fellis hirci, fellis 24 anticipitris,³ fellis aquile & perdicis, & alle þese gallis ben drie, & take herof .x. partijs, euforbie, colloquintide, ana. partem .j, grinde alle þese & tempere hem wiþ þe iuys of fenigreci & make þerof pelottis. & whanne þou wolt worche þerwiþ, resolue oon þerof wiþ 28 water of fenel distillid, & leie it in his ize twies on þe day ./

R

A Collyrium prepared with lye.

¶ Anoper lizt medicyn þat is preued / Take askis of vynes & sarce hem & make þerof lie with good whit wijn, & lete it stonde in a glasen vessel, & lete it clarifie þerime. & þis is a good collirie 32 þerfore, for þe more cold þat cataracta is, þe bettir þis medicyn is

[1 ff. 170, bk.]

þerfore / And if cataracta be so confermed þat it stoppe al þe lizt, þan it is incurable wiþ medicyns, & also þer ben manie opere incurable. ¶ And if it so be þat he se not, þan make him close 36 his izen togidere, & frote al softe vpon þe ize lid þat is soor; & if it be in boþe his izen, þan serue so boþe, & þan lete him opene his

Cure of Cataract by operation: Dilate the pupil of the

² *soper*, *cena*. See Skent, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. supper.

³ *anticipiter*, med. Lat. for *accipiter*. Duf. Glass.

- izen sodcinli anoon, & loke if þe poynt of þe ize bicome whit,¹ & if it bicome not whit, þan it is of .ij. þingis; ouper it is opilacioun of þe nerue, þat cometh fro þe brain & is holow & defendiþ þe sizt, or it is cataracta þat is greet & stoppiþ þe nerue, & stoppiþ þe weie of þe spirit þat it mai not come to þe poynt of þe sizt þat is clepid pupilla / If þou frotist his ize as it is forseid, þan lete him do vp his ize hastili, & þou schalt se þan vpon his ize a whit þing² as it were a peerle, þan þou miht sureli worche wiþ instrumentis of cirurgie² / First þou schalt make þe pacient sitte vpon a stool tofore þee, & þou schalt sitte a litil hizer þan he, & his ize þat is hool þou schalt bynde faste þat he ne mowe no þing³ se þerwiþ, & þan þou schalt haue in þi mouþ a fewe braunchis³ of fenel, & þou schalt breke hem a litil with þi teef, & þan þou schalt blowe in his ize .ij. sipis or iij. þat þe fume of þe fenel mowe entre into his ize / þan þou schalt haue an instrument of siluir, schape in the maner of a needle, and it schal sitte in a greet hafte þat þou mai þe bettir hold it wiþ þin hand, & þan þou schalt bigynne aforzens þe lasse corner of þe ize, & þou schalt putte in þin instrument anoon to þe corn þat is in þe ize, & whanne þou seest þe point of þe instrument vndir þe corn,⁴ þan lete þe point of þin instrument goon anoon to þe water þat is gaderid tofore þe ize / And whanne þou hast broken þe place þat þe water was yzne, þan presse it adounward, & drawe out al þe watir þerof clene,⁵ & if þer come more watir þerto, þan þou must reherse þis werk azen. & if þer come no more watir þerto, þan þou schalt leie vpon his ize a plastre maad of þe zelke of an eij wiþ þe white, & bole leid vpon lynnen cloop & binde vpon his ize, & lete þe patient be in a derk place, & he schal heere no

eye by rubbing the eyelid.

It will not dilate, if there is an obstruction in the nerve.

In the dilated pupil a white spot like a pearl is seen.

Then bandage the sound eye,

[3 : 171]

and pass a silver needle through the eye-ball until it reaches the white corn and the cataractic water.

When you have pressed out this water,

apply a plaster to the eye, and let the patient be in a dark room,

¹ *whit* for *wid*, Lat.: vide si pupilla dilatatur.

² Lat.: quod cum videris manum ulla tenus non apponas. This method of testing, whether a cataract is fit for operation or not, has already been proposed by Galen, as mentions *Paulus de Aegina*, Lib. VI., Cap. 21. We find the same in *Hali Abbas*, Lib. IX., Cap. 28, fol. 279, ed., Lugd. 1523. See Magnus H., *Geschichte des grauen Staars*. Leipzig, 1876.

⁴ *corn*, a mistake; the translator did not know the meaning of "cornea." Lat.: et impellas instrumentum usque ad corneam: quia tunc videbis illum. Cum autem instrumentum videbis sub cornea illum impellas vsque ad aquam quæ est coram pupilla.

⁵ *drawe out al þe watir þerof clene*, an insertion of the translator. The operation which he describes is the dislocation of cataract by depression. A fuller and more accurate account of it is given by John Vigo, who begins his description with the following words: "And yf the cataractes cannot be healed, when they are confirmed, then we must turne to handy operation. And though we counseyled to leave it to y^e tothdrawers, yet we wyl declare y^e maner therof." Traheron, *Vigo*, fol. 136^b.

and in perfect rest, for 8 days.

[1f. 171, bk.]

An obstruction of the pupil from internal causes is difficult to cure.

pigra Rasis

If the obstruction arises from external causes, let blood

and apply a plaster.

R

greet noise, & he schal not traueile wipinne .viij. daies, & he mote be kept so þat he cowze not¹ & fro wrappe / Sumtyme þe poynt of þe ize sizt is stoppid wipinneforþ, & þan he schal neuere be curid þerof; ouper it wole be greet maistrie for to cure it. & if it mai be curid, þis is þe cure þerof: þou muste purge him with pigra rasis, & wip pululis cochijs þat rasis made, & þei muste be ofte zeue, & þou muste do in his izen drijnge collirijs & oþere driyng medicyns / Ouper it mai come of causis withoutforþ as of smitynge 8 & þat mai listli be curid / First þe patient schal be lete blood, if age mai suffre it & oþere particlis þat be forseid, for blood letyng wole helpe for to auoide awei þe enpostym, & þan þou schalt make him an enplastre wip oon of þese medicyns, & it schal be bounden 12 þerto softli / R̄, mele of beenis þat be sotil & grinde it wip wipi leeues smal / Also take mele of beenys & flouris of camomille & þe rote of altea .ʒ. ij., & also biteine .ʒ. j., absinthium .ʒ. j. & seþe hem in water & make þerof an enplastre & lete þe patient reste, 16 probatum est.

Hordeolum is a swelling in the eye-lids,

[2f. 172]

and affects new-born children.

¶ Ordecilus is a litil swellinge, & is long & smal & comeþ to a child whanne it is bore, & þis passioun wole sitte in² his ize liddis / þe cure herof is for to lete hem blood & purge him of humours corrupt, & do þerto þis medicyn: medle aloes with licio³ & make þerof a poudre / Also þou schalt anoynte him wip storax liquida & anointe him þerwip / ¶ Also resolue a litil opoponac in water, and make an enplastre þerof & leie vpon the place, & þe same þing doþ 24 diaquilon, & or þou leie ony plastre þervpon, þou schalt make a fomentacioun wip hoot water.

Grando.
A knot in the eye-lids.

¶ Grando & nodus. Grando is as miche to seie as an hail stoon, & nodus is a knotte, & þus comeþ in þe ize liddis, & sumtyme it 28 wole schewe wipinneforþ, & sumtyme wipoute. & whanne it schewip wipoutforþ, opene it & leie þeron diaquilon & oþere þingis for to consume þe mater. & if þis suffise not, þou schalt take it wip þi .ij. fyngris & drawe it harde, & þan kutte þe skyn þeron & drawe 32 him out, & þan þou shalt soude it wip þe white of an eij & oþere þingis þat ben soudinge //

If medicines fail to effect absorption, extirpate the growth.

fistula lacrimatis

¶ fistula lacrimalis,⁴ þat is as miche to seie as a feestre wip

³ "Lycium. Is the Juice of a thorny tree, growing chiefly in Capadocia and Lycia, of three cubites heght." Halle, Table, p. 63.

⁴ Sl. 2463, f. 90: "A ffystule in þe wyke of þe eye, hit comyth of concours of rennyng of humores to þe corner of þe eye besyde þe nose, & because of her multitude & gretnesse þey may nat passen out but abyden there & maken an emynence, as hit were a lupyne; & therefore of some hit is cleped lupinus."

- teeris / þis comeþ in þe corner of þe ize next þe ¹nose, & engendriþ ^[1 ff. 172, bk.]
 þere & makip a þing^a as greet as it were a pese. & if þese humours
 leue þere longe þei wolen rotie & þei wolen make vlcus þere, & þer
 4 wole come manie teeris þerto, and þei mai not be maad drie, & þis
 mai leue þere so longe þat þer wole engendre a feestre þerof. & ^{gives rise to a}
 but if þat feestre be curid while it is freisch, it wole rote þe boon, ^{fistula and}
 & þe lenger þat it wexip oold, þe worse it wole be for to cure. ^{finally affects}
 8 ¶ þe firste bigynnyng of þis cure is for to avoide þe heed wiþ ^{the bone.}
 cochijs & wiþ pigra, þan do þeron þis collirium / Rꝛ, aloes, thuris, ^{Apply a}
 sarcocolle, sanguinis draconis, balaustie, antimonij, ^{powder,}
 aluminis, ana, ^R
 floris eris a litil, as miche as wole be þe fourþe part of oon of þe ^{pulis contra}
 12 forseid. & make of alle þes sotil poudre & distempere hem wiþ ^{fistula}
 reyn water or wiþ water of roses, & caste it in þe corner of his ize, ^{lacremali.}
 but þe place schal be maad drie first. & þan þou schalt do þerto
 oon of þe mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, or
 16 þis medicyn þat is aproued / Take clene mirre .3. .ij. & make þerof ^R
 poudre & make it picke wiþ þe galle of a boole, þat it be as picke
 as it were an oynement, ² & leie it vpon lynnyn cloof & leie þis þer-
 vpon, for þis wole soude þe place & make it clene / ¶ If it so be ^[2 ff. 173]
 20 þat it be not curid with þis medicyn, þanne it is a signe þat þe
 boon is rotid, & þan þou muste opene þe skyn & vnhile þe boon,
 & touche þe boon wiþ an hoot iren as fer as it is rotid / & þanne
 leie þervpon buttir or grese þat þe scar þer mowe falle awei, & þan
 24 þou muste reherse þe cauterie azen. & þanne leie þervpon buttir,
 & þus þou muste do til þe boon be clene, & þan leie þervpon oile of
 rosis hoot medlid wiþ zelke of an ey til al þe brennyng falle away.
 & þan drie þe place with drijng medicyns, & þan regendre fleisch &
 28 soude it, & þou schalt wite þat þer is noon so good maner medicyn
 as þis is / For if þou wolt leie þerto ony corosif water, þat wole
 brenne forþere þan it schulde / & also it were greet perel for þe ize
 & þerfore it is good for to worche as it is aforseid / ³

³ The end of this chapter, omitted by the translator, is given in Sl. 2463, fol. 90 b.: "¶ Also he^a seyth þat yf þe bone be schauen with Instrumentis þat all þe corrupcion is seldome taken awaye, wherefore þe corrupcion comyth azen bycause of þe partie whiche lenyth behynde corrupt. ¶ He seyth also þat alþouþ the corrupcion be taken away neuer so well, yet nature departith a litell follikell þerfro aforne þat þe flessch mowe be faste knygt other soudid to þe bone and what tyme þe bone is touchyd with an hoot Iryn, þanne all þat is corrupt disseuerith fro þat ys hoole, and þe complexion of þe place is tempered.

^a Lanfrank.

Of þe passioun of eerts.

¶ ijo. co.
Nerves go to
the ear from
the brain.
[1 lf. 173, bk.]
The sound is
conveyed to
the brain
through the
ear passage.

This passage
is curved.

The ear is
made of
cartilage,
that it may
both sustain
itself and be
pliable.

The diseases
of the ear
belong partly
to Surgery,
partly to
Physic.

[3 lf. 174]

All these
diseases may
be comprised
under "ach-
ing of the
ear."

Simple ach-
ing arising
from a hot
complexion is
treated with
oil of roses,
and some
opium.

If caused by
a cold com-
plexion it is
treated with
hot oil of
lilies.

AS it is aforseid þat nerues comen fro þe brain to þe izer / in þe same maner nerues comen from þe brain & goiþ into þe eris & makij heerynge & ben instrumentis of¹ witt. ¹þe hoolis in a 4 mannes eert ben maad in a deep holowe boon, & it¹ was bi þis skille þat it¹ schulde vndirstonde sownynge, & þat þe sowne schulde not come into þe brayn anoon, but¹ alitil & alitil bi degree, & also for þis skille þat þe coold eire ne þe hoot¹ eire schulde not sodeinly 8 entre yn ; & þe wei þat¹ goiþ into a mannes eere, ne goiþ not¹ rizt¹ forþ, but¹ hidir & þidir, for if¹ þe weie were riztforþ, it¹ wolde þe rapere be hurt¹ of¹ al maner þing¹ / þe eere was maad of¹ cartilaginis þat¹ is hardere þan fleisch & neischer þan boon, þat it¹ miȝte be 12 pliaunt. & if¹ þei schulde be maad oonly of¹ fleisch, þei schulde haue noon sustentacioun for to bere hem vp. & if¹ þei hadden be maad oonly of¹ hard boon, þei miȝten not¹ haue be meued, & þerfore it¹ was moost¹ nede þat¹ þei weren cartilaginous : þat¹ is as miche to 16 seie as maad of¹ gristle þat¹ is neischer þan boon & hardere þan fleisch. To þis lyme þer comeþ manie sijknessis, & summe þerof falliþ for cirurgie as apostimes & vlcera, & summe falliþ to þhisik as greet¹ sownynge in þe eert & sibillus, & ²defaute of¹ heeringe & 20 deefnes.³ Akyng of¹ þe eert sumtyme is an yuel, & sumtyme harme fallynge þerto / & þerfore it¹ is mi purpos for to speke boþe of¹ sirurge and of¹ þhisik in þis chapitre. ¶ Alle þe sijknessis of¹ þe eert moun be take in þis maner, as akyng of¹ eert. Ouper it¹ 24 is apostym & without¹ vlcera, or it¹ is wiþ enpostym & vlcera ; þan it¹ is of¹ yuel complexioun & hoot¹ ;⁴ þat¹ þou miȝt knowe bi scharp akyng & reednes of¹ þe place. & þan þou schalt¹ cure it¹ wiþ castynge into þe eere oile of¹ rosis, boylid hoot¹ as he mai suffre, wiþ þe 28 .iiij. part¹ of¹ vinegre / & if¹ þe akyng go not¹ awei in þis maner, þan þou schalt¹ do þeron a litil of¹ opium / And if¹ it¹ come of¹ yuel complexioun þat¹ it¹ be coold, as coold wynd or of¹ coold eire entrid þeron, þis þou miȝt knowe bi greet¹ cooldnes in þe place, & þan þou 32 schalt¹ cure him wiþ þingis þat¹ schal be cast¹ into þe eere, watir of¹ maiorana, or oile of¹ lillie, þat¹ þou schalt¹ fynde þe composicioun in þe antidotarie. & in þis maner hoot¹ oile schal be putt¹ in his eere &

³ MS. *deesires*.

⁴ The translation is corrupt. Lat. : aut est sine apostemate vel ulcere aut cum apostemate et ulcere. Si sine apostemate et ulcere : tunc aut est propter malam complexionem calidam — — aut propter malam complexionem frigidam.

no coold þing^t, & þou schalt^t stuwe þe pacient¹ / Sumtyme it^t comeþ [1 ff. 174, bk.]
of^t sum þing^t þat^t falliþ in his eere as a worme or a corn or a stoon,
or watir; þis þou schalt^t knowe bi þe tellinge of^t þe pacient^t; for if^t Aching
caused by a
foreign body
in the ear:
4 þer be ony þing^t wiþinne, me mai se it. If^t it^t so be þat^t þer be If it is a
stone, cast
hot oil into
the ear;
falle yn ony stoon, þan caste into his eere oile of^t *rosis*, or oile of
almaundis, & if^t þer be falle yn ony corn, þan þou schalt^t do noon if it is a grain
use an instru-
ment,
oile in his eere; for it^t wole make þe corn waxe greet. Make a
8 litil instrument^t of tree or of sum oper þing^t & wete it^t in terbentyn or try the
cupping-
glass.
& putte it^t into his eere, & touche þerwiþ þe stoon, oupir þe greyn, &
þan it^t wole cleue þerto, & þan drawe it^t out^t / ¶ Also smite his eere If it is a
worm, apply
warm water.
wiþ þe pawme of^t þin hand, & bi hap it^t wole falle out^t þerwiþ / Also
12 sette a ventuse wiþ fier vpon þe hoole of^t his eere, for þis sumtyme
wole drawe out^t a corn ouþer a stoon.² ¶ If^t þer entriþ ony worme
into a mannes eere, þan fille his eere ful of^t flact watir,³ & þan drie
it^t / And if^t þis suffisiþ not^t, fille his eere ful of^t oile of^t almaundis If the pains
are caused by
an apostema,
16 þat^t ben bittir; & if^t þis suffisiþ not^t, þan do in his eere iuys of^t
calamynte.

¶ If^t þe akyng come of^t humouris gaderid to apostym, þat^t þou
4 miht^t knowe bi greet^t akyng, & akyng of^t his pous,⁵ & bi þe [1 ff. 175]
20 swellyng of^t þe place, þan þou muste bigynne for to aswage þe
akyng wiþ oile of^t *rosis*, & lete him blood in þe heed veyne in þe
same side. If^t it^t so be þat^t he mai not^t be lete blood, for sum cause
þat^t lettith, þan garse him vpon his schuldris, & putte in his eere oile bleed the
patient from
the Vena
Cephalica,
or scarify his
shoulders;
24 of^t *rosis* wiþ a litil vinegre. If^t þee þinkiþ þat^t þe mater comeþ of^t
colre, þat^t þou schalt^t knowe bi signes þat^t ben forseid, þan purge
him wiþ a decoccioun of^t *mirabolanorum* / If^t þe mater be not^t if this fails to
soothe the
pain, apply a
poultice and
a plaster,
until sup-
puration
begins.
28 of^t fenigrec & of^t lynseed, & rotis of^t *altea*, wiþ wommans milk, &
do it^t flat⁶ into his eere / & vpon þe eere leie an enplastre þat^t it^t
hile al þe eere, maad of^t lynseed, & barli, & rotis of^t *altea*, & of^t
lilie, & medle hem with *gandris* grese & grese of^t an hen. & þis cure
32 þou schalt^t contynueli do, til þe quittance come out^t of^t his eere, & þe

² The translator has omitted the case when water is in the ear. Sl. 2463, fol. 83 b.: "And yef þe water enterid into þe ere, doo Galenyys experyment. ¶ Take a rodde of wilowe othyr a twigge of þe ryne and putte þe tone ende in þe patientis ere, & lappe wax aboute þe tother ende and sette hit on fyre, ffor by þe vertu of þe fyre þe water schal be clene dried vpe."

³ *flact watir*. Lat. *flaccidus*. O.Fr. *flaccide*. N.E. flat water. Compare *flacid*. Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, and *flaisch*, p. 265, note 1, *flasch*, p. 266, note 3. O.Fr. *flasque*, Lat. *flaccidus*, another form of *flaccidus*.

⁵ Lat.: per fortem dolorem et pulsationem.

⁶ *flat*, Lat. *tepidus*. See above, note 3.

akyngc accesse.¹ & þan þou schalt cure it riȝt as vlcera of þe eeris ben curid, þat schal be seid here aftir / Also if þe mater þat makip þe enpostym come ²of cooldnes, & þat fallip ful seelde, but if it come in an old man, & þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe akyngc & bi þe ⁴cooldnes of þe place, þan þou schalt bigynne to avoide him wiþ pillulas cochie & wiþ a clisterie. & caste into his eere oile of lilies, & resouue in þe same oile ʒ .ʒ. euforbij oupir .ʒ. j. de turbit, & anoynte al aboute his eeris wiþ þe forseid oile of lilies, & leie þer ⁸vpon wolle vnwaischen, & make him a fumigacioun to his eere wiþ hoot water in which schal be soden maiorana & calamynte. & if þis suffisip not, leie þer-vpon an enplaster or an oynement, & of garleke, & rotis of lilie soden to-gidere & grounden wiþ butter, & do þerto ¹²leuayn, & do þerto oile of lilie or of camomille, & a lital vinegre, & make an enplastre and leie vpon his eere, for þis enplastre rotip coold mater & drawip it out, & if þou miȝt se ony place in þe eere þat quitture is gaderid on, þan it is good to opene þat place & ¹⁶drawe out þe quitture as it schal be seid heraftir. & þan þou schalt cure it riȝt as þou schalt cure vlcera þat schal be seid herafter.

[³ If. 176.]

If the pain arises from wind in the ear,

instil oil of rue.

If the pain is caused by ulcers in the ear, a stinking pus will be discharged.

The mundificatives.

.Galien.

A noxious ointment.

.Galien.

[⁶ If. 176, bk.]

Sumtyme akyngc of eeris comeþ of gret³ wynd & sound in þe eere, & noise & wynd þat comeþ of þe heed & fallip into þe eeris.⁴ ²⁰þis þou miȝt knowe listly, for wiþ þe akyngc he schal haue a maner noise in his eeris & pipinge / & þe cure herof schal be avoidinge of gret³ humours, & þou schalt caste into his eere oile of rue, & in þe same oile schal be dissolved a lital castor, & he mote kepe him ²⁴fro al þing þat engendriþ wynd.

¶ Also akyngc of þe eeris comeþ of vlcera þat ben wiþinne in þe hoole of þe eere, & sumtyme þei comen of an enpostym goinge tofore. & þe signes herof ben akyngc & cours of quitture þat ²⁸stynkip. & þe more stinking þat þe quitture is & þe more departid fro whit colour, þe worse it wole be to cure / first þou schalt make clene his heed with cochijs & wiþ pigra, & þan þou muste do mundificatiuis to his eere & drijng pingis. & be war þat þou worche not ³²as .G. seiþ þat summe worchip: þei leide þerto an oynement þat was good for woundis, & alwey þe patient hadde þe more penaunce,⁵ & þe sijkenes woxe more & more / & þerfore .G. axip what is good ³⁶þerfore / And .G. seiþ: who þat seiþ þat it schal be curid wiþ

¹ *accesse*, O.Fr. *acesser*.

⁴ Lat.: Fit etiam dolor auris propter grossam ventositatem ad aures de capite descendentem.

⁵ *penaunce*, Lat. *dolor*; *penaunce* usually means "penitence."

- drijnge pingis, he seip fals ; for drijnge pingis constreineþ, & apostym
 is constreynngt / And summen han now newe rulis : þat wip con-
 trarijs contrarie pingis schulen be curid / In þis maner þou schalt
 4 worche. Make poudre of mirre, & of aloe, & olibani, & sanguis **R̄**
 draco ana, & take oon tent & wete it in hony, & folde þe tent in
 þe poudre, & putte þe tent in his eere anoon to þe botme / & if þe
 tent mai not come to þe botme þerof, þan dissolue þe forseid poudre
 8 wip watir & hony, & caste it yn / If it so be þat vlcus be swiþe
 cold, þan þou schalt cure him in þis maner / Take þe rust of iren,
 & grinde it smal, & leie it in an erþen vessel with vinegre, & boile
 hem togidere, til þe rust bicome drie. & þus þou muste do ofte tyme. **R̄**
 12 & þan þou muste poudre it azen, & seþe it in vinegre azen til it
 bicome picke as hony, & þan do þis in his eere, for þis wole hele
 vlcera, & þis wole drie þe moistnes þerof, & þis wole do away þe
 akyng / And take hony .3. .x., vinegre 3. viij., & boile hem liztly **R̄**
 16 at þe fier til it be wel skymed,¹ & þan do þerto 3 .ij. of vert de
 grece, and ²medle hem wel togidere, & wete herynne a tent, &
 putte it in his eere, & þis is good for vlcera þat ben oold. **R̄**
 ¶ If a man be deaf, þan it comþ of summe of þe forseid causis,
 20 & principali of longe akyng ; also it comþ of child beringt, &
 þanne it is incurable / Also if it comþ of humours þat stoppiþ
 nerues, & þe cure herof is for to purge him wip cochijs & pigra, &
 caste in his eere oile of bittir almaundis & opere medicyns þat ben **R̄**
 24 openyng. & oon þerof is þis / Take pulpe colloquintide .3. .j.,
 castor, aristologia rotunda, succi absinthij ana 3. ℥, euforbij .3. j,
 costi grana .xv., & make herof smale pelottis, & dissolue oon herof
 wip oile of almaundis þat ben bittir, & do it in his eere ; saue þou
 28 schalt make him a fumigacioun tofore wip a decoccioun of sanbuci,
 absinthij, sticados / Also take whit oile .3. .j., & grynde hony &
 oile togidere / If þe passioun comþ of defaute of spiritis, þanne
 putte herof in his eere, & þanne he schal be bapid & haue reste, &
 32 vse metis þat engendriþ good blood, & he schal heere sotil voicis for
 to make him haue heeryng / & summe seien þat þe fatnes of grene
³froggis, þat lyuen among trees ;⁴ take hem & seþe hem, & gadere
 þe fatnes of hem & caste in his eere, for þis hap vertu for to make
 36 men heere. ¶ Also take a litil garlek & make it clene, & do þerto
 þe .iiij. part of tartre, & grinde hem smal togidere, & boile hem in
 vinegre, & whanne it is coold þan coole it, & of þis vinegre leie
 hoot to his eere /

¹ skymed. Compare *scume*, p. 242, note 6.

⁴ Some words like *is good* are wanting.

One must not
 apply drying
 remedies.

R̄
 for vlcers in
 þe eere

A powder
 that is ap-
 plied to the
 ear by a tent.

R̄
 A preparation
 of rust heals
 the ulcer,
 dries the
 moisture and
 allays the
 pain.

R̄
 An applica-
 tion for old
 ulcers.
 [2 lf. 177]

Deafness
 resulting
 from child-
 bearing is
 incurable.

If it is caused
 by the
 humours,
 purge and
 instil open-
 ing medicines
 into the ear.

R̄
 a fumyga-
 cio.

R̄
 If deafness
 arises from
 a weakness of
 the spirit,
 strengthen
 the patient,
 [3 lf. 177, bk.]
 and apply the
 fat of green
 frogs.

Of þe passioun of þe nose & anothamia.

¶ iij. co.
The nose has
two holes
through
which the
brain is
purged.
Air is
gathered in
the "colatorium,"
and there is
the seat of
smelling.
The nose has
two bones,

AS we haue bifore seid þat þer ben .ij. hoolis in þe nose þat þe
brayn is purgid þerbi of superfluite. & þe nose is not neruous,
& þe nose is a propre instrument for to smelle. & þese .ij. hoolis in 4
þe nose ben maad fast in þe scolle. & in þat place is ordeyned a
þing þat is clepid colatorium,¹ & eir is gaderid þerinne þat makip
vertu of smellynge. & þoruþ þat place þe superfluitees of þe brayn
ben pougird, & þer is oon hoole þerof þat goip toward þe mouþ. & 8
þe nose is maad of .ij. boones in þe maner of a triangle in þis
maner. Δ Δ. þe scharpe eendis þat ben aboute ben ioynynge wiþ þe
boones of þe izen. & þe boonys of þe nose þat ben bineþe ben
cartilaginous for þe causis þat ben forseid.²

12

Latin Original.

and three
cartilages.

[In parte vero inferiori vnum quodque illorum duorum ossium
habet quandam cartilaginem propter iuuamenta que sciusti. In medio
vero habet aliam cartilaginem, quæ nasum in duas partes diuidit, 16
quæ durior et fortior est duabus aliis, quæ sunt in nasi fine. Iuu-
amentum vero illius medie cartilaginis est, ut si vni parti nasi nocumen-
tum acciderit, pars alia totius suppleat iuuamentum. Duo autem ossa
nasi coniunguntur ad inuicem: & fit nasi forma, quæ cum his quæ 20
dicta sunt, plures habet vtilitates. Prima, vt sit tutamen & cooper-
torium superfluitatibus: quæ de cerebro diriuantur. Secunda, vt
aerem recipiat, qui est ad receptionem odoratus necessarius mediator.
Tertia, quod quamuis maior pars aeris que attrahitur vadat ad pul- 24
monem: tamen aliqua eius pars per nasum tendit ad cerebrum.
Foraminis autem quod est inter nasum & os, iuuamenta sunt tria.
Primo vt cum os clauditur, possit aeris fieri attractio ad pulmonem.

The nose
provides the
brain with
air.
The nasal
cavity com-
municates
with the
mouth,
1. that one
may breathe
through the
nose,

¹ *os colatorium*. I could not find this name in the ancient authors, but
it occurs frequently in the Latin translations of the Arab authors. The idea
that it is the function of the nose to purge the brain is an old one. Compare
A. C. Celsus de Medicina Lib. IV. Cap. V., ed. Daremberg: "Destillat autem
humor de capite interdum in nares, quod leve est, interdum in fauces, quod
pejus est; interdum etiam in pulmonem, quod pessimum est." Avicenna men-
tions the "os colatorium" in connection with this theory in his Canon Lib. I.
Fen. I. Doctr. V. Cap. 1., ed. Venetiis, 1527, fol. 9. "Ossa autem porosa
facta fuerunt . . . propter additionem necessitatis causa, rei aliquid, que
necesse est ut in ea penetret sicut odor, qui cum aere attrahitur in osse, col-
latorio simili, et cerebri superfluitates, que per ipsum expelluntur." We find
the same theory in the French name for a cold: "rhume de cerveau," and
for the same reason "Hellebore" is called "brain-purging." *N. E. Dict.*,
s. v. brain.

² Three leaves or four are wanting, and I insert the Latin text from the
Editio Argellata Ven., 1546, f. 239, bk., and Add. 26,106, f. 71.

- Secundo, vt per illud cerebri anterior ventriculus expurgetur. Tertio, ad intercisionem adiuuet literarum, & voces melius explicandas: quoniam cum in loquendo sit necessarium vocem temperare: literas
- 4 incidere: syllabas solidare: ad hoc saepe labia clauderentur & dentes: si non esset alia via, per quam posset aer superfluus exalare apud literarum incisionem totus conculcetur aer, qui literarum incisionem & syllabarum prolationem sua multitudine impediret: & vocem etiam
- 8 generatam non claram emitteret: facit ergo in verborum & vocis prolatione foramen hoc quod facit foramen fistulae superius,¹ quod in vocum et tonorum modulationem remanet absolutum: quare voces & toni inde magis exeunt absoluti.²
- 12 In naso vel naribus plures concurrunt egritudines. Nam ibi fiunt pustulae, vlcera, caro superflua, polypus, cancer, fluxus sanguinis, fetor, & olfactus priuatio.
- Pustulae** fiunt vt plurimum ab adustis humoribus, et sunt cum
- 16 punctura & ardore. Et cura est phlebotomia & corporis euacuatio, et iniectio albuminis oui cum oleo ros. in simul agitatis. Pustulis fractis, fiat vinctio cum vnguento albo Rasis.
- Vlcera** quoque si calida fuerint, curantur eodem modo. Si
- 20 frigida, cum lauatiōe vini et mellis, & cum vnguento apostolorum, et cum vnguento viridi dicendorum.
- Caro superflua** remouetur cum instrumentis chirurgicis; si non potest tota cum instrumentis remoueri: remouetur residuum cum
- 24 puluere asfodillorum & cum vnguento viridi, & apostolorum, & cunctis mundificantibus: & remotis superfluis cum unguentis solidantibus compleatur.
- Polypus** dicitur a polypo pisce: cuius malitiosa est astutia: quia
- 28 quando vult piscibus saturari, ascendit saxum quod est in litore maris: & ipsi multum assimilatur, pisces fatigati videntes saxum, non aduertunt de polypo propter similitudinem: sed volentes quiescere, sallunt de mari: polypus illos absorbet: & in eius conuertit
- 32 nutrimentum. Sic iste morbus cum naso magnam habet affinitatem: quoniam eius materia est catarrhosa frigida grossa descendens a capite: & in via propter eius grossitiem & tenacitatem hæret naso seu substantiæ nasi inuiscata: et humores capitis agitatione moti naturæ
- 36 volentes descendere, & exire, materiam ibi recipiunt congregatam:

2. to purge the brain;
3. it helps in the articulation of words.

Pustulas and Ulcers are treated with bloodletting and an ointment.

Proud flesh is removed with an instrument.

The polype is a disease, so called for its similarity with the animal.

¹ Add. 26,106, fol. 71 b., on margin: gallice flaute.

² The whole preceding passage about the utilities of the nose, and especially the utility of the "nares posteriores," *i. e.* the communication between the nasal cavity and the pharynx, is taken from *Avicenna*, l. c. Cap. 4.

quæ humores illos in suam conuertit malam naturam : et ex ipsa quotidie augmentatur. Differentia vero est inter polypum & carnem superfluam : quoniam caro superflua, non habet profundam tenacitatem cum nasi substantia : nec cum ipso naso nimis assimilatur : 4 immo potest de facili segregari : polypus vero firmiter adheret cum naso : & non sine violentia separatur. Quorum scilicet polyporum aliquis est curabilis : aliquis incurabilis. Curabilis est substantiæ mollis & tractabilis : nec nasum reddit durum : nec in colore nigrum 8 seu fuscum : nec est multum supra circa cerebri confinia inuisatus. Incurabilis vero nasum reddit durum, liuidum seu nigrum : & magnam profunditatem tenet, quam quanto magis videris maiori nigredine maiorique participari duritie, maioremque profunditatem 12 occupare, tanto plus ab eo existima fugiendum : quoniam naturam tunc tenet cancri : quanto plus eum curare niteris tanto plus videbis eius malitiam augmentari.

There are two kinds of polype :

1. The incurable one has the nature of a cancer.

2. The curable one may be treated like proud flesh.

Curabilis vero cura est secundum quod diximus in cura super- 16 fluæ carnis quæ ibi consurgit cum ablatione sive cum instrumentis & cum vnguentis mundificativis : & aliis quæ nouisti : præcedente semper corporis et capitis purgatione : sicut multoties est ostensum. Cauteria quoque secundum quod audies, multum valent ad polypi 20 materiam consumendam. Eius vero quem incurabilem diximus, non assumas curam. Si tamen rogaris nimis, palliatiuam curam adhibe : sicut in cura cancri recolimus ostendisse.

De anatomia oris, & contentorum in ore, & passionibus doctrinæ 24 tertiæ tractatus tertii Cap. iiii.

The membrane lining the mouth is continuous with the integument of the stomach.

Totam vero oris concauitatem interius circumdat panniculus qui continuus est cum meri, & cum stomacho : quare accidit quod multæ res tangentes palatum prouocant vomitum. Ad oris concaui- 28 tatem duæ perueniunt viæ : quarum anatomiam superius habuisti ; in earum summitate est epiglottis : quæ est creata ad perficiendum vocem : et ut seruet aliquid de aere attracto ad anelitum. Hæc epiglottis ex tribus est composita cartilaginibus : vna est eminens 32 ante & dicitur clypealis & a laicis dicitur guttur vel nodus gulæ : alia est posterius cum osse laudæ continua et uocatur nomen non habens.¹ Tertia vocatur cymbalaris siue cooperturalis :² & continuatur cum nomen non habente : & cooperit clypealem : et ista cymbalaris 36 mouetur per eius mûsculos : quare cum homo comedit, viam claudit

The organ of voice is composed of three cartilages.

¹ Cartilago cricoidea.

² Cartilagines arytenoidæ.

canne pulmonis: & viam aperit oesophagi. Cum autem homo loquitur, aperit viam canne pulmonis: & claudit viam oesophagi. Quare multoties accidit, quod si homo comedens dicere vellet
 4 aliquid ignoranter: quod aliquid viam intraret canne pulmonis: quare natura moueretur ad tussendum: nec cessaret, donec quod cannam intrauerat, esset ad extra expulsum.] ^[1 lf. 178] til þat' mete be out' of his þrote, saue algate he schal couze til it' be oute. & þan aboute
 8 þis instrument' is vuula þat' is þe palet² of þe mouþ & helpiþ for to make soun / For þe wynd þat' comeþ of þe lungis reboundiþ³ azens þe palet' & makip þe more soun. In þe holownes of þe mouþ is maad fast' þe tunge, þat' is maad of whit' fleisch, & neische, & of
 12 nerues, & veynes, & of arterijs, as it' is necessarie þerfore / And in þe þrote of þe tunge ben .ij. wellis þat' spotil is gaderid þeron, & holdiþ alwei þe tunge moist' / Also in a mannes mouþ ben .xxxij.
 16 .xxvij. / And for to hile a mannes teep ben ordeined lippis, & ben as it' were þe dore of an hous, & helpiþ forto speke & to pronounce wordis / Now to alle þese lymes þat' ben forseid: as þe palet' of þe mouþ & a mannes tunge & þe teep & þe gomis & þe lippis, alle
 20 þei han diuers passiouns.

¶ **Vuula** sumtyme wiþ cours of humouris sumtime gaderiþ an enpostym, & sumtyme vuula wexiþ to long⁴, & sumtyme apostym of þe palet' comeþ of hoot' cause, þat' þou schalt' knowe bi þe reednes
 24 of þe place & bi brennyng⁵; & þanne in þe cure herof þou schalt' bigynne for to lete him blood in þe heed veyne, & purge colre wiþ a decoccioun of fretis.⁷ & herof þou schalt' make him a gargarisme, & þerwiþ he schal ofte waische his mouþ: R̄, lentes, balaustias,
 28 psidias, gallas, rosas, sumac, & boile þese wiþ .ij. partis of water, & oon part' of vinegre, & herof make a gargarisme / Also þou schalt' leie to his palet' poudre of rosis, & sandalis,⁸ & balaustiarum & a litil of camphre / þis is a good help þerfore whanne þe palet' is
 32 woxe long' wiþ hoot' humouris. ¶ If þer come an enpostym of coold humouris, ouþer þat' þe palet' wexe long' wiþ coold humouris, & þat' þou miȝt' knowe whanne þe place is not' reed, & if þer be

[1 lf. 178]

The mouth contains the epiglottis, the uvula, which helps to make sound,

the tongue, made of white flesh, nerves and blood-vessels,

32. teep.

and the lips, by whose help words are pronounced.

Diseases in these parts.

Vuula.

[6 lf. 178, bk.]

In case of a hot apostema on the palate (uvula) bleed, purge and use a gargle,

Gargarismus.

R̄

If cold humour cause the apostema,

² *palet*, palate. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* The erroneous identification of uvula and palatum is not in the original.

³ *rebound*, O.Fr. *rebondir*. See later references in Skeat, *Et. Dict.*

⁴ Lat.: XVI in utraque mandibula.

⁵ Lat.: Vuula namque propter humorum decursum aliquando apostematur aliquando solum elongatur.

⁷ *fretis*, fruit.

⁸ MS. inserts & *rosis*.

purge and use
a gargle.

R

[3 lf. 179]

A powder
applied by
a Funnel.

If the uvula
gets too long,
remove a
portion.

Be ware
not to cut too
deep.

the tong^t
suffers from
many dis-
eases.

Ranulam.

In case of an
apostema in
the tongue,

[3 lf. 179, bk.]
bleed from
the head-vein
and use a
wash.

miche spotil in his mouþ, first þou schalt^t purge him wiþ cochijs & pigra, & þan make him a gargarisme wiþ þis decoccioun: R̄, aceti partes duas, mellis partem vnam, boile hem togidere & do þerto poudre of mirtillorum¹ & þe seed of rosis & peletre² & zinþibere, & 4 þan make him poudre of pepir³ & sal armoniac, & make herwith a fumigacioun wiþ enbotum.⁴ & if it be greet to-swolle, & þan þou muste make consumynge þingis as diameron & sappa michum⁵ / If þe palet^t be recchid along, & if it be so long^t þat it lie vpon þe 8 tunge, þan þou muste kutte awei as miche þerof^t as þee þinkijþ good, so þat it be nomore þan it schulde be; & be war þat þou kutte not to myche þerof, for þer miȝte come greet^t perel þerof: as his vois miȝte be apeirid þe while he lyuede, & contynuely couzinge, & his 12 lungis miȝte be þe worse þefore & also his piys.⁶ & þefore it is greet^t perel for to kutte a mannes palet.⁷

¶ The tunge suffriþ manie sijknessiþ as pustulas and swellynge & kuttynge, & ofte tyme a mannes tunge bicometh schorter þan it 16 schulde be. And þer is anoþer passioun þat is clepid fili ranulam⁸ & spasmus, & sumtyme a mannes tunge wexijþ to long.⁹ ¶ The curis of pustulis & vlcera schulen be seid heraftir / If þer come an enpostym or ony swellynge to a mannes tunge, & it come of hoot 20 humours, þanne þou schalt^t bigynne þe cure þerof in þis¹⁰ maner / fiirst^t lete him blood in þe heed veine, & þanne make him a decoccioun & a waisching^t as it is aforseid in apostym of þe palet: & he schal holde in his mouþ þe iuys of letuse. & in þe same maner þou 24 schalt^t cure swellynge of a mannes tunge / If þer come apostym or

¹ MS. over *mirtillorum* is written *mirtelberys*.

² *pelletre*, Lat. *pyrethrum*. "*Pyrethrum*, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot." Phillips. See *Pelleter* Cath. Angl. and Note *ibid*.

⁴ *enbotum*, Lat. *embotum*. See *Dufr.* = *infundibulum*. Fr. *embut*, a surgical instrument, a funnel.

⁵ *sappa michum*, Lat. *saramitum*.

⁶ *piys*, Lat. *pectus*. O.Fr. *pis*.

⁷ *Gulielmus de Saliceto*, Lanfranc's teacher, uses a cautery instead of cutting. I give the quotation from an English translation, MS. Sloane 277, fol. 1 (beginning of 15th cent.): "*Be þe grape cutt wiþ a brennyngre yren kernynge, & be it putt in by a pipe to þe grape, þe mouþ holden open. Be þe grape receyed in þe hole of þe pipe. Whiche receyed, be putt in þere þe brennyngre yren in þe pipe, & be þe grape cauteried.*"

⁸ *Ranula*, a tumor, which forms under the tongue. (*Dunglison*.) See *Vegetius*, *De re veterin.* 4, 5, 1. Gr. *βατραχος*. Fr. *grenouillette*.

⁹ The passage is corrupt. Lat.: *Lingua quoque multas patitur ægritudines, pustulas, inflationem, scissuram, breuiationem fili, ranulam, spasmus et relaxationem.*

- ony swellunge of coold humouris, þan purge him with pillulis þat^t be forseid of .G[aliens]. makinge. ¶ Ther was a man þat^t his tunge was so swolle þat it m³te not be conteyned in his mouþ. & first
- 4 I made him purgaciouns & waischingis, & þan I made him consumynge þingis; & in þis maner he was curid. ¶ Scissure is a passioun in a mannes tunge þat is as it were kutting. & þat schal be curid wip þe iuys of malue soden wip psillium & medlid wip
- 8 sugre & sode, & herwip he schal waische his mouþ. & he schal drinke water of barli, & his mete schal be hoggis feet wel soden, & wip þe nerues of þe feet he schal frote wel his tunge. ¶ Also þer is a þreed¹ vndir sum mannes tunge þat he mai not put out his
- 12 tunge as he schulde, & also it lettij him to speke. þe cure herof is for to kutte þat þreed, ²& þan brenne him. & it is better for to make an instrument of goold & brenne it þerwip, & kutte also wip þe same instrument / ¶ Also þer comeþ an enpostym vpon a mannes
- 16 tunge of fleume³ & also of malancolie, saue of malancolie an enpostym comeþ but selden / þese ben þe signes if it come of malancolie: þe place wole be ledi ouþir blak. & þan do þou no cure þerto / If it come of fleuma, þanne frote wel his tunge wip
- 20 salt, til þe blood come out þerof. & if þis suffise not, þan frote it wel wip vitriol / If þe spasme come in a mannes tunge þat wole constryne þe tunge inward, þe cure herof is for to holde oile of anete in his mouþ & of camomille hoot as he mai suffre, & make an
- 24 enplastre herof medlid wip hoot water, & leie it vpon his heed & vpon his nolle hoot / If his tunge bicomme neische, þan þou muste purge him wip pillulis fetidis,⁴ or with trocisco de turbit. & þan do þerto þis medicyn: R̄, grana vij. numero, recentis & lucidi
- 28 euforbij,⁵ & take vij. figis & pare awei þe ryndis þerof & grynde hem wel togidere, & do þerto as miche raw hony⁶ & medle hem togidere, & make herof þe maner of a letuarie; & herof he schal take as miche as a bene, & leie it vndir his tunge, whanne he were

If the apostema is caused by cold humours use the purging pills of Galien.

"Scissure" is a fissure in the tongue.

Use a wash, and let the patient feed on barley-water and hog's-feet.

When the "frenum lingue" extends too far, cut it with a golden instrument.

[² If. 180]

When the apostema is caused by melancholy,

try no cure;

if it is caused by phlegm, rub the tongue with salt or vitriol.

Against cramp in the tongue use anet-oil and a plaster.

If the tongue becomes soft, use purging pills and an electuary.

R̄

[⁶ If. 180, bk.]

¹ *þreed*, Lat. *filum*. Usually *filetum*. Fr. *filet de la langue*.

³ Lat.: *Ranula* quoque fit sub lingua. Sl. 2463, fol. 93: "*Ranula* is an emynence vnder þe tunge toward þe forther teth in maner of an enpostume, & whane þe tunge is lift vp þer schewith as it wore a nother tunge vnder þe tunge."

⁴ *pillula fetida*, pills composed from fetid things.

⁵ Halle, *Table*, p. 35. '*Euphorbium*, Ευφορβιον: is the gum or teares of a tree called Euphorbia growinge in Lybia, found out (by the testimonye of Dioscorides) in y^o time of Iuba: and was called by that name (as saith Ruellius) of his Phisicien."

fastynge / Wip þis medicyn þe abbot of seint victor was maad hool; for he miȝte not speke, & herwip his speche come agen.¹

Toothache

¶ Akinge of teep: sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe teep,² & sumtyme of þe gomis, & sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe stomac, & 4 sumtyme it comeþ of hoot mete, & sumtyme of coold mete. & if

caused by hot meat is treated with cold water, by cold meat with hot oil, by sour things with cheese and purslane. If it arises from the head or gums let blood.

it come of hoot mete, make him holde coold watir in his mouþ, & þat wole cure him anoon. & if it come of coold mete, þan he schal holde in his mouþ hoot oile. & if a mannes teep akip for sour 8 þingis, þan he schal ete chese & portulacas, or he schal gnawe wip his teep hoot wex³ / If it come of vicis of þe heed or of þe gomis, and þe cause come of hete, þat þou miȝt knowe bi reednes of þe place & bi þe hete þerof, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe heed 12 veine, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe veine þat is vndir his tunge; & þan he schal holde in his mouþ oile of *rosis*, medlid wip

[4 ff. 181]

To soothe the pain,

℞ apply to the tooth a preparation of hyoscyamus and opium.

watir, ⁴ouper coold watir & vinegre / If þe akyng be so greuous þat it mai not be take awei, þan aswage his akyng wip þis 16 medicyn: ℞, *seminis iusquiami albi*⁵ opij ana ʒ .j, *seminis apiij* ʒ .j, grinde hem togidere & temperere hem wip vinegre, & make þerof pelottis in þe greetnes of a pece, & leie oon herof vpon þe tooþ, & þis wole do awei þe akinge þerof. & after þe fourþe dai lete him 20 holde in his mouþ oile of *rosis*, in which is dissolued masticis.

If the pain is caused by cold humours, purge, use an electuary and instil a medicine into the ear.

℞

¶ If þe akyng come of coold humouris, þat þou miȝt knowe if þe place be not reed ne to-swollen, þan purge him wip cochijs or wip *pigra*. & aftir þis he schal holde in his mouþ *tiriacam diatesseron*.⁶ 24

¶ Also do þis medicyn in his eere in þe same parti þat akip / ℞, *olium oliuarum* .ʒ ij., *aceti* .ʒ j., *coloquintidae*, *piperis* ana .ʒ j.,

¹ Lat.: cum hac medicina fuit restituta loquela dominæ abbatissæ sancti victoris ad ultimum, quæ propter linguæ mollificationem non poterat uerbum intelligibile bene loqui; dedi ei hanc medicinam, et cito locuta est expedite.

² of viis of þe teep, dentium vitio. viis is used synonymously with *defaute*. Sometimes both expressions are used. Sloane 277, f. 12 b.: "These seknesses be maad of vice or defaute of þe norischinge strengþe."

³ This is evidently a way of filling the hole of a tooth.

⁵ Halle, *Table*, 52. "*Hyoscyamus*. Henbane is called in Greeke ὕοσκαμος; in Latin: *Hiosciamus*, *Apollinaris*, *Faba suilla* et *Altercum*; of *Apuleius*: *Symphoniaca*; of others also *Fabidum* and *Fabilonia*, and of some *Cassilago* or *Caniculata*; of the *Apothecaries* *Iusquiamus*. Of Henbane there are three kyndes: the blacke, the yelowe and the whyte."

⁶ *diatessaron*, an electuary into the composition of which entered four medicines. "Among Farriers *Diatessaron* is taken for Horse-treacle; ——. Also an Electuary made of Gentian, Bay berries and Birth-wort, of each two Ounces, all beaten to a very fine Powder, and work'd in like manner with two Pounds of Honey in a Stone-mortar."—Phillips.

- & boile hem in a double vessel, & distille it in his cere flaisch¹ /
 Suintyme a mannes teep ben frete & ben holow, & pis comeþ of humours corrupt þat falliþ to þe teep. & in þis maner þou schalt
 4 cure it / R̄, olium .ḡ j., sansuci² sicci,³ seminis sicute ana ʒ ʒ. If the teeth are hollow R̄ cauterize the hole with the hot iron. [¶ If. 181, bk.]
 boile hem togidere, & þan þou schalt haue ⁴a cauterie wiþ .ij. pointis, & þou schalt haue þe schap herof heraftir, & þou schalt
 8 make þe same instrument hoot in þe fier, & þan putte it in þe for-
 seid oile, & þan putte it in þe hole of his tootþ, & be war þat þou
 touche not his gomys wiþ þe iren ne his lippis: & þis medicyn þou
 muste reherse ofte tymes / þis medicyn wole bringe water out of
 þe teep, & it wole do awei þe akyng. ¶ If þou desirist to drawe
 12 out ony mannes tootþ wiþouten iren: R̄, cortices radicum mori & To draw teeth without using the iron. R̄
 piretrum ana, distempere hem wiþ vinegre & grinde hem wel
 togidere, & drie hem in þe sunne, & departe liztli þe tootþ & þe
 fleisch of þe gomis & leie of þe medicyn bitwixe þe tootþ & þe
 16 fleisch / Also lac titimalli⁵ distemperid wiþ flour of amidum / Also
 make poudre of peletre & lete it lie in vinegre in þe somer tyme, &
 kepe it; þis makith neische, þat þe tootþ mowe be drawe out wiþ-
 outen ony iren / If a mannes teep ben blac, in þis maner þou schalt
 20 make hem whit / R̄, farinam ordei, sal ana, & leie hem in hony, & A powder to make black teeth white. R̄ [¶ If. 182]
 make þerof past & folde it in paper ⁶or in linnen cloot, & brenne
 it in a furneis. & þan brenne schellis of eiren, & ciperi, aluminis
 ana partes duas, corticum citri siccorum, camfer ana partem vnam,
 24 make herof poudre, and frote þerwiþ his teep & hise gomis, & þis
 wole do awei þe blaknes of a mannes teep /

Of þe passioun in wommen brestis /

- 28 **G**Od almiȝti made in a womman tetis for þe norischinge of a ¶ v. c.
 child. & a wommans tetis ben maad of fleisch þat is glandu- A woman's breasts are made of glandular flesh, blood-vessels and nerves, and the blood is turned to milk in them.
 lous, & of veines, & of arterijs, & of nerues, & ben but veines þat
 comen fro a wommans lyuere to hir tetis & þe maris, as it is seid
 here tofore, & in what maner blood turneþ into milk it is forseid.⁷

¹ *flaisch*, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

² "*Samsucus*, maiorana," et cet. *Alphita*, p. 161.

³ MS. *succi*.

⁵ *lac titimalli*. τισίμαλος, euforbia.

⁷ *Lat.*: et ad ubera veniunt venæ concavæ a matrice, per quas, ut scivisti, pars sanguinis attrahitur menstrualis, et sicut chylus camellinus veniens a stomacho, cum a hepate recipitur, colorem recipit rubeum: sic sanguis a matrice veniens rubeus albescit. Compare *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. XII., Cap. 1, f. 209. "Nam epar rubificat chilum album et facit ipsum sanguinem. Et mamilla albeficat sanguinem rubeum et facit ipsum lac."

Egidius. ¶ In a wommans tetis comep manie passiouus / ffor, as Egidius seip, pat' sumtyme per comep p̄erto apostym of' milk, & sumtyme vleera / And comounly enpostyms comep of' blood pat' is drawe to be tetis & mai not' turne into milk, or if' a womman haue to miche 4 blood, & it' comep of' febilnes of' vertu as it' is aforseid in þe general chapitre of' enpostyms. ¶ þe cure of' an hoot' enpostym in þe tetis / first' þou ¹schalt' lete hir blood in Basilica, or sette a ventuse vpon hir schuldris. & if' þe cause come of' retencioun of' menstree, 8 þan þou schalt' zeue hir medicyns for to bringe out' þe menstree, or þou schalt' lete hir blood in þe sophene, & anointe þe place wip oile of' rosis, & þe fourþe part' of' viuegre. & if' þis suffise not', þan wete a lynnen cloþ in þe iuus of' solatri,² & whanne þou hast' 12 anoyntid þe place wip oile & vinegre, þan leie þis cloþ p̄ervpon. & loke pat' alle pingis pat' þou leist' p̄erto be flasch hoot';³ for þer schal no coold ping' be leid p̄erto for þe place is neruous, for coold ping' wolde greue it'. If' alle þese medicyns suffisen not', saue þe 16 mater bigynneþ to drawe to quittance, þanne leie p̄erto maturatiuis. & if' þou miȝt' not' do it' awei wip repercuſsiuis ne wip resolyunge pingis, & þou ne miȝt' not' make it' maturatif, þan it' is drede lest' þe womman bicomme in a passiou þat' is clepid Mania.⁴ þan hir heed 20 mote be schauē, & zeue hir confortif pingis for hir heed, & zeue hir sotil dietyngē, & sche schal drinke no wijn ne ete ⁵no fleisch. & þou muste worche ful sotilli, ffor I say a womman pat' hadde an enpostym in hir brest' & come of' blood, & so I tauȝte hir for to do ⁶24 as it' is aforseid, & þo þer come a lewid cirurgian & repreuede me, & he leide p̄ervpon maturatiuis: & þe more pat' he leide p̄ervpon maturatiuis, þe more þe mater wexide greet' & þe more brennyngē. & þe same cirurgian wolde not' heere my counseil / & þe wommans 28 freendis took more hede to þe lewid cirurgian þan to me, & wipirne .iij. daies Mania come to hir and was oute of' hir witt', & so þe frenesie fil on hir / & þis pronosticacioun I seide in þe bigynnyngē, but' þei wolde not' leue mi wordis⁷ / If' it' so be pat' it' make quittance, 32 þan opene it' & do out' þe quittance, & þan leie p̄erto a mundificatif,

² Halle, *Table*, p. 119. "Solanum hortense, which doubtlesse Lanfranke meaneth by Solatrum, doth Galen also call Esculentum."

³ *flasch hoot*, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

⁴ De propr. rer. lib. V. cap. 34. Add. 27,944, fol. 53 b.: "ypocras seip þat in wommen in þe whiche superfluyte of blood turned to þe pappis, it bodeþ madnes."

⁶ *do*, above line.

⁷ Lat.: mea tamen prognosticatio multum exaltata extitit.

Apostemas are caused by blood in the breast, which cannot be turned into milk.

Treatment of a hot apostema.

[¹ If. 182, bk.] Use blood-letting and cupping.

In case of retention of the menstrual blood,

bleed from the Saphena: use an ointment

and a compress, which must be lukewarm.

If suppuration is imminent,

apply maturatives, and if they fail there is danger of Mania.

Shave her head,

[⁵ If. 183] and let her abstain from wine and meat.

A woman with an apostema in her breast was treated by an unskillful surgeon,

with maturatives,

in three days she fell into Mania and frenzy, as I prognosticated.

If it suppurates, open it.

- & be wel war þat þou putte þerinne no greet tent' ne long', as manie foolis doon; for a wommans tetis ben ful of neruès, & if þe nerues were pressid wiþ ony tent, it wolde make gret' akyuge, & wolde
- 4 lette þe cure þerof. ¶ Also þer ben manie foli lechis, whanne þei fynden ¹in a wommans tetis fleisch þat' is glandelous, þan þei wene þat' it' be wickid fleisch, & ben þeraboute for to drawe it' out, & þan þei schendip al þe substance of þe brest'. þou schalt worche
- 8 wiseli & þou schalt' remeue noon herof, for as it' is aforseid, al þe fleisch of þe tetis is glandelous. & whanne þat' is cleusid wiþ mundificatiuis þan þou schalt' regendre fleisch, & þan þou schalt' drie it' / If it' be so, þat' coold mater gadere to enpostym in a wommans
- 12 brest, & þat' comeþ ful selde, loke if' þis mater come of fleume, & þan anoynte þe place wiþ oile of camomille, & oile of lilie, & oile of anete, & a lital vinegre medlid þerwiþ. & if it' be ony nede first make hir a purgacioun, & if it' resolue not, þan leie þerto matura-
- 16 tiuis, & þan do as it' is aforseid / & if it' so be þat' þe mater turne to hardnes & blak or ledi, þan þou muste be war þat' þou leie þerto no medicyns þat' ben to hoot', for þer mai engendre a cancre þerof ful listli. & if it' be so, þan be þou not þeraboute for to make it'
- 20 maturatif, & do þou no cure þerto. & summen seien þat' a womman mai be curid for ²to kutte off al þe brest', & þat' is al fals. Saue þou schalt' kepe þe place wiþ vnguentum de tutia, & sche mote ofte be purgid, þat' sche mowe lyue þe lenger. ¶ I-leue þe wordis þat' I
- 24 seie; þou; I haue curid manie men of diuers empostyms, I miþte neuere cure a verri cancre, but' it' were in a fleischi place þere I miþte kut' al awei wiþouten ony hurtyng' of senewis & of veines ³ /
- & a wommans brest' is ful of senewis & veynes & arterijs. ¶ Ulcera
- 28 þat' ben in a wommans tetis schulen be curid as it' is aforseid in þe general chapitre, saue herof þou muste be war þat' þis lyme may not suffre so harde corosiuis for þe greet' tendirnes þerof, saue þou schalt' do þerto medicyns þat' ben mundificatif & drynge / It' fallip
- 32 to summe wommen þat' þe point' of hir tete ne goip not' out, but' ben al hid in þe tete so þat' a child mai not' take it' in his mouþ for to souke / In þis maner þou schalt' helpe it' / Take þe cuppe of an acurne, & þat' is lyk to þe point' of a wommans tete, & do þeron
- 36 terbentyn or pich, & make it' hoot' & leie it' vpon þe point' of hir tete & binde ⁴it' þerto faste, & þis wole drawe out' þe point' of hir

Be ware not to use a great tent, as many fools do.

Many foolish physicians [¹ ff. 183, bk.] remove the glandular flesh, mistaking it for corrupt flesh.

If cold matter gathers into an apostema,

apply an ointment

and maturatives.

If the matter becomes hard, it may easily become a cancre. In case of cancre,

[² ff. 184]

operation does not help; but apply an ointment and purge to prolong the patient's life.

I have only cured a true cancre in a fleshy part.

Ulcers in a woman's breast are treated with mundificative and drying medicines.

If the nipples are hid in the breast draw them out with an acorn-cup.

Ry

[⁴ ff. 184, bk.]

³ There is no condition mentioned in the Latin original, under which the operation might be performed. Roy. 12. C. XIV. fol. 54 b.: de uero cancro nunquam curare potui, licet pluries cum meis uiribus laborauerim.

In case of enlargement of the breast apply

R̄

the powder of a whet-stone and vinegar,

or a plaster of cumin with honey and vinegar.

If the milk becomes hard, anoint the breast with oil and apply a solvent.

[² lf. 185]

R̄

tete. ¶ Also it bifallij to maidenen þat her tetis bicomēþ more þan þei schulde be bi resoun, & þou schalt helpe hem in þis maner / Take stonys þat me whettij knyues on, & frote þese .ij. stones togidere in vinegre longe, til þe vinegre bicomē þicke þerof, & make 4 it' hoot' & anoynte þer wiþ hir tetis, & þan binde hem / þis medicyn defendij þat' þei schulen not' wexe, & make hem bicomē litil til þei come to her owne propre schap. ¶ Also take comyn & make poudre þerof, & medle it' wiþ hony & vinegre; and it' worchij þe 8 more strongli if' þou medle þerwiþ bole armoniac & terra sigillata; grinde hem & tempere hem wiþ vinegre, & make a plastre þerof & lete it' lie þeron .iiij. daies, & þan þou schalt' waische it' wiþ coold water / And a womman be war herof þat' sche haue no sich 12 medicyn, if' hir brest' schal wexe ony more.¹ ¶ If' þat' milk be gaderid hard in a wommans brest' for hete, þanne þou schalt' anointe hir brest' wiþ oile of' rosīs & vinegre, & þou schalt' make an enplastre as ²of' solatri, portulace, for þese herbis han propirte for to 16 dissolue. ¶ þis is a plastre þat' wole dissolue mylk þat' is congelid hard, and it' wole make þe mater of' an enpostym maturatif' / R̄, mice panis, farina ordeī, fenigreci & seminis lini ana. ʒ j, radicis malue visci & herbe veruce.³ ana. ʒ .j.; seþe wel þese .ij. laste, & 20 þan stampe hem wel alle togidere & tempere hem wiþ oile, & make þerof' a plastre & leie it' vpon flasch hoot' /

ffor brekyng of þe siphac & of his laxyng.

¶ vj^o c^o /

ANothamia of' þe siphac is aforseid / & sumtyme siphac is kutt, 24 & sumtyme it' recchij along', & sumtyme it' to-brekij wiþ lepinge, & sumtyme for greet' wepinge, & sumtyme for greet' crijnge, & sumtyme for greet' traueile. ¶ If' siphac be recchid aboute þe nauеле ouþer aboute þe heeris, þat' þou myzt' knowe in þis maner: þe place 28 wole be to-swolle an hiz as it' were an enpostym. & whanne þou touchist' it' wiþ þi fyngir, it' wole goon yn azen. & sumtyme it' wole come azen, & it' wole make noon gurgulacioun / þe cure herof' is but' lizt', & is wiþ a ligature & wiþ enplastre þat' schal be seid in þe brek- 32 inge ⁴of' þe siphac. & if' siphac be to-broke, þou miȝte knowe bi þe greet' noise, whanne þou lest' þin hond þervpon for to putte hem yn

If the "siphac" protrudes at the navel or the groins,

use a ligature and a plaster.

[⁴ lf. 185, bk.]

If the siphac is broken a gurgling sound is heard, on the application of pressure.

¹ The translator has omitted the following passage: *Caueat etiam illa quæ non vult suas ingrossare mamillas: ne illas tangat vel tangi permittat.*

³ *herbe veruce*, Lat. *herbæ erucae*. *Brassica eruca* L., white mustard. The translator mistook it for *Verrucaria*.

azen.¹ ¶ þe cure herof is hard in an oold man. þan make him a braccal² id est a boond þat it be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris. & it mote be maad of lynnen clop maniefoold,³ & þou muste make a plate of iren, as brood as þe brekyngt is, & þat mote be fooldid manie foold in þe forseid ligature, & it schal not be round, but plain. & þou muste ordeyne þerfore fastnyngis tofore & bihinde & in hise flankis, þat it mowe be holde algate in oon place, and þou schalt make an enplastre for to leie vpon þe same place vndir þe bindinge in þis maner / R̄, glutinum piscium vel carte .ʒ. .iiij, picis grece .ʒ. .iiij, picis naualis armoniaci ana. ʒ ij, kutte þese alle to smale gobetis, & do hem in ʒ. ij. of vinegre, & ʒ .iiij. of oile of mastics & lete hem lie þeron adai & anyzt, & þan melte hem in a panne & cole hem. & heron medle poudre mastic & thus, & boli armoniaci, mummie, sanuinis, draconis, dragaganti, farine fenigreci ana ʒ ʒ. medle hem longe togidere / Oupir take ⁴scropholarie⁵ þe rynde þerof & grinde it wif grese, & make þerof an enplastre, & of þe same rotis make poudre, & zeue him þerof eueri dai .ʒ .j. & ʒ. wif wijn / Also zeue him euery dai .ʒ .j & ʒ of poudre maad of þe rotis of valarian temperid wif wijn. ¶ And if hise guttis falle adoun into his ballok lepir,⁶ þe cure þerof schal be seid in þe nexte chapitre //

Apply a bandage and a plate of iron firmly fastened on the place;

and beneath the bandage apply a plaster.

R̄

[* If. 186]

Of hernia⁷ of þe ballokis //

THis siknes mai be seid in manie maners / In oon maner whanne a mannes bowels falliþ into his ballokis leperis, & þan it is clepid hernia intestinalis / Or þer falliþ watir into þe same place as

¶ vij. c^o/

Scrotal hernias

¹ The distinction made between a simple protrusion and a rupture of the siphac is, in fact, one between a less or more developed hernia. The "gurgling sound" has already been noticed by *Avicenna Canon*, Lib. III., Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 3.

² *braccal*, Lat. *brachale* = *cingulum coriaceum* Dufr., from med. Lat. *bracæ*. See *breeches*, *N. E. Dict.* The use of the "brachale vel lumbare" is mentioned by Gulielm. de Salie, *Chirurgia*, Lib. I., Cap. 43. De crepatura in inguinibus. Engl. transl., Sl. 277, fol. 6 b. "Wipoute cuttyng moost children & opere in whiche þe guttes comen not down to þe ballock codd, & whiche þat hadde but litel scheryng wif a lumbare or a hawdrike, & oure plastre & powdre manye in my tyme I currede þe lumbare or bandrike owerþ to be maad of lynnen clop þrefold." Sl. 2463, fol. 123 b. says: "The cure without inscicion . . . is don with a gyrdell made for þe rupture, þe whiche a man may fynde to sylle."

³ *maniefoold*, Lat.: multis duplicationibus facta.

⁵ *scropholarie*, *scrophularia*, water betony, *medewort* written above. See Wr. Wül. *médwurt*.

⁶ *ballok lepir*, *testiculorum bursa*.—*Cath. Angl.*, p. 211. Ledyr; *birsa*. Sl. 2463, f. 123 b.: þe purs of þe ballokes.

⁷ MS. *hernio*.

Hernia intestinalis, hernia aquosa, hernia ventosa, hernia carnososa, hernia varicosa.

1.

Either the Zirbus or the [1 If. 186, bk.] bowels fall into the enlarged Didymus.

2. They fall through a rupture of the Siphac into the Scrotum.

This latter case can only be cured by operation.

it were a dropsie, & þan it' is clepid hernia aquosa / Ouþir þer comeþ wijnd into þe same place, & þan it' is clepid hernia ventosa. And sumtyme þer wexiþ fleisch aboute & is greet, & þan it' is clepid hernia carnososa / And sumtyme þer ben veynes þereaboute ful of 4 malancolious blood & wele be gret' as it' were notis, & þan it' is clepid hernia varicosa / The firste cause comeþ in pis maner : Dindimus, þat' anathomia þerof' is ¹ forseid, wexiþ wide for sum moistnes þat' falliþ þerto, so þat' zirbus, ouþer þe bowels falliþ adoun in þe 8 same place; and pis maner is ofte seen. Ouþer siphac is to-broke in þe flank wiþ oon of' þe forseid causis in þe chapitre tofore / & þoruþ þe same brekingt' þe bowels falliþ adoun ouþir zirbus, & bitwixe dindimus & mirac þei fallen adoun into þe ballok leperis. & pis 12 maner falliþ ful selden. þis laste maner is incurable wiþ ony medicyns, but' wiþ kuttynge it' mai be curid & sewid. & who þat' vsiþ sich maner boondis aforseid, but' if it' be in children & in newe causis, it' is al traueile in idil, & þe patient haþ greet penaunce þerwiþ 16 wiþouten ony profit. ¶ The firste may be curid / & þe .ij. maner is ful hard for to cure, & þerfore it' is ful necessarie for a cirurgian for to knowe alle þe maners herof' & anathamiam as it' is forseid lest' he falle in errour. ¶ þer ben manie men þat' ben hardi for to 20

Many unskillful men dare to try these cures,

[2 If. 187]

whereas some wise men are afraid of doing so.

These two kinds of Hernia must be distinguished.

1. The bowels fall out suddenly through the broken Mirac.

entermete of' þese curis þat' knowen not' þe maner of' þe sijknes ne þe diffence þerof', & þerfore þei falliþ al dai in errour. & þe lasse good þat' ²þat' þei kunne, þe rapere þei wole entermete of' sich an hard cause. & þis cause is ful perilous / I haue seen manie wise 24 men þat' coude do þis cure ful wel, & zitt' þei wolde not' entermete þerof' / þerfore þou muste take consideracioun sotilli, where þe bowels falliþ adoun þoruþ þe brekyng of' siphac ouþir þoruþ dindimus, & þat' þou schalt knowe in pis maner : ¶ In þe firste caas þe 28 bowels or zirbus falliþ doun sodeinli wiþ agreuance, & þan þou miþt' fele his bowels or zirbum in þe botme of' þe ballok leþir, & þan þer is but' oon skyn to-broke, & þat' is mirac. & whanne þou wolt' putte yn þe bowels azen, þou miþt' fele in what' place þei goon in. 32 & whanne hise bowels ben ynne, þan lete þe patient stonde vp, & hise bowels wolen falle out' sodeinli azen, & þan þou miþt' fele in what' place þei comeþ out' / In þe .ij. caas zirbus or þe bowels, or boþe comen adoun alitil & alitil, & makij miche gurgulacioun, & þe 36 wei þat' þei comeþ out' is algate somewhat' greet' in dindimo, & þat' wole not' be put' yn whanne þe bowels ben putt' yn, saue ³wiþ greet' penaunce & in longe tyme. & whanne þe bowels falliþ þoruþ dindimus, he makij þe ballok leþir neuere þe lengere, & þis is a good 40

2. The bowels descend slowly, with a gurgling sound.

[3 If. 187, bk.]

- knowinge: whanne þou hast take kepe of alle þese priuitees, þan þou miȝt wite wherof þe cause is. ¶ Whanne þe bowels falliþ adoun þoruȝ a fissure, *id est* þoruȝ a brekyngge, þan þou schalt not 4 traueile forto worche wiþ plastris & wiþ boondis þat ben forseid, but if it be in children & in causis þat ben newe. & if þe brekyngge be but litil, þan þou miȝt make .v. cauterijs vpon þe skyn wiþoutforþ, so þat þe cauterie perse mirac, for þat wole make an 8 hard drowing vpon þe brekinge / & it wole not suffre þat þe bowels schulen not falle adoun þoruȝ þat place, so þat þe brekinge be but litil. If it so be þat þe bowels falle adoun þoruȝ dindinum, þan men haueþ diuers curis. Summen leien a corosif vpon þe ers wiþ 12 dindinum, a medicyn corosif, til þe skyn wiþout be frete, til þou mai se dindinum, & þan aftirward he fretiþ dindinum; & summen drawiþ awei a mannes ballokis, and ¹summen drawiþ not awei, but bi þe wei of þe corosif þe ballokis wolen rotic afterward / ¶ Also 16 summen maken punctual cauterijs in þe maner of a cros vpon dindinum, & þan aftirward heliþ it vp / Summen kутten þe hiȝer skyn wiþ a cauterie,² & þei streyneþ dindinum, & þei bindiþ it wiþ spago³ / Sum worchith in anothiȝ maner: first, þei kuttith þe skyn 20 aboue, & þan þei makith cauterium aboue vpon dindinum in summe partie, & in sum parti þei leueþ hool. & þis maner is lasse worse þan þe toþer þat ben forseid / Summen ficchiþ .ij. nedlis in dindinum wiþ double þreed & crossiþ þe nedlis togidere, & þan þei takiþ 24 þe þredis & leiþ þervpon martencium,⁴ til al þe skyn þat was take wiþ þe nedelis be rerid an hiȝ. & oþer men han diuers werkis þat I hadde not certeyn, for alle maners þat I heere þerof ben disseynable / For sumtyme whanne a man haþ miche traueilid þoruȝ, þing⁵ 28 þat he haþ do brekiþ aȝen, & þan it wole be worse þan it was raþer. & amonge alle þe maners þat ben, þat is worst þat is doon wiþ medicyn caustica, for medicyns caustica for þe grete venym & malice ⁵þat it haþ, makith greet akyngge, & is cause to make an enpostym in 32 dindimo, and þoruȝ þe agreuance þat dindimo haþ, siphac mai be agreued & diafragma. & fro diafragma it mai go⁶ to þe brayn, þat is þe welle of alle nerues, & so þe man mai falle in a spasme, & þan he is but deed. ¶ O þou wrecchid leche, þat for a litil money

When the bowels fall through a rupture apply bandages only in case of children.

If the rupture is small, cauterise the skin above the *Mirac*.

If the bowels fall through the "*Didymum*," different ways of treatment are proposed.

Some physicians use a Corrosive,

[¶ If. 188] some remove the testicles, some use cauteries, some tie a string round the *Didymus*.

All these cures are uncertain, *Nota*, a relapse may occur.

Caustics are dangerous,

[¶ If. 188, bk.]

they may affect the Diaphragm and the brain.

A bad leech, for a little sum

² *wiþ a cauterie*, error for *wiþout cauterie*. Lat.: *Alii sine cauterio superficiallem cutem incidunt*.

³ *wiþ spago*, cum spago; med. Lat. spacus, thread. See Diez. s. v. spago.

⁴ *martencium*, Lat. martentinum. Name of a cautery?

⁶ *go*, above line.

endangers a man's life, which is worth more than any gold or silver.

The author's advice is, not to cut, but apply the above mentioned bandage and plaster.

He treated in this way a patient who was sixty years of age.

[3 If. 189]

He wore the bandage during two years in perfect health.

Another patient who was forty years old, was cured by similar treatment.

The patient shall always [4 If. 189, bk.] wear his bandage, shall abstain from vegetables and new wine,

shall not leap, cry, or run,

puttist a mannes lijf in perel of deef / for þe lawe seiþ, it is better þan ony gold or siluer, for þou for a litil money makist him in perel of deef / For a man mai lyue vn-to þe tyme of his ende for þis passioun. & þerfore I wole counseile to kutte no man / Saue bi my 4 counseil þei schulen make a ligature as it is aforseid in þe brede of .iiij. fyngris of lynnē cloop or of sendel,¹ as I haue tauzt hertofore. & make þat enplastre þat is forseid, & teche him good regimen & good dietyngē / & þouȝ he be not curid wiþ þis medicyn he schal 8 lyue neuere adai þe lenger, ne þe lasse while þerfore / ¶ I say .ij. men þat hadden þe passioun, & þat oon was .lx. winter oold, & his bowels fel out as it is for seid, & it was ful hard² to bringe hem in 3 aȝen, & I made him sich a boond as it is aforseid & a plastre, & 12 tauzte in what maner he schulde diete him-silf. & I seide to him if he louede his owne lijf he schulde go to no man to kutte him. & he was glad of my counseil, & he bar þe forseid bond & þe enplastre .ij. ȝeer contynueli, dai & nyȝt, & wiþinne þat tyme he was hool, & 16 ȝitt I wiste not wher he schulde be hool or no / & þat opir man was .xl. wintre oold, & þer fel so greet plente out at his bowels, þat þei miȝte not be putt in aȝen, til þe pacient were sett in a baȝ. & þo I putte hem in aȝen / & I toolde of þe perel of kutyngē, & 20 he bad me make sich a boond, & I made him oon & þe enplastre þat is forseid. & I tauzte him how he schulde kepe him-silf, and how he schulde diete him-silf. & wiþinne a litil tyme he come to me, & seide þat he was almost hool, & þat he wolde were his boond no 24 lenger. & þo I repreuede him, & seide þat he schulde not be hool, but if he weride it lenger / In þis maner þou schalt teche him for to kepe him-silf: he schal algate were his boond & his plastre, saue 28 if he haue greet penaunce 4 þerwiþ whanne he goiþ to his bed an- euen he mai vndo it / And he schal in⁵ no maner ete no growel ne raw fruit, ne no mete þat makiþ inflacioun / And he schal drinke no newe wijn, & he schal ete no greet saule,⁶ and whanne he haȝ ete þan he schal reste him-silf. & he schal not arise, but if his 32 ligature be faste bounden, & he schal not lepe, & he schal not crie ne renne, & he lepe vpon an hors softli. & whanne he sittit at

¹ *sendel*, Lat. *sendon*, *σινδών*, a fine Indian cloth, muslin; *sendel*, O.Fr. *sendal* is derived from *sendon*. See Diez, s. v. *zendale*. See *sendalle*, *sendylle*, in *Cath. Angl.*, p. 329, and note *ibid.*

² *hard*, in margin.

⁵ *in*, above line.

⁶ Lat.: *ne comedant ad plenam saturitatem*. *saule*, O.Fr. *saoulée*, from *saoul*, Lat. *satullus*.

pruue he schal not streyne him-silf to harde, & he schal ete no mete þat wole make him costif. & if he wole ony þing traueile, he schal do it þe while he is fastyng. & if he wole holde alle þes 4 preceptis he mai be hool / & þis medicyne is certeyn, for he schal herfore lyue neuere þe lasse while.

¶ If **hernia** be watri, þis is þe signe þerof, þat his ballok wole be heuy & schynyng, & if þou pressist it wip þi fyngir þou schalt 8 fele watrynes þeron / first þou must loke wher it be litil or myche¹ — — & þan medicyns þat ben consumyng & dryng suffisij / þerfore þat þou schalt fynde here aftir in þe chapitre of þe dropesie.

¶ If the ²mater be greet, þan awoide awei þe mater wip kuttyng & 12 wip cauterijs. But if þou make cauterijs, þe watir wole come azen þerto, & þe cauterijs wolen lette þat þer schal no more mater come þerto. ¶ If þe mater be of wynd: þat þou myzt knowe bi inflacioun þat is not ledi colour³ & bi felyng wip þi fyngir, if þou felist 16 no watrynes þeron, ne heuynes; þe cure herof is with electuari maad of greynes of lauri & opere þingis þat schulen be said in þe chapitre of þe dropesi in tympanido.⁴ ¶ If it be superfluite of fleisch, þat þou mizte wite wip þi fyngir, it wole be hard,⁵ þe cure herof mai not be

20 do, but if þou kutte þe skyn þat is wipoute & drawe out þe mater, & þan soude it, & if it be in þe oon part hard & callous, & in þat oper part neische, þan it is better þat þou sette noon hand þeron, & principali if it be blac & ledi. ¶ Varicosa schal be curid wip 24 gotis whey, & with epithimo, & wip purgaciouns of malancolious blood, & þan leie þerto þingis þat ben wastyng /

¶ Of a stoon in þe bladdre & reynis /⁶

28 **A** stoon in a man is engendrid of plente of grete humouris wipinne a man, as we moun se an ensample wipoutforþ of opere þingis, in þe maner þat men brennen tilis in a furneis. þei maken first þe tilis of strong cley þat is viscous, & whanne þei han schape it as þei wolen, þan þei leie it in þe sunne to drie / & 32 þan þei doon hem in a furneis wip fier. & þe stronger fier þat þe

¹ Some words are wanting. Lat.: *quæ si sit parua, sufficit tibi medicamen consumens.*

² Lat.: *Ventosa cognoscitur per tumorem non lucentem.*

³ Lat.: in hydropisi tympanite. See p. 282.

⁴ Lat.: *Signum hernie carnose est . . . quod sentis, cum tangis, testiculos dura carne circumvolutos.*

⁵ Compare *Celsus Medicina*, lib. VII., cap. 26. The later authors followed more or less closely.

and avoid constipation.

Nota

Watery hernia.

The scrotum is heavy and shining,

the water is felt on pressure.

Use drying medicines,

[2 lf. 190]

or evacuate the matter with cutting and cauteries.

Hernia ventosa

is treated with an electuary.

Hernia Carnosa.

Cut the skin and remove the matter.

Varicosa.

¶ viijo. co.

[7 lf. 190, bk.]

A stone in the bladder or the reins arises from a superfluity of the humours and great heat, as tiles get hard in the fire.

tilis han, þe stronger þei wolen be, & riȝt so in a mannes bodi, whanne a man haþ niche viscous matere in his bodi & mai not be putt' out' for febilnes of' expulcioun, & þan scharp hete specialy in þe reins falliþ to þat' mater & makith it' hard, & in þis maner 4 engendriþ þe stoon in þe reynes. ¶ Also in children a stoon engendriþ in her bladdre; for þe reynes of' a child ben not so hote as a mannes / In þis maner þou schalt' knowe wher þe stoon be in a mannes bladdre or in his reynes¹ / If þe grauel of' his vrine be 8 whit': þan þe stoon is in þe bladdre / And if þe grauel be reed, þan it' is in his reynes² / ¶ Summen þat' ben hardi wolen asaie for to cure a man wiþ kuttynge þat' haþ þe stoon in his reynes; for þei knowiþ³ not' þe perel of' woundis þat' falliþ in þe reynes þat' I haue 12 aforseid, & þan þei doiþ no more saue bringe þe pacient' to his deef. ¶ Now I wole teche in what' maner a man schal kepe him þat' is disposid to haue þe stoon, he schal ete no metis þat' ben viscous ne to scharpe, & tofore alle þingis hard chese gaderiþ viscous 16 mater & hard. & he schal ete no beef, ne no fleisch of' a goos, ne no grete briddis þat' swymmeþ in þe water, & he schal ete no fleisch of' an hert, & he schal ete no swete breed,⁴ & al maner mete þat' is maad of' swete past, & he schal ete no whete soden, & he schal ete 20 no maner þing' þat' is maad of' milk saue þe whey, & he schal drinke no coold watir, & he schal ete no fruitis þat' ben of' greet' substauce, as applis, peris, & he schal drinke no newe wijn, ne no wijn of' greet' substauce, & he schal ete no þingis þat' is to myche 24 salt, & he schal absteyne him fro alle þingis þat' engendriþ scharpe humouris & grete, & he schal not' ete to greet' sauly⁵ / In þis maner he schal diete him-silf, he schal ete breed þat' is wel leuyned / &

Nota

The position of the stone is detected by the colour of the urinary sediments.

[3 ff. 191]

Rules of dietynge for a man, who is disposed to get a stone.

He shall abstain from sweet things, milk, cold water, apples, pears,

new wine, salted things.

He shall take well-fermented bread,

¹ Barth. *De propr. Trevisa*, lib. VII., cap. 54, indicates another symptom. Add. MS. 27, 944. fol. 96. "And if þe ston is in þe reynes hit is i-knowe by slepinge of þe foto and in þe ioyntes of þe lift side, and if it is in þe bladder þe ache is in þe schare and þe twist bitwene þe genetas and þe hole at þe rigge bones ende."

² The translator omits the passage about the causes of stone in general, about the stone in the reins and its treatment. The following sentence, *þat I haue aforseid*, refers to this omitted part. The author says that he will speak about the causes and treatment of the stone in the reins, although it does not properly belong to surgery. Lat.: Ego vero, licet liber iste meus de cirurgia dicatur, et ad instrumentum cyrurgicum de lapide renum tractare non pertineat, tamen quoniam multum assimilatur in causis et curis, quamvis dissimiletur in signis et curis. Et quum ad curas lapidum renum multotiens sum vocatus, propter gratiam scholarium modum quo usus sum in utriusque lapidis curatione, causas, signa, et differentias ponere non postponam.

⁴ Lat.: a pane azymo. ἀζυμος, unleavened.

⁵ Compare p. 272, note 6.

his breed wole be þe¹ bettir for him if it be medlid wiþ poudre [¹ lf. 191, bk.]
 maad of fenel-seed & persil, & he schal drinke sutil wijn & cleer, mild wine,
 medlid wiþ fair cleer water / And if his reynes & his bowels weren
 4 hote, þan he mai drinke coold water þat be fair & clene, & he mai
 ete fleisch of capouns & hennes & chikenes, & partrichis, & of
 alle opere maner of briddis þat mouen in feeldis, & of hem þat
 woneþ in watir he schal not ete. & he mai ete pork & motoun &
 8 principali of beestis þat ben gildid, & he mai ete fleisch of .iij.
 daies poudringe,² & he mai ete feel,³ & he mai ete eiren þat ben
 neische soden; fisch þat haþ no schellis & þe substaunce of him be
 greet & hard, he schal not ete þerof / Alle maner fisch þat haþ
 12 manie schellis, is better þan he þat haþ no schellis / And of erbis:
 he schal ete fenel, ache, persil, sperge, attriplicem,⁴ spinochia &
 boraginem, erucam, melones, cucumeris, & he schal be war þat he
 ete no substaunce of caul, & he schal ete no mustard / And he mai
 16 ete þese maner fruits: almaundis, auellanes, figis, notis, vuas bene
 maturas. & he schal not⁵ traueile to miche⁶ affir mete, & he schal
 bere noon heuy birþuns, ne he schal not be girt to streite, & he
 schal not slepe vpon his reynes. & if his reynes ben to hote, þan
 20 he schal anoynte hem wiþ oile of rosis, medlid wiþ vinegre, & he
 schal anointe his reynes wiþ a lynnyn cloop wet in iuys of colde
 erbis, & he schal absteyne him fro wommen, & he schal touche no
 womman to make him haue appetit þerto / for greet medlynge wiþ
 24 wymmen wiþ greet traueile achauit a mannes reynes & consumeþ
 her natural moistnes / Who so euere vsiþ þis regimen, he schal haue
 no drede of engendringe of þe stoon / Who so vsiþ þis regimen⁷ &
 is disposid for to haue þe stoon, with medicyns he schal do it awei
 28 or it be confermed. He schal vse sirupis duretikis⁸: as oximel
 diureticum & squilliticum,⁹ or he schal vse a sirup þat auicen
 made / R, aquæ li. x, aceti li. ℥, medle hem togidere & boile hem
 wiþ ʒ. iij of rotis of ache, & rotis of fenel ʒ. iij, and fenel-seed &

meat of
capouns,
chickens,

pork, mut-
ton, gelded
beasts and
veal.

Fishes with
scales are
better than
those with-
out.
The herbs
and the kind
of fruit he
may take.

[⁶ lf. 192]

Nota

He shall
anoint his
loins and ab-
stain from
women.

If a stone be-
gins to form,
use a diuretic
syryp.

R

² *fleisch of iii daies poudringe.* Lat.: porcos trium dierum salitos. Compare *Liber Cure Coc.*, p. 6. *To powder befe within a nykt.*

³ *feel, vitulus.* O.Fr. veel.

⁴ *Attriplex, Chenopodium vulvaria.* *Alphita*, p. 16. "Attriplex agrestis, crissolocanna idem ang. mielde." O.E. *melde*, Leechd. III. Gloss. Compare Germ. *Molten, Milten.* Dessen.

⁶ *not*, above line.

⁷ Lat. Qui vero tali non utitur regimine.

⁸ Traheron translation of Vigon's *Chirurgery.* Interpret.: "Diuretike. Diuretyke prouokynge vrine, or that hath vertue to prouoke vrine."

⁹ Traheron, *ibid.* "Squyllitike vinaygre is made with the rootes of the greate oyunion, called sqylla, or Scylla dried, and with vynaygre."

ache ana ʒ. j, seþe hem alle togidere til þe .iiij. part be consumed
 awei, & þan cole hem & do þerto li. x of sugre, & þan clarifie it &
 seþe it¹ & kepe it for þin vss // The vss of þis sirip wole suffice for
 to do it awei; but if þe mater be þe more greet, & þan þou miȝt do 4
 þerto if þou wolt oximel squilliticum, or þou miȝt ordeine þe sirip
 wiþ modicis² erbis diureticis. ¶ þer is no þing so good for to
 purge mater of þe reines as is castynge / for whi castynge curiþ
 vlcera of þe reynes / In þe somer þou schalt make him oonys in þe 8
 moneþe sich a maner of vomet / Take þe seed of raphani & make
 it clene & kutte it ouerþwert in rollis, & lete þis lie in þe forseid
 sirup .ʒ. iiij. adai & anyȝt / & þan lete þe pacient ete diuers metis,
 as chese, oynouns, salt fisch & þingis þat mai make him drinke 12
 wel; & lete him drinke diuers wynes, saue the while he is fastynge,
 lete him ete 3 notis of þe forseid rollis of raphani þat lay in þe
 forseid sirup, & whanne he hath ete his saule & drunke, þan binde
 vpon his iȝen neische lynet or flex, & streyne þou not it to harde 16
 but meneli. & þan take watir in which has been soden anetum
 til it bicomme reed, & take þerof li. j., & medle it wiþ þe sirup þat
 radix raphani lay þerinne, & make him³ drinke vp al togidere, &
 þan he schal caste vp al his mete & al his drink, & manye wickede 20
 humours þerwiþ. & þan make him gadere out þe foul mater of his
 nose, & waische his mouþ & his teep; þis medicyn wole do awei þe
 mater of þe stoon & purge wel his reynes, þis is þe best medicyn
 þat mai be, for to kepe a man fro þe stoon. 24

¶ If þe man be not hool in þis maner, saue þe stoon is con-
 fermed fast, þan þe cure þerof mai be in .ij. maners: þat oon is for
 to aswage þe akynge, & þat oþer is for to breke þe stoon & putte
 him out // Whanne a man haþ greet akynge in his reynes & in his 28
 bladdre, & þou wotist wel it ben signes of þe stoon, first þou schalt

make him a clisterie wiþ a decoccioun of herbis þat ben mollificatif
 & dretik: as malua, violae, bismalue, fenigreci, paritaria, apij,
 fenicli, petrosilij scolopendrie, spergi, brusci,⁴ sauline, ebuli, sambuci. 32
 & if it be in winter do þerto calamentum, pulegium, origanum, se-
 men fenicli, apij, petrosilij, carui, aneti, leuistici,⁵ dauci, milij solis,⁶
 eruce, quatuor semina frigidorum, & impone mel, ⁷sal, oleum camo-

[¶ If. 192, bk.]

The best way
 to purge the
 kidneys is
 vomiting.

R̄

Let the pa-
 tient take
 salted meats,
 wine,

and first a
 preparation
 of radish with
 syrup,
 then put
 compresses
 on his eyes

[¶ If. 193]
 and give an
 emetic.

If the stone
 is fully deve-
 loped, one
 may either
 soothe the
 pains or break
 and remove
 the stone.

To soothe the
 pain apply a
 clyster of a

R̄
 decoction of
 herbs,

[¶ If. 193, bk.]

² MS. *modiv's*.

⁴ *brusci*, *Ruscus aculeatus*, wild myrtle.

⁵ *Alphita*, p. 98: "Leuisticus, keisim idem angl. loueache."

⁶ MS. *solus*. *Alphita*, p. 117, "*Milium solis*, granum solis, cauda pecorina idem. g°. et a°. gromel." Phillips: "*Milium solis*, the Herb Gromwell."

- mille*, & scharpe it wip *benedicta*,¹ and make *perof* a clisterie, & pe patient schal holde it wipinne him longe tyme, & after pis clisterie do him in to a particular bap, & lete him sitte *peron* anoon to pe
- 4 nauete, & in his bap schulen be soden leeuves of malue, *peritorie*, viole, *senacion*, *scutella panici pistati* & *cortice mundati*; pis maner bap as I haue ofte *preued*, it aswaged akinge / & whanne he goip out of his bap, make an enplastre of mele, oile & watir, as pou
- 8 schalt fynde in pe *antidotarie in pe c^o.* of *maturatiuis*, & leie vpon pe place *pere* pe *passioun* is / If pou knowist wel *pat* pe stoon
- fallip adoun of pe reynes toward pe bladdre bi pe weie of pe vrine, sette *pan vndir* pe place *pere* it akip,² *sichiam*³ wip fier wipout ony
- 12 kuttinge, for pis wole drawe adoun pe stoon. & as pe stoon discendiþ adoun to *sichiam* to sette it lower til he come anoon to pe bladdre, & *pan al* pe akyng wole go awei. ¶ Tofore alle þingis
- 16 for *pat* is a sure medicyn in pis caas. ¶ Anoper medicyn *pat* auicen made, & I haue *preued* it, and it ⁵doiþ awei akyng *pat* is in *vlceribus renum*. R̄, *seminis iusquiami albi* .3. ß, opij, grana .iiij, *seminum citruli*, lactuce, portulace, ana .3. j., medle al togidere
- 20 & zeue herof .3. ij. wip sugre. ¶ And pis pou muste wite *pat* pou schalt zeue pe patient no þing for to make him pisse whan his akinge is strong, & whanne his vrine is stoppid; for *pat* wole make pe more akinge / It is *perel* of pis *passioun*, for pe akyng is so
- 24 greet sumtyme *pat* pe patient haþ pe spasme *perwip* & is deed *perwip*, saue pou schalt do awei his akyng wip *bapinge* & enplastris & anoyntingis, & *pane* aftirward pou schalt make him medicyns for to breke pe stoon & putte him out wip pe vryne / R̄, *cretani*
- 28 *marini*,⁶ *scolopendrie*, *capillis veneris*, spice celtice, ana .3. ij., *radix fenicli*, apij, *petrosilij*, *spergi*, brusci, cicore, *graminis*, *filipendule*, *genciane*, *saxifrage*, squille, asse, ana .3. j., *iiij^{er} semina frigidorum*, *seminum fenicli*, apij, *coriandri*, *scariole*,⁷ *granorum iuniperi*, *nucleum*

put the patient into a bath

and apply a plaster.

Draw the stone from the kidneys to the bladder by application of heat.

The best medicine is the *Philonium*.

Another medicine of *Avicenna*.

[⁵ If. 194]

R̄

One must not give diuretic medicines to the patient.

A medicine to break the stone.

R̄

¹ *benedicta*. Lat. cum *benedicta Nicolai*.

² MS. *makip*. Lat. sub loco doloris.

³ *sichiam*. Lat. *syciam* G. *σίκυος*, the common cucumber. "A figuræ vel formæ similitudine Cucurbitæ vel cucurbitulæ medicis dicuntur vascula illa, quæ cuti cum flamma affigi solent, cum vel sine scarificatione." Castelli, Lex. medicum.

⁴ *filonium*. Lat. *philonium romanum*. Matth. Sylv.: "Filonium i. nouus amicus & est confectio quedam sic uocata." Galen, ed. Kuehn, vol. xvii. B. 331, *φάρμακον φιλώνιον*. An electuary with Opium, so called from Philo of Tharsus.

⁶ *Crithmum maritimum*, L.

⁷ Sin. Barth.: "Scariola, lactucella, lactuca agrestis idem, an. sowe-thistel."

cerasorum, milij solis, ana .ʒ. ʒ. fiat sirupus cum duabus partibus ꝑucari, & *tercia mellis squillitici*, & itʰ schal be take wiþ a decoccioun of *tribulorum* & *cicerum rubeorum*, þis eletuarie is ¹of auicen

[1f. 194, bk.] **Rʒ**
A medicine
made of
Avicenna.

makyng / **Rʒ**, *cineris vitris*, *caulis cineris leporis combusti*, *cineris 4* *scorpionis*, *cineris testi oui*,² *lapidis spongie*, *lapidis iudaici*, *sanguinis hirci sicci*, *gummi nucis acori*, ana .ʒ. j. *seminis petrosilij*, *dauci*, *pulegij*, *gummi arabici*, *seminis albi piperis* ana .ʒ. j., *auri* .ʒ. .iiij., *balsami* .ʒ. ʒ., *muscati* .ʒ. j., make alle þese wiþ good hony þat itʰ 8 be whitʰ & clene, & þou schalt ʒeue .ʒ. .iiij. þerof, & .iiij. tymes in þe woke. ¶ Also a good medicyn for þe stoon þat is comen to a mannes reynes & in his bladdre / Take a litil hare þatʰ bledde neuere blood, & do him in an erþen vessel³ wel glasid wiþinne wiþ a 12 couerle of þe same mater, & stoppe itʰ faste, þatʰ þer mowe come outʰ þerof no fume, wiþ good lute or wiþ past, & sette þis vessel in a furneis til þe hare be bicomē al aischis, & þan grinde itʰ & kepe itʰ, & ʒeue him þerof .ʒ. j. whanne he goiþ outʰ of his bapinge þatʰ is 16 forseid, wiþ a decoccioun of *tribulorum*, & hony. I have preued þatʰ þis medicyn is good, & also þou miȝtʰ medle wiþ þis poudre, triacle / And þis schal be þin entencioun for to ʒeue him medicyns þatʰ ben not strongʰ for to breke þe stoon, as saxifrage & cantarides 20 ⁴& oþere strongʰ medicyns þatʰ pilij þe reynes. & if þe pacientʰ haue drie reynes & he be leene of bodi, þan in þis caas .ʒ. j. of *Rasis* makyng is good / **Rʒ**, *semina melonum mundatorum* .ʒ. xxx, *seminis citruli*, *seminis portulace*, *seminis cucurbite*, *seminis papau-* 24 *eris albi ana* .ʒ. .iiij., *seminis iusquiami albe* .ʒ. .ij., ꝑucari *pondus omnium*,⁵ saue I do þerto þe double weiȝte of sugre /

The medicine
shall not be
too strong,

[4 1f. 195]
as it might
hurt the
kidneys.

A medicine
of Rasis.

Rʒ

The patient
suffers from
strangury,
if the stone
is in the
neck of the
bladder.

Remove the
stone with
the finger as
with a
syringe.

If þe stoon be in his bladdre, þan þou schalt worche in þis maner / First þou schalt take kepe wher he haue stranguria. þatʰ 28 þou miȝtʰ wite ifʰ he makij watir droppynli & a litil at oonys, & haþ greet penaunce in his bladdre. þan þe stoon is in þe necke of þe bladdre; þan þou schalt make him a clisterie mollificatif þat þou mowe auoide his bowels, & þan þou schalt frote his noseþrillis with 32 watir,⁶ & þou schalt presse liztly þe place of his ars þereaboute þat þou suppositʰ þat þe stoon sittij. & ifʰ he remeue not in þis maner, þan þou schalt putte in siryngam liztli in þe condijtʰ of his ʒerde til he comē to þe stoon. & ifʰ þou myȝtʰ not putte itʰ awei in þis maner, 36

² *testi oui.* Lat. *testæ oui.*

³ Lat.: pone ipsum vinum in olla terrea.

⁵ Lat. ad pondus omnium.

⁶ Lat.: faciendo egrum leuare nates. The translator read: lauare nares.

- þan putte þi fyngir in ¹his ers, & þere þou schalt fele þe stoon, & helpe wiþ þi fyngir for to putte it awey. Whanne þe stoon is remeued, þan þe pacient mai make watir, þan his akinge wole ceesse,
- 4 & þan þou schalt go to þe cure. First þou schalt make him a clisterie of duritikis / in which schulen be medicyns þat haue propriete for to breke þe stoon, & þan sette þe pacient in a baþ þat is forseid. & a litil tofore or he go out of his baþ, zeue him of þe
- 8 poudre of þe hare þat is forseid. & whanne he comeþ out of þe baþ, leie þis enplastre vpon þe place þat is clepid pectinis.² R7, foliorum nastureij aquatici,³ & foliorum apij .ana. ℞ j, & grinde hem wel wiþ grese. & whanne þei ben medlid togidere in þe mortar, þan
- 12 hete hem a litil ouer þe fier & leie it vpon, & eueri dai in þre daies contynuely þou schalt sette him in þe forseid baþ, & leie vpon þe forseid plastre, & zeue him of þe forseid poudre. þis cure is good & I haue preued it //
- 16 If alle þese medicyns availþ not, þan þou muste drawe out þe stoon wiþ kuttinge or þe patient falle into etikis.⁴ & if þou wolt drawe ⁵out a stoon of þe bladdre wiþ kuttinge, þan þou muste appaile⁶ alle þingis þat ben necessarie for þee : as sirupis & ligaturis,
- 20 & þan þou schalt binde his hipis & his leggis faste, þat he mowe not meue, for to lette þee whanne þou wolt kutte him. & þanne þou schalt anoynte þi longist fyngir of þi list hond & þi pombe wiþ oile, & þou schalt putte hem in þe pacientis ers, saue first þou schalt
- 24 avoide him wiþ a clisterie mollificatif, & þou schalt sette⁷ þi rizt hond vpon his ers, and grope softli, where þe stoon be, & putte him to þe hedis of þi fyngiris. & whanne þou myzt take þe stoon wiþ þi .ij. fyngiris, þan þou schalt putte him to þe necke of þe bladdre
- 28 toward þe ballokis as myche as þou myzt. & þan þou schalt fele þe hardnes of þe stoon bitwixe his ers, & þe ballokis þat is in þe necke of þe bladdre. þan þou schalt wiþ þi rizt hond take a rasour, & kutte faste by þe preed þat goiþ bitwixe þe ers & þe ballokis ende-
- 32 longis, saue þou schalt take þe stoon wiþ þi .ij. fyngiris þat þe stoon mowe come out. & þanne ioyne wel þe lippis of ⁸þe wounde togidere, þan þou schalt sewe [not]⁹ oonly þe skyn aboue, but þou

When the stone is removed into the bladder, try to break the stone with an internal treatment, a bath,

and a plaster.
R7

If these medicines do not avail, operate.

[3 If. 196]
Prepare the things necessary for the operation, and bind the patient fast.

First use a Clisterie,

feel for the stone, hold it between the fingers,

then cut out the stone with a razor.

[3 If. 196, bk.]
and sew the wound.

² Lat. : supra locum pectinis. Os pectinis, the share-bone.

³ Nasturtium aquaticum, watercress.

⁴ etikis, Lat. : antequam æger incurrat hecticam. O.Fr. étique. Med. Lat. Ethica uel Ethica febris. Dufur.

⁶ appaile. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. apparel, v. l., to make ready, prepare.

⁷ sette, above line.

⁹ not, wanting. Lat. : et labia vulneris optime jungas non solum in superficie.

schalt sewe al þe depnes of þe wounde togidere, & þan þou schalt
 springe þeron poudre þat is aforseid to woundis. & þan þou schalt
 binde it with boondis & lynt til þe wounde be perfitli hool / In þis
 caas þou muste take kepe of manye þingis / First þou muste take 4
 kepe of þe age of þe pacient, for children þat ben xiiij. wintir oold
 ben moost able for þis cure,¹ for her lymes ben tendir ynow³, & in
 þat elde þei ben strong^t ynow³ for to be maad hool, & her com-
 plexioun is hoot & moist. Jonge children & olde men ben not able 8
 to be kutt, for in þe kutyng of hem enpostymis wolen engendre
 hastili, & þat wole lette þe vrine & make more akyng, & so þei
 miȝten falle in-to þe spasme, & so wiȝ þe spasme þei miȝt be deed /
 Summen seien þat olde men ben able to be kutt, for her blood is 12
 miche laskid² & her hete, & þefore þei ben not able to take an
 enpostym; þefore þei ben moost able to be kutt of þe stoon /
 Summen seien þat her lymes ben to drie & her vertues ben to feble /
 & þefore þei ben not able to be kutt, & herwiȝ I acorde / þese .ij. 16
 þingis: engendryng of an enpostym, & if þe place þat is kutt
 wole not soude, þese .ij. bringiȝ perel of deef / Also þou muste
 take kepe of þe schap of þe stoon, & what quantite þat he be, for
 if þe stoon be .ij. forkid⁴ or cornerid, or so greet þat he may not 20
 be brouȝt into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt in no maner
 kutte him, but if þou miȝt first wiȝ þin hond breke þe stoon. &
 þan if þou miȝt not bringe it out at oonys, þan in diuers tymes
 þou schalt gadere him out.⁵ ¶ And if þe stoon be so greet þat he 24
 mai not be brouȝt into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt in no
 maner kutte him, forwhi he mai not be brouȝt out, but if þou
 woldist kutte þe substauce of þe bladdre & þat were mortal; but
 þou schalt put him to þe botme of þe bladdre wiȝ instrumentis, & 28
 teche þe patient for to kepe him in þat maner þat þe stoon falle not
 into þe necke of þe bladdre / Also if he be so sutil þat he mai not
 be felid wiȝ þin hond, þan þou schalt not kutte him neiȝer. & if þe
 patient mai be hool in ony⁶ maner, [n]or kutt wiȝouten passioun, it 32

Note
 Children who
 are fourteen
 years old, are
 most fit for
 this treat-
 ment.

Younger
 children and
 old men are
 not fit,

although
 some people
 say the con-
 trary.

[¶ If. 197.]

If the stone
 cannot be
 brought to
 the neck of
 the bladder,

you must
 first break
 it before
 cutting.

Beware.

Do not cut,
 if the stone
 is small.

[¶ If. 197. bk.]

¹ De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 96: " & somtyme pey schal be take to surgerye and namelich children and þan zongelinge. For in elde keruyng is perilon, for aftir forty zere þis euil is incurable as it is i-said in amphor. :^a aftir fourti zere he þat haȝ þe ston is nouȝt i-saued."

² Celsus Lib. VII. Cap. 26, ed. Daremberg, p. 307: "As neque omni tempore, neque in omni ætate, neque in omni vitio id experiendum est: sed solo vere; in eo corpore, quod jam novem annos, nondum quatuordecim excessit."

⁴ ij forkid, difurcatus.

⁵ Lat.: "pluribus vicibus educatur."

^a Rhazes, Aphorismi.

- is better þat¹ he be nouzt^t kutt^t þan he be kutt^t.² for men þat^t ben so kutt^t schulen neuere gete children, but if it be þe more hap³; & also it is perilous for to kutte / & þefore I rede þee take þat^t wyn-
 4 nunge⁴ to opere cirurgians. ¶ Ful ofte tyme men leie me to scorn, for I wolde not entermete me of sich curis, & seide þat^t I leste siche maner curis, for I coude not do it, & þe same þei seide of men þat^t weren filme broke,⁵ & of men þat^t weren in þe dropesie. & I leste
 8 þe curis þerof^t for perels þat^t miȝte folowe / ffor if a kunnyng man entermetid him of sich a cure, & if þer fil ony yuele happis to þe patient, þan wolen vnkunnyng lechis seie þat^t þei han do þat^t cure ful ofte, & so he mai be brouzt^t into an yuel looss þerbi; for blame
 12 & for perels I wolde not vse kuttyngis / þese ben yuele happis þat^t falliþ to a man þat^t is kutt^t: as greet akyng vndir þe nauete, & hise lymes bicomith coold, & atach of þe feueie,⁶ & greet akinge in þe place þat^t was kutt^t, alle þese signes ben signes of deef / Good signes
 16 herof^t ben þese: strenkþe of vrine, & þat^t he mowe go to priuy wel⁷ & þat^t he haue good appetit^t to mete. ¶ Sumtyme it falliþ bi strenkþe, þe stoon is putt^t into þe zerde. & þat^t I say [in] a man, þat^t his vryne was stoppid .v. daies in þe same maner, & I drowe
 20 him out wip instrumentis wipouten ony kuttyng. & if þe stoon sitte in þe canel of þe zerde, & þou maist^t not bringe him out wip þi fyngris, þm þou schalt binde his zerde bihinde þe stoon, þat^t þe stoon mowe not go into þe bladdre aȝen. & þan grope þe stoon softli
 24 wip þi .ij. fyngris, & kutte endelongis, as it is aforseid, a litil hole, as miche as þou miȝt drawe out þe stoon, & þane cure þe wounde as it is aforseid /⁸

ffor to drawe out watir of men þat han þe dropesie /⁹

- 28 **T**Houȝ pis book be maad oonli of cirurgie, ȝitt it is myn entencion to speke of þe dropesie, & princypaly þat^t ben wrouzt^t ¶ x^o. c^o.

¹ MS. þan.

² & if þe patient . . . þan he be kutt, an insertion.

³ Lat.: "Considera quoque quod sæpe per loci nominati incisionem generatio prohibetur."

⁴ þat wynnyng, Lat.: sed aliis cupidis chirurgis dimitte illa lucrari. *Cath. Angl.*, p. 420, "Wynnyng. Emolumentum, lucrum."

⁵ of men þat weren filme broke, Lat. de ruptorum incisura.

⁶ atach of þe feueie, attack of fever. See later references in *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. attach, sb.

⁸ The translator has omitted one chapter: De clauso hermaphrodito & additione panniculi mulieris doctrinæ tertiæ, tractatus tertii, Cap. IX.

⁹ The four kinds of dropsy are mentioned in *De propr. rerum*, Lib. VII., Cap. 52, Add. 27,944, fol. 94 b.: "De firste dropesye hatte leucostenma, and

The dropsy is a compound disease, caused by superfluity of matter.

[I ff. 198, bk.]
The men of Salerne distinguish four kinds of dropsy.

The Arabs only three:

yposarca,
Aschites,

Tympanites.

There is cold matter in all these kinds of dropsy, the exciting cause may be heat or coldness.

When the liver is diseased, cold phlegmatic matter is produced.

[5 ff. 199]

The Salernitans say that dropsy is caused by a debility of the liver, the stomach, or other organs.

Some physicians say that the urine will be red if there is a hot cause,

wiþ mannes hond. ¶ I seie þat þe dropesie is a sjuknes compound in which superflue mater þat is coold swellip þe body / Men of salerne seiden þat þere weren .iiij. maner spicis of dropesie, & .iiij. maner dropesies. But auctours of arabie acorden alle at ¹oonys,² 4 & seien soþ þat þer ben but .iiij. maner dropesies,³ & þat oon comeþ of rawe blood, of raw fleume medlid wiþ blood, & is bore into al þe bodi, & swellip al þe bodi, & is clepid yposarca. þat oper is of mater of 3elow3 water & fallip into þe holownes of þe wombe, 8 & is clepid aschites / þe .iiij. is engendrid of greet wynd resolued of coold mater, & fallip into þe holownes of þe wombe, & is clepid Tympanites. tympanites / Of þis ydropesie summen iugiþ liztli, & seien þat yposarca comeþ of coold alwei, & tympanites comeþ sumtyme of 12 wynd & of hete, but moost comounli of cooldnes / Aschites comiþ moost of hete, & ful selden of cooldnes / but for to seie þe soþe, alle þe spicis ben medlid with coold mater, & þerfore he seiþ soþ þat clepiþ eueri ydropesie coold mater,⁴ for euery spice of þe dropesie 16 mai come of hete or of cooldnes goynge tofore. ¶ þer is no þing þat defendiþ, þat whanne þe lyuere þe lyuere is hoot out of hir propir hete, or if al þe bodi is distemp[er]id in hete, as in feueris, þe patient mai so miche be feblid þerwiþ, þat it may engendre coold mater & fleu- 20 matik / Ful ofte I haue had þis caas / ⁵þerfore auctouris seien þat þe dropesie comiþ of þe febilnes of þe lyuere / þerfore men of salerne seien þat it comeþ of defaute of digestioun of þe lyuere. & it comeþ of takinge of yuele metis & drinkis, & of febilnes of 24 opere lymes, as of þe stomak, & of þe reynes, & of þe maris, & of þe lungis, & of diafragma. & whanne þese lymes ben enfeblid, þan þe lyuere enfebliþ // Therefore it is necessarie for a leche to wite⁶ wher it comeþ of causis goinge tofore hoot or coold / And summe 28 lechis halden hem paid for to haue a sizt of þe vrine, & iugiþ þe dropesie hoot & coold bi þe sizt of þe vryne / for if þe vrine be reed, þei wolen iuge þat þe cause is hoot, & in þis maner þei ben

comeþ of distemperaunce of coldnesse and drinesse, & haþ þat name of white fleume for leucos is white. ¶ Þe secoude hatte yposarca opir anasarca, and comeþ of distemperaunce of coolde and of drynes. The þridde hatte aschites and comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & moisture. Þe ferþe hatte tympanytes & comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & drinesse."

² acorden alle at oony, Lat. in una conueniunt. Comp. *Reliqu. Antiqu.* I. 233, *accorde in one.* (*N. E. Dict.*, s. v. accord v. 5.)

³ Lanfranc follows *Avicenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 14, Tract. 4, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 238 b.

⁴ Lat.: omnem egritudinem ydropicam appellat materialem frigidam.

⁶ to wite, above line.

- disseyued / ¶ Forwhi, in what maner so þe lyuere be enfeblid of coold cause or of hoot, it wole make his vrine reed / For sumtyme a man mai not zeue a discrecioun¹ of blood fro vrine, for a litil blood colourid miche vrine, riȝt as a litil saffron colouriþ miche water / þerfor of what cause so it be þat his lyuere be enfeblid, his vrine mai schewe reed. ¶ Also þe signes of yposarcha & aschites & tympanite ben open ynow³. ²In þis maner þou schalt knowe hem /
- 8 In yposarcha al þe bodi swelliþ, as his face, & his armis, & his riggeboon, & his necke, & alle his lymes, so þat in what partie of his bodi þat þou pressist þi fyngir þere wole be a pitt. & whanne þe fyngir is aweie it wole arise aȝen / & it is a greet maistrie for to
- 12 knowe wheþer yposarcha come of coold cause tofore goynge or of hoot cause / If it comeþ of coold goinge tofore, þan his ȝen wolen be discolourid as it were þe colour of askis, or pale³ / If it come of hete goinge tofore, þan his ȝen wolen be ȝelow³ or somewhat reed /
- 16 & þou muste wite, wheþer he had a feure tofore or haue þe feure fortis þerwiþ / or if he hadde þere tofore an hoot enpostym þerwiþ, ouþer he haue enpostym þerwiþ / þese ben þe propre signes of aschites, þat his face, & his necke, & his brest, & his armis
- 20 bicomith smal, & his vois schal bicomie smal, & his wombe schal conli swelle. & sumtyme in þe firste bigynnyng^t his feet & his leggis wolen swelle in þe firste bigynnyng^e, for þe greet strenkþe of þe mater þat makij it falle adoun. & if þou ⁴smite his⁵ wombe, he
- 24 wole sowne as it were a touȝt leþer ful of wynd⁶ / þese ben þe propre signes of tympanites: his wombe & þe regioun of his stomac schulen onoly be to-swolle, & alle his opere lymes, boþe his feet, & his leggis, & his necke, & his armis wolen bicomie smal, & if þou
- 28 smitist him vpon his wombe, it wole sounne as it were a tympan / & in þis passioun þer is lasse agreuance þan in aschite & more swellynge. & if þou pressist his wombe, þou schalt fynde it streite as it were a corde. & þou schal fele no meuyng of water, whanne
- 32 þe pacient turneþ him from o side to anoþer / Curis herof þou schalt fynde ynowe in bukis of phisik / For I nyle telle but fewe medicyns þerfore, I haue longe tyme vsid.

¶ Whanne þou wolt ordeine regimen on yposarcha, zeue him

¹ zeue a discrecioun, discernere.

³ Lat.: conjunctiva oculi est valde discolorata, cinericia vel pallida.

⁵ MS. his, twice.

⁶ Lat.: auditur quasi sonus vtris de corio vino pleni.

but a little blood colours much urine.

[² If. 199, bk.]

Signs of yposarca are a general swelling of the body.

If the cause is cold, the eyes will be pale; they are yellow or red, if there is a hot cause.

The signs of ascites are a wasting of the limbs and a swelling of the belly.

[⁴ If. 200]

Signes of tympanites. They are the same as in ascites, but there is less pain and more swelling.

Make the patient who suffers from Hyposaracha sweat, in summer in hot sand or on a sunny hill,
[3 lf. 200, bk.]
in winter in a hot-house.

R̄

Prescription, how to make the decoction.

R̄

How to make the troches.

R̄

The Agaric-pills.
Treatment of Ascites.

The disease is almost fatal, if the cause is hot.

[3 lf. 201]

If there is a cold cause, and if the patient is strong,

give him rhubarb-pills;

trociscus de lactea¹ cum apozimate² de radicibus fro þe firste dai to þe .iiij., & zeue him pelottis de agarico. & whanne þe swellinge bigynneþ to go away, if it be in somer, þan þou schalt hele al his bodi in hoot gravel þere þe sunne mai zeue greet hete, or lete him sitte vpon an hiz hil þere þe sunne schineþ hoot, þat he mai swete wel, & þat his bodi mai wexe hoot wipoute & wipinne. & if it be in winter, putte him in a drie stewe, so þat þe watir come not niȝ him. þus þou schalt make apozima of rotis / R̄, corticis fenicli, 8 apij, [ana drac.]⁴ .x., seminum [apii] squinantum, ameos, ana. ʒ .v., rosarum rubiarum, spicenarde ana .ʒ .iiij, seþe hem in li .ij. of watir til þei come to li .j., cole hem & kepe þe colature. & if þou doist þerinne a litil hony it wole be þe better / Trocisci de lacte ben maad in þis maner / R̄, rubarbe, lacte, ana [drac iii.], seminis apij, spice, ameos, amigdalum amarum, masticis, squinante, seminis iuniper[er]i, costi amari,⁵ rubeæ succi, eupatorij,⁶ aristologie rotundæ, gencian ana .ʒ. ʒ. s, make herof gobetis, þe weizte of ʒ .j., & he schal take con þerof wip .ʒ .iiij. of þe forseid pelottis de agarico / R̄, agarici .ʒ .x., succi eupatorij, rubarbarum, aristologia rotundæ ana ʒ .ij, zucare albe .ʒ .v, & make herof pelottis. & þou schalt zeue herof .ʒ .ij.

20

If þou seest þat þe cause þat zede tofore þis passioun was hoot, & he make litil vrine & reed, & if his vertu be feble of þe hete, & þou hast dispeir of him,⁷ & if he haue þe feuere þerwip, it is so myche þe worse // If his vrine schewe þat þe cause is coold, & if þe patient be strong, ynow, loke if his wombe be hard. & þan make him vse sirup acetose maad wip seedis & sugre, & zeue him þe pelottis of rubarbe þat ben maad in þis maner / R̄, rubarberi, succi eupatorij, seminis endiue ana. ʒ .iiij, agarici ʒ .v., make þerof

28

¹ *lactea*, Lat. lacta. "Lacca, a red transparent Substance made as some say, by winged Arts; as Hony by Bees, and gather'd from a Tree of that Name, in Bengala, Malabar &c. Also a kind of red Gum issuing from certain Trees in Arabia, of which the best Sealing hard Wax is made; often us'd in Painting and Varnishing." Phillips.

² *Apozima*. "Apozeme, a Physical Decoction, a Diet-Drink made of several Roots, Woods, Barks, Herbs, Drugs, Flowers, Seeds, &c., boild together." Phillips.

⁴ MS. ʒ.

⁵ Two kinds of *costus* are mentioned in *Alphita*, p. 46: c. indicus, and c. arabicus.

⁶ *eupatorium*. Add. 15,236, fol. 3 b. (cc. 1300), "*Eupatorium. salvia agrestis idem. G. eupatorie. A. wyldesage. i. hyndehale.*"

⁷ þou hast dispeir of him, Lat. de tali ægri salute desperes. Comp. þou schalt neuere þe lattere be in despeir of canteris. Lat. nec propter hoc desperes, p. 311, note 3.

- pelettis wip þe iuys of endiue. þou schalt ʒeue him herof at
oonys .ʒ.ij, & euery wike þou schalt ʒeue it' oonys / If it' so be þat ^{if the patient} he be feble, & if' he mai not take so miche, þan in þe place of þese ^{is feeble,} ^{gobbets,}
- 4 pelottis he schal take gobetis þat' ben maad in þis maner / Rʒ, *seminis* Rʒ
endiue ʒ .x., esule,¹ succi eupatorij, agarici, ana. ʒ .ij, & .ʒ .j,
rosarum, *seminis citrulorum*, ana ʒ .ij, & make herof .x. gobettis
wip a decoccion of fenel in water: ʒeue him oon þerof' wip sirupo
- 8 acetoso de seminibus. Enplastre² his wombe wip enplastre maad ^{and apply a}
wip .ij. partis of oxis dounge, & oon part' of gotis dounge, boli ^{plaster on his}
armoniaci, sulphuris, & salis, & distempere hem wip strong vinegre / ^{belly.}
- þis is þe cure of tympaniti þat' is ful selde curid / & specialy ^{Treatment of}
12 whanne it' is entrid into diafragma & is confermed þere / first' þou ^{Tympanitis.}
schalt' make him *electuari* de baccis lauri, & þou schalt' make him ^[³ If. 201, bk.]
suppositorijs for to distrie⁴ wynd, & he schal suffre hungir as
miche as he mai, & he schal absteyne him fro þingis þat' engendriþ
- 16 wijnd, & þou schalt' frote his wombe ofte wip a scharp cloof / ^{Give an}
Electuari de baccis lauri / Rʒ, *foliorum rute* .ʒ .x., ameos, *seminum*,⁵ ^{electuary} Rʒ
nigille,⁶ *leuistici*,⁷ *petrocilij macedonici*,⁸ *origani*,⁹ *carui*, *amigdalara-*
rum amarum, *piperis longi*, *mentastri*,¹⁰ *dauci*, *acori*, *baccarum lauri*,
- 20 *castore* ana .ʒ .iiij., *serapini* .ʒ .iiij., *appoponac* .ʒ .iiij., make herof a
lectuarie wip .iiij. so miche of hony, þis electuarie wip consumeþ.
¶ þus þou schalt' make suppositorijs for to distrie wijnd / Rʒ, *cimi-* ^{and supposi-}
num, *foliorum rute viridis*¹¹ ana. ʒ .j., *radicis brionie*, *radicis mali* ^{tories.} Rʒ
- 24 *terre*, *radicis rafani* ana .ʒ .ij., *sal nitri* .ʒ .j., & make herof' supposi- ^{Supposito-}
torijs wip hony. ¶ Whanne þou knowist' wel þat' þe dropesie is of ^{rijs.}
hoot' cause, þan þou schalt' not forgete to helpe þe side þat' is hoot';
& also if' þe mater be coold, þou schalt' helpe him wip hote þingis.

¹ "*Esula*, quedam species est titimalli, gallice yesele." *Alphita*, p. 50.

² *enplastre*, Lat. venter enplastreter. O.Fr. emplastrer. Sl. 277, fol. 1:
"be þe place emplastred wip a plastre maad þus." Comp. *plasteren*, Prompt.
Parv.

⁴ *distrie*, Lat. dissoluere, destroy. ⁵ Lat.: cimini.

⁶ *nigilla*. Add. 15,236, fol. 10, "*Nigella i. lolium*. G. neel. A. cokel,"
fennel flower.

⁷ *Ibid.*, fol. 4 b., "*Leuisticum*. G. luuache," lovage. See *E. P. N.*, p. 43,
luvestiche, *luvesche*.

⁸ *Alphita*, p. 108, "*macedonia vel macedonicum, petrocillinum idem,*
g. alisandre. a. stamerche."

⁹ Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b., "*Origanum*. G. *Origane. i. pulgium. A. puliol*
reale." See *Alphita*, p. 150, "*Pulgium. gallire puliol, a. Brotheruurt.*"

¹⁰ *Ibid.*, fol. 7 b., "*Sisimbrium. mentastrum. G. mentastre. A. hors*
minute."

¹¹ *Ibid.*, fol. 7, "*Ruta bissara. puganum vel pucanum. hermola idem. G.*
Rue. A. smalrede."

If the cause is hot,
[1 lf. 202]
give a decoction with chickens, and a syrup.

¶ *Pis pingt* is necessarie for to zeue a man þat haþ þe hote dropesie, a decoccion of solatrum & endiue; & in þat watir he ¹schal seþe chikenys for to ete, & first he schal drinke sirupum acetosum wip seedis / And I wole telle þee a cure, þat I curide in my tyme .ij. 4 men þat weren in aschite of hoot cause, þat it mowe be ensaumple to þee / I made hem a sirupe of platearie² in þis maner / R̄, succi scariole li .ij., succi apij & petrosilij, ana. li .j., & boile hem wip .ḡ .iiij. of esule, masticis, seminis fenicli, apij, ana. ḡ .ʒ. ʒ. ʒ. seþe hem in 8 watir til þei come to .li .ij., & þan cole hem & do þerto .li .j. zucare, & boile hem til þei be perfit. & whanne þow doist adoun fro þe fier, do þerto rubarbe .ḡ .ʒ., & lete it boile a litil, & þan kepe it for pin vss. & þou schalt zeue it him in þe morowe wip a decoccion 12 of fenel seed, .ij. in þe wike. & þou schalt enplastre al his wombe, saue þe regioun of his lyuere, wip þe forseid plastris & dounge & vinegre. & vpon his lyuere leie an enplastre maad of .ḡ .ij. of barli mele, & rosis, & sandalis albi & rubei ana. ḡ .ʒ. ʒ. camphore 16 .ḡ .ij., & distempere hem wip water of rosis & wip vinegre. & if he haue not þe feuere, þan zeue him gotis milk fasting. And whan þe patient bicomeþ smal in his wombe, þan sette him in a baþ, þat be soden þerinne sulphur³ & salt, & he schal be þerinne but a litil 20 while. ¶ Herof þou muste be war: whanne water is dried in a man wip drijnge wip medicyns, þan his lymes leueþ swiþe drie; wherfore þei falliþ in etik & dien. þerfore þou muste in alle þes pingis be wel war /

Finally use a bath.
[3 lf. 202, bk.]

Take care in using drying medicines that the patient does not get consumption.



Operation should not be performed on all sorts of people;

patients who are not strong, and old men, are not fit.

One cannot trust in the strength of an old man.

[4 lf. 203]

þe cure þat is wip iren falliþ oonli in aschite, þat manie men doon hardili, & takiþ no kepe of þe particuleris þerof, for þei knowen not þe science, for þei doon al oon maner to zonge & to olde, to stronge & to feble; þei kuttiþ þe skyn vnder þe nanel, & 28 alle men þat þei kutten ouper þe mooste wereþ perischid / Saue þou schalt take kepe of kunnyng, & worche bi resoun / for þow schalt take kepe wher he be strong or no; & if he be not strong, þou schalt do no cure to him. ¶ Also þou schalt do no cure to olde 32 men þat ben to-broke, for þou schalt not leeuþ þe strenkþe of an oold man, for it is impossible for to fynde an oold man strong, whanne þe dropesie is confermed on him / If it so be þat he be zong & strong, þan þow schalt haue good trust for to helpe him. 36 ¶ Thanne þou muste enquere sotilly wher ⁴þe principal vijs be of

² Matthæus Platearius belonged to the school of Salerno about the middle of the 12th century. He wrote: "Liber de simplici medicina," commonly called "Circa instans."

- þe lyuere, for þan þou muste kutte him in þe splene side / And if it
 so be þat þe splene be þe principal of þe dropsie, þan þe kuttynge
 muste be in þe riȝt side. And if þe cause come of lymes aboue, as
 4 of þe stomac or of diafragma, þan þou muste kutte him vpon
 pecten. & if it be in a womman, & come of þe vijs of þe maris,
 þan þou schalt kutte hir aboue þe nauele. Whanne þou knowist in
 what place þou schalt kutte þe pacient, þan þou schalt opene þe
 8 place of þe pacient, & þou schalt presse his wombe adounward as
 miche as þou miȝt, & make him ete a litil of breed tostid¹ vpon
 coolis, & wet in wijn; & þan lete him sitte tofore þee bitwene a
 strong mannes armys, þat mai holde him faste, þat he mowe not
 12 meue in þe tyme whanne þou wolt worche. And þan þou schalt
 take þe skyn þat is clepid mirac, wiþ þi lifthond in þe place þere þou
 wolt make þi kuttynge, & þat skyn þou schalt peerse endelongis
 wiþ an instrument þat is competent þerfore / And be wel war þat
 16 þou touche not siphac in no maner; and whanne þou hast kutt þe
 skyn aboue & mirac, þan opene þe place þat þou mowe se siphac.
 & þan þou schalt peerse a litil hole in siphac & sette þerto a canel,
 & drawe out þerof as miche watir as þou seest good for to saue his
 20 vertu / & þan drawe out þe canel, & lete þe skyn þat is clepid
 mirac goon ouer þe openyng of siphac, for þat wole suffre no þing
 to go out / In þe morowe opene þe same skyn aȝen þat was kutt
 first, & putte in þe canel, & kepe his vertu as miche as þou miȝt.
 24 & þus þou schalt do til þou haue drawe out þe watir; saue þou
 schalt not drawe out al, for þou schalt consume it afterward with
 propre medicyns / Herof þou schalt take kepe in þe tyme, þe whilis
 þou drawist out þe water, as it is forseid: þe pacient schal ete good
 28 metis, & drinke good drinkis & swete, þat mowe engendre in him
 good spirits & good blood: as good broþis maad of hennys & of
 capouns. & dizt wiþ swete þingis, for eueri avoidinge laskiþ miche
 þe spiritis; & whanne þe spiritis falliþ, þan a mannes vertues
 32 failen /

The place of the incision depends on which organ—the liver, spleen, stomach, or uterus—is affected.

Let the patient be held by a strong man;

cut the skin, called *Mirac*;

[2 lf. 203, bk.] pierce the siphac, and draw out the water by a cannula at repeated sittings.

Strengthen the patient during this treatment with good food.

⁴Of ficus, & cancre, & vlcer in mannes⁵ ȝerde / [4 lf. 204]

Ficus is a maner wexyng þat arisiþ vpon a mannes ȝerde tofore. ¶ xj^o. co.
 & sumtyme it wole be neische, whanne it is engendrid of
 36 fleume / & whanne it is engendrid of malancolie, it wole be hard; Ficus is a growth on a man's yard; it is either soft or hard,

¹ breed tostid, Lat. panem tostum. *Prompt. Parv.*

³ canel, Lat. cannula. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. canal 1.

⁵ MS. *manner*.

and may become a cancer.
Ulcers arise either from hot pustules

or from intercourse with diseased women.

The fucus must be removed by a thread or with cutting,

with mollificatives;

[* lf. 204, bk.] the surest way is the hot iron.

A cancer must be removed with all its roots.

Nota. If there are ulcers in the fore-skin, remove the growth.

Ry
be gren
water

[* lf. 205]

& if it rotie, it wole turne into a cancre. ¶ A cancre comeþ in a mannes 3erde, rizt¹ as in opere lymes of a man, & vlcera comeþ of hote pustulis þat comeþ þeron, & aftirward þei brekeþ it.¹ Ouþer þei comeþ of scharpe humouris, þat makij vlcera in þe same place; 4 ouþir it mai come of a womman þat a man, þat hadde þe same passioun,² hadde leie by hir tofore³ /

þis is þe cure of fucus þat comith of fleume: þou schalt binde him wiþ a þreed, ouþer kutte him al awei; & þan þou schalt soude 8 it as it is aforceid in opere placis / If it come of malancolie, it mai be curid or þat it rotie, wiþ tempere mollificatiuis, as it is forseid in þe cure of sclerosis in þe general chapitre of enpostyms: þat whanne he is maad neische, þan þou schalt take him awei wiþ 12

alle his rotis / saue it is more sure take awei it wiþ ⁴an hoot iren, & þan leie þervpon butter, & 3itt þou muste touche him wiþ an hoot iren azen; & þan leie buttir þervpon. & þus þou schalt do oftetyme litil & litil til it be al wastid awei / If it be a cancre, it 16 wole not be curid but if it be kutt awei wiþ alle his rotis. And þer is no wei so sure to take him awei as fier / Alle þe rotis of him musten be brent awei, & þan leie þervpon a mundificatif of apium, & aftir þis þou muste leie þerto drijnge þingis / & in þis place þou schalt not forzete to leie a defensif vpon þe place þat is hool, for þis defensif schal defende þe place þat is hool fro swellynge.

¶ Vlcers þat comeþ in a mannes 3erde: as whanne þe skyn þat is tofore in a mannes 3erde bicomith greet, & þis mai not be curid 24 but if þat greetnes be doon awei. & þis medicyn is good þerfore / Take whit wijn, & of verte grece .3. j, auripigment .3. ij; grinde þes .ij. sotilli, & leie hem in þe whit wijn, & meue hem ofte, & kepe hem for þin vss. & þe more cold⁵ þat þis medicyn is, þe better it 28 wole be. & þan þou schalt wete a lynnyn cloop in þis medicyn, ⁶& leie vpon þe 3erde / For þis þing⁷ wole soude woundis & defende þat

¹ Lat.: que postea crepantur.

² MS. inserts þat.

³ Lat.: Ulcera veniunt . . . ex commixtione cum feda muliere, que cum egro talem habente morbum de novo coierat. *Hæser*, III, p. 230, gives a list of references, showing the early knowledge of venereal diseases in the mediæval ages. The earliest quotation is from Richardus Anglicus, *Micrologus* MS., xiith cent.: "Ulcerantur utraque, virga scilicet et testiculi, tempore menstruorum, ex coitu ex salsis humoribus et acutis et incensis, quod satis ex colore cutis et pustularum vel saniei, et ex pruritu et punctura et ardore perpenditur." Richardus gives the same preventative, which is mentioned by Lanfranc: "Ablutio cum aqua frigida et continua abstersio — — et maxime si post ablutionem cum frigida aqua fiat roratio loci abluti cum aceto."

⁵ MS. cold. Lat.: quanto plus *antiquatur* tanto melius.

per mai wexe no cancre / If it^s so be þat a mannes 3erde be skynned, & be noon oþer passioun þeron saue þat, þan þou schalt leie þer-
vpon vnguentum album, ouþer leie þer vpon a linnen clooþ wet in
4 watir of rosis. Also poudre maad of cucurbita & aloes is good
þerfore / If a man wole saue þis lyme algate fro corrupcioun,
whanne he haþ leien bi a womman, & he haue ony suspeciouz of
vncleennes, þan he schal waische his 3erde wiþ coold water medlid
8 with vinegre /

Of Emeroidis & fistule in þe ers /

EMoroides ben veines þat^s endiþ in a mannes ers & ben .v.¹ ¶ xije. co.
þese veines sumtyme openeþ & sumtyme þei ben enpostymed. There are five
12 Whanne þe blood þat^s is in þe same veines falliþ adoun & mai not out, þan it^s engendriþ apostym. & if þe blood is gret^s & fleumatik, they are
þan it^s wole engendre ficus, & if þat^s blood be greet^s & colerik, þan sometimes they
it^s wole engendre moralem.² And if þe blood be greet^s & malan- open, some-
16 colius, þan it^s wole engen[dre] condilomata / Sumtyme þer comeþ times they
þerto ³so manie diuers humouris, & makij diuers enpostymis in þe form tu-
same maner as it^s falliþ in oþere lymes, & ofte tyme of þis enpostym mours.
20 a mannes ers bi veynes þat^s ben clepid emoroides is grettere blood
þan ony blood of his bodi / & if it^s so be þat^s a man haue þe flux
of blood of þe emoroidis, þou schalt^s not stoppe it, but it^s blede so
myche þat^s it make þe pacient feble, saue þou schalt^s kepe him wiþ
24 good regimen, & he schal vse no metis ne drinkis þat^s engendriþ
scharp blood & greet^s // For bi þe flux of blood a mannes bodi mai
be kept^s from malancolious blood, & it^s wole kepe a man fro lepre &
fro mania, & fro al sijknis þat^s comeþ of malancolie / Also if a
28 man is woned to haue hem & þei be stoppid, þan þou muste zeue
him medicyns for to bringe hem out / And if it^s so be þat^s a man
haue so greet^s flux of hem þat^s his lyuere be enfeblid þerwiþ, þan
he myzþe falle in a dropesi þer þoru3, for to miche flux of blood
32 mai be cause of a dropesie / þerfore if þou ⁴seest^s þat^s þe flux be to
greet, þan þou schalt^s constreine blood wiþ medicyns þat^s ben con-
strictif, & þou schalt^s fynde medicyns þerfore in þe ende of þis
chapitre / Wexingis þat^s ben clepid **emeroidis**, summe þei falliþ

¶ xije. co.
There are five hæmorrhoidal veins, they are sometimes open, sometimes they form tumours.

[3 ff. 205, bk.]

The blood in these veins is the thickest in the body.

Nota
Hæmorrhoidal flux shall not be stopped,

as it keeps a man from leprosy, mania and other diseases.

Too great flux causes dropsy.

[4 ff. 206]

Emeroides

¹ *De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII., cap. 54. Add. 27,944, fol. 95 b.: "Emorydis ben fyve veynes þat streccheþ oute at þe ers, of þe whiche veynes comeþ diuers passiouns and euelis, as bolwyng & snellinge, withholdinge and flux."

² *moralis*, a mulberry form of tumour.

(piles) are
internal or
external.

ficus
can be tied
away.

Moralis
consists of
many small
swellings,
like a mul-
berry.

[³ If. 206, bk.]
Bleed from
the Basilica
and the
Saphena,

relieve the
pains with a
medicine,

R̄

apply an
ointment,
or teut.

R̄

An ointment
to ripen an
apostema.

[⁶ If. 207]

R̄

wipoute þe hole of^a a mannes ers, & summe wipinne / Also summe
wexip in þe for side of^b þe ers, & summe in þe hyndir side. Sum-
tyme it^c wexip in þe forside toward þe rote of^d þe ballokis, & þan þei
makip greet^e akinge / for sumtyme þei letter þat^f a man mai not^g 4
make vrine. If it^h be **ficus**, þatⁱ þou miȝt^j knowe, for it wole be
wipoute hete^k 1 & neische, & þe cure herof^l is but liȝt. þou schalt^m
take a strongⁿ þreed & knitte þere aboute, & euery dai þou schalt^o
streine it^p more & more, til he falle awei, & þan wip driyng^q medi- 8
cyns þou schalt^r drie it^s vp. ¶ **Moralis** makip greet^t akinge & haþ
manie smalle swellingis as it^u were mora celsi, & þe colour þerof wole
be reed & sumdel^v 2 purpur, & but^w þis haue help for to acese þe
akinge, it^x wole engendre an enpostym. þe cure herof is to lete him 12
blood in þe veyne þat^y is clepid^z basilica & sophena al in oon dai,^{aa}
& in þe same side þat^{ab} þe passioun drawip mooste þerto. If he is
wont^{ac} to haue þe same passioun, þan make him haue þe same flux
of blood. & if^{ad} he is not^{ae} wont^{af} to haue it, þan þou schalt^{ag} zeue 16
him no medicyns for to make him haue þat flux, & þan þou schalt^{ah}
acese þe akyng^{ai} wip þis medicyn, & is good for thenasmon^{aj} & for
alle þe passiouns of^{ak} þe ers / R̄, thuris, mirre, licij, croci, ana partem
.j, opij partes duas, grinde hem & medle hem with zelke of^{al} an eij 20
& wip þe iuys of psillij, & ole of roses, & make þerof^{am} an oyme-
ment^{an} / & if^{ao} þe akyng^{ap} be wipinne in his ers, þanne anointe a tent^{aq}
& putte into his ers, & if^{ar} it^{as} be wipoutforþ, þan leie vpon lynn^{at}
clooþ & leie it^{au} vpon þe place. ¶ Also a medicyn of Haly þe 24
abbot^{av} / R̄, ceruse .3. v., litarge .3. iij., iusquiami albi .3. ij., mas-
ticis, grynde hem & tempere hem wip þe zelke of^{ax} an ey & oile of
violet^{ay} & make herof^{az} an oynement^{ba}. & þis oynement^{bb} is good
whanne þe akinge is wip an enpostym, for þis wole resolue & make 28
it^{bc} maturatif, & doiþ away þe^{bd} akinge / R̄, foliorum malue, florum
camomille, Melliloti^{be} 7 ana .℥. j., fenigreci, seminis lini ana .3. iij.,
lenticularum exorticarum .3. x., seþe alle þes in water til þei
resolue & þe water consume awei, & þan putte hem in a mortar & 32
grinde hem wel, & þan do þerto .ij. zelkis of eiren & oile of violet,

¹ Lat. : sine colore. The translator read "calore."

² *sumdel*, altered in a different coloured ink from *sumdei*.

⁴ Lat. : cura est flebotomia basilice lateris eiusdem in uno die, in alio de saphena eiusdem lateris.

⁵ Vigo, Traheron Interpret. : "Tenesmos is whan a man hath grete pro- uocation to the seege, but can do nothyng. It commeth of tissein, whych signifieth to stretche."

⁷ Add. 15236, fol. 5 : "*Mellilotum. Corona regia. idem. G. mellilote. A. hunisoke vel redelaure.*"

- & make herof an oynement. ¶ If it so be *pat* in þis place of þe
 forseid þingis come an enpostym & gadere to quittance, þou schalt
 not abide til it breke him-silf, for þan it wole make a greet hole
 4 ynward toward þe guttis. þerfore þou schalt opene it hastili, or it
 wexe to miche ynward / If þe place of þe emeroide make no greet
 akyngne ne noon enpostym, & if þou wolt drie hem & waste hem,
 þan þou miȝt worche in .ij. maners, do þerto mel anacardi &
 8 vnguentum ruptorium,¹ or touche hem wiþ an hoot iren *pat* is
 bettere / If he be a delicat man or a feble, drie hem with fumy-
 gaciouns maad of pulpa colocintida & seed of mirtillorum, & þe
 leeces & þe ryndis of capparis, mirra, nux cipressi, & gallis, & make
 12 him a decocoun of þese þingis in water ^{2&3} lete him sitte þeron, [² If. 207, bk.]
 for alle þese þingis maketh þe emeroidis blak & makij hem falle
 away / I nolde neuere leie in *pat* place corosif medicyn /
- If þer be greetnes of veynes ful of blood wiþout ony enpostym,
 16 & þe patient haue gret akyngne þerwiþ, & principaly if he was wont
 to haue þe flux of emeroidis wiþ blood, & he hadde it not longe
 tyme tofore, þan þou schalt zeue him medicyns to haue þe flux of
 blood, & *pat* þou schalt do in þis maner anoon, wiþ þe iuys of a
 20 stronge oynoun, or wiþ ius of lekis, ouþer if þou makist supposi-
 torijs of hem & frotist þerwiþ þe place, & þis wole opene þe veynys
 of þe emeroidis / Also þe rotis of maluis wet in þe gall of a bole /
 Also take hony .ij. partis, & vert de grece oon part, & medle hem
 24 togidere, & herwiþ anointe a suppositorie maad of lymen cloof &
 putte it yn / If it so be *pat* þe patient blede to miche & he bicometh
 feble þerwiþ, þan helpe him with trociscus de carabe⁴ *pat* ben gode
 for to restreine flux of blood of emeroides. & it is good for to
 28 restreyne menstrues. R̄, carabe, *gummi nucis*, balaustie, lacte, succi
 barbe yrcine⁵ ana .ʒ. v., thuris .ʒ. ij., opij .ʒ. iij., make herof
 gobettis wiþ muscillagine psillij, & make euery dai a gobet þe
 weiȝte of .ʒ. ij., & þou schalt zeue oon þerof wiþ sirupo stiptico,
 32 & þou schalt make fumigaciouns of driynge þingis: as gallis,
 balaustie, psidiorum & oþere mo *pat* ben forseid / R̄, nuces cipressi,
 R

When an
 apostema be-
 gins to sup-
 purate, open
 it quickly.

Nota

To dry hæ-
 morrhoids,
 use a corro-
 sive oint-
 ment, the hot
 iron,
 and for a deli-
 cate patient a
 fumigation.



If the veins
 are replete,
 provoke flux
 of blood.

If the patient
 loses too
 much blood,
 stop the flux.

R̄

[⁶ If. 208]

Use a fumi-
 gation.

R

¹ *vnquentum ruptorium*. Vigo Interpret.: "Ruptorie: that, that hath strengthe to breake."

³ At the bottom of the page, in later hand: *contra emeroides vell bubo vell tenassmoun: R mer ʒ ij, olibani, ameos ana ʒ j, oppij ʒ ʒs, gosium gres et [?], fiat decoctio cum mell vell cum pestello ellido et nido, fformetur suppositorum.*

⁴ Matth. Sylv.: "Caraba i. Karabe. Electrum." Fr. carabé Arab. Kahrabâ Devic Dict. Amber.

⁵ *Alphita*, p. 20: "Barba yrcina . . . a buckestonge."

cupularum glandulum, corticas granatorum, kutte hem a litil & sepe hem in good wijn. & wiþ þis wijn waische þe place an euen & a morowe / Also a fumigacioun maad of tapsi barbasti¹ is good þerfore / 4

The great bowel is often pierced by an apostema and a fistula is forned.

It falliþ ofte tyme þat after þe flux of þe emeroidis, ouþer if enpostym be to longe maturatif in þat same place vnopened, þan it falliþ ofte tyme þat þe grete bowel² is peersid. & sumtyme it makij a greet hole³ in þe same place, & þoruþ þat hole comeþ out 8 wijnd & sumtyme egestioun,⁴ & þis hole is cleped a festre of þe ers.⁵ Of þis cure manye men ben hardi & knowen not þe perels þerof, & makij þe same medicyns in þis place for a festre as þei doon in opere placis / But þou schalt take good hede of þis maner 12 enfestre; þou schalt asaie if þe hole of þe festre go to hiþe þat it touche þe place of þe lacertis of þe ers, þan þe festre is incurable, & þan a man schal not holde his egestioun, þat it nyle go out alwei / Also þou muste loke wher þere go out miche quittance ouþir 16 litil of þe hole of þe festre, or wheþir þe quittance þerof be whit or reed / Also þou muste take kepe wher he haue greet penaunce þerof or no / And aftir alle þese diuers þingis, þou muste diuerseli worche. For as it is aforseid, first þou muste acese þe akyng & þe swell- 20 ynge, þan þou schalt asaie wher þe festre go to þe lacertis; þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner / Putte þi fyngir as fer as it wole go, into his ers, & þan putte a pliaunt tent in þe feestre. & loke in what place þe tent mette wiþ þi fyngir, & þan say þat þe patient streyne 24 his ers, & þan þou miþt wite wheþer þe festre go aboue þe braun or no. If þe festre go aboue þe braun, þan þe patient schal lete go out wijnd & egestioun at þe hole of þe festre. 7 þan þou schalt in no maner touche þe festre wiþ no medicyn corosif ne wiþ noon 28 hoot iren; but þou schalt teche him for to vse a waisching wiþ water & hony & mirre, & wiþ sum mundificatif, and in þis maner he schal kepe him þat þe malice of þe festre waxe nomore. ¶ O mi briþeren, manye lewid lechis haue I seen þat coude on ruptorie, 32 & þei supposide þerþi for to cure cancris & festris, & al maner crepa-

[6 lf. 208, bk.]
This wants careful treatment.

Look whether the fistula passes the muscles of the buttocks, whether there is much pus

and great pain.

Try with a probe and the finger, how far the fistula reaches.

If the fistula passes above the braun,
[7 lf. 209]
apply no corrosive, but only a wash.

Many unlearned surgeons,

¹ *Alphita*, p. 182: "Tapsus barbatus—g^e. molyne, an. catesteyl, uel feldwrt."

² *intestinum*, inserted in later hand.

³ *callid. ffestula testium*, inserted in later hand.

⁴ "*Egestion*, a casting forth, avoïding: In the Art of Physick, the discharging of Meat digested through the Pylorus, or lower Mouth of the Stomach, into the rest of the Entrails." Phillips.

⁵ *ffestula*, inserted in later hand.

- turis, & þei supposiþ bi þis maner ruptorie¹ for to surmounte *Galien* knowing only
 in worchinge / And men þat han þis opinioun, in þe mo errouris one corrosive
 þat þei falliþ, þe more wrooþ þei wolen be, & þe more þei wollþ vse apply it in
 every case.
 4 her ruptorijs / And þerfore þis mai be ensaumple to þee: if a man *Galien.*
 haue no drinke but eysel, and haþ indignacioun for to fecche ony They do like
 oþer but halt him þerto, & zeueþ þerof to men þat ben apirst. & a man who
 if þe drinke agreue hem, & þei speke ony þing^e þerof, he wole be has no other
 8 wrooþ þerfore, & he nyle noon oþer drinke fecche, but algate zeueþ drink but
 hem of þe same til her spirituals bicom e drie / Aud if þe same ²man if he had
 hadde wijn ynow³ & knew wel þe vertu þerof, he wolde zeue no wine, he
 man eysel for to drinke nomore / þerfore þou schalt vse medicyns would not
 12 þat ben appreued, & do awei al medicyns þat ben false, & holde give vinegar.
 þee apaid of þe medicyns þat ben aforseid /³ [2 lf. 209, bk.]

Of þe cancre⁴ and þe mormole /

- 16 **C**ancrene ben rounde vlcis þat falliþ in a mannes leggis, & ¶ xiijo. cº /
 malum mortuum also, & þei falliþ boþe in oon place, þerfore I
 wole make difference þerof / ¶ Cancrene ben round vlcera & ben Gangrene is a
 foule & comeþ of dedinge of þe skyn,⁵ for þe natural spiritis comen mortification
 not þerto, & þerfore þe place is corrupt / & if þe corrupcioun go If the bone is
 20 anoon to þe boon, þan it schal not be clepid cancrenum, but it affected it is
 schal be clepid aschachiles.⁶ & if þe corrupcioun occupie al þe called
 lyme, þan it schal be clepid herpes estiomenus, þat is as miche to aschachiles
 seie as etyng^e him-silf. ¶ þe signes of cancrenarum ben blac if the whole
 24 vlcera, & þe fleisch þerof wole be foule & of ledi colour, & þe lippis limb is
 þerof wolen be gret, & þe fleisch þat is in þe middil⁷ of vlcera wole affected
 be corrupt. & it be miche lijk to a cancre þat is vlceratus, but herpes es-
 þis is þe difference þerof þat a cancre comeþ of corrupcioun of tiomenus.
 The symp-
 toms of Gan-
 grene are
 black ulcers
 [7 lf. 210]
 similar to an
 ulcerated
 cancer.

¹ MS. *ruptorie*.³ The translator omits a short passage about "Fissure of the Anus."

⁴ *canere*, a mistake. Lat. De cancrenis. Med. Lat. cancrenum, cancrena, is derived from Lat. canceroma, cancroma, canchrema, and has very early ben confounded with Lat. gangræna, γάγγραινα. Vigo. Interpret. "Cancrena. Gangrena is when some parte of the body thorow great inflammation dieth, but is not yet perfittly dead; when it is perfectly dead, and without felyng: it is called sphacelos in greke, whyche they have turned to aschachillos, sideratio in latine. Some saye, that Gangrena is when a membre is apte to putrefye. Aschachillos, when it is putrified, but hath not all partes of putrefaction. Esthiomenas, when a membre hath al degrees of putrefaction."

⁵ of dedinge of þe skyn. Lat.: de cutis mortificatione.⁶ *aschachiles*, the Arab. corruption of σφάκελος. Fr. sphacile.

It is caused
by general
debility.

malancolie, & þis comþ of lesynge of þe spiritis of lijf / Also þe lippis of þe cancre ben more reuersid and more grene, & a cancre fretþ more / And þerfore þis passioun is clepid of *summer* a deed cancre /

Treatment of
Gangrene:
Purge the
body from
melancholic
matter,

þe cure of þis passioun is in þis maner / first þou schalt auoide his bodi of malancolie, & þou; it be not his principal cause as it is of a cancre / 3itt þe mater þat fallþ to þe place is greet / þerfore it is good for to clense his blood of malancolie; for it is good þing in 8 vlcera þat ben olde, & principali whanne þei ben in parties bineþerforþ / & whanne he is clensid, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat

bleed from a
vein between
the last two
toes,
use daffodil-
powder.

is bitwixe þe leeste too of his foot & þe too next þerto, in þe same leg þat þe passioun is on. & vpon þe place þou schalt caste pouder 12 of *affodillorum*, ouþer remeue awei al þe deed fleisch / If þou wolt worche more surely & bettere, make him a cauterie, þat lit be

[1 fr. 210, bk.]
The best
method is,
to cauterize
the place with
the hot iron.

myche & long as þe place is þat [is] corrupt, & wiþ an hoot iren make a cros vpon þe middil of þe passioun as depe as þe deed fleisch 16

Then apply a
plaster,

is. & þan þou schalt leie þeron a plastre maad of whete mele & iuys of ache, & þan cure it vp as þou doist ouþer vlcera, as it is forseid / And in þis caas þou schalt not forþete in no maner for to leie aboute þe place a defensif of bole & terra sigillata; for þat 20 wole suffre no wickide mater to renne to þe place, & it defendþ þe hool place fro corrupcioun. ¶ *Malum mortuum* is a maner scabbe, & comþ of grete humouris brent, & fallþ to þe place. & sum part þerof leuþ in a mannys flank, & engendriþ glandulas & 24

and a defen-
sive.

**Malum
mortuum**
is a kind of
scab,

swellþ / þe cure herof is to auoide his bodi of greet humouris, þat ben brent; & lete him blood in basilica, in þe same side; & lete him blood in þe foot, as it is forseid / & þou muste dissolue glandulus, as it is forseid in þe chapitre of glandulus & scrophulis; 28 & þan þou muste anointe þe place wiþ driynge medicyns. þou schalt anointe al þe place with psilatro,³ til al þe heeris falle awei

and is treated
with purging,

blood-letting,

and an oint-
ment.

[2 fr. 211]

R̄
an ointment
of thymal.

wipouten ony violence / Take þe grete titimalle & þe smale, & boile hem in vinegre & in oile, & do þerto a litil sope, & make þerof þe 32 maner of an oynement; & wiþ þis oynement þou schalt anointe þe place harde aȝen þe fier / R̄, olei aceti ana. ʒ .ij., saponis mollis & saponis duri ana. ʒ j.; medle hem togidere, & do þerto iuys

R̄
An ointment
of soap.

mali terre ouþer brionie .ʒ .ij.; boile hem alle togidere, & anointe 36 þe place þerwiþ, & þou schalt fynde oynementis in þe antidotarie þat ben gode in þis caas //

³ *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 35: "Psilotrum, depilatorium idem."

Of varices, *pat ben veynes*, and *elephancia*.¹

- U** Arices ben clepid veynes, *pat ben grete*, & grene, & purpur, & ¶ xiiij. c. /
 sittip aboute a mannes leggis. and þei comen of greet Varices are enlarged
veins in the
legs.
 4 malancolious² blood, *pat fallip adoun*. & also it comeþ of grete
 metis & of greet traueile, or it may come of greet fleume; & it
 wole make a mannes feet & his leggis al grete, & sumtyme his feet Elephantia
attacks the
feet.
 also³ // þe⁴ cure of *varicium* is in þis maner: þou schalt purge him
 8 wiþ gotis whey & wiþ *epithimo*, for þis purgacioun is propre in þis
 caas, or purge him wiþ *pelottis* of *epithimi*. & lete him blood in
 þe veyne *pat* is clepid *basilica*, of þe arme in þe same side, & also
 in his foot. & he schal absteyne him fro metis *pat engendriþ* [¶ If. 211, bk.]
The general
treatment
consists in
purging,
and in bleed-
ing from the
Basilic vein.
 12 malancolie / þis *passioun* þow myzt⁵ cure in þese maners⁵ / þis is þe
 first maner: loke in his hamme, vnder his knee. þere þou schalt
 se a greet veyne; & alle þe grete veynes, *pat ben bineþe* in his leg,
 comeþ out þerof. þan þou schalt take vp þe same veyne wiþ a
 16 nedele. & loke *pat þou* peerse not þe veyne, & knytte hir wiþ a
 þreed. & þe brede of þi fyngir about *pat* place, putte yn þi nedele
 azen, vndir þe veyne as þou hast do heretofore, & knitte in þe same
 maner wiþ a þreed; & þan þou schalt kutte þe skyn ouer þe veyne
 20 endelongis; & þan take vp þe veyne & kutte hir bitwixe þe .ij.
 bindingis, & þan þe ende of þe veyne *pat* is aboute schal be brent
 wiþ an hoot iren, & þe neþir side⁶ of þe veyne schalt be vnknit. [¶ If. 212]
 & presse out þe blood bineþerof of þe veyne, as myche as þou
 24 myzt. & þanne þe remenaunt þou schalt drawe wiþ *medieyns pat*
 ben consumynge. & þe fleisch þere þou madist þi wounde, þou
 schalt touche wiþ an hoot iren also; & þan þou schalt leie to þe
 place *mundificatiuis*, & þan soude as it is aforseid.⁷ ¶ Also anoper
 28 maner cure: lete him blood oonli in þe same veyne, & take out of
 þe blood as miche as þou myzt, & purge him ofte, & make him



cut the vein
between the
two ligatures,

[¶ If. 212]

and press the
blood out
from the
lower part of
the vein:
after removal
of the liga-
ture.

2. Use blood-
letting and
purging.

¹ Lanfranc follows the description given by *Avicenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 15, ed. Ven. 1527. *Avicenna's* list of the occupations that are predisposing to this illness reminds us of the fact that he was a courtier himself. *Ibid.*: "Et plurimum quidem accidunt cursoribus, & viatoribus, & onera portantibus & coram regibus astantibus."

² MS. *humour*, deleted.

³ Incorrect translation. Lat.: "Elephantia dicitur quedam carnis augmentatio, in qua crus ultra mensuram debitam augmentatur cum pede toto, et fit ex grosso fleumate vel ex grossa melancolia non corrupta."

⁵ Lat.: Locus autem tribus curatur modis.

⁷ This mode of operation is the same as has been described by *Paulus Aegineta*, Lib. VI, 82, ed. Fr. Adams 1844, 2nd vol., p. 406, and by *Avicenna l. c.*, Cap. 18.

3. Do not try a perfect cure, but purge and bleed several times a year.

[1 ff. 212, bk.]

Elephancia can be cured at the beginning of the disease.

Use purging, blood-letting,

keep the legs bandaged before an exertion, use an ointment.

enplastris aboute his leggis wip drijnge pingis, & diete him as it is aforseid. ¶ Je .iij. maner is þis : þou schalt go to no perfit cure perof, but þou schalt lete þat blood falle adoun, & þan a fewe tymes in þe zeer þou schalt purge him ; & þou schalt laske his greet 4 blood wip blood-letyngis, þat ben forseid, & leie enplastris vpon þe place þat ben drijnge. & þus þou schalt do til al þe swellunge be goon away / & þis laste medicyn is þe beste for hem þat haue had þis passioun longe, & for hem þat ben olde / For if þou kutte a 8 veyne in hem, 1 þan þer wole engendre manie sijknnessis aboue, & make þe pacient deed þe rapere / For I siz men þat her veynes weren so kutt þat weren algate sijk aftirward, & wipinne a litil time aftir þat þei diede. ¶ Elephancia² is incurable whanne it is confermed ; 12 but bifore þat it is confermed, it mai be curid for to purge þe humouris þat ben in þe cause wip blood-leting, þat ben aforseid. & he schal absteine him fro grete metis, þat engendriþ greet humouris ; & þan he schal not go ne ride, but if his leg & his foot be bounden 16 wip a boond faste, & speciali in þe ioynet / But first þou schalt anoynte his leggis wip epithimo maad of acacia, mirra, aloe, ipoquistidos,³ & alym with vinegre. & whanne þe swellunge bigynneþ to goon awei, þan make him a stuwe, & lete his leggis be þerinne 20 longe ; & be it maad of askis of vines & caul-seed, sticados arabici, lupinorum, mirre, stercus caprini, fenigreci. Also anointe him, & binde him, as it is forseid. & in þis maner I haue curid men, þat ne weren not confermed þeron //

24

Of wertis in handis and in feet /

[4 ff. 213] ¶ xv. c° /

POrri⁵ ben engendrid of fleume þat is greet, & ben white ; veruce⁶ comeþ of malancolie, & ben blake, & han mo rotis / Scissure⁷ comeþ of malancolie brent, & makip as it were kuttingis ; 28

² The disease which Lanfranc describes is the Elephantiasis Arabum, commonly known as Barbadoes leg, quite different from the Elephantiasis of the Greeks, a general term for severe leprosy.

³ *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 25 : "Ipoquistidos est succus fungi qui nascitur ad pedem rosæ caninæ." ἰποκιστίς, ἶδος, ἡ, a parasitic plant which grows on the roots of the κιστός, *Cytinus hypocistis*. (= Holly Rose, *Gerard*, p. 1281.)

⁵ "Porrus, a Leak, also a kind of Wart." Phillips.

⁶ "Verruca, (Lat.) a Wart, a little hard brawny Swelling, which breaks out of the Skin, and breeds in any part of the Body." *Ibid.*

⁷ "Scissure, a Cut or Cleft, a Rent or Chap." *Ibid.*

- & if þei comþ of coolnes, þan þei schulen be clepid muge.¹ ¶ þe
 cure of *porrorum* is for to cense his bodi wip trocisco de turbit, &
 þan frote þe place wip medicyns þat ben consumptif; & frote hem
 4 wip poudre maad of a gotis toord, & tempere wip þe iuys of mirti
 & wip þe ryndis of cappariss / Veruce schulen be curid wip a
 purgacioun maad of epithimi & gotis whey, & wip summe oþere
 medicyn þat is *proprid* for malancolie, & þan þou schalt vse stronge
 8 oynementis / as *vnguentum ruptorium*, ouþer mel anacardi or sum
 opir corrosif, ouþer in þis maner is better / garse it al aboutforþ &
 binde it wip a stronge þreed, & streine wel þe þred & drawe him
 awei wip þe þreed, & þanne touche þe rotis of him wip a cauterie
 12 punctual. ¶ Scissure. It is nede in þis passioun for to purge his
 bodi of humouris þat ben brent, & make ²him a baþ of swete
 water. & þan þou schalt waische his lymes wip a decoccioun of
 bismalwe in watir, & a litil oile þerwip; & lete him vse metis þat
 16 makij moist & engendrid good blood, & þan anoynte him wip þis
 oynement / *R̄j, olium rosarum, cere citrine, adipis anatis colatus,*
*Isopi humide,*³ *muscellagine seminis citoniorum, amilum, draganti,*
ana, make herof an oynement / ¶ Muge schulen be curid wip oilis
 20 & oynementis / first þou schalt aswage þe akinge wip oile, & þan
 leie þerto a mundificatif þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & þan
 soude it wip mirre / If þou seest it at þe first bigynnyng, þan
 make an enplastre of armoniaco, for þat wole resolue þe enpostym.
 24 & þou schalt make þat he vse [not]⁴ streit schoon, & he schal
 anoynte his feet, & principali hise heelis wip þis oynement / *R̄j,*
oliū de lilie ʒ .vj., cere ʒ ℥., resine ʒ ij., armoniaci ʒ j., farine
fenigreci ʒ .℥., thuris, masticis, ana ʒ .ij., & make herof an
 28 oynement /⁵

Treatment of
porrorum.
 Apply a cau-
 stic medicine.

veruce.
 Use purging
 and a strong
 ointment,

or tie the
 growth.

Scissure.
 Use purging,
 [a fr. 213, bk.]
 a bath,
 a wash,

an ointment.

R̄j

Muge.

Relieve the
 pain;
 apply a mun-
 dificative,

a plaster.

and an oint-
 ment.

R̄j

¹ *Matth. Syluat.*: "Perniones vel rasulæ, sunt excoarationes quæ fiunt in nimio frigore in calcaneis, quæ *Mugæ* vulgariter dicuntur," probably allied to *mucus, mungere, múza*.

³ *isopus humida*. Sloane 2463, fol. 159 bk.: "The fyfte, whiche is nother properly oynement nor enplastre, but atwize two, & is cleped *ysopus humida*. Take rolle that is bytwize the thyes and the iwes of schepe, as moche as þou wilt, and put as moche water therepon as may covere hit, and lete hit stonde so aday and anyzt, and þanne boile hit with a lente fyre, and lete hit vexe cold, and coile hit; and thanne boile hit estesones in a tymed panne with a lizt fyre, and thanne lete hit vexe cold, and coile hit: butt loke thou sterve hit euermore with a spatoure of tre till þat it be thikke as oynement."

⁴ *not*, wanting. Lat.: *iube ne calciamenta portet stricta*.

⁵ *Gulielm. de Saliceto, Chirurgia, Lib. I, Cap. 57.* Sloane 277, fol. 19: "For cold in wynter þe leche may have two consideraciouns to þe heelynge

Of blood-letyng //

¶ xvj

[1 lf. 213*]

Blood-letting belongs to a surgeon's craft.

Nota.

Learned physicians leave it to unlearned men and women.

One ought to be both a physician and a surgeon.

Blood-letting is used to keep a man's health, and to remove sickness.

[4 lf. 213*, bk.]

Bleed those who eat and drink much, and have little exercise.

Bleed in order to prevent a disease.

Blood-letyng^r is a craft for to laske a mannes blood þat is in his veynes / ¹And þis þou schalt wel wite, þat it falliþ for oure craft, þouȝ we for pride take it to barbouris & to wommen; & 4 blood-letyng falliþ principali for cirurgians / O lord, whi is it so greet difference bitwixe a cirurgian & a phisician, but for philosophis bitoken þe craft into lewid mennes hondis / or as manie men haue dedignacioun for to worche wiþ her hondis / & ȝit mani men 8 weneþ þat it is impossible þat oon man to kunne boþe þe craftis² / But þou schalt knowe wel þis, þat he is no good phisician þat can no þing in cirurgie / And also þe contrarie þerof: a man mai be no good cyrurgian, but if he knowe phisik. ¶ Blood-letyng is vsid 12 bi cause for to kepe a mannes bodi hool, & to remeue awei sijknessis fro a mannes bodi / But þus manye þingis þou muste take kepe in blood-letyng: tyme, & hour, & eir, & disposicioun of þe sike man / & þou muste take kepe þat þou lete no man blood but if he mowe 16 endure it // ¶ First a man schal be lete blood for to kepe him-silf,³ & principali hem þat etip good fleisch ⁴& drinkiþ good wijn, & etip metis for to engendre myche blood, & traueiliþ but lilit, & principali þe while a man is ȝong, & also in eelde if he be myche vsid 20 þerto / Also þou schalt lete hem blood þat ben wont to haue akyng in her ioyntis, ouþer a feuere þat is clepid sinocha⁵ or þe squinacie, ouþer pleureses / Alle pese, tofore þe tyme þat þei ben woned to haue her passioun, þou schalt lete hem blood or her 24 passioun come, þat it mowe go away þerwiþ: & þis maner is clepid preuisiuus. ¶ þe iij. maner: whanne a man haþ greet akyng in

of swiche maner seknesses: oon of partie of defense þat it come not, & another of þe partie of remeyng of þe seknesse i-made. By þe reson of defence that it come not, leue þe patient wiþ all his witt streit schoyng, & haue he dowble schoos & large, & anoynte he every nyzt þe heele with an oynement þus maad."

² Lat.: "aut quum operari ut dicunt quidam cum manibus dedignantur, aut, quod magis credo, quum operationis modum quod apud scientiam est necessarium non nouerunt; et hæc abusus tantum ualuit propter antiquam dissuetudinem, quod apud quosdam de vulgo credatur impossibile, quod unus hoc possit scire magisterium utriusque."

³ Lat. pro sanitate conseruanda.

⁵ Lanfranc, *Chirurgia Parua*, Cap. X, Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 25^a (xvth cent.): "blood þerfore, ȝif it ouer haboundeþ vpon al þe body, & it is hett with hete enflammyng or brenmyng þe herte, & is corrupt, & neþeles it is not roten, þerof is maad a feuere clepid **synocha continua**. And ȝif he is roten, þenne is maad þerof a feuere clepid **synochus continuus**."

his heed wipouten¹ a feure, or a squinantes plureses, periplumonia, apostema calida, & eueri sijknēs *pat* comēp of to miche blood. In alle þese causis þou schalt lete him blood; & þis maner is clepid 4 curantes.² ¶ Now I wole telle alle maners in what maner a man schal be leten blood / first, who schal lete þee blood / þe .ij, whanne it is necessarie for to be lete blood / þe .iiij, in whiche veynes a mau schal be leten blood for diuers passiouns, & in what maner þe 8 veyne schal be kut. ¶ A man *pat* schal be letere blood schal be 3ong,³ & he schal be no child, ne noon oold man, ne he schal not quake, & he schal haue a good scharp sijt; & loke *pat* he kunne knowe veines, & *pat* he kunne knowe hem from arterijs; & he schal haue 12 manie diuers tool⁴ for to lete blood þerwip, & þei schulen be clene and cleer, & not rusti; & summe of his tool schulen be longe, & summe schorte, for to peerse aftir *pat* þe veyne is greet þerto / Also children schulen not be lete blood, but if it were greet nede, & he 16 were so replet of blood *pat* he schulde be achekid þerwip; *pat* þou mi3t knowe bi þe streitnes of his breeþ & fulnes of his veynes, & bi reednes of his face. þan it is necessarie *pat* he be leten blood; but it is ful greet drede for to lete a child blood, þerfore I wyle 20 3eue no counseil þerto. & if it so be *pat* he be in perel of deeþ, þan lete him blood / Now þou art war of þis perel, do as þou seest *pat* it is to do; & þou schalt warne þe childis fadir & his modir of þe perels *pat* ben aforseid, & saue þee fro blame. ¶ Also olde men 24 schulen not be lete blood, & jitt summe olde men ben strengier of vertu þan summe 3onge men; & þan þou schalt take hede to þe rule in þis maner: *pat* þou schalt not lete hem blood whanne þei arisiþ out of her sijknēs / ¶ Also wommen wip childe schulen not 28 be lete blood, & speciali not in þe .iiij. firste moneþis, ne in þe laste monþe / Also 3onge men *pat* ben white & pale, & haueþ fewe heeris in her browis, & haueþ smale veynes & priui, ne ben not couenable to be lete blood; ne men *pat* han manie humours & litil blood, for 32 blood *pat* is in hem is tresour. ¶ Ffrench men doon hem-silf miche harme in þis caas; whanne þei ben ful of coold humours & corrupt þei letiþ hem-silf blood, & þan þei seen her blood corrupt &

Bleed in those diseases which are caused by abundance of blood.

1.
2.
3.

1. The operator must have [3 lf. 214] the proper age, know the blood-vessels, and have good instruments.

2. Children ought not to be bled except in urgent cases;

it is always dangerous,

and the parents must be warned.

Do not bleed old men, [5 lf. 214, bk.]

nor pregnant women,

nor young men who are pale and have spare hair and small veins.

Much harm is done in France by too much blood-letting.

¹ The Latin editions of Lanfranc read: "Tercio cum dolor fortis adest capitis siue febres fortes squinantes pleuresos," ed. Ven. 1498, fol. 201 bk., Ven. 1546, fol. 249, but Add. MS. 26,106 (xivth cent.), fol. 88, shows the correct reading, which corresponds with the translation: "Tercio cum dolor fortis adest capitis sine febre, cum fortes squinantes, pleureses."

² Lat. curatiuus.

⁴ *tool*, a survival of the O.E. *tōl*, N.A. plur.

foul, & þan þei supposen þat þei han wel doon þat þei haue lete out þat blood, & þe barbour wole seie þat he mote hastili be lete blood agen / It were wel better to him þat he hadde kept his blood, & þat þe corrupt humours hadde be voidid awei in oþer maner / 4 ¶ Blood-letynge is not good for a man at þe firste bigynnyng of cataracta, ne noon ventuse is not good for him / but in causis as it is forseid, blood-letynge is good // And 1if a man etij miche fleisch & drinkij miche wijn, for þis wole engendre miche blood / And 8 þan but if a man lete him blood, þan þere wole engendre diuers sijknis þerof, & ofte tyme sodeyn deef / Also men þat haue þe goute of blood, he schal be lete blood tofore þe tyme þat he supposij to haue his passioun; for ofte tyme þis wole take away 12 his akyng. & in alle sijknissis þat comeþ principali of blood, it is good for hem to be lete blood / Also men þat haueþ synocham, blood-letynge is ful necessarie to hem, til þei swowne. & þis wole do awei þe feure, or it waastij so miche þe mater; & þan he muste 16 be holpen wij oþere medicyns, þat þou schalt fynde in bokis of phisik² / If he be not lete blood, þan þe blood þat is in him wole boile vpward to þe brest, & gadere togidere in the brest, þat þe pacient schal be ful ny3 stoppid.³ & sumtyme a veine wole breke 20 in þe piyse or in þe lungis, & þan þat veine mai not be streyned ne stoppid, & þan þe patient schal die þeron. ¶ In þis chapitre it is myn entencioun forto speke oonly of openynge of veines 4 þat ben in us,⁵ & what vertu þer is þerizne. In boþe armis of a man þer 24 ben .iij. veines þat ben in us for to be lete blood þeron / þe .i. is clepid cephalica, & is þe hizeste veine of þe arme, & sitt next þe elbowe⁶; & þis veine mote be kut large, & not to depe / If þat veine be kut streit, þan ofte tyme it makij an enpostym / & also 28 þou muste be wel war þat þou touche no synewis / For þe same cause þou miȝt lete a man blood vpon þe hond, bitwixe his þombe & þe nexte fyngir þerto // Basilica sittij adoun aforzens þe elbowe, vndir þe arme, & þis veine sittij ful ny3 þe gret arterie: & þerfore 32 a man mote be wel war þat he touche not þe arterie veyne. & for þe perel of þe arterie it is good for to lete him blood bitwixe þe litil fyngir & þe fynger next þerto. & þis blood-letynge is good for

Nota
Do not bleed at the beginning of cataract.

[1f. 215]
Blood-letting shall be used, if a man eats and drinks too much, in case of gout—before the illness is quite developed—

in case of synocha,

else the blood may boil into the breast,

and a vein may break.

Nota

[4f. 215, bk.]

The veins on which phlebotomy is practised are 1. **Cephalica.**

which is cut either near the elbow, or between the thumb and the first finger.

2. **Basilica.** is cut either in the fold of the arm,

or between the little finger and the ring finger.

² & þan he muste be holpen—bokis of phisik, inserted. Lat.: “aut omnino phlebotomia febrem tollit, aut adeo materiam minuit, quod in putridam de cetero non mutatur.”

³ Lat. quod patiens suffocatur.

⁵ Lat. quæ sunt in usu.

⁶ Lat. prima cefalica que in duobus minuitur locis prope cubiti plicaturam aliquantulum supra.

alle þe placis vndir þe brest, & for þe lyuere. ¶ Of þis veine þat^t is clepid Basilica, & of þe veine þat^t is c[1]epid Cephalica, comeþ a veine þat^t is clepid Mediana / And whanne a man is lete blood in
 4 þis veyne, it^t is perel of ij. grete synewis þat^t liggip in boþe sidis 1^o of þe veyne. And whanne þou pinkist^t to avoide al a mannes bodi, þau þou schalt^t lete him blood in þis veine, & principali for þe herte & for þe brest. ¶ In Basilica, in þe rizt^t hond, þou schalt^t lete a
 8 man blood for passioun of þe lyuere, & in þe lift hond for passioun of þe splene,² & in þe liftside of þe forheed³ it^t is good to lete blood for akyng of þe heed,⁴ & principali whanne sijknes is con-
 12 fermed in a mannes heed. & þis I apreuede misilf^t / for sumtyme as the author did in the case of a woman.
 16 & noon rizt^t sche was hool / But^t whanne þou wolt^t lete a man blood in þat^t place, þou schalt^t streyne þe necke & kutte þe veine endelongis; & þis blood-letyng is good for tynea, þat^t is in a mannes heed, & for Saphati,⁵ & for demigrania þou schalt^t lete
 20 blood in þe templis of his heed. & þe same blood-letyng is good for passion⁶ of a mannes izen / I hadde a zong^t man in my kepinge þat^t hadde demigrayn⁷ of hoot^t cause, & I purgide him ofte & lete him blood, and I knytte þe arterie þat^t was in þe same side of his
 24 heed, & þo he was cured for euermore / Also letyng blood in þe veynes bihinde hise eeris is good for þe dimigrayn & for tineam / Also letyng blood in þe tunge is good for þe squinacie, & for enpostyms, þat^t ben as it^t were almaundis, & for brancis;⁸ but^t he

² *Regimen sanitatis Salerni*, transl. by T. Paynell (1530), fol. h. iiii.: "*Saluatella* is þat veine betwene þ^e myddell fynger and the ryng fynger, more declynyng to the myddell fynger. Hit begynneth of *Basilica*. This veine is opened in the ryghte hande for opilation of þ^e lyuer, and in the lefte hande for opilation of the splene. There is no reason why it shuld be so, as Auicen saythe, but experyence: whiche Galen founde by a dreame, as he saythe. He had one in cure, whose lyuer and splene were stopte, and he dreamed that he dyd let him blud of this veine, and so he dyd, and cured the pacient."

³ MS. inserts *for*.

⁴ Lat. in capite flebotomatur vena frontis propter capitis egritudines.

⁵ MS. *sanaci*. The editions of Lanfranc read *saphati*, Add. MS. 26,106, fol. 89: *saffira*. *Matth. Sylv.*: "Saphiros, Sephiros idest apostema durum cui non associatur sensus." *Vigo Interpr.*: "Sephiros is an arabike word, and it is called in Greke scirros, in latyne durities, that is hardenes."

⁷ *demigrayn*, Lat. emigranea. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. megrim.

⁸ *brancus*, med. Lat. Dufur, a throat-disease. *Isid.*, Lib. 4, Cap. 7: "branchos est præfocatio faucium a frigido humore." The editions of Lanfr. read: brachiis.

3. *Mediana*.
 is selected
 for general
 bleeding.
 [1. ff. 216]

A vein in the
 forehead is
 cut against
 headache and
 frenzy;

as the author
 did in the
 case of a
 woman.

Blood-let-
 ting on the
 temples is
 good against
 megrim,
 [6 ff. 216, bk.]
 and an eye
 disease.

Cut the veins
 behind the
 ear against
 megrim:
 bleed the
 tongue
 against
 squincy.

Bleed from the jugular vein against suffocation, from a vein in the lower lip,

from the 3 veins in the leg,

1. a vein under the knee,

[⁴ If. 217]

2. a vein in the hollow of the foot called *Sophena*.

3. the sciatic vein.

If you intend to let blood more than once from the same place,

make a larger incision.

[⁵ If. 217, bk.]

If by blood-letting, you wish to draw the matter to the opposite part of the body, bleed repeatedly.

schal be lete blood tofore in þe heed-veyne. & it¹ is good for þe iʒen, & it¹ is good for icching & for pustulis in þe nose, & for scotomia þat² comep of blood / Sumtyme a man is lete blood in veynes in þe necke, þat² ben clepid gwide,¹ for drede of suffocacioun² 4 of blood; & sumtyme in leprous men, þat² schulen be lete blood in her lippis bineþe.³ & þis is good for hote enpostyms in þe mouþ, & for hote passiouns of þe gommys. ¶ In a mannes foot⁴ ben .iiij., þat² ben profitable to be lete blood for manie passiouns / And þer is oon 8 veyne in a mannes hamme vndir his knee, þat² is good to be lete blood for passiouns of þe maris, & for to bringe out² mensture: & it¹ avoidiþ al þe bodi. ¶ Also þer is anoper veine, þat² sittip bitwixe þe holowe of þe foot⁴ wiþinneforþ, & is clepid *Sophena*; & in þis. 12 veyne wommen ben leten blood for passiouns of þe maris, & men ben lete blood in þe veine of þe same place for enpostyms of þe ballokis. ¶ Þe veine þat² serueþ for þe scie, is wiþoute bitwixe þe heele & þe holowe of þe foot⁴ wiþoutforþ, & blood-letynge in þis 16 veine is good for scia[ti]cam passionem, as it¹ is aforseid in þe cure of⁴ sciatica. ¶ Herof þou schalt² take kepe. If þou þinkist² for to lete a man blood in .ij. diuers times, & not² al at² oonys, þan þou schalt² do in þis maner; & in þis caas, whanne þou wolt² lete a man 20 miche blood, and ne darist² not² do it¹ al at² oonys; þan whanne þou letist² him blood, þou schalt² make þe inscicioun of þe veine þe more long; þat² it¹ soude not² hastili; & þan þou schalt² binde his arme, & smite þe place þere þou wolt² lete him blood wiþ þi fyngir, & make 24 him blede more, as myche as þou seest² þat² good is / ⁵¶ Also whanne þou wolt² wiþ blood-letynge make þe mater go to þe place aforzens; whanne þou hast² lete out² þe .iiij. part² off² blood þat² he schal blede, þan þou schalt² sette þi fingir vpon þe wounde, & make 28 him stonde vp & remeue⁶ him-silf, & lete him sitte adoun, & do awei þi fyngir & lete him blede more. & þus þou schalt² do .iiij.

¹ Lat. *vene guidegi*.

² Phillips: "*Suffocation*. a suffocating, stifling, etc., a Stoppage."

³ This statement is due to a wrong interpunctuation in the Latin original. Add. 26,106: "Aliquando flebotomantur uene guidegi colli cum suffocatio ex sanguinis timetur multitudine. & aliquando in quibusdam leprosis uene quæ sunt in labiis inferioribus interioribus minuuntur propter acola calidum in ore —." A full stop ought to be between leprosis and uene. Compare *Liber Rasis ad Almans*, Tract. VII, Cap. 21, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 32 bk.: "Sed due uene que dicuntur guidegi sunt flebotomande, cum anhelitus in lepre principio maxime angustatur." "Vene itidem, que in labiis sunt inciduntur cum in aliquo multiplicantur alcola et ulcera in ore et gingiuis."

⁶ *remeue him-silf* has the sense of M.E. *remuen*, O.F. *remuer*, to move, stir.

- sipis or .iiij., for in þis maner þe blood drawiþ more to þe partie aforzens, & þe vertu of þe pacient schal þe better be kept. ¶ Also if a man is wont to swowne in blood-letyng eouper falle down, þan 4 lete him lie & be lete blood / Also or he be lete blood, lete him etc a schiuer of breed toostid & leid in wijn of *granatorum*. ¶ Alle maner veynes in blood-letyng schulen be kutt endelongis / And whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in þe partijs aboute þe necke, þan 8 þou muste binde þe veine,¹ til þe veyne arise þat þou wolt lete him blood on / And whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in his arme, þan þou muste binde his arme þe brede of foure fyngris aboute þe place; & þou muste ²be wel war þat þou streyne not to faste, as manie 12 men doon / Manie men binden so faste a mannes arm, þat he mai not fele his arm / Veynes of a mannes feet & in his hondis, if þou wolt lete a man blood þeron, þan þou muste sette hem in hoot water, & lete hem achaufe þeron an hour; & þan þou muste binde 16 his foot onþir his hond aboute þe ioinct wiþ a boond, & algate his foot or his hond mote be in þe watir as longe as he schal blede /

Give the patient a slice of bread and wine before the operation.

Before operating cause the vein to swell, by bandaging the limb,

[2 lf. 218]

and by a warm foot-bath.

Of kuttyngis and bledyngis //

- S**iccia is sett sumtyme for kuttyng & sumtime wiþoute kuttyng, ¶ xvij. c. and sumtyme wiþ kuttinge.³ Wipout kuttinge as vpon a mannes wombe or wommans / ffor akyng þat comeþ of wijnd, & it is good for to waste wijnd / Also it is sett vpon þe wei of þe stoon þat falliþ adoun of þe reynes, & þan it schal be sett a litil bineþe þe 24 akyng þat it mowe drawe þe stoon lower & lower til it come to þe hole of þe bladdre / Also it is sett vndir a wommans tetis for to restreine þe blood of þe nose & of þe maris / Also it is sett vpon þe region ⁴of þe wombe for fallinge of þe maris, þat is clepid dislocacioun of þe maris: as if the maris falle adoun in þe rihtside, þan it schal be sett in þe liftside / And if þe maris falle in þe liftside, þan it schal be sett in þe rihtside / Also it is sett vndir a mannes eere for to drawe out a greyne or a stoon of þe eere þat is falle yn / 32 Also it is sett vndir a mannes ers to drawe out þe emeroidis þat sittij hid fer yn / And it schal be sett in euery place þere þou wolt make a greet attracioun / Also it is good for to be sett vpon þe bityng of a wood hound, & vpon þe biting of a venymous beest.

The Sycla is used against flatulence,

to draw the stone from the kidneye towards the bladder,

to restrain flux of blood in case of falling of the womb,

[4 lf. 218, bk.]

to draw a stone out of the ear,

to draw out internal piles,

on the bite of a mad dog.



¹ Lat. opus collum stringi donec appareant.

³ Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "Siccia aliquando ponitur sine incisione aliquando cum incisione." The printed editions omit this passage.

Cupping with previous scarification is used instead of blood-letting, if the patients are either very old or very young.

[² lf. 219]

Scarify on the head, for eye-disease, skin-diseases, and tooth-ache.

Scarify between the shoulders for swooning.

watir lechis

Bad leeches have big heads and live in foul water.

Good leeches have red wombs, small heads, live in pure water.

Keep them fasting before use.

[⁵ lf. 219, bk.]

It schal be sett^t *peron* wiþ scarificacioun, also in causis *pere þou* lettist^t for to drawe blood for febilnes, or for elde, or in children; & hem after .iiij. zeer oold we moun garcie, whanne blood leting^t is forboden hem, & speciali whanne we purposen for to drawe awei mater 4 þat^t is vndir þe skyn / Also we moun garse a man bihinde in þe nol of^t þe heed — —¹ & for greuance of^t þe *izen*, & vpon þe .ij. corneris of^t þe heed for tinea & for pustules þat^t ben in þe heed vnder ²a mannes chyn, for wemmys of^t þe face & for vlcera þat^t ben in þe 8 mouþ & in þe lippis & for akyng^e of^t þe teep / Also if^t it be sett^t bytwixe þe .ij. schuldris for swownyng^e & for quaking^e of^t þe herte, & for hem þat^t han to miche blood in þat^t place. Þis maner letyng^e blood avoidid a mannes bodi miche & makij^t him feble³ / 12

Also watir lechis⁴ drawij^t more blood þan þese / In þis maner þou schalt^t knowe whiche ben gode watir lechis & whiche ben nouzt. þei þat^t han blac colour medlid wiþ diuers colouris, & þei þat^t haueþ grete hedis & ben in foule styngyng^e watris & han miche spume on 16 hem ben nouzt / And in þis maner þou schalt^t knowe whiche ben gode : þei þat^t han reed wombis & litil reed rewis in þe rigge medlid wiþ grene, & whanne þei haueþ litil hedis & smale tailis, & whanne þei ben in good watir þat^t ben manie froggis yn. & or þou sette 20 hem vpon a man, þei schulen be kept^t al adai fastyng^e. & þan þou schalt^t zeue him a litil scharp blood for to ete, & þan þou schalt^t waische hem wiþ cleer water ; & þan vpon þe ⁵place þat^t he schal be

¹ Some words are wanting. Lat. : propter grauedinem capitis.

³ The sentence to which this statement refers is omitted. Lat. : "Que vero in poplitis plicatura valent ad egritudines renum, et matricis, testiculorum et omnium membrorum nutritiuorum ex sanguine."

⁴ Rhasis, Continens, Lib. XV. Cap. 6, ed. Brix, 1486, fol. CC. 3, bk., gives an interesting description of different kinds of leeches : "Sanguisugarum vna est venenosa, que est nigra vehementer ad modum antimonii, habens caput magnum & squamas ad modum piscium quorundam & habens medium viride, etiam alia, super quam sunt pili, habet magnum caput et colorem diuersum ad modum iris, in cuius colore sunt linee ad modum lazuli : que quotiens mordet, inde accidet apostema cum sincopi, febre, ebrietate, et laxitudine articulorum ; tamen bona ipsarum est, que assimilatur colori aque in qua erit viriditas, habent super se duas lineas ad modum arsenici ; sed blonde rotunde & ad colores epatis apte, que veloces sunt ad attrahendum sanguinem subtilem & que assimilantur caude muris, habentes odorem horribilem & similes locuste parvule et tenui & habentes ventrem ruffum cum nigrore & dorsum viride, sunt meliores ; sed peiores erunt in aqua mala valde stabili, in qua sunt ranule multe, tamen bone sunt in aqua bona & optima." This account is copied by Avicenna, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 22, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 62, bk. He differs in one point : "illas elige, que in aquis colliguntur, in quibus morantur rane. Neque attendas illud quod quidam dicunt, quod si sunt in aquis vbi morantur rane, sunt male."

sett, þe place schal be wel frotid tofore, þat it bicomē reed, & þan sette þervpon a ventuse for to drawe þerto blood. & þan anynte þe same place wiþ blood, & þan sette þervpon þe watir leche. & whanne he is ful & þou wolt do him awei, blowe vpon þe place baurac, ouþer askis maad of paper. & whanne he is falle awei, þan sette þervpon a ventuse azen to drawe more blood to þe plase. & þan sette þervpon anoþer watir leche, if þere gaderiþ þerto miche mater. & þis maner is good for al maner blood þat is rotid, for it draweth it out /

Draw the blood to the place with cupping, before the leech is set on,

and use again cupping, when the leech has dropped.

Of cauterium or brennyng of large & streite.¹

- 12 **C**auterium is seid in ij. maners, þat is to seie large & streit. & cauterium is seid propurli a brennyng wiþ gold or wiþ sum oþer instrument þat is hoot, ouþer wiþ watir or wiþ oile, ouþer wiþ medicyn caustica, ouþer wiþ herbis / And þer ben manie medicyns for to make cauterijs, whiche þou schalt fynde pleynlier in þe anti-dotarie / A cauterie is clepid streit,² whanne it is maad wiþ an hoot yren, wiþ gold, or wiþ siluir // Cauterijs þat³ ben maad wiþ medicyns þat han vertu for to brenne / þer is seid a cauterie po[tentia]le whanne it is not hoot in felinge / & þat cauterie preuailiþ wiþouten brennyng as herbis / þer is anoþer maner cauterie : actual, for so miche as it brenneth in dede / Of þis cauterie auicen⁴ spekiþ & seiþ, þat it is a medicyn, miche helpinge for to defende, þat mater schal not departe into al þe lyme ; & it wole comforte þe lyme, & bringe it into good complexioun azen, & it wole dissolue mater þat is corrupt, & it wole streyne flux of blood. & auicen seiþ, þat a cauterie is oon of þe beste pointis of cirurgie / for þingis þat mowe not be fulfillid in long tyme, wiþ cauterie þei ben fulfillid / As it is seid phisicians leueþ þis craft to cirurgians. & þefore it is greet wondir if þer be ony good cirurgian founde, for þei ben alle lewid men. & if a lewid man schal worche with cauterijs, þan he knowiþ not þe difference bitwixe a cauterie þat is clepid actual & potencial. & also þei knowe not in what place of a mannes bodi þei schulen make hem. & þis is so repreued þat it is almost out⁵ of vss / Also summen maken cauterijs in vnclene bodies þat ben ful replet of

¶ xvlij co

A Cautery is any substance used for burning.

In a narrower sense it is the hot iron, gold or silver.

[3 lf. 220]

A caustic medicine is called potential cautery.

The actual cautery is really burning.

The effects of cauterization.

Auicen praises the cautery.

The phisicians use in the hands of surgeons, who are all unlearned, and cannot distinguish the

Cauterium actuale [3 lf. 220, bk.] and

Cauterium potenciale.

¹ The translator misunderstood the meaning of the Latin, "large et stricte," in the following passage : Cauterium dicitur duobus modis, large & stricte.

² See the preceding note.

⁴ Lanfranc mentions Avicenna, who has a short chapter about cauterization, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 29 ; yet he chiefly follows Gulielmus de Salic., Lib. V., Cap. I., but with many additions and alterations.

Some cauterize a patient, who is full of bad humours, wherof a cancer may ensue.

Some use **Cantarides.**

Auicen says, the cautery is the best consuming medicine, if properly applied, and if there is not too much matter.

[**I** f. 221] As a little fire has no effect on a large quantity of wet wood, so the cautery is inefficient, if the patient is too full of humours.

The patient shall not bear the cautery longer than three months.

Particulars about cauteries, [**I** f. 221, bk.] and the shape of the instruments:

1. **Nodulum**, an iron plate with a hole,

through which the red-hot iron is applied.

yuele humours, & þan cauterijs wolen do lital profit to passiouns þat ben forseid, but þer wole falle þerto so manie humouris, & make þe place of þe cauterie to swelle, & listly engendre a cancre. & þan men þat ben vnkunynge ben agast herof & ben not hardi for to 4 make no mo cauterijs. & if þe patient hadde be purgid of grete humours tofore, þan it wolde not haue fare so. ¶ And summen vsen cantarides for to make cauterijs þerwip, & leggen it vpon men þat han hote complexioun & drie; & þis is contrarious & fallip 8 greet agreuance þerof; & þan þei seien þat cauterijs ne ben nouzt worþ / But auicen seip, þat a cauterie is good tofore alle medicyns for to waaste & consume mater / if þe cauterie be sett in place þere it schulde be, but if the mater be so miche þat þe cauterie mai not 12 consume it, as þou mizt se an ensample herof: þat fier ouercomeþ alle þingis / but if þou doist a lital fier amonge miche wet wode, þer wole come smoke þerof. & the fier mai not ouercome to waaste þe wode, for water þat is in þe wode is more þan þe fier / In þe same 16 maner it fariþ of a cauterie þat is in a mannes bodi, if he be ful of humouris, þanne þe cauterie mai not worche. & þerfor þou schalt purge him wip laxatiuis tofore þe cauterie as it is aforseid / Also þou schalt make no cauterijs in a man þat is ful of gode humours 20 as of blood, for þan oonli blood-letyng suffisip / but if þe patient be stronge & þe mater on him be coold & moist, þan a cauterie is good for to driue awei þe mater. & a man schal not bere a cauterie, but .ij. moneþis ouper .iij. at þe mooste. ¶ Now I wole telle þee 24 a good rule / If þou fyndist in a mannes body a lyme in wei of corrupcioun²: as herispula, or herpes estiomenus, ouper formica, or in yuel disposicioun of a wounde þat bigyneþ to encancre,³ & for al ouper corrupcioun, þan sette a cauterie in þe nexte welle to þe place, 28 for þe cauterie wole defende þe place fro corrupcioun. ¶ Now speke we of particlis of cauterijs þat fallip in diuers placis of a mannes bodi, & wip diuers instrumentis þei schulen⁴ be maad, whiche þou schalt se portraied⁵ tofore þe, & her signis forþwip. ¶ Þe .i. instru- 32 ment þat is comoun & moost in vss, is clepid **nodulum**,⁶ & is an instrument maad in þis maner / Take a brood plate of iren & make þeron an hole, & leie þat plate þere þou wolt make þi cauterie. & þan þou muste haue an iren maad long & smal & maad hoot, & 36 putte it in þat hole of þe plate / þis plate wole saue þe place þat þe

² Lat.: si membrum inuenis in via corruptionis.

³ *encancre*, med. Lat. *incancre*; Dufr., Ital. *incancharare*.

⁵ The figures are omitted.

⁶ Lat. *anodulum*, *adnodulum*.

- cauterie schal be nomore but as þou wolt / & þat iren þat þou schalt make þi cauterie þerwip, schal haue a litil round knap tofore. & þat iren schal be maad hoot til it bicome reed / & þerwip þou
- 4 schalt make þi cauterie, & whanne þou doist awei þin iren, þere wole be vlcus. & þan þou schalt leie þeron butter or oold grese, or grese stampid wip caul-leues, & þat is þe best of alle, & leie it þerto, til þe cruste falle awei þat þe hoot iren made. & þan þou
- 8 schalt do þerto a litil pelot maad of lynnyn cloof round & hard. & þat pelot schal be anyntid wip oile, & vpon þe place leie a caul-leef, or an yue-leef, or a vine-leef, & in þis maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt. ¶ The .ij. cauterie is clepid **round**, &
- 12 haþ no knap at þe ende, but it is schape long, & whanne þou makist þi cauterie, þou muste be war þat þou touche no nerues ne veynes. & þis instrument schal be maad in þis maner, þat it make a cauterie in boþe endis, after þat þou desirist, greet or smal. ¶ The
- 16 .iij. cauterie is clepid **punctuale**, & is ful necessarie whanne þou wolt make a streit cauterie. & is maad in þis maner. ¶ The .iiij. is clepid radiale, & is smal & scharp, & is good for children, & is maad in þis maner² / ¶ The .v. cauterie is maad in þis maner, & is swipe
- 20 comoun & is clepid **calcillare**.³ & þis wole make a long brennyng as ouerþwert þe heed, & whanne þou wolt make vlcera long þat ben rounde, þan þou schalt worche wip þis cauterie. ¶ The .vj. is clepid **subtile**, & is good for festriss þat sittip in þe corner of a mannes ize,
- 24 & it is good for yuel fleisch þat growip in a mannes ize, & is maad in þis maner / þis sotille⁴ cauterie schal be maad hoot & putt in a canel in þis maner // The .vj.⁵ is clepid dactilare, for it is schape as it were þe stoon of a date. & herwip þou schalt make cauterijs in þe
- 28 haunche. & þere schal be an instrument schape as a table, & schal be leid to þe haunche in þis maner, & haþ .vj. arisyngs þeron as haþ a stoon of a date.⁶ & oon þerof is in þe myddil, & .ij. aboue, & .j. bineþe, & oon in boþe sidis in þis maner / Whanne þis instrument
- 32 is hoot, it schal be putt vpon a mannes haunche, & a table bitwixe maad of iren. & þis table schal be coold, & þer schulen be .vj. holis

After this operation an ulcer is left, on which cabbage-leaves are applied.

[1 ff. 222]

2. The round cautery can be used at both ends.

3. punctuale.

Radiale is used for children.

4. Calcillare makes long burns.

5. Subtile, used for a fistula in the corner of the eye.

[4 ff. 222, bk.]

6. Dactilare, used to cauterize the haunch, is an iron instrument of two parts, one a table with five holes, the other with five eminences fitting into the holes.

² The description of the Cauterium radiale is an insertion of the translator. Lat.: "tertium cauterium punctuale, seu radiale, & est necessarium ubi valde strictum uolueris facere cauterium, & est sic factum." Gulielm. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 45, bk.: "þe fifþe is clepyd cauterium minutum, or radiale or viduale þat is a comoun instrument to children."

³ Add. 26106, fol. 98, bk.: "cutellare," printed ed. "cultellare."

⁵ The translator, forgetting that he counted the "radiale" as a separate cautery, follows again the numbers of the original.

⁶ Lat.: et habet v. eminentias sicut ossa dactilorum factas.

7. Triangulare.

8. Actuale is like a needle, and [2 lf. 223] used for the eye-brows. *linguale.*
Ceton.

The skin is lifted up with pincers, a hole is burnt through, and some threads of wool put in.

[6 lf. 223, bk.]

When all other medicines are inefficient to remove a chronic headache and other diseases arising from the head,

use the Cauterium *Cultellare.*

peron, schape after þe cauterie þat haþ .v. arisingis out as it is afor-
seid. And þou schalt make .v. cauterijs vpon a mannes haunche,
& .ij. þerof schulen be aboue þe ioynct, & .ij. bi þe sidis, & oon
vpon þe ioynct, & .j. tofore þe ioynct. ¶ Þe vij. is clepid triangulare, & þerwiþ þer mai be maad .iij. at oonys. & þis cauterie is good
for þe haunche also, & is maad in þis maner / ¶ The .viij. cauterie
is clepid actuale,¹ for sumtyme it is maad wiþ a nedle, & it is good
for to make cauterijs þerwiþ in þe browis, & is maad sutil as a
nedele. ¶ The .ix. cauterie is clepid *linguale*, & it is schape as it
were a tunge of a litil brid in þis maner. & it is good for to make
cauterijs vpon a mannes browis / ¶ The .x. cauterie is clepid *ceton*,³
& is maad *triangulis* holowid.⁴ & in þe hole þerof þere may entre a
scharp instrument þat haþ a fenestre⁵ as it were a nedele, & it
schal be holde with coold tenaculis, also þe place þat þou wolt
make þi cauterie on. þou schalt take vp þe skyn wiþ tenaculis, &
putt in þin hoot iren þoruþ þe hole of þe tenaculis, & breune þe skyn.
þan þou schalt make a corde of wollen zerne & wete it in blood, &
drawe it þoruþ þe holis, & þan þou schalt knytte þe .ij. endis to-
gidere, & in þis maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt.
þis is a comoun cauterie, & þis cauterie mai be maad in þe mouþ of
þe stomac, & vpon þe lyuere & þe splene, & vpon þe ballocke-leþeris /
Now þou knowist alle þin instrumentis, for to make cauterijs with, &
her names / Now telle we in what maner & in what place þou schalt
make hem / In oold heed-akyng, whanne *purgaciouns* & *laxatiuis*
& *gargarismis* & *snesyngis*⁷ & *clisterijs* & *opere* maner of avoid-
yng, & wiþ *enplastris* & wiþ *anoyntyng*, whanne þe akyng of a
mannes heed wole not go awei wiþ alle þese, ne þe *epilencie*,⁸ ne
noon *passioun* þat comeþ of þe heed, ne *passiouns* of þe izen, &
passiouns of þe eeren, & of þe noseþrillis, & oold couze, & flux of
þe wombe þat comeþ of þe reume. ¶ For alle þese *passiouns* þou
schalt make cauterie þat is clepid *cultellare* in þe welle of þe heed⁹

¹ *actuale*, a mistake for *acuale*.

³ *ceton*, med. Lat. seto, sedo; Fr. séton; Ital. settone, "seton." Add. 26,106, and the printed ed. read: dicitur ad sectionem.

⁴ Lat.: fit cum tenaculis perforatis.

⁵ *fenestre*, Lat. fenestra; "la fenestre de la cannule," Paré; see *Littre Dict.*

⁷ *snesyngis*, Lat. sternutationes.

⁸ *epilencie*, O.Fr. epilence. Plinius: epilenticus. See Dufr. Matth. Sylv.: Epilensia .i. morbus caducus.

⁹ Lat. in capitis fontinella. Phillips: "Fontanella, or Fonticulus, a little Well, or Spring: In Surgery, an Issue, or little Ulcer, made in sound parts of the Body, to let out bad Humours, and to Cure, or prevent Diseases. In

- bihinde. & first schauē awei þe heeris, þere þou wolt make þi cauterie as it is aforseid *with* an hoot iren, & herof þou schalt be ware þat þou lete not þat iren be þere to longe, but þou schalt hastili make it, & hastily do awei þe iren, & þan þou schalt do
- 4 awei þe cruste þerof wip butter, or wip oold grese, or wip leues of caul, as it is aforseid. ¶ Þis cauterie schal be holde open wip litil pelottis as it is forseid as longe as þou wolt, til þe patient be hool / But or þou make þi cauterie, þou muste be wel ware, as it is afor-
- 8 seid, þat þin iren lie not to longe, ¹but hastili take it awei, for if it were þere longe his brayn myzte be harmed þerbi. ¶ Wip þis cauterie I helide a woman þat hadde passiouus in hir heed manie diuers, & I miȝte not make hir hool *with* no purgaciouus, ne wip
- 12 noon anoyntingis, & wip þis cauterie I made hir al hool. ¶ Also þou muste make a round cauterie & touche oonly þe skyn þerwip, & do þerto seto. Þis cauterie is good for passiouus of þe iȝen, & for epilenciam, & for opere sijknessis of þe heed; but þis cauterie is
- 16 not so good as þat oper tofore. ¶ Also þou miȝt make a cauterie in a mannes necke bytwixe þe boonys & þe skyn aboueforþ²; þis cauterie is good for þe spasme. ¶ Also whanne a man is woundid in þe heed, þis cauterie is good for drede of þe spasme; for herwip
- 20 þe mater schal be consumed, þat nerues ben redi for to take.³ ¶ Also in þe welle vnder þe eeris & bihinde þe eeris þou schalt make cauterijs for passiouus of iȝen and for akyngē of þe teeþ. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat is vpon a mannes browis, þou schalt do
- 24 awei wip a cauterie þat is clepid lingual, ⁴schape as it were a tunge of a brid. & þou schalt make þerwip cauterijs vpon his browis, but þou muste be war þat þou touche not þe natural substaunce of þe browis. & þou schalt make cauterijs þer vpon *with*
- 28 cauterium punctuale, & for to do awei superfluite of fleisch þat is in þe corner of a mannes iȝe. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat is in a mannes nose, it mai be remeued awei wip cauterium acutum ouper punctuale, for to touche þerwip þe fleisch a litil & a litil til al þe
- 32 superfluite be take awei. & if þis superfluite be fast þeron & be fer yn, þan þou muste vse a sutil cauterie, & putte it in þe nose-þril

The iron must not be too long on the head.

[1 lf. 224]

The round cauterie is good for passiouus of þe iȝen.

A cauterie applied on the neck is good for spasme.

The cauterium lingual [4 lf. 224, bk.] is used to remove a growth on the eye-brows.

A growth in the nose is removed with the Cauterium acutum.

Anatomy, the mould or root of the Nose." It was further a name for the place where these ulcers were produced, especially for a place between the sutures of the skull. Compare *Sord. of Babyl.* 2951: [*he smote hir*] *ouer the founte throughout the brayn.*

² Lat.: cutem superficialiter tangendo.

³ Lat.: nam materia per hoc consumitur, per quam neruorum inhibitio expectatur.

poruz þe canel, þat' þe hete ne mowe not' harme þe substantance of þe nose, but' onoly brenne þe superfluite of' þe fleisch. ¶ Also þou schalt' make a round cauterie vndir a mannes chyn. & þis cauterie is good for weynys þat' ben in þe skyn of' his face, & for þe place,¹ 4 & for þe palet, & for sijknes in a mannes mouþ, & in þe gomys, & in þe teþ. ¶ Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in boþe a mannes armys, wiþoutforþ þe arme, in þe welle þat' is vpon þe grete braun a lital² bineþe þe schuldre. & þis cauterie is good for sijknes þat' ben 8 in þe partie bihinde of' a mannes brayn as for þe litarge,³ & also it' purgij wel þe nerues of' þe necke / Also þou miȝt' make anoþer in þe welle vndir þe grete braun, and is good for þe brayn wiþinneforþ as for scotomia & vertigine, & for water þat' fallij adoun fro a mannes 12 heed to hise izen, & it' is good for al passiouns of' a mannes izen / Also þou schalt' make a cauterie cultellaria⁴ bitwene a mannes fyngris / And þese cauterijs ben gode for passiouns ciragra / Also þou schalt' make cauterijs in þe brest' wiþ a round cauterie, and is 16 good for asma⁵ / Also þou miȝt' make a cauterie toward þe forke of' þe brest' aboue for disma⁶ / Also þou miȝt' sumtyme make cauterijs in þe brest', þat' ben clepid cultellaria, bitwixe þe ribbis, & þese cauterijs been good for empima,⁷ *id est* apostyme wiþizne / Also þou 20 miȝt' make cauterijs punctualia in þe rigboon for gret akinge þat' a man haþ in þat' place / Also þou miȝt' make cauterijs wiþ a round instrument' vpon þe regioun of' þe stomak, for long' febilnes þat' a 24 man haþ had in his stomak / Also þou miȝt' ^s make cauterijs vnder 24 þe nauele & vpon þe lyuere & vpon þe splene, ffor colicam passionem & for þe sijknes of' þe lyuere & vpon þe splene & for dropsie. And alle þese cauterijs wolen be maad best' wiþ seton / Also þou miȝt' make .ij. cauterijs in þe haunchis as it' is aforseid / Also þou 28

The round cauterie is applied beneath the chin for skin-disease.

A cauterie applied on [2 lf. 225] the arms is used against lethargy.

A cauterie on the fingers is used for chiragra.

Cauteries are used for asthma,

empyema,

for diseases of the rib-bone,

the stomach,

[8 lf. 225, bk.]

the liver, and the spleen,

they are best made with a Seton.

¹ place for plague? Lat.: saphati et pustulas.

² litarge, lethargy. Compare *Leechd.* l., p. 200: "niþ þa adle ðe man litargum hateð, þat ys on ure geþode ofergytulnys eweden."

⁴ Lat.: "Fiunt cauteria cutellaria superficialia inter digitum et digitum in cyragra. De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 29, Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 a: "Difficulte & hardnesse of breþinge hat asma & comþ of double cause of drynes þat streyneþ þe lungen."

⁵ asma, med. Lat. asma, ἀσθμα.

⁶ disma, Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "propter disimiam." Dufur., "dyspnia, δύσπνοια." *Simon. Barth.*, p. 18: "Disma est species asmatis, sed disma fit ex siccitate, asma ex humiditate."

⁷ empima, Lat. empimia. *Simon. Barth.*, p. 19: "Empima, i. sputum saniosum ex pulmonis infeccione proveniens." De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 30, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 a: "empima is a passioun, whan me spetiþ quittir."

- miȝt^t make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe knee, for þe akyng of þe knees & of þe ballokis & of þe maris. Also þou miȝt^t make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe kne, wiþoutforþ for remedie of al þe bodi, for it^t avoideþ
 4 wel alle partijs of a mannes bodi / & I haue seen manie men þat^t han maad cauterijs in þat^t place, or his bodi were purgid, & humouris fel so myche þerto þat^t his leggis & his hipis to-swollen al greet. & if^t he hadde be purgid tofore, he schulde not^t haue fare
 8 so. & aboue þe anele ben maad cauterijs for sijknes of þe ballokis. & also it^t is good for wommen / Also bitwixe þe toos ben maad cauterijs for þe potagre¹ / Also if^t þou purgist^t a man or a womman wiþ medicyns laxatiuis, & þan makist^t a cauterie as it^t is aforseid.
 12 & if^t þe passioun go not^t awei at^t þis oon doinge, þan þou schalt^t neuere þe lattere [not]² be in dispeir of cauterijs,³ but þou schalt^t bigynne to purge⁴ him aȝen & make him a cauterie aȝen. & if^t it^t so be þat^t he be miche feblid herwiþ, þan þou schalt^t restore aȝen wiþ
 16 gode metis & drinkis þat^t engendriþ good humours. & whanne lie is restorid aȝen, þan þou schalt^t bigynne & purge him aȝen, & þan make hise cauterijs aȝen, & in þis maner þou schalt^t worche wiþ þi cauterijs. ¶ ffor manie men makip^t oon cauterie or .ij, & if^t þei seen
 20 þat^t it^t profitiþ not^t, þan þei leueþ of^t & worchiþ nomore. & manie men contynuede þeron til þe pacient^t be brouȝt^t al down & liȝtli deed / & in þis maner ne schulde not^t a leche worche / ffor G. seiþ : it^t is a feble leche, þat^t can not^t helpe þat^t is able to be holpen. &
 24 defaute herof^t is þis : þat^t manie lechis ȝeueþ medicyns, & ne makip^t no space to bringe þe patient^t into good staat^t aȝen⁵ / Alle þese rulis þat^t G. seiþ þou schalt^t attende in þis maner : if^t þe patient^t be maad feble wiþ medicyns laxatiuis & wiþ cauterijs, þan þou cesse of^t þi
 28 medicyns & ȝeue him comfortatif^t metis & drinkis for to releue him aȝen, & þan þou miȝt^t worche wiþ þi medicyns aȝen. & þus þou miȝt^t do perfitly þe cure / And heron manie men erriþ þat^t ben holden ful kunnyng^t / ⁶& þerfore I haue sett^t it^t in þis place þat^t it^t mowe be
 32 ensauple to þee / Also þou schalt^t make a cauterie vpon rotid fleisch, til þou haue take awei al þe corrupeioun þerof. & in þis caas we mowen vse hoot feruent oile for to springe vpon þe corrupeioun,

Cauteries on the knee are used for the genital organs of men and women.

The patient must be purged before being cauterized.

If the disease is not cured at once,
 [* If. 226] repeat the purging and cauterizing.

Many surgeons use the cauteries wrongly.

Galien. Allow the medicine time to work.

Galien.

[* If. 226, bk.]

Cauterize corrupt flesh with hot oil.

¹ *potagre*, Lat. *podagra*. *Hamp.* 2984 : "for slenthe als þe potagre and þe gout." De propr. rer., Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 96, bk. : "Arthetica is ache and evel in fngres and tone wiþ swellinge & sore ache, and whanne hit is in þe fngres hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra."

² *not*, omitted. Lat. : nec propter hoc desperes.

³ See p. 284, note 7.

⁶ Add. 26,106, fol. 93 : si plus dant, non interponunt spacium nutriendi.

so þat it ne touche noon hool¹ place, & þis maner is ful good to take awei corrupcioun of fleisch, & it is bettir þan medicina caustica / Whanne þou wolt worche *with* medicyns caustica, þan do as it schal be seid in þe antidotarie of þis book /

4

Of þe cure of brennyng wiþ fier ouþer *with* hoot watir or *with* oile.

¶ xix^o. c^o / Burns and scalds are treated with cold medicines, before blisters are formed,

with styptics in case of ulceration.

[S. ff. 227] Simple medicines applied in the first case.

Medicines applied in the second case.

R̄

A Mannes lymes ben brent wiþ fier, watir, ouþir wiþ oile / In þis caas þis is þe firste entencioun : or þe place bigynne to 8 bladdre,² þou muste haue medicyns þat ben colde / And if it so be þat þe place be vlceratus, & þou were not at þe firste bigynnyng, or if þe brennyng³ be so miche þat þou miȝt not defende, þat vlcera ne come not þeron, & þan þou must haue medicyns þat ben 12 lasse coold, & medicyns þat ben clepid stiptica not fretynge / þese ben symple medicyns³ in þe firste caas / Take marbil stoon & grinden smal, & alle þe sandalis,⁴ & solatrum, & watir of rosis, & watir of cucurbita, & water of virga pastoris, & of alle þese þingis make 16 a þing⁵ for to leie þeron / Also oile of rosis, & þe zelke of an ey ben good þerfore / Also bole armoniac temperid wiþ vinegre is good þerfore. And it muste ofte be remeued & ofte leid to aȝen, for þe cooldnes of ofte reumeuyng⁶ schal defende it fro bladding⁶ / 20

Naturel medicyns þat ben gode in þe secunde caas : / But vnguentum de calx maad in þis maner / R̄, calcis viue bene coete þat ben maad of an hard stoon, and waische it wiþ coold watir til it lete al his scharpnnes, & þan wiþ oile of rosis & wex make an oynement⁶ / 24

Also vnguentum album Rasis þat is maad in þe antidotarie is good þerfore / I nyle for þis cure sette no mo medycyns. þoruȝ þe grace of god almiȝty þe þridde tretis is fulfillid //

Here endiþ þe þridde book, and bigynneþ þe fourþe 28 book // Of brekyng of boonis,⁵ & sumtyme of brusyng of boonys, and a general techyng for alle //

¹ MS. *hoot*, Lat.: quod loca sana ulterius non attingat.

² *bladdre*, vesicari.

⁴ Lat. omnes sandali.

⁵ MS. *bookis*.

⁶ Lat. heading: "Explicit tractatus tertius huius libri. Incipit quartus, qui est de algebra, et continet duas summæ. Summa prima tractatus quarti septem continet capitula. Capitulum primum summæ primæ tractatus quarti, de fractura ossium sermo generalis." The translator has kept the heading of the first chapter, but left out the chapter itself. His first chapter,

- 1 **A** Mannes nose is sumtyme to-broken,² & sumtyme pressid adoun. & if he be hastili holpen his nose mai be restorid azen, & if it be longe or he haue ony help, þanne he schal be maymed for euermore³ / If þou comest at þe
- 4 firste bigynnyng þou schalt do in þis maner / putte yn þe fingir of þe lifthand anoon to þe brekyng, þi leeste fyngir or what fyngir wole best yn, & wiþ þi riþthond presse vpon þe brekyng, & arere
- 8 vþward wiþ þi fyngir *wit/inneforþ*, & presse wiþ þin hond wipoutforþ & bringe it as it schulde be. þan make a strong tent & so longe þat he mowe passe aboue þe brekyng, & þan þis tent schal be dizt wiþ a litil wex hoot & a litil sotil poudre of mastik &
- 12 sandal, & schape þerof in þe maner of a candel, & þan putte it into his nose, wipoutforþ leie of consolidatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, & abouteforþ þou schalt leie a defensif, & þou schalt binde his nose wiþ boondis,⁴ & leie sutil lynnyn cloop in boþe sidis
- 16 of his nose as ⁵it is aforseid in þe chapter of woundis in a mannes face / If þou mizt not putte yn þi fyngir in his noseþrel, þan make a tent of tre & hile it wiþ lynnyn cloop þat it be oold & neissche, & þan anointe þis tent wiþ oile of rosis, & putte þis in his noseþrel
- 20 in stide of þi fyngir, & þerwiþ arere vp his nose wipinneforþ,⁶ & wiþ þin hond wipoutforþ make his nose euene til þe boon be brouzt in his propre place þat is to-broke. ¶ Of his dietyng, & bloodletyng, & ventusis, & clisterijs, ouþer suppositorijs, do as þou seest
- 24 þat it is to do, & as it is aforseid.

¶ If a manes cheke-boon⁷ in þe liftside be to-broke, þan putte

which has no heading, is Lanfranc's second one: *Capitulum secundum summe prime de fractura ossium faciei.*

² Compare: *Paul. Aegin.*, Book VI., Sect. xci., ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 443, and *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. v., Tract 3, Cap. 3, ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 365 b.

³ Gul. de Sal., Sloane 277, fol. 34: "*Thow schalt wite þat þe boon of þe nose is oþerwhile depressyd & oþerwhile broken, & zif soþely it be depressyd, þat is to sey born down or broken withoute wounde, anoon in þe firste visitacion, be þe selnesse restoryd, whil it is newe, for zif it were hard, ouþer þer schal dwelle euermore fnattydnesse or uel schapp.*" *fnattydnesse*, translates med. Lat. *simitas αμύθης*, snubbiness.

⁴ MS. *broondis*.
⁶ Gul. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 34: "*And zif þou may not do þat wiþ þi fyngir, putte in þe hole of þe nose on þe hurt syde a softe rownd sticke maad euene & semely, & anoynted with oyle of rosis . . . and þou maist also lappe þilke sticke in a clene lynnyn clout & anoynte þe clout wiþ þe same oile, & þanne þe sticke schal be þe more tretable.*"

⁷ *Avic.* Lib. IV., Fen. v. Tr. 3, Cap. 2, *ibid.*: "*Si frangitur mandibula dextra, tunc intronitte indicem, et medium manus sinistre in os infirmi, et cet.*" Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 2. Sl. 277. fol. 34 b: "*zif soþely þe boon of þe vppere chanel or of þe neþere were maad withoute wounde, putte þi ryzt hond in þe mouþ of þe seeke.*"

▲ Sl. 6. fol. 115 b, broken.

[1 ff. 227, bk.]

¶ i. e. 00/

A broken nose, unless soon re-adjusted, remains deformed.

Restore the nose by manipulation.

Plug the nostrils with a strong tent.

[3 ff. 225]

Take care of the general treatment.

If the cheek-bone is broken,

re-adjust it by manipulation, and hold it in position by tying the teeth together,

[1 If 228, bk.]

and by applying a bandage.

The patient shall only take meat fit to be sipped.

yn þi strongist^t fyngris of þi lifthond tweyne & bringe þe boon in-
to his propre place azen, & presse wiþ þi riþthond wipoutforþ ; & if þe
cheke-boon be to-broke in þe riþtside, þanne putte yn .ij. fyngris of
þi riþthond, and bringe þe boon to his propre place azen, as it is afor- 4
seid. & whanne þe boon is brouzt^t as it schulde be, þat þou mizt^t
knowe if his teef sittip euene as þei schulde do, & þan binde hise
teef wiþ a strong^t þreed wexid¹ & bounden bitwixe his teef, & leie
þerþvpon oon of þe consolidatiuis & binde him in þe same maner, þat^t 8
þe boond be maad fast^t bihindeforþ in his necke. & þan it schal be
turned azen to his forheed, & þou schalt^t binde him wiþ þi boond
manyfoold, þat^t þe boon þat^t is to-broke mowe be holde in his propre
place / And þe patient schal ete no metis but þingis þat^t he may 12
soupe / For if he chewide, it wolde make þe boon falle out of his
place azen, & in .xx. daies þis boon mai be restorid azen //

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest //

¶ ij. c. c.
The upper jaw-bone is immovable, for three reasons.

[3 If 229]

The lower jaw-bone consists of 2 bones; joins with the upper jaw-bone by ligaments. Nerves convey the motor phenomena from the brain and spine.

THe cheke-boon aboue meueþ not, & þat^t is for .iij. causis : oon 16
is þat^t þe cheke-boon bineþe is more lizt^t & more able þerfore,
þe .ij. cause is þis : þe cheke-boon is niz noble lymes, & if þe cheke-
boon aboue meuede, þe noble lymes miþten be enpeirid þerbi. þe .iij.
cause is þis : if þe cheke-boon aboue meuede, þere nolde be noon 20
strong^t coniuccion^t bitwene hem / þerfore þe cheke-boon aboue is
fast^t maad to þe boonys of þe heed, as it is aforseid in anothomiam.
¶ The cheke-boon bineþe is maad of .ij. boonys ioyned³ togidere 24
in þe chyn. & þis boon is maad fast^t with þe cheke-boon aboue wiþ 24
ligaturis þat^t ben stronge & recching^t & wiþ lacertis, & maketh þe
cheke-boon meue whanne a man wole, for summe þerof^t comeþ
adoun fro þe boonys of þe heed, & ben ioyned wiþ partijs of nerues
of þe heed, & of nuche, & closip togidere þe cheke-boon. [Summe 28
comeþ⁴] bineþe aforzens þe brest^t, and ben medlid wiþ nerues of
nuche & openeþ þe cheke-boon, & summe comeþ fro þe sidis, &

² Lanfranc divides the fourth book into two "doctrines," the one dealing with fractures, the other with dislocations. The scribe of the present translation omits this division and the first chapter of each doctrine. He also puts the chapter on dislocation of the jaw-bone, which was originally the 2nd chapter of the 2nd doctrine immediately after the chapter on fracture of the jaw-bone, still retaining the heading of the 3rd chapter of the first doctrine : "*ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest.*" The two tables of contents show the same order as the original.

⁴ *Summe comeþ*, wanting. Lat. Add. 26106, fol. 96 bk. : "alii veniunt ab inferius versus pectus." The prints differ.

- meuþ þe cheke-boon round, whanne a man couwid.¹ & þis cheke-boon bineþe mai be brougt of þe ioynet fro þe cheke-boon aboute in .ij. maners : ouþer it goiþ of þe ioynet bihindeward, & þan þe teep 4 þat ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ wiþinne þe teep of þe cheke-boon aboute. & þan he may not opene his mouþ, & it goiþ out of þe ioynet forward, & þan þe teep þat ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ forþere out þan þe teep aboute. & he mai not close his mouþ 8 togidere² / These signys ben certeyn whanne þe boon is out of his ioynet / It is greet nede for to helpe a man hastily in þis caas ; for if þe ³cheke-boon be out of ioincte longe, þere ben manie nerues & lacertis & arterijs & veines aboute þat place, & for þis cause it 12 wexiþ hard anoon. & þis place wole soone take enpostym for divers humours þat wolen falle þerto. & if þer falle an enpostym in þis place, þan, for þe brayn is so niþ, þer comeþ a frenesie þerof & ofte tyme dieþ / & þerfore if he be hastili holpen, þe boon wole 16 liþtly into þe ioinct azen. & þerfore þat ioinct haþ liþt meuyng / ffor eueri ioinct þat haþ hard meuyng, & he be out of þe ioinct, it wole be hard for to bringe yn azen / If it so be þat þe cheke-boon be out of ioinct hindeward, þan þou schalt take þe boon 20 first wiþ þi .ij. hondis, & lete a man holde his heed & drawe þe boon forþward.⁴ & if it so be þat his mouþ be closid togidere, þan þou schalt opene his mouþ wiþ þin hond or with sum oþer instrument, & þan take faste þe boon & drawe it to his place azen. & in 24 þis maner þou schalt knowe whanne it is in his propre place azen, if his teep sitten euene, & if he may opene his mouþ / ¶ If þou miþt not bringe þe boon to his propre place in þis maner, þan þou muste take a strong boond, & sette it vnder his chyn, þere þou 28 ⁵settist þi fyngris, & an oþer man mote drawe þe boond strongly & euene, & wiþ a wagge þou muste opene his mouþ. In þis maner

The dislocation of the lower jaw is either backwards

or forwards.

Help must come soon, [3 lf. 229, bk.] or the place gets indurated, and an apostema may be formed.

If the dislocation is backwards, draw the bone forwards,

if necessary by means of a strong bandage.

[3 lf. 230]

¹ Lat. : in masticando.

² Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 18. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b : "The tokenes of þe dislocation inward ben þat þe mouþ leueþ opene, & þat þe tep of þe neþere chavel goon tofore þe tep of þe vppere chawl. ¶ The tokenes of þe dislocation outward ben þat þe mouth is schut & in no manere may be openyd, & þe seeke may not chere & þe tep drawe vp toward þe palett, & þer schewiþ in þe vttere party in þe place of þe dislocacion an opene outberyng out of mesure, & þe speche is bynomen hym."

⁴ Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b : "The dislocacion knowe, wheþer it be to þe innere party or þe vttere, a wyse leche onep to putte his þumbes wiþinne þe mouþ of þe seeke, & festene hem vpon þe wange-teþ of þe neþere iowe of þe seeke, & wiþ þe oþere four fyngres he schal take þe iowe dislocate fro þe vttere, & þat tyme he schal haue a mynystre, which schal holde fast þe heuyd of þe seeke."

pou openynge his mouþ, & he drawing^t wiþ þe boond as it^t is aforseid, al at^t oony^s wiþouten drede þe boon wole come into his ioynct.¹

If the dislocation is forwards, let an assistant draw the bone backwards,

and open the mouth by a wedge.

¶ If it^t be out^t of þe ioinct^t forward, þan þou schalt^t sette a strong^t boond vpon his chin, þat^t it^t hile al þe chin, & lete a man stonde 4 bihinde him & halde þe boond in hise hondis, & he schal sette his knees vpon his schuldris, & he schal drawe þe boon to him wel & euenly. & þou schalt^t putte a wegge in his mouþ, & whanne he drawiþ þe boon þou schalt^t opene his mouþ wiþ þe wegge al at^t oon 8 tyme, & in þis maner þe boon schal falle into his ioinct^t. Whanne þe boon is ynne, þan binde it^t faste wiþ a ligature & with enplastre, & lete him haue souping^t metis, & he schal chewe no mete til þe place be al fast^t / ¶ If it^t so be þat^t þou were not^t at^t þe first^t bigyn- 12

In case of apostema use ointments

[² If. 230, bk.]

to remove the apostema and the fever,

and then reduce the dislocated bone.

nyng^t, & þe place is enpostymed, & he haue þe feure & akyng^e of his heed, þan schau^e his heed & anynte it^t wiþ oile of rosis & a litil vinegre medlid þerwiþ. & þou schalt^t ²anynte his heed with sum mollificatif, or wiþ dokis grese or wiþ hennys. & þou schalt^t 16 worche as miche as þou miȝt^t for to acesse þe enpostym, & for to cure þe feure, & for to comforte his heed, þat^t þe frenesie ne come not^t to him / Whanne þe feure & þe frenesie & þe enpostym be remeued awei, þan cure him as it^t is aforseid // 20

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest //³

¶ iij. Co. The cure is easy if no part of the broken bone is pressed in.

Apply bandages and tie the arm on the injured side to the neck.

[⁵ If. 231]

THe forke of þe þrote is clepid of *summen patena*, & of *summen cathena*.⁴ Sumtyme it^t is to-broke & nouþer part^t of þe boon ne is not^t ypressid yn, & þan þe cure þerof^t is liȝt yn^{ow}. 24 But if^t þat^t oon ende of þe boon be pressid adoun vndir þat^t oþer, þan it^t is ful hard for to bringe it^t yn aȝen. Whanne nouþer partie is pressid adoun, þan it^t is noon oþer nede for to haue no medicyn but^t stupis wet in white of eiren; & leie it^t vpon þe brekyng^e of þe 28 boon, & binde wel þe place wiþ ligaturis; & his arme of þe same side mote be hongid to his necke, & in his arme-pitt^t þou schalt^t leie a bal of lynnen cloop. & þou muste binde his arme þat^t he mowe not^t meue his arm ⁵toward þe forke of þe bre t, & in þis maner he mote 32

¹ Add. 26106, fol. 97: ita quod tu aperiendo et minister trahendo vna hora locum suum intrat, quia sic sine dubio restaurabis.

³ *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., 93, ed. Adams, vol. ii. p. 447. *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 3, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, p. 365 b.

⁴ *patena*, *cathena*, names for the *furcula*, as it seems peculiar to Lanfranc. The *furcula*, taken to be one bone, comprises the sternal bone and the clavicles. "Catena," chain, is synonymous with "clavicula;" and *patena*, med. Lat. = plate, is a proper denomination of the sternal bone.

be kept til þe boon be al hool. ¶ If it so be þat^t oon ende of þe boon be pressid adoun, þan a man mote drawe his oon arme, & anoþer man his oþere arme, & þou schalt wiþ þin hondis drawe þe boon to his propre place. þan þou muste haue a medicyne consolidatif, & wete þerinne a lynnyn cloop, & hile al þe brekyng^t of þe boon þerwiþ, & leie þervpon faldellas¹ wiþ white of an ey, & þan binde him as it is aforesaid, and his arme to his necke, & in þis maner he schal be kept til he be hool.

If one end of the bone is pressed in, replace it, and apply a medicine.

¶ Of brekyng of rigboonys /²

Rigge boonys for her schortnes & for her strongnes ne ben not to-broke, but if it be wiþ greet smytyng^t, & sumtyme þei ben brusid, & þat^t makip greet akyng^e. Also þer fallip manie perels of þe boonys of þe necke if þei ben hurt, lest^t nucha be hurt also, & þan it is perel of þe brayn as it is aforesaid / If þou seest yuel signes in þat^t caas, go awei þerfro. & if þou seest noon yuele signys, þan anointe þe place wiþ oile of rosis hoot^t & leie þervpon wolle, and þanne ³terbentine medlid wiþ a litil mastic, & þis medicyne þou schalt vse til þe place be al hool /

¶ iiii. co. If the rig-bone is broken, there is danger that the spine be hurt.

Flee in case of evil symptoms, else apply an ointment. [3 lf. 231, bk.]

¶ The noubre of a mannes ribbis is aforesaid in þe anothamie / A mannes ribbis ben to-broke sumtyme wiþ smytyng^t or wiþ fallyng^t / Also þei moun be plied inward & not to-broke. ¶ In þis maner þou schalt knowe wheþir a mannes rib be to-broke or no / Sette þi fyngris vpon þe place & grope softli & presse a litil vp & doun, & if his rib be to-broke, þou schalt heere hym sownie,⁴ & he schal haue couzinge & akinge in his side. ¶ It is ful hard for to restore a rib þat^t is to-broke, for sumtyme þat^t oon parti pliep inward, & þan it is hard for to bringe him into his propre place azen / And summen seien þat^t þe pacient schulde ete metis to swelle him þat^t engendriþ wijnd, & wole make þe rib goon into his propre place azen. & summen seien þat^t me schulde sette a ventuse, & wiþ

One knows that a rib is broken by the sound which is heard on pressure.

Some men propose that the patient should take food which produces wind,

¹ *faldella*, med. Lat., diminutive of *falda*, thread.

² Lat. de fractura spondilium et costarum.

⁴ Gul. de Sal. lib. III., Cap. 5. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "zif it happe þe rybbis to be broken in oo place or in two þat þou schalt wite by touchyng^e, for þei þat of pristynge down of þe hond vpon þe place or places. þou schalt heere a sown & with þat þe seeke schal suffre penaunce or lettyng^e of brep, & principally þe tyme of draryng^e of wynd." The sound, "crepitus," produced by pressure of the hand on the injured place, as a test whether a rib is fractured, is already mentioned in *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., 96, ed. Adams, vol. ii., p. 452.

others propose cupping.
Both are wrong.

[1f. 232]

.1.

Bleed the patient from the Basilic vein,

readjust the broken rib,

let the patient cough.

Apply a bandage.

[4f. 232, bk.]

If there is strong fever, readjust the rib by operation.

þe drawing¹ þerof¹ þe rib wole rise vp *azen* into his *propre* place /
But I suppose þis wole more make agreuauunce þan helpe þe *patient* /
ffor þe .j. wole engendre an hoot en¹postyme / The .ij. it¹ wole
drawe to þe place manie humours / If¹ þou wolt¹ take þis cure, þou 4
schalt¹ do in þis maner : / ffirst¹ þou schalt¹ lete *him* blood in þe side
aforzens in þe veyne þat¹ is clepid basilica, & þan in þe same, & þan
anoynte þin hond wiþ terentine. & loke if¹ þou miȝt¹ take vp þe rib
þat¹ is *pressid* adoun. & þin *oper* hond þou schalt¹ sette vpon þe 8
place þat¹ is not¹ *pressid* adoun. & wiþ þin hond þat¹ is anoyntid
arere vp his rib. & loke þat¹ þe .ij. endis of þe ribbis þat¹ is to-broke
come euene togidere, & þan make þe *patient* to couze, for þis þe
beste maner for to bringe *him* yn² / If¹ þou dredist¹ nouȝt greet 12
replecioun of his bodi, þou miȝt¹ opene a ventuse whanne þe rib is
ioyned. & þan þou schalt¹ binde wiþ a boond, & vndir þe boond þou
schalt¹ leie lynnet or sum *oper* neische þing¹. & þou schalt¹ binde
him in sich a maner þat¹ þe rib þat¹ is to-broke ne mowe not¹ remoue 16
ne faller adoun *azen*. & þe *patient* schal vse lizt¹ mete as pultes de
caudarasio,³ de amido, de tritico, wiþ penides, & he schal drinke
[4f. 232, bk.] swete wijn temperatli, & þou muste defende⁴ *him* fro wrappe & fro
crijnge, & fro alle þingis þat¹ wolen make a man to couze. ¶ If it¹ 20
so be þat¹ þe akynge aceese not¹, & þou ne miȝt¹ not¹ bringe his rib
as he schulde be, & if¹ he haȝ greet¹ cowȝynge & acces of þe feuere,⁵
whanne þou hast¹ lete *him* blood, þan þou muste kutte þe skyn
aforzens þe rib þat¹ is to-broke, & vnhiile þe same rib of al his 24
fleisch, & þan wiþ instrumentis & wiþ þin hond þou muste drawe
vp þe rib, & bringe *him* in his place as he schulde be. & þan þou
schalt¹ cure þe wounde as it¹ is aforseid / // His dietynge schal be
as of pluretici til þe feuere & al þe passiours ben goon awei // 28

Of brekyng of þe helpers of þe rigboon.

¶ v. c.
Fracture of the arm bone near the joint is dangerous.

A Diutorium is to-broken ful ofte ouerþwert¹ wiþ breking¹ / þe
nere þat¹ it¹ be þe ioynet¹, þe more perilous it¹ is, & þe worse
for to cure / In þis place I wole telle þee in what¹ maner þou schalt¹ 32
knowe a brekyng¹, & in what¹ maner þou schalt¹ restore it¹ *azen*, þat¹

² Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "make hym eft comze sadly, & vpon þe place þrist down or broken, þou schalt putte a gret ventuse wiþout cuttynge."

³ Sim. de Janua: "Caudarusium, Spelta, genus frumenti, quod quidam allicam dicunt, quidam Caudarusium."

⁵ acces of þe feuere, Lat. si febris accideret.

- it mowe be an ensample to þee in þe breking¹, if a mannes arme & his leggis & his hiþe-boon ben broken / In þis maner þou schalt knowe : / Lete a man holde his arme ²wiþ .ij. hondis faste bi þe schuldre, & he mot holde him in þat maner þat he mowe nott meue him-silf; & þou schalt stonde tofore him, & take his arme faste bi þe elbowe, & meue his arme hidir & þidir liztli til þou heere sownyng of þe boon, & whanne þou knowist þe place þat it is to-broke.³ & þis maner asaiyng is good whanne þe brekyng is so priuy þat no partie of þe boon goiþ in no side out / Whanne þou knowist where þe breking is, or þou bigynne ony þing for to worche þeron, make redi alle þi necessarijs þat ben gode for þe bindyng.
- 12 ¶ First þou schalt make stupis þat ben euene, & wete hem in hoot water in winter, & in coold water in somer, & þan wryng out þi stupis þerof & dizte oile of rosis & a defensif of bole, & .ij. longe boondis þat þei be .iiij. fyngris brood, & lynnen clooþ þat mowe go aboute al his arme, & a strong corde; & þe corde wole be þe better if it be playn, & not round. & þou muste dizte smale zerdis of drie tree, þat be strong & sotil. & whanne þou hast dizt alle þese þingis redi, þan sette þe boon in his place as liztli — — —⁴ with þin hond wiþouten greuance. & þan take ⁵oold soft lynnen clooþ, & wete it in oile of rosis, and wijnde it aboute his arme. & vpon þis leie a clooþ wiþ medicyns consolidatif, þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie for brekyng of boonys; & þerfore þese .ij. lynnen clopis moten be large for to hile al þe brekyng / And þou muste haue cloutis in .ij. sidis of þe place þat is to-broke, & þervpon þou muste leie faldellam in boþe sidis euene, & wet in gleire of an ey. & alle þese þingis þou schalt binde wiþ þi boond, þat schal be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris, & long þat he mowe goon aboute manifold. & sewe þe foldyng of þe boond þat he mowe not vndo / Vpon þis ligature þou schalt leie faldellam maad of stupis, & he schal oonly be wet in water & leid vpon. & hervpon

Symptoms:
[² If. 233]

The sound heard on moving the arm.

First prepare all that you require:

the dressing,

the oil, the bandages,

a strong cord, and splints.

Reduce the fracture, [⁵ If. 233, bk.] apply soft linen,

two clouts and wadding,

tie a bandage round the limb,

¹ MS. has a full-stop between *breking* and *if*. Lat.: ut sit tibi exemplum in ruptura brachii, crurium et coxarum.

³ Lat.: et cum tactu locum fracture cognoueris manifeste. Gul. de Sal., Sl. 277, fol. 37: "When þe adiutorie, or þe boon fro þe elbowe to þe schuldre is broken, it schal be knowe to þe touchyng in þis: The leche schal drave þe hurt place wiþ boþe his hondes, & putte þat oon hond vpon þe place hurt, & þat oper wiþinne. ¶ And haue he a mynystre, whiche schal bere vp togidre þe elbowe wiþ þe arm. And þanne þe leche, meuyng softlye his handis, schal heere þe sown of þe broken boon, or he schal feele þe disseueryng of þe parties of þe broken boon."

⁴ Some words are wanting. Lat.: quantumcumque potes leuius operando.

and splints secured by a cord, which shall be strained but moderately.

[3 lf. 234]

A tight bandage may cause spasm, and prove fatal.

Nota.
Keep the limb so bandaged for 10 days; then look if the bone is adjusted, and bandage it again.

[5 lf. 234, bk.]

Sometimes one or both the bones of the fore-arm are broken,

or the bones of the fingers.

pou schalt leie þi splentis¹; & wiþ a corde þat be brood, & not round, þei schulen be bounden þervpon. & pou schalt streyne middilly,² & not to faste / Herof þou muste be war, þat streynyng þat is in þis place & in opere placis ne schulen not be so harde þat⁴ þe place bicomme blak, ne þat he mowe fele his lyme / Ther ben summen þat streynen so faste a manys lyme, þat þe spirit of me³uyng, ne þe spirit of lijf mai not come þerto. & þan þei seeþ þat þe place is to-swolle, & askiþ of þe patient wher he haue miche akynge. 8 & þei supposen to do awei þe akynge wiþ þe greet binding, & in þis maner þe lyme wole rotie, & in þis maner þe patient mai falle into a feuer & þe spasme, & manye men dieþ þeron / But þou schalt worche in þis maner / Whanne þou seest þis caas, vnbinde þe lyme, 12 & as miche as þou miht do awei þe swellynge & þe akynge. Aboue þe brekyng towardis the schuldre leie a defensif of bole // If þer come noon akynge ne swellynge, þan þou schalt lete it sitte so boounde .x. daies in winter, & .vij. daies in somer / & þan vnbinde 16 it softly þat þe lyme ne meue not / & loke þat þe boon sitte wel; & þan binde it al togidere azen as þow didist first. Whanne þe boon is wel soudid, þan þou schalt take stupis & wete hem in good wijn hoot,⁴ & leie þervpon. ¶ Whanne it is soudid, if þer leue 20 ony þing of hardnes in þe same place, þan do it awei aftir þe teching þat þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie /

Sumtyme þe boonys of a manys arme ben to-broke⁵ boþe, & sumtyme þat oper. & whanne þei ben boþe broken, it is þe more 24 worse / If it so be þat þer be to-broke but oon boon, þan it is no nede for to do but astellas,⁶ for þe boon þat is hool wole saue þe ligature wel ynow; / The boonys of a mannes fyngris ben sumtyme to-broke, þan þou schalt sette euene þe boon, & binde him wiþ 28 astelles þat ben wel maad þerfore. & þou; þe fyngris ne be but a litil lyme, zitt þou muste haue good kunnyng & good witt for to dizte it wel / Dietyng in alle brekyng of boonys schal be first sotil, & aftirward more greet, as it is aforseid // 32

Of breking of þe boon of þe coxe.

vjo. eo / In case of fracture of the hip-bone or any bone of the leg,

WHanne þe boon of þe coxe is to-broke or ony boon of þe foot, þan þou schalt worche in al maner þingis as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of adiutorie & of þe fyngris / But þis þou

¹ MS. *spletis*. ² *middilly*, *mediocriter*.

⁴ Lat.: in bono vino calido.

⁶ Lat.: non est tibi necessarium astellas ponere.

muste adde more *perto*, þat^t whanne þou hast brouzt^t yn þe boon of þe leg^t, þan þou muste make an instrument, þat^t is clepid *albiu* apply a splint formed to the shape of the leg.
ouþer *coutelle*; & it schal be schape in þe maner of^t a *cro*.¹ & *þer*on his leg^t mote be sett^t, so þat^t his leg^t mowe^t ²bowe to no side / [² *lf.* 235]

Also it^t is necessarie þat^t þe *patient* ligge also stille as he mai wipouten remeuyn^t, til þe boon be fast // But^t þou muste be wel war herof^t whanne þat^t a mannes leg^t is to-broke, ouþer his hipe, Take care that the leg does not get shortened.

8 þou muste be war in þe soudyng^t, þat^t oon leg^t be not^t schorter þan þe oþer / But^t þou schalt^t mesure hem algate boþe lich long^t, & in þe same mesure kepe hem /

Of þe cure whanne a man is smiten in þe rigbon
or ribbis.

12

IT bifallþ sumtyme þat^t a man is smyten or a man fallþ, & þan tendre boonys as þe cheke-boon & ribbis, & [in] children Tender bones, especially those of children, become bent instead of breaking.
16 boonys of^t her arme & of^t her leggis, for þe tendirnes of^t þes lymes, þei wolen folde & not^t breke / In þis maner þou schalt bringe hem azen / In þis maner anynte þin hond wip
20 terbentyne, & take þat^t boon & presse it^t as it^t is forseid in þe brekyng^t of^t a boon.³ & if^t it^t be a rib, þan þou schalt^t presse him vpward, as it^t is foreseid. & if^t it^t be in þe arme ouþer þe leg^t, þan þou muste make *ligaturis þerfore* & instrument^t by bandaging the limb to a wooden splint,
of^t tree, þat^t be euene, & *perto* his arme ouþer his leg^t schal be bounden & *pressid*, for to make him euene. & or þou do þus, þou
24 schalt^t make a ⁴vomentacioun of^t *camomille*, *malue*, & *bismalue*, [⁴ *lf.* 235, bk.] *fenigreci*, *seminis lini soden in water*; & þan anynte him wip oile of^t *lilie*, or wip *gandris grese*, or *hen-grese*, & þan presse his arme as it^t is aforseid. Also þou miȝt^t vse þis medicyn, þat^t is aproued
28 ofte tyme / leie a plate of^t *yuer*⁵ in þat^t side þat^t þe boon is aplied, & or lay a plate of ivory on the limb,

¹ Lat.: in albiolo seu coutella que sit ad modum cruris formata. The translator read "crucis."

albiola, (alveolus) *um*. "ventre, panier, benne, flancs d'un navire."—Dufr.

coutella. *κοτύλη*, anything hollow, the cup of a joint, especially of the hip-joint. It.: *cotilla*. Tomm.

Paul. Ægin., Book VI, Sect. 106, ed. Adams, vol. 2, p. 470, describes the way of arranging a fractured leg by means of "a canal either of wood or earthenware." Adams l. c. gives references from Hippocrates, Celsus and Galen, for the use of these machines.

³ Lat.: Si maxilla fuerit, manum seu digitos in os pone, premens ad extra sicut diximus in fractura, manum aliam termentina uel pice illinitam suauiter ab extra preme et citius eleua.

⁵ O.Fr. *yvoyre*.

by whose
attraction
it becomes
straight,

þe vertu of þe yuer wole drawe þe boon as it schulde be, & bringe
þe boon into his propre plite /

Of þe greuousnes of þe rigboon whanne he is out
of ioyncte /

4

¶ iij. eo /
vij

The liga-
ments on the
neck are
weak,

and the bones
are easily
dislocated.

Dislocation
of the 1st
vertebra—
decollation—
[2 lf. 236]
causes death
by want of
breath.

If the 7th and
8th vertebra
are out of
joint, the
ways of food
and breath
are stopped.

The bone
must be
replaced im-
mediately
after the
accident.

Nota

Treatment:
Press down
the shoulders,
and draw up
the head.

The displac-
ement may be
inwards

[3 lf. 236, bk.]
or outwards.

DIslocacioun of þe rigboonys is a greuous sjuknes. It is aforseid
in anathomia how manie boonys ben in þe necke & in þe rigt.
& it is aforseid in what maner / The firste boon in a mannes necke
is bounden with manye feble ligaturis, & þe ligaturis þerof ben
recching¹ & feble, þat þei ne schulde lette þe meuyng of þe heed /
þe boonys þat ben in a mannes necke beþ more feble þan ony oþer
rigboonys, & þerfore þei goiþ liztly out of þe ioyncte, & it is ful
greet drede þerof / If þe hizeste boon of þe necke be oute of þe
ioynct, it is clepid decollacio, & it sleep a man anoon; for þat oþer
boon þerof pressiþ yn & stoppiþ a man²nes breeþ anoon, & in þis
maner it sleep a man anoon / And if þe ioynct þat is bitwixe þe
vij. boon & þe .viij. be out of ioyncte, þan it wole stoppe þe weie
of his mete, and it wole lette þe weie of a mannes breeþ also / And
if ony boon of þe rigboon þat is bineþe þe .viij. boon be out of
ioyncte, but if he be þe rapere holpen, he schal lese his meuyng
for euermore³ / And þerfore it is necessarie as faste þat a mannes
rigboon is out of þe ioynct, þat it be brouzt yn azen anoon, &
principali þe firste boon of þe necke, for disiunccioun of þat boon
wole sle a man anoon, as it is forseid / If þou be in þe place, take
þe patient bi þe heeris, & sette þi feet vpon his schuldris, & so þou
schalt drawe vpward wiþ þin hondis, & presse adoun wiþ þi feet, &
bringe þe boon into his ioynct azen / Whanne þe .vij. rigboon⁴ is
out of his ioynct fro þe .viij. rigboon, itt mai ful litil tyme lenger
abide. & if it so be þat þis boon be pressid swiþe ynward, it wole
sle a man hastily, & it wole ful late be curid / If it so be þat it
mai be curid, þer is noon oþer cure þeron, but presse adoun his
schuldris⁵ & drawe vp þe heed, as it is aforseid / If it so be þat
ony of þese boonys be out of þe ioynct outward, þat falliþ ful 32

¹ Lat.: hec ligatura fuit magis alius laxa.

³ Gul. de Sal., cap. 19. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b.: "And of þe spondiles of þe
brest, for lettynge brouzt in in þe lacertis & muscules kyndely & wilfully
menynge þe brest, þe lunge is lettid in his meuyng, & þer falliþ hasty wynd
& litel, & rterlyche dep. Of þe dislocacion of þe oþere spondiles, þat ben 4,
þer falleþ anowor greuance in þe reynes & þe bladde, & akþe in þoo
membris, & peyne of pyssynge or lettynge of þe weyes of þe vryne, & aposteme
in þe place, & fenere, & dep."

⁴ rig, in margin.

- seelde, þan sette þe boonys euene, & drawe his heel & presse adoun
hise schuldris / If it so be þat ony rigboon bineþe þe .viiij. boon of
þe necke be out of ioyncte, if þe boon go ynward, it nile take no
4 cure til it sle him / And if it ne be not al out of þe ioyncte, but
it pressip nucha, alle þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuyng / If
it so be þat þe boon be out of þe ioyncte & go outward, it is in-
curable, for he schal be euermore gibbosis, *id est* broken-riggid. þis
8 is þe cure þerof, if it mai be curid / Arere vp þe boon & presse it
als so miche as þou miȝt, wiþ þin hond, ouþer presse it yn with a
playn tree, & studie þou in þi witt as miche as þou miȝt for to
presse it in azen; & leie þerpyon oon of þe consolidatiuis, & binde
12 it faste / If it so be þat þere leeu ony hardnes after þe tyme þat
þe place is soudid, þan make an enplastre of mollificatiuis þerto, þat
þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie; & anoynte him wiþ oynementis,
þat þou schalt fynde ²in þe same place in þe chapter of molli-
16 ficatiuis /

An inward displacement below the 8th vertebra causes either death or loss of motion.

In case of outward displacement, the patient remains hump-backed.

Try to reduce the bone by manipulation.

If some hardness is left, apply a plaster and an ointment.

[² ff. 237]

Of þe schuldre out of his place.³

- A** Mannes schuldre mai go out of þe ioynct in .iiij. maners /
Oon maner is þis, whanne þe heed of þe boon of adiutorie,
20 þat is þe poynt of þe schuldre, falliþ adoun vndir þe arme-pitt; &
sumtyme he goiþ of þe ioynct forþward, but þat falliþ ful selden /
The .iiij.: he goiþ out of þe ioynct vpward; & bakward he ne mai
not out of þe ioynct, for þe schuldre boon holdiþ itt faste in.⁴
24 ¶ The .j. maner þou miȝt liztliche knowe bi touching & bi siȝt, &
þou schalt fele þe boon in his arme-pitt, & þan þere wole be a greet
pitt aboue. ¶ If he be out of the ioynct forþward, þan his arme
wole sitte bacward, & tofore þou schalt se a greet pitt / ¶ If he be
28 out of þe ioynct vpward, þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner: his
elbowe ne mai not be drawe along fro his body. & if þou wolt
drawe him along, þou schalt fynde an obstacle / The .j. maner if it
be a child, þan þou schalt take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þi
32 riȝthond vndir his ⁵arme-pitt, & drawe his arme wiþ þi lifthond, &
presse þe boon into his ioynct wiþ þi riȝthond; & in þis maner þou
schalt bringe in þe boon of a child wel ynow. ¶ If it be a miche

^{1x}
¶ iij. c° /

The head of the humerus is dislocated, 1. downwards into the armpit; 2. forwards; 3. upwards.

The signs are an outward depression,

and an inability to use the arm.

Treatment: 1. Reduction is effected by extension of [³ ff. 237, bk.] the arm and pressure on the shoulder.

¹ MS. *pressid*.

³ Compare *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI, Sect. 114, ed. Adams, vol. II, p. 485.

⁴ *Gul. de Sal.*, Sl. 277, fol. 43 b.: "For þe ofteste þe heed of þe adiutorie is dislocate in þe schuldre toward þe place þat is called titillicum to þe for-party, & to þe hynder party anentis þe sparde-boon, it is dislocate in no maner."

Reduction in a grown-up man is effected by means of a wooden ball.

man, lete him ligge adoun streit, & take a round bal of tree, & folde him wiþ a cloop, & leie it vnder his arme-pitt, & binde him pere faste, & take his hond & drawe it adounward, ouþer lete anoþer man drawe it adounward, & helpe þou wiþ þin hond for to 4 bringe yn þe boon, so þat þou schalt presse, & þe man drawe al in

Another way of reduction.

oon tyme / If it ne mai not be doon in þis maner, þan ordeine a long perche, & make it fast in .ij. wallis of þe hous, ouþer .ij. postis of þe hous; & in þe middil of þe perche make a pitt, & in þe same 8 pitt leie þe forseid bal, & þe hiznes of þis perche schal be hizzer þan a man is long, & þan sette vnder his feet a stool. & loke þat þe same bal sitte vnder his arme, & lete a strong man holde doun his arme and his hond, & take awei þe stool vnder his feet, & in þis 12 maner þe boon wole come into his ioynct / ¶ If it be out of þe

2. The shoulder is drawn upwards with [1 ff. 238] a towel, and the arm is drawn downwards.

ioynct forþward, þan take a strong towail, & leie him vnder his arme, & lete þe oon ende go forþ bilinde his rigge, ¹ & þat oþer ende forþ bi his brest, & lete a strong man holde þe .ij. endis of þe 16 towail, & þan binde his arme wiþ anoþer boond aboue þe elbowe; & take it anoþer strong man, & lete þese .ij. men holde & drawe al at oons; þan þou schalt with þi .ij. hondis, whanne þei drawiþ, presse þe boon into his ioynct / Whanne þe boon is in his ioynct, 20 þan þei schulen leue her drawyng softly. ¶ In þe same maner,

3. Reduction is effected in a similar way.

whanne he is oute of ioyncte vpward, he schal be bounden, & oon man schal drawe him abacward wiþ þe towal, & þat oþer man schal drawe his arme adounward, & þou schalt helpe for to presse yn þe 24 boon wiþ þin hondis. & whanne þe boon is in his ioynct, þan wete a pece of lynnen cloop in oile of rosis, & þan þervpon leie a medicyne consolidatif, & þan leie þervpon faldellas wet in gleire of eiren, & binde him faste with boondis þat his arme ne mowe not 28 out of þe ioynct azen, & so he schal be bounden .x. daies. And if

When the bone is reduced,

leave the arm bandaged through 10 daies.

þer come ony enpostym or icching, þan þou muste vnbinde him azen, & do awei þe icching ouþer þe enpostym, and binde it azen as it is forseid. ¶ If it so be þat ²þou ne were not at þe firste 32 bigynnyng, þan þou muste make þe patient a baþ of malue &

[2 ff. 238, bk.]

If you come some time after the accident, the patient must take a bath before reduction is tried.

bismalue, fenigree, lynseed. & whanne he is wel bapid in þis baþ, þan anynte him wiþ an oynement laxatif. & in þis maner he muste be bapid manie daies til þe place be wel moistid; & þan 36 bringe þe boon into his ioynct, as it is forseid. ¶ If it so be þat þou come at þe firste bigynnyng, whanne a boon is out of þe ioynct, þan þou schalt not baþe þe lyme in hoot water in no maner.

- ¶ A mannes arme wole out of þe ioynct¹ litzlich at þe elbowe,¹ & litzly it wole be brouzt into his ioynct² azen / But he mai be out of þe ioynct in .ij. maners, as forþward & hindeward, & boþe haueþ diuers cure / In þis maner þou schalt do whanne he is out of þe ioynct forþward: sette stupis in þe folding³ of his arme,² & þan binde a boond þervpon, & lete a man drawe þat boond bakward — —,³ & þan lete a strong⁴ man holde adiutorium, lest his schuldre go out of þe ioynct. & þan anynte þin hond wiþ oile of rosis, & lete þe ij. men drawe al at oon tyme, & þan presse yn þe boon into his ioynct wiþ þi .ij. hondis, & þan hange an heuy peis at his hond. & if þer leueþ ony greet þing, lete it be til anoþer tyme. & þan anynte þin hond & presse it in azen, & þan þou schalt binde him with boondis & faldellis, & oile of rosis & consolidatiuis, as it is aforseid / But of þis caas þou muste be war: but if his arme be brouzt into þe ioynct hastili, þere wole engendre in þe place an hoot enpostym, & þan aftirward it wole be ful hard to bringe it into his ioynct azen.
- ¶ Rasceta, þat is þe ioynct of þe hand / as it is forseid in anathamia, is conteyned of manie boonys & of manie recchingeligaturis,⁵ as it was necessarie for þe grete meuyng⁶ of þe hond. þis place wole litzly out of þe ioynct, & litzli it wole come yn azen. ¶ But if a mannes hond be out of þe ioyncte longe, þe place wole enpostym, & þan it wole be hard for to bringe it in azen. ¶ In þe firste bigynnyng⁷ take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þe boon into þe ioynct as it is aforseid, & binde it in al maners as it is aforseid in oþere ioinctis. ¶ Also if a mannes fyngir be out of ioyncte, it is but litz for to putte it⁸ in azen / In þe same maner þou schalt binde a mannes fyngir as it is aforseid in oþere placis / Ther ben

Nota.

Dislocation of the elbow may be forwards or backwards.

Treatment, of a dislocation forwards,

of a dislocation backwards.

[¶ If. 239]

If the arm is not soon reduced, an apostema will be formed.

Rasceta has many bones and ligaments.

The wrist-joint is frequently dislocated.

Dislocated fingers are easily reduced. [¶ If. 239, bk.]

¹ The Original says just the contrary: *difficile dislocatur, et ita difficile restauratur*. The translator further leaves out a passage similar to the following one, quoted from the Engl. translation of Gul. de Salic.: "*The dislocacioun or restorynge of þis place is ryzt dredeful, for þe makynge of it. For whi, þer ben smale boonys & harynge schapp of a rolle or polyme, to drave with wate of wellis, whiche sumtyme, ouþer wiþ difficulte, or in no manere ben restoriad.*"

² Lat.: in curvatura vbi brachium plicari solebat.

³ Add. 26.106, fol. 98: " & fac quod minister trahat stupham seu bindam ad posteriora firmiter et suaviter: et tu manum quam errexeras, plica violenter: vt oppositum tangat pluries humerum: quoniam tunc sine dubio est reducta. Si vero fuerit ad posteriora, fac quod fortis minister teneat adiutorium. et. cet."

⁵ Lat.: multis ossibus composita et ligamentis pluribus tamen laxis coniuncta.

Do not put the limb in hot water at the first beginning.

manie men þat whanne a mannis lyme is out of ioyne^t, þei wolen sette þe lyme in hoot water, & seien þat it wole þe better come into his ioinct^t azen / But þou schalt wite þis, þat hoot watir in þe firste bigynnyng^t makij þe lyme recche, & febliþ it & drawij þerto 4 manye humours / & þerfore þou ne schalt do in þis maner, but þou schalt comforte þe lyme wiþ oile of *rosis*, & sette him into his ioinct^t anoon, & defende as miche as þou mizt, þat þere come noon enpostym þerto / But if it so be, þat þou ne come not at þe firste 8 bigynnyng^t, & þe place bicom hard, þan make him a fomentacioun wiþ a decoccioun of þingis þat makij moist & resolueþ as it is aforseid /

Of the haunche out of his place.¹ - 12

¶ v. c.

The hip-joint is subject to four dislocations, arising from internal or external causes.

[² If. 240]

1. Internal causes.

When too much fluid gathers in the box of the haunch, the thigh-bone is easily dislocated.

The acetabulum is more or less concave, the concavity prevents dislocation.

2. External causes.

Symptoms of dislocation inwards,

[³ If. 240, bk.]

of dislocation forwards,

AL þe coniuncioun of þe haunche is tofore seid in þe chapitre of anathamia. And þis place mai go out of þe ioinct^t in .iiij. maners: as ynward & outward, forþward & bacward; & sumtyme it cometh of causis wiþinnesforþ, & sumtyme of causis without- 16 forþ / ²Of causis wiþinnesforþ: as humours of longe tyme haue falle þerto, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of dolour of ioinctis / Ther is in þis place a greet box, & conteneþ a greet place, þat berij al þe bodi, & it is a place þat takith miche moisture & greet superfluite 20 of humouris, & whanne þer fallij manie superfluitees to þat place, & þe pacient is not purgid þerof, & traueilij, þan humours rotij in þat place, & þe ligaturis recchij along, & in þis maner vertebraum goij out of his ioinct^t / And þis caas in diuers men haþ diuers 24 causis / ffor summen haueþ a box in her haunche swiþe holowe, & þat wole not fulliztliche out of þe ioinct^t / And summen ne haueþ not so holowe boxis, & þan if þe place be ful of yuele humours, þan þe boon wole liztliche out of þe ioincte, & it wole liztli into þe 28 ioinct^t azen, & þan it wole liztly out azen. ¶ Of causis wiþoutforþ, as of wrastyng^t or of smityng^t or of sum oper þing^t þat makij vertebraum goon out of þe ioyne^t wiþ violence. ¶ This is þe signe whanne it is out of ioyne^t ynward: whanne þou myzt fele þe 32 poyn^t of þe boon in his flank, & his feet³ & his knee turned outward, & þe pacient schal not opene his leg^t ne his hipe // If it goij out of þe ioyne^t forþward, þan his leg^t wole waxe miche schorter, & he schal not bringe his hele to grounde, but only his toos. ¶ If 36

¹ Compare *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., Sect. 118, l. c., p. 498. *Arvicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 1, Cap. 24.

it^t be out^t of^t þe ioynct^t backward, þan his hele wole wexe long^t, & his
toos schorte, & he schal bringe no þing^t of^t his foot^t to grou[n]de,
but his hele //

and back-
wards.

- 4 Ther ben manie maners of^t diuers menys for to bringe boons
into her ioynct^t azen, but^t among^t alle I holde þis maner þe beste for
þis place : take a long^t schete þat^t be not^t brood, & do bitwixe þe
patient leggis, & lete þat^t oon ende go bifore his brest^t, & þat^t oþer
8 bihinde his rig^t, & make þe .ij. endis fast^t to a post^t, & þe patient
schal ligge vpon a plain place, & þou schalt^t binde al his hiþe aboute
his knee, & þan þe leg^t softly adounward, & to alle þese boondis
make faste a corde, & lete þe moost^t fastenyng^t be in þe hiþe aboute
12 þe knee, & þan lete oon strong^t man or ij. drawe þe corde euenlich
& harde withoute ony pluching^t.¹ & þan þou schalt^t wiþ þin hondis
putte þe boon into his ioyncte. & whanne þe ²boon is ynne, þan
bidde hem lete go þe corde softli azen, & leie hise feet^t euene togidere.
16 for if^t hise feet^t wollen ligge euene togidere, it^t is a certein signe þat^t
þe boon is in his ioynct^t. & if^t hise feet^t wolen not^t sitte euene in þe
ioynct^t, it^t is a signe þat^t þe boon is not^t in his ioynct^t / whanne þe
boon is in his ioynct^t, binde faste his hiþe, & lete þe patient ligge
20 stille til he be al restorid / In alle curis of^t dislocacioun þou hast
pleiner teching^t.³

The best way
of reduction.
A towel put
under the
thigh is fixed
to the wall
(to effect
counter-ex-
tension),
whilst exten-
sion of the
leg is made.

[1f. 241]

- ¶ Dislocacioun of^t þis place þat^t cometh of^t causis wiþinneforþ, it^t
is ful hard for to bringe it^t in azen. & þou þe boon be brouzt^t in
24 azen, wiþ a litil cause it^t wole goon out^t azen. & þerfore þer is no
cure þerof, but^t awoide his bodi, & make him cauterijs as it^t is afor-
seid in þe chapitre of^t cauterijs.

There is no
radical cure
for a disloca-
tion arising
from internal
causes.

- ¶ A mannys knee is sumtyme out^t of^t ioyncte, & sumtyme þe
28 round boon þat^t is þervpon goiþ out^t of^t his place / Signys whanne
a mannes knee is out^t of^t ioyncte ben open ynowz. & if^t þe round
boon be out^t of^t his place, þou miþte listlich knowe it^t. ¶ In þis
maner þou schalt^t bringe a mannes knee into his ioynct^t azen / Lete
32 a strong^t man holde faste his hiþe, and ⁴anoþer man his leg^t. & þou
schalt^t wiþ þin hondis presse faste þe boon into his propre place. &
if^t þe place be enpostymed, first^t þou muste do awei þe enpostym, &
þan bringe þe knee into his place azen. ¶ If^t þe round boon be out^t
36 of^t his place, sette þe boon into his place, & þan binde faste wiþ
boondis, & þan binde his leg^t faste vp to his hiþe bi an hour, & þan

Sometimes
occurs a
Dislocation
of the knee-
joint, and a
Dislocation
of the Patella.
Reduction
is accom-
plished by
[1f. 241, bk.]
pressing the
boon into its
place.

In the same
way reduce a
dislocated
patella.

¹ Lat. : non ductu violenti nec tractu.

³ Add. 26.106, fol. 99 : In omnibus aliis curam consequentibus est in precedentibus bene doctus.

vnbinde his leg^t fro his hipe, & þan binde faste þe round boon þat it ne moue not fro his propre place, & in þat maner lete it sitte, for it wole bicome fast anon.

Reduction of Dislocation of the Ankle-Joint.

¶ If þe ioynct of a mannes foot be out of ioyncte or his toos, 4
þou schalt do þe cure in þe same maner as it is aforseid in þe hond & in þe fyngris.¹ ¶ Þoruþ þe help of god wiþout which is no þing fulfillid, þe .iiij. tretis is fulfillid. ¶ Now I wole bigynne þe .v. tretis þat schal be clepid þe antidotarie of this book. // 8

[² If. 242.]

IN þe fifte tretis clepid þe antidotarie of þis book, I þinke to 2
putte medicyns boþe symple & compound / þat falliþ for cirurgie & beþ necessarie þerfore / But I ne mai not sette alle, for þer is no man þat can telle alle þe noumbre of medicyns but oonli 12
god / Neþeles I wole sette medicyns in þis antidotarie þat I haue longe vsid, & I lernede hem of wise doctouris & of philosophis, & alle þei ben aproued /

No man could enumerate all the medicines, only God knows them.

Here bigynneþ þe tretise of repercussiuus // 16

¶ eo jo

Repercussives are used for hot apostemas, especially if they are in a noble limb.

REpercussiuus bifalliþ for hoot apostymes, & principal whanne 1
it bigynneþ in a noble lyme: as in þe herte, ouþir in þe 2
brayn, ouþir in þe heed, ouþir in þe lyuere, þe splen & þe 3
stomac, reynes, ballokis, & in þe bladdre // It schal alwei be pin 20
entencion for to putte awei greuous mater fro a noble lyme into 4
anoþer place. ¶ Whanne þou wolt worche wiþ repercussiuus, þou 5
muste take hede to .x. condiciouns þat ben sett in þe .iiij. tretis in þe 6
general chapitre of enpostyms / ¶ Repercussif is seid in .ij. maners: 24
as large & streit³ / large is seid: as eueri medicyne maad of coold 7
herbis for to aquenche hoot⁴ causis. Streit is seid, whanne it putt 8
awei þe mater & is not swipe coold // Of repercussiuus þere ben 9
manie degrees of cooldnes / Ther ben summe so coold, þat a man 28
mai not fele his lyme, & þan it is clepid stupefactiua⁵ / & þis þou 10
schalt vse whanne þer is þing þat greueþ more þan þe mater. 11
¶ Whanne þou ne dredist not hoot qualite oonli, but þou dredist 12
þe mater, þan þou schalt vse medicyns þat ben coold & drie, þat 32
þei mowe tempere þe complexioun of þe lyme, & wiþ þe vertu of 13
stiptica þei wolen comferte þe lyme,⁶ & þese ben propirli clepid 14
repercussiuus / Whanne þou hast entencion oonly for to make 15

Repercussives are understood in a wider or stricter sense. [⁴ If. 242, bk.]

Some are very cold, and are called Stupefactiua.

Some are less cold but dry:

Stiptica.

¹ MS. repeats this sentence. ³ large & streit. See p. 305, note 1.

⁵ Vigon transl. Traheron Interpr.: "Stupefactiue. That, that hathe strengthe to astonie, and take awaye felynge."

⁶ Lat.: et sua stipticitate uirtutem membri confortent.

- coold, þan it is no force þouȝ þi medicyn be not^t stiptica / But
whanne þou wolt^t make ony repercussiuus, it is necessarie þat^t þei
be coold & drie. ¶ Medicyns þat^t ben coold & repercussiuus, summe
4 ben simple & summe ben compound / Of simple medicyns, summe
ben of herbis, & summe ben of trees, & summe ben leetues, &
summe ben rotis, & summe ben seedis, & summe ben flouris, &
summe ben greynes¹ of minerals, & summe ben watris, & summe
8 ben oilis. And summe þerof I wole sette in þese bokis þat^t ben
²greetli in vss toward us / And þere ben medicyns coold & moist^t [² lf. 243]
þat^t þou miȝt^t vse for to atempere þe complexioun of lymes þat^t ben
distemp[er]id in hete & drienes. ¶ Malua, capillus³ veneris, psil-
12 lium, portulaca, atriplex. Mercurialis,⁴ Rapa, cucurbita, Melones,
Citriuli,⁵ Semen malue, seminis iiii^{er}. frigidorum, Semper via, lactuca
ortulana⁶ ¶ Iusquiamus, Mandragora, Papauere, argentum viuum,
f. & h. in iiii.⁷ ¶ Oilis coold & moist^t: Oleum violacium, Oleum
16 nenupharinum,⁸ Oleum de lilijs albis, Oleum mirtinum. Istis⁹
medicinis potest vti quum intendis in frigidare sine expulsiōe ut
dictum est // þese medicyns þou miȝtist^t vse whanne þou entendist^t
for to make coold wiþouten expulsiōn of þe mater as it is forseid.
20 ¶ Medicyns þat^t ben symple coold & drie, þat^t ben clepid verry
repercussiuus ben þese / Solatrum, crassula maior & minor,¹⁰ virga
pastoris / vmbilicus veneris, cicorea, Endiua, Gramen, Epatica,¹¹
Ipoquistidos, veruene, Semper via, Corigiola,¹² Sanguinaria, Edera,
24 Acetosa, Scariola, plantago maior & minor, Nenuphar. **De granis**

Repercussive
medicines are
either simple
or compound.
The simple
medicines.

Herbs.

Oilis.

Medicines
that are cold
and dry, or
Repercussives
in a
strict sense.

¹ The translator misunderstood the Lat. genera mineralium.

³ MS. *capillis*.

⁴ Add. 15,236, fol. 4 b.: "*Linnochites, mercurialis, idem. G. mercuria, A. smerewourth.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 116: "*linozostis g^e. mercurie, a^e. scandany.*"

⁵ Phillips, "*Citrull*, a sort of Cucumber or Pumpkin of a Citron-Colour."

⁶ Halle, *Table*, p. 57: "*Lactuca sativa, or Hortensis, þat is gardin letuce.*"

⁷ frigidum et humidum in quarto gradu.

⁸ *nenupharinum*, Arab. Pers. nitufar, ninūfar (Littré). *Nymphæa alba*. Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b.: "*Nennfar i. flos vagule, caballine aquatice A. waterlilye.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 124; *Barth. Sinon.*, p. 31.

⁹ MS. *istius*.

¹⁰ Add. 15,236, lf. 11: "*Crassula maior G. crassegeline vel orpine, Crassula minor .G. terce de soris .A. stoncrop.*"

¹¹ Add. 15,236. Cf. 3 b.: "*Epatica .G. coper .A. liuerwort.*" Ibid. lf. 11: "*Epatica .G. epatik vel coper .A. liuerwort.*"

¹² Add. 15,236, lf. 3 b.: "*Corigiola. Centinodia. lingua passerina. G. Corigiola.*" Halle, *Table*, p. 29: "*Corrigiola.* So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common Knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas."

[² ff. 243, bk.] **seminibus, fructibus.** Ordeum, Silligo¹; auena. ²Spica, Lollium, ffabe, Mirtili, Berberis, Sumac, Pira, Poma, Sorbe, mespila, Castanea, Glandes, Galle, Maiorana, Mora matura, vua acerba, Capreoli, vitis.³ ¶ **De floribus folijs & corticibus** / Balaustie cortices, ⁴Cortices mali granata, Cortices arborum stipticorum⁴; Rosa, Nenufar, filios spine, ffolia pirorum, pomorum, sorborum, rubij, & spine. ¶ **ffolia** / Salicis, Populi, Tremuli, Papiri, Canne.⁵ ¶ **De linis.** omnes sandali. ¶ **De mineralibus & lutis** / Saphirus, Bolus armenicus, Marmor, Alabastrum,⁶ Cathinia, Litargirum, munda⁷ ferri, Ematistes, Corallus, antimonium. ¶ **De lutis.** Terra sigillata, Argilla, lutum⁸ omne, cimolea,⁹ Camfora, Cerusa. **De gummis.** Gumma pruni,¹⁰ cerase, amigdale, Acacia, opium. **De olijs.** Oleum ¹²rosarum, & eueri oile þat' is maad of' coold þingis & drie, of' flouris, leeues, & ryndis þerof' / Also watir of' rosis, & water þat' is maad of' alle þingis þat' ben coold & drie, and distillid¹¹ / If' þou be sent' after into a cuntre, þere ben noon apotecarijs, þan if' þou canst' ¹⁶make þese medicyns þat' ben forseid & medicyns þat' schulen be seid heraftir, þan þou miȝt' fulfille þi purpos¹² & do þi cure. þou miȝt' make ¹³of' þese þingis: oynementis, epithima, cathaplasmata, emplastra, enbrocaciouns, pultes, encatismata. Of' þese names manie ²⁰men takith oon for anoper, & þerfore I wole telle þe diuersite of' alle. ¶ **vnguentum** is maad of' .iiij. 3 of' oile & 3 ß. of' wex in winter, & 3 j. in somer, & 3 j. of' þingis þat' þin oynement' schal serue þerfore.¹⁴ and oynementis schulen be algatis colid. ¶ **Epithima** ²⁴is þis, whanne þingis ben sotilli poudrid & temperid wiþ water of' roses, ouþer wiþ vinegre, ouþer iuys of' ony herbe, so þat' it' be temperid in þe þiknes of' hony & leid vpon þe place, & hild wiþ **Cataplasm.** lynnyn cloþ, ouþer wiþ leþer, þis is clepid epithimum. ¶ **Cata-** ²⁸**plasma** is, whanne herbis ben grounde & soden ouþer raw, & al þe substaunce of' þe herbe þerwiþ & medlid wiþ mele & grese, & it' ne schal not' be hard ne neische, but' in þe meene, & it' schal be leid

A physician is sometimes obliged to prepare himself his medicines.

[13 ff. 244]

vnguentum.

Epithima.

Cataplasm.

¹ *Silligo*, a kind of very white wheat.

² MS. *Spata*, *Spleta*. Lat.: Add. 26,106, fol. 109, "*spaca*"; ed. 1498, fol. 207, "*spica*." The preceding words show that *spica* is the correct reading.

³ *Capreoli vitis*, the tendrils of vine. ⁴ MS. *stipticoris*.

⁵ MS. *panne*. ⁶ med. Lat. *alabastrum*.

⁷ Lat.: *murga uel merda*. ⁸ MS. *litum*.

⁹ *cimolea*, a kind of earth, so called after Cimolus, an island in the Cretan sea, where it is found. ¹⁰ MS. *Summa pruna*.

¹¹ Lat.: *omnis aqua ex rebus siccis et frigidis distillata*.

¹² Lat.: *de quo tuum poteris propositum adimplere*.

¹⁴ et 3 .i. pulueris rerum puluerizandarum, que ponuntur in unguento.

flasch hoot' vpon þe lyme. ¶ **Emplastrum** is seide, whanne manie **Emplastrum.**
 diuers þingis, as poudris and gummis & fatnessis, wex, talow, &
 oile ben soden togidere til þei bicom hard, & maad in gobetis &
 4 kept. & þan it' schal be maad abrood vpon leþir, & leid vpon þe
 place þat' þou wolt' ¹haue it': as diaculon, apostolicon, ²oxirocroce- [f. 244, bk.]
 um, ³& opere manie. ¶ **Pultes** ⁴& cathaplasma ben al oon, but' pro- **Pultes.**
 pirli pultes ben clepid, whanne þer is mele, watir, & oile wiþouten
 8 herbis, & it' schal be clepid cataplasma, whanne herbis ben medlid **Cataplasma.**
 þerwiþ. ¶ **Embroma**[tio] is seid, whanne a mannes lyme is putt' in **Embroma.**
 hoot' watir, wiþouten ony decoccioun of' herbis þeron, & þat' hoot'
 watir schal be cast' vpon þe lyme from an hiz, & so it' schal be do
 12 longe, & þis is clepid embrocure. ⁵¶ **Encatisma** is seid in .ij. **Encatisma.**
 maners: sumtyme it' is seid for a clisterie, & sumtyme for a par-
 ticuler [baþ], ⁶anoon to þe nauele & non aboue þe nauel /

¶ **Medicyns** þat' ben compound togidere: Whanne þou entendist' ²Compound **Medicines.**
 16 for to make a lyme coold, & not' putte awei þe mater, þou schalt'
 take iuys of' herbis þat' ben coold þre partis, olei rosis oon part',
 of' vinegre half' a part', & medle hem togidere. If' þat' þou wolt'
 þat' it' worche more strongely, þan do þer'to argillam rubeam / til it'
 20 be as þicke as it' were epithima, & leie it' to þe place. & herof' þou
 must' take kepe, þou schalt' vse þingis þat' ben able for a mannes
 complexioun / In þis maner if' þou leist' coold þingis to a place, ⁶&
 ne hast' not' þi purpos' þerof', þan þou schalt' leue þe coold medicyns,
 24 & make medicyns þat' ben competent' to þe same complexioun / for
 sum medicine is for peter þat' is not' good for poul, for þe diuersite
 of' complexioun. & al þis teching' þou miȝt' fynde generalich in þe
 tretis of' enpostyms. / ffor if' peter be of' complexioun hoot' & moist,
 28 & poulis complexioun be coold & drie, oon repercussioun wole not'
 serue hem boþe in oon point'. & for þis cause þou muste diuerse þi
 medicyns; for þis is al dai preued bi experiment' as þou miȝt' se
 ofte tyme, þat' crassula maior is a good repercussif' for coold mater,

² See p. 125, note 3.

³ *oxirocroceum*. Lat. *oxiracrocium*. Matth. Sylv.: "oxirocroceum, i. emplastrum compositum ex aceto et croco."

⁴ *pultes*, Lat. plur. of *puls, tis*. This plur. form used as sing.: Add. 10,440, fol. 23: "be þer soþen a þinne pultes or gruel of barley." Compare the plur. form *pultesses*, Gasc. Steel Glas 997 (Skeat, *Et. Dict.*). For *poultice*, see Ital. *pultaceo*.

⁵ *embroche*, Traheron Vigo Interpret.: "Embroche commeth of embrocho, whyche signifyeth to raine. And it is an embrocation, when we drop downe liquour from a hyer place, vpon some parte of the bodye, and vpon the head." See p. 339, note 1.

⁶ Lat.: dicitur enim clistere, aliquando dicitur particularis balneatio.

Choose the
 medicines
 [6 leaf 245]
 according to
 the patient's
 constitution.

Some medi-
 cine is good
 for Peter and
 bad for Paul.
 Nota.

& vmbilicus veneris is coold in þe same degre, & zitt' it' is not' so good repercussif' for þe same mater /

A medicine if there is a hot discrasia.

.Ry.

.Ry.

.Ry.

[² lf. 245, bk.]

If after the use of repercussives, the place becomes livid, apply a cold resolving medicine.

An example how to use repercussives.

Cold matter must be removed with [³ lf. 246] hot and dry medicine.

This is a good medicyn repercussif' þere þat' þer is miche discracia hoot' & litil mater / Ry, sandali albi, spodij, acacie, ana .5. ij, 4 camphore .5. j., opij .5. f̄, distempere hem wiþ þe iuys of' a coold herbe, & oile of' violet, & a litil vinegre / Item anoþer. Ry, ossa sicca & combusta, cerusam,¹ amidum, ana .3. ij., temper'e hem as it' is forseid / Item anoþer þat' is comoun þat' is recordid in manie 8 placis. Ry, boli armenici .5. j., olei ros. 5. ij., aceti .5. j., þat' is þat

²defensif' þat' is aforeseid in manie placis for to kepe a lyme fro corrupcion. ¶ Also enplastris & epithima, þat' ben forseid in doloribus iuncturarum of' hoot' cause ben good. þerfore ioyne hem wiþ þese. 12

¶ Herof' þou muste be war, þat' whanne þou leist' repercussiuus to a place, þere þat' þer is miche mater, & if' þe place bicome ledi, þan þou schalt' contynue nomore wiþ pure coold þingis; but' do þerto iuys of' coriandre grene & barli mele, for þis makij coold & resolueþ. 16

¶ If' þer be no ledi colour but' þe mater is greet', & nyle not' be doon awei wiþ repercussiuus, whanne þe flux of' humours is acetid, þan biginne for to medle þerwiþ resolutiuus; zitt' þou schalt' contynue wiþ repercussiuus þere þat' þer is greet' akynge / an ensaumple 20 hereof' / If' þe akinge be in a mannes knee, þan þou schalt' first' leie medicyns vpon þe knee, & þan aftirward þou schalt' not' leie it' rizt' vpon his knee, but' a litil aboute his knee, þat' þe ende of' þe medicyn mowe touche þe firste parti of' þe akynge. 24

¶ Coold mater as it' is aforeseid, ne schal not' be putt' awei wiþ repercussiuus, but' wiþ medicyns þat' ben hoot' and ³drie in temper'e, þat' þei mowe wiþ her heete chaunge þe coold complexioun, & wiþ her dreines comforte þe vertu of' þe lyme, & defende þat' þer 28 come no more mater to þe lyme, & if' þe mater be litil, putte it' awei, & if' þou ne wolt' not' putte it' awei, defende þe place þat' þer falle nomore mater þerto⁴ / And alle þese ben hote wiþ a maner bittirnes: as absinthium, squinantum, abrotanum, polium, sticados, 32 centaurea maior & minor,⁵ aristologia longa & rotunda, mauribium,⁶

¹ MS. *ceresaris*. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cerusa. flos plumbi id. G. blonc plome A. wyt lede.*"

⁴ Lat.: "*materia ne ad membrum veniat prohibetur et etiam plerumque repellitur si sit pauca, sed etsi non omnino repellitur tamen locum ita defendit, quod tanta non potest in ipso materia congregari.*"

⁵ Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Centaurea. fol terre idem .G. centore .A. cristes laddir.*" ? In Britten and Holland's English Plant-names *Centaury* is at p. 96. *E. P. N.*, p. 37: "eorð-gealle." These names refer to *Centaurea minor*, see *Alphita*, p. 37. *Centaurea maior* = *narca vel gentiana*. *Ibid.*

⁶ *mauribium*, Corp. Gl. M. 43: "*Marubium. biovryt vel hune.*" *Wr.*

- mirta, mastix, lupini, oleum de masticis, & de absinthio / Herof þou shalt take kepe: manie men seien, & it wole liztly be leued of lewid men, & þat is yuel þing for to leie a repercussif to ony mater
- 4 for to driue it awei, but it is bettir to drawe out þe mater wiþ enplastris, & if þer comeþ out þerof niche quitture, þei seien þat a mannes bodi is wel purgid þerwiþ, & schal be longe þe holer þerfore / And if þe mater be doon awei wiþ repercussiuus & þe enpostym
- 8 be defendid, þan if þe same man be sijk aftirward, þan men wolen seie þat it was defaute in þe leche, for if þe enpostym hadde be maad maturatif¹ & þe quitture drawe out, þan þe man hadde be hool, & alle þese opiniouns ben false / And þou schalt wite þis cer-
- 12 teynli: if þou takist kepe of þe .x. consideraciouns þat ben forseid in enpostyms, & princionali whanne his body is maad clene wiþ laxatiuis þat ben competent þerfore / It is bettir to putte awei þe mater wiþ comfortyng of þe lyme, þan lete þe mater conferme / for
- 16 if þou kepist wel þe condiciouns þat ben aforseid, the mater mai be putt awei, & þe man schal not be peirid //

Many men say, one ought not to remove bad matter by a repercussive, as suppuration purges the body;

Nota

[1 lf. 246, bk.] but they are wrong,

for it is better to strengthen the limb by removing the matter, than to allow the matter to gather.

Of þe maner of resolutiuis.

- 20 **W**Hanne oon strong, or² manye feble of .x. causis lettif repercussiuus, ouþir whanne þou hast a repercussif, & þou ne miȝt not putte awei þe mater, þan þou muste leie þerto resolutiuis. & as it is aforseid of repercussiuus, in þe same maner I seie of resolutiuis: whanne a man haþ akyng eouþir greet swell-
- 24 ynge, þou schalt leie þerto no resolutiuis, or þou haue maad him a competent purgacioun. ¶ fforwhi, as it is aforseid, enpostym ouþer greet akyng comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, þan it mote⁴ nedis come of repleccioun of þe bodi. & þan if þou leist þerto resolutiuis, þat
- 28 wolde drawe to þe place more mater / for þer is no resolutif, þat ne it is hoot / & eueri þing þat is hoot, is attractif / What schal we do in þis caas? ¶ ffirst þou schalt lete him blood, ouþir make him a medicyn laxatif, ouþir boþe two, as þou seest þat it wole spede /
- 32 And þan þou schalt bigynne for to resolue wiþ medicyns resolutiuis þat been hoot & sotil⁵ // This is þe difference bitwixe resolutiuis & maturatiuis: ¶ Resolutiuis haueþ tempere hete wiþ sotilnes & open-

¶ co ijo³ If you cannot use Repercussives, use resolvent medicines.

First give a purgacioun.

[* lf. 247]

Every resolvent medicine is hot and "attractive," therefore use first blood-letting or purging.

Nota bene.

Wü. 136, 12 (XII. cent.), "harhune." Add. 15,236, lf. 5: *Marubium prasium idem. G. marole. A. horehune. vel horehound.*"

² MS. of.

³ MS. omits.

⁵ Some passages are omitted, in which Lanfranc quotes from his "Chirurgia parva."

Difference between resolving and maturing medicines.

ynge.¹ ¶ Maturatiuis haueþ *tempere* hete wip viscosite / þerfore it falliþ ofte tyme, þat whanne þou leist resolutiuis vpon miche mater & greet, it makij þe mater sotil & hoot, & þan þe kindly hete wipinne is comfortid wip þe hete wipoutforþ, & it bifalliþ ofte tyme, 4 þat medicyns resolutiuis in þis caas makij þe mater maturatif / Also if þou leist medicyn maturatif vpon litil mater & sotil it hetij þe mater, & þe natural hete wipinne is comfortid þerwip, & so

[² lf. 247, bk.]

þe heete multipliþ, & in þis maner þe heete ²mai be resolued. 8

Use the decoction, made to prepare the resolvent medicine, first as a wash.

¶ The maner of resolving: Make a decoccioun of herbis of whiche þow wolt make þi medicyn, & kepe þe watir þat þe herbis ben soden yn, & wip þe same watir þou schalt waische þe lyme, til it bicomme reed, & þan leie þer vpon þe medicyn resolutif. ¶ Herof 12 þou muste be war, þat ofte tyme a medycyn resolutif resolueþ þe sotil mater, & þat þat is greet, bicommeþ hard, & þan þe more þat þou art aboute to resolue, þe more it wole bicomme hard / þerfore þou muste be bisi in þis caas & leie þerto mollificatiuis, & þan þou 16 schalt go to resolutiuis, & in þis maner þou schalt worche it til it be al resolued. ¶ Of medicyns resolutiuis, summe ben simple: as,

Simple resolvent medicines.

camomilla, Mellilotum, paritaria, malua siluestris & alia,³ volibilis,⁴ fumus terre, caulis, anetum, vrtica, enula, borago, sambucus, kebu- 20 lus, valeriana, & alle herbis þat ben hoot in *tempere*,⁵ wip sotilnes.

¶ De seminibus / Semina caulium, aneti, vrtice, malue. Semina diuretica: cantabrum,⁶ omne,⁷ farina ordei, orobi, & fabe / Pinguede porci & anseri, anatis, galline, aquile. ¶ De gummis / ⁸Mastix, 24

[⁸ lf. 248]

olibanum, opoponac, asa fetida, mirra, serapinum, armonicum, bdellium, galbanum, & alle maner sotil gummis: lapdanum, ysopus humida, terbentina, cera, swetyng of bestis, & buttir. ¶ Medicyns resolutif & compound of þe forseid, simple þou schalt fynde in þe 28

Compound resolvent medicines.

A resolving oil.

Ry

nexte chapitre here tofore / þis is an oile resoluinge / & makij hoot & accessij akyng / Ry, florum camomille recencium, fenigreci seminis ana .ḡ ij., leie hem in xx .ḡ j. of oile of oliue in a glasen vessel, & lete it stonde to þe summe .xl. daies in somer, & þan kepe it for 32


¹ Lat. cum subtilitate aperitua.

³ The Prints read "siue alba." Add. 26,106, siue alba corrected to alia. The correct reading is either alta or altea. Add. 15,236, lf. 5: "Malua viscus. bismalua. Altea idem. G. Wymauve A. mersmauve." Alphita, p. 110: "Malva silvestris, malva viscus, altea . . . alta malva idem."

⁴ MS. volibilis. Alphita, p. 192: "Volubilis, corrigiola idem, arbores parvas et herbas ligat. gall. [corrige]ole, angl. berebinde."

⁵ Lat. temperate calida.

⁶ cantabrum, bran. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "Cantabrum .i. grossum furfur tritici vel frumenti .G. la grose brene." ⁷ Lat.: omne amilum de ordeo.

pin vss. If þou haddist nede herof & if it¹ were in winter, þan take þe flouris of camomille dried & fenigrec & oile, as it is aforseid, & sette þis glasen vessel in a caudroun ful of watir, & make fier
 4 vndir, & loke þat þe water ne boile not, & so it schal stonde al a dai in hoot water / & whanne it is coold cole it, & kepe þe oile for
 pin vss / And in þis maner þou miȝt make oile of rosis, if þou hast
 nede, & oile of absinthium, & of rue, & of oper mo þat þou hast
 8 nede of // **Anoper oile** þat is resolutif / R̄, olei antiqui .li. j., Another resolving oil.
 seminis aneti nouiter in vmbra siccati .ȝ j., putte him in a viol R̄
 fourti daies to þe sunne, ouper sette it in hoot water² as it is aforseid. (² If. 248, bk.)
 ¶ Anoper oile þat is resoluynȝt and makip hoot & accessip akyng, Oil of lilles.
 12 & is good for to achaufe a mannys reynes & a wommans maris, & it is clepid olium de lilio compositum / R̄, olij antiqui .ȝ. xx., florum
 liliorum alborum, & kutte awei þerof al þat is zelowe, cassilaginis,³ R̄
 costi, masticis, carpobalsami ana .ȝ i.,⁴ cinamomi ana .ȝ ʒ., putte alle
 16 pese in a glasen vessel, & lete hem stonde in þe schadowe al a moneþe, & þan do away þe lilie flouris of þe oile, & kepe þe oile
 for pin vss. ¶ Anoper oile þat is clepid olium mastiche, & is swiþe Nota
 resolutif, & is good for febilnes of þe stomac, & it is good for
 20 akyng of a mannes stomac / R̄, olium oliuarum mediocriter maturarum .li. ij., masticis .ȝ. vj., boile hem togidere in a double vessel, R̄
 til þe mastix & þe oile be dissolved, & kepe it for pin vss. ¶ This
 þou muste knowe, þat whanne þou wolt make þat, þat schal be
 24 repercussif & coold & comforyng for þe lyme, þan þou schalt these
 oile þat is not to ripe, as for to make olium rosis, olium mirtinum,
 & opere mo. If þou wolt make oile þat schal be resoluynȝt, ouper
 persyng, þan þou schalt these oile þat is ripe / And in þis maner Nota
 28 þou schalt⁵ knowe, wheþer þe oile be ripe or no. Oile þat is not [⁵ If. 249]
 ripe, wole be grene, & þat is ripe wole be whit, & þat þat is in þe How to distinguish ripe and unripe olive-oil.
 meene, wole be meene colour bitwixe þe two. ¶ Oynementis þat
 ben resolutif ben maad in þis maner : of iij .ȝ of⁶ oile of camo-
 32 mille ouper of sum oper oile & ȝ j. of wex in somer, & ȝ ʒ. in 
 winter, & ȝ j. of poudre of seedis of aneti, caulium, flouris of
 camomille. ¶ Ysopus humida is a good oynement resolutif, & is
 maad in þis maner : / **Take** of þe smal wolle þat is bitwixe þe ysopus humida.
 36 schepis leggis, & take þerof a good quantite, & take as miche water, R̄

¹ if it, above line.

³ Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "Cassilago, Iusquiamus idem G. geliner A. henebel. vel heneban." The Lat. has *Cassio lignea*, see *Alphita*, p. 35.

⁴ *carpobalsamum*, "balsames blood." Wr. Wü., 199, 41 (X cent.).

⁶ MS. of twice.

& lete þe wolle ligge in þe watir adai & anyzt, & þan boile hem a litil wiþ lent fier, & þan cole hem, & whanne þei ben coold, wrynge hem þoruþ a cloof, & do þe water þerof into a leden vessel, & boile it wiþ lent fier, & algate meeue it wiþ a spatire til it bicomē picke 4
 as it were an oynement. ¶ Of enplastris þe beste þat is diaculon Rasis þat resolueþ scrophulas & glandulas, & makij carbunculis maturatif & is swiþe comoun / R̄, olij antiqui de oliuis maturis vncias quinque, litargiri .ʒ j., & þou schalt poudre þe litarge in a mortar & 8
 [1 ff. 249, bk.] do þerto 1 þin oile & medle hem togidere, & þan do hem in a vessel & boile hem togidere, & meeue hem algatis wiþ a spatire, & do þerto de muscillagine seminis lini, fenigreci, ana .ʒ ij, & muscillaginem malue visci .ʒ j, & þan boile hem til þei bicomē picke, & make þerof 12 gobetis & kepe hem to þin vss, & if þou wolt worche þerwiþ, take þerof as miche as þou wolt, & plane it vpon leþer or vpon lynnen cloof, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ Diaculon Iohannis Mesue is better þan þis / & worchiþ more strongli. þat þou schalt finde in paruo 16 compendio. ¶ Also anoþer plastre þat is resolutif / R̄, maluarum siluestrum, paritarie, flouris of camomille, Melliloti ana ℥. j., boile hem in watir til þei be wel soden, & þan stampe hem, & take of þe same watir .iiij. partis, & of sum oile þat is resolutif oon 20 parti, seminis caulium, aneti partem ℥, furfuris, farine ordei, ana partem j., boile hem alle togidere & make þerof as it were pultes, & þan do þerto of þe herbis þat ben soden as miche as of al þe remenaunt, & leie it vpon þe place þat þou wolt, sumdel hoot as 24
 [2 ff. 250] it is aforseid, & seke medicins resolutiuis 2 þat ben in paruo compendio, & do it to, & þan þou miȝt haue medicyns resolutiuis ynowe /

A resolving plaster.

R̄

Iohannes Mesue

R̄

Another resolving plaster.

Of þe tretis of þe foure maturatiuis.

28

℥ ij 3
 If resolving and repercussive medicines have no effect, then bring the matter to maturation.

Maturing
 Simples:

WHanne þou hast resolued mani daies ouþer leid þerto repercussiuus, & ne is nouzt worth, saue þe mater wole bicomē maturatif, þan if his bodi be avoidid as it is aforseid, þan [begynne]⁴ for to leie þerto maturatiuis / Eueri medicyn þat is maturatif is 32 hoot in tempere wiþ a maner viscosite þat wole not suffre þe vapour to goon out, but it holdiþ him wiþinne til it be maturid; & ben þese: Malua viscus, branca vrcina, radix brionie, radix lappacii

³ MS. om.

⁴ Lat.: "Quando pluribus resoluisti diebus aut forte repercussisti, nec valet, sed materia desiderat maturari, tunc premissis evacuationibus necessariis vel possibilibus, incipe maturare."

- acuti,¹ baucie² Radix, farine frumenti, semen lini, fenigreci, ficus sicce, & alle þat^t ben forseid in þe nexte chapitre tofore, if þat^t þei beþ medlid herwiþ. ¶ This is a good maturatif^t compound of^t
- 4 manie þingis þat^t makij hoot^t mater maturatif^t. R̄, foliorum malue nigre, id est comoun malue pinguis seu ortolane, brance vrcine, radix brioni, radiceis malue visci ana. ℞ .j., seþe hem alle in watir & stampe hem, & þan do þerto malua visci, & þan take of þe same
- 8 watir a pound³ & freisch grese .ʒ ij., & sotil mele of whete .ʒ iij., [3 lf. 250, bk.] & sotil mele of lynseed & of fenigrec ana .ʒ j. & ß., medle hem togidere & boile hem perfiʒtli, & make þerof cataplasma, & þan do þerto of þe foreseid herbis & rootis wel grounde, & medle hem
- 12 togidere, & loke þat^t þei be not to picke / for it^t schal be algate þin entencioun, þat^t cataplasma, þat^t schal be resolutif^t or maturatif^t or mundificatif^t, ne schal not be hard; for if it^t be hard, it^t wole make akyng to þe lyme, & þan it^t wole anoie more þan profite. ¶ Item,
- 16 if þou dredist woodnes of mater, þan þou ne schalt do þerto no fenigrec; for it^t is swiþe hoot, & þerwiþ þe mater wole be as it^t were a feuere.⁴ & þerfore I counseile þee þat^t þou do no fenigrec þerto / If þou dredist, þat^t þe mater is swiþe hoot / if þer be wiþ þat^t
- 20 mater ony gretnes or ony coold mater, þan make of þe forseid cataplasma .ij. partis, fermenti de frumento⁵ partem j., & medle hem togidere. & Isaac seip: þat^t þis is good for mater þat^t is medlid wiþ hoot cause & coold cause togidere. ¶ Also a good maturatif^t / Take
- 24 hony & butter ana, & medle hem with mele til þei be as picke as it^t were pultes. ¶ Item embrocaciouns in resoluciouns & maturacioun, & is good for akyng of woundis of concussioun in þe heed / concussioun is as miche to seie as smiten wiþ a staf / R̄, olij ʒ ij.,
- 28 cere albe ʒ j., cimini, rute, arthemesie ana. ʒ ß., absinthi, paritarie, brance vrcine, ana ʒ ij., grinde wel þe herbis & þe grese togidere in a mortar, & þan do þerto poudre of comyn, & oile, & medle hem wel togidere. ¶ Also pultes þat^t wole make an epostym
- 32 maturatif^t: R̄, foliorum malue, bismalue, paritorie, volubilis maioris, iusquiami ana ʒ ij., seþe hem in a litil watir, & þan presse hem & stampe hem wel, & þan medle hem wiþ ʒ iij of þe same watir þat^t þei weren soden ynne, & medle þerwiþ ʒ j. of grese, þat^t it^t be cold,
- 36 & þarli mele þat^t suffisiþ / In þis maner þou schalt make a coold

A compound
maturating
medicine.

R̄

Nota.
Caution
against
Fennil, if
there is any
danger, that
the matter
may get
inflamed.

Isaac.

R̄

[6 lf. 251]

R̄

R̄

¹ MS. *lappa acuta*.

² *baucia*. *Alphita*, p. 21: "pastinaca, angl. widleskirwit."

⁴ Lat.: et cito per illum inflammat materia.

⁵ MS. *fermento*.

- R̄ mater maturatif / R̄, cepe unum¹ album, item de capitibus allij, & sette hem vndir askis, & distempere hem wiþ þe .iij. part of buttir, & do þerto mele of fenigrek, & of lynseed, & make þerof an enplastre. & do þerto .ij. zelkis of eiren soden hard, & 3̄ j. of malui visci preparati, & 3̄ ij. of fermenti. ¶ Also a maturatif of
- R̄ greet mater & coold & hard. R̄, bdellij, serapini ana 3̄ j. & fs, & [2 lf. 251, bk.] dissolue hem in vinegre / ² & stampe hem wel, & do þerto 3̄ j. of terbentyne, & dissolue hem to þe fier / But loke þat it ne boile S not, & do þerto oile of lillie 3̄ ij., & make it picke wiþ sutil mele of lupinis, & of fenigrec / Item 3̄ f. of olibani, & fenigrec maad to poudre sotili poudrid, & medle hem wiþ .li. f of hony; þis wole be a good maturatif for coold causis. ¶ Also vnguentum tetrafarm- 12 acum,³ & it is clepid of Auicenne basilicon,⁴ & þus manie men preisiþ þis medicyn. Galen, Auicen, Serapion, Iohannes Mesue, & Haly þe abbot; & it makij enpostyms maturatif, & it is good for woundis, & for vlcera þat ben bicome hard / R̄, cere, resine, picis, 16 cepi vaccini,⁵ ana, & olij quod suffisiþ / Summen in stide of cepum, þei putten buttir, & summen in winter þei doon þerto oon parti of bdellium, & summen taken oonli ceram, picem, & rasinam ana, & olium; & þis is basilicon minus. ¶ Also a good maturatif for 20 antracem / & is good for to make a wickid enpostym maturatif, as I haue aforseid in his place / R̄, ficus siccas bene pingues, numero .vj., vue passe⁶ de corinthio 3̄ j., duas spicas allij mundatas, piperis grana .xij., salis nitri 3̄ .ij., stampe alle þese & do þerto oold oile 24 3̄ ij., aceti 7̄ 3̄ j., fermenti acerimi as miche as is þe half of alle togidere. ¶ Also a maturatif for antracem / but if he be swiþe hard & malicious, an enplastre maad of hony is good þerfore & of oile of violet. ¶ Also for to make antracem & carbunculum 28 maturatif / R̄, fermenti acris, lactis mulieris, mellis, vitellorum ouorum ana, medle hem togidere. If þou wolt worche more strongeli, do þerto galbanum dissolued as myche as þe haluendel of oon. & if þou wolt make it more strongi, for to make it maturatif, 32 & for to make it breke, þan do þerto culueris dounge & of hennis ana, as miche as wole be .iiij. part of oon, as it is aforseid / baurac,

¹ MS. *vinum*. Add. 26,106, fol. 103 b.: "cepe unum album."

³ MS. *ctrafarozatum*.

⁴ Phillips: "*Basilicon*, a Royal Ointment or Plaister, otherwise called Tetrapharmacon, because it is made up of four Ingredients, viz., Pitch, Rosin, Wax, and Oil."

⁵ Lat.: *sepi vaccini*.

⁶ *vue passe*, dried grapes, *i. e.* raisins.

Basilicum
maius.
Auicenn.

Basilicum
minus.

A maturing
medicine for
anthrax and
malignant
apostemas.

R̄

[7 lf. 252]

vj. part^t of^t oon & ß.; þese .iij. maturatiuis suffisiþ þec / ¶ Also þis is a rule þat^t is ful profitable for þee / whanne þou wolt^t leie ony maturatif^t to a place: first^t þou schalt^t make embrocam¹ to þe lyme
 4 wip a decoecioun of^t herbis maturatiuis, soden in watir, & wip þat^t hoot^t watir þou schalt^t bape þe lyme til þe lyme bicome reed, & þan leie þeron a plastre of^t maturatiuis þat^t ben forseid oon þerof, for þou hast^t sufficiently ynowe, & loke þat^t þe enplastre be not^t to hard, ²& [² ff. 252, bk.]
 8 as hoot^t as he mai suffre it^t þou schalt^t leie it^t þerto / ¶ Thou hast^t herd sufficientli of^t maturatiuis, ynow it^t is nede to speke of^t mundificatiuis. For whanne an hard matir is maad maturatif^t, it^t is nede for to leie þerto mundificatiuis as it^t is forseid in þe worchinge of^t
 12 enpostyms /

¶ Of þe tretis of mundificatiuis /

Mundificatum is as miche to seie as clensyng^t, & doip awei
 hore. & eueri þing^t þat^t doip awei hore in woundis & super-
 16 fluite, may be seid a mundificatif^t / A mundificatif^t may be seid in
 .ij. maners / As a medicyn þat^t is taken bi þe mouþ, ouþer þat^t is
 putt^t in bineþe wip a clisterie, ouþer wip a pessarie³ for to make clene
 a mannes lymes wipinne. & of^t þis kinde ben sirupis maad of^t
 20 seedis þat^t makip clene a mannes lymes, & weies of^t þe vrine / And þer ben summe medicyns þat^t makip clene a mannes blood as cassia fistula, manna,⁴ tamarindi; & al medicyns laxatiuis mowen be clepid mundificatiuis, & herof is not^t entencioun in þis caas /
 24 ¶ Anopir. I wole speke of^t medicyns mundificatif^t in cirurgie.⁵ & þat^t is propirli seid a medicyn, þat^t doip awei greet^t superfluite ouþer greet^t greuance⁶ of^t quittance, ouþer remeueþ⁷ awei harde crustis
 in woundis, ouþir in vlceribus, & makip clene woundis & vlcera of^t
 28 þat^t superfluite / ffor as it^t is seid in anoþer place: In eueri wounde þat^t is holow, þat^t is as miche to seie as whanne it^t hap lost^t substaunce of^t fleisch þeron, þan bi skille⁸ þer schulde be engendrid þeron .ij. superfluites, þat^t oon schal be greet^t, & þat^t oþer schal be
 32 sotil. & þese wollen lette þe souding^t of^t a wounde, & þei wolen

¹ Lat.: prius locum embrocas. Matth. Sylv.: "Embroca id est infusio quam nos dicimus fomentum & embrocatio id est infusio sed quando ab alto infunditur." See p. 331, note 5.

³ Traheron, Vigo. Interpret.: "Pessarie. Pessus is woll tossed, and made rounde after the fassyon of a fynger wherewith medicines are receyued and conueyed into the matrice." ⁴ MS. manei.

⁵ Lat.: Alio modo loquimur de medicina mundificatiua in cyrurgia.

⁷ MS. remeued.

⁸ Lat. necessario.

lette þat þe fleisch mai not wexe. ¶ þan medicyn mundificatif remeueþ greet superfluite. Of drynge medicyns, we wolen speke in þe chapitre next / This maner medicyn schal go bifore regeneracioun & consolidacioun, of whiche we wollip speke herafter; 4 þouȝ aggregatiua or conglutinatiua come sumtyme for to soude wipouten þat, þat þis medicyns ne goip not tofore, as whanne woundis ben sewid & ben maad hool wipouten regeneracioun of quittance. þis medicyn makip clene, & drieþ sumwhat, as water & hony 8 whanne vlcera virulenta beþ waischen þerwip, oupir woundis in which agendriþ miche quittance; & sumtyme it is more strong, as whanne þer beþ medlid þerwip poudris corosiuus þat han litil ¹vertu of corosiuus, & helpip for to make clene, & whanne corosiuus ben 12 seid for to take away yuel fleisch þat ne mai not be taken awei with medicyns /

Therefore I wole sette medicyns bi rule, & first I wole speke of medicyns þat ben simple / ffor as me seiþ .x. siþis rehersed liketh a 16 man.² ¶ Thou schalt wite þis þat woundis þat ben freisch, þer it is no nede for to engendre quittance whanne þer is noon concussioun, neiper of nerues, ne of boon, ne prickynge, ne þer is noon akyngne þerwip / þan it is no nede for to leie þerto mundificatiuis, but oonli 20 consolidatiuis / But whanne a wou[n]de is chaungid wip þe eir or enpostymed, or greet akyngne, þan þou muste leie þerto maturatiuis; & whanne þe akyngne & þe opere accidentis ben awei, þan þou schalt bigynne for to leie þerto mundificatiuis as it is aforseid in his 24 chapitre / This is a coold mundificatif for to make clene woundis þat ben freisch in which is good quittance. Rȝ, mellis rosati colati .ȝ. iij., farine substillissime ordeī .ȝ. j., & do þerto a litil water, & seþe hem softli þat þei ne brenne not, & algate þou schalt ³meue it 28 wip a spatule, & þan make it abrood vpon a clooþ, & leie it vpon þe wounde / This makip clene & comfortip / If it so be þat a wounde be in nerues placis, þan it is good for to do þerto a litil terbentyn waischen, whanne it is doon adoun fro þe fier / for ter- 32 bentyn schal not boile, whanne itt schal be putt into enplastris, for it wole lese his worching in þe boilyng. ¶ Anopir mundificatif þat makip clene duram matrem whanne a man is hurt in þe heed, & whanne dura mater is bicome blac / Rȝ, mellis rosati 36 colati ȝ j., oliȝ ȝ fl., medle hem togidere. ¶ Anoper mundificatif

If a wound is fresh and not complicated with any contusion, apply only a consolidative medicine. In any other case apply first a maturing and then a "mundificative" medicine.

² Add. 26,106, fol. 104: "et quum medicine simplices raro ponuntur ad mundificandum, ideo ponam medicamina composita per ordinem, denumerando medicinas simplices, non curando, quoniam decies repetita placebunt."

- pat' makij woundis maturatif' pat' ben to-swolle & ben not to bren-
nyng' hoot, but' *sumwhat* toward cooldnes / R7, mellis rosati colati R7
.li. ſ., farine fenigreci .ḡ ij., farine ordeï .ḡ j. ¶ **Anoþer mundifi-**
4 **catif for vlcera pat' bep newe in enpostyms** / Take zelkis of eiren R7
rawe, & medle þerwip whete mele as miche as wole suffice; þis wole
make clene & do awei þe akyng, & make þe place coold / ¶ **Also**
8 **anoþer mundificatif' pat' wole make maturatif' þerwip, & is good**
8 **whanne a man wole** ¹ kutte an enpostym tofore his tyme. & it' is ^[2 lf. 254, bk.]
a propre medicyn for to make clene antrasem & carbunculo & alle
maner pustulis pat' ben venymous aftir þe tyme pat' þei ben opened,
& it' is good for to make clene, vlcera pat' ben oold / R7 mellis albi R7
12 boni .li. ſ., farine subtilissime tritici .ḡ iij, medle hem togidere in
a panne. & whanne þei ben wel medlid, þan do þerto iuys of
apium .ḡ vij., & þan medle hem wel togidere vpon lent' fier, & boile
hem til þei bicom as it' were pultes. & þan do hem adoun of' þe
16 fier & stire hem wel, & kepe hem for þin vss / If' it' so be pat' þou
dredist' of' a cancre or of' a festre in vlceribus pat' ben oold, & if'
þou wolt' make a mundificatif' þerfore, þan in þe stide of' apium do
absinthium, & it' wole be good. ¶ **Anoþer mundificatif' in vlceribus**
20 **pat' ben rotid, & whanne þer engendrij þervpon greet' rotung'** / R7, R7
mellis li .j., farine siliginis .ḡ iij., farine fenigreci, orobi, lupinorum,
mirre, ana ḡ j., succi absinthij li .j., medle hem alle togidere, &
poudre þingis pat' schulen be poudrid, & boile hem sotilli til þei be
24 *perfitli* boilid; & whanne þou doist' hem adoun of' þe fier, þan do
þerto of' terbentyn .ḡ iij., ² & medle hem wel togidere / Alle þese ^[2 lf. 255]
mundificatiuis schulen be maad abrood vpon a cloof of' lynn, &
leid vpon vleus for to make it' clene aftir þe tyme pat' þei bep
28 waische, as it' is aforseid in þe chapitre de vlceribus / ¶ A poudre
pat' is mundificatif' of' crustis & greet' fleisch pat' is engendrid in
oold vlceribus, & wipoute greet' violence of' fretyng' / R7, succi affo-
dillorum .ḡ vj., calcis viue .ḡ ij., auripigmenti .ḡ j., medle hem
32 togidere, & sette hem in þe sunne in þe moneþe of' august, & on
nyztis do it' out' of' þe eir, & in þis maner þou schalt' do til it' be
drie, & make herof' gobetis, & þan drie hem in þe schadowe. &
þou schalt' kepe hem in a vessel of' tree in a place pat' be not' to
36 drie, ne to moist'. & whanne þou hast' nede þerto, grinde oon þerof',
& leie it' vpon þe place. ¶ **Also a good mundificatif' for vlcera is**
vnguentum viride, pat' is maad of' oon part' of' vert' de grece, & .ij.
partis of' hony, medlid wel togidere. ¶ **Also a good oynement' for**
40 **to make clene, vlcera pat' ben hori, & festri, & polipum, & wickid**

ulcera, & is clepid vnguentum veneris, ouper vnguentum apostolorum. & it' is good for to remeue awei fleisch in vlceris / ¹R̄, cere albe, rasine albe, armoniaci ana .3. xiiij., bdellij, astrologie, olibani gummosi ana .3. vj., galbani, mirre ana .3. iiij., litargiri .3. viij., 4 opoponac, floris eris ana. 3. iij.; þe gummys schulen be maad neische in vinegre, & dissolued wip fier þat' be lent, & þan do þerto wex dissolued wip li. ij. of' oile in somer, & iiij. in winter. & whanne þei ben molten, do þerto þi poudris, & make þerof' an oynement. 8

¶ Anoper oynement' clensip wel nerues & drawip out' þe quittance, & it' is clepid mundificatiuum rasina² / R̄, rasine, mellis, terbentyn ana .li. ſ., mirre, sarcocolle, farine fenigreci, seminis lini ana 3 j., dissolue þe rosyn, hony & wex togidere, & þan do þerto þi poudris, 12 & make þerof' pultes. ¶ Also we moten vse medicyns þat' ben more strong, & ben clepid medicine cauterizantes, for to make clene vlcera þat' ben yuel in neruous place. & þe teching' herof' þou schalt' fynde in þe chapitre de medicinis facientibus opus cauterij. 16

Mundificatiuum de rasina.

Of medicyns regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis.

Restorative Medicines

[³ lf. 256]

are differently named by different authors.

Auicen.

Auicen.

IT pinkip bi þe maner of' speche þat' þe medicyns þat' ben seid in þis chapitre ben al oon, but' þer is niche difference bitwixe / ffor ³of' summen alle þei ben clepid consolidatiuis. 20 But' aggregatiue & consolidatiue ben al oon / And regeneratiue, & incarnatiue, & facientes carnem nasci, ben oon to seie; & þer is greet' difference bitwixe hem þat' ben forseid & þese / And sigillatiuis, & cicatrizatiuis, & consolidatiuis ben al oon; neþeles 24 alle þese names ben not' propirli take of' alle auctouris / But' oon herof' is taken for anoper ofte tyme / But' for to seie þe soþe, a medicyn þat' is clepid aggregatum or conglutinatum, & A. in diuers placis taketh diuersli þese names of' medicyns: & I suppose þat' it' 28 were for defaute of' men þat' translid þe science / But' for to seie þe soþe, aggregatiua or consolidatiua is a drie medicyne, & hap gummosite in him; & whanne it' is leid to þe lyme, it' wole resolute wip his drienes. It' drieþ vp superfluite of' moistnes þat' is bitwixe 32 þe lippis of' a wounde, wip a litil ligature or sewing' it' soudip togidere.⁴ & A. clepip þis incarnatiuam, & summen clepen it' consolidatiuam, & ben þese / Sanguis draconis, calx, thus masculinum

² Lat.: mundificatiuum de rasina.

⁴ Add. 26,106, fol. 105: "superfluam siccata humiditatem que inter duo vulneris labia, per medicum ligatura sola vel sutura conducta, reperitur."

- folia pirorum, pomorum, porri, lilij cortices, palme,¹ arnaglossa, Consolidative
caulis, folia cipressi, folia vitis ²albe, nux recens, folia acetose, [² lf. 256, bk.]
pulis molendini, ordeum vstum, flos sorbe, lac acetosum, & oþere Simples.
- 4 manie þat ben vnkowen for us / Sumtyme men maden grete Compound
woundis & leiden þervpon manie herbis, & weren hool in þe same Consolidative.
dai; & þei camen for to take of þe same herbis, & ne miȝten noon
fynde þat wolde do so more / **A good medicyn for þis entencioun :**
- 8 Rȝ, frankencense partem vnam, sanguis draconis partes duas, calcis Rȝ
viue partes tres, & make herof poudre; & leie ynowȝ vpon þe .ij.
lippis of þe wounde þat is sewid togidere, as it is aforseid in þe
chapitre of woundis. ¶ Anoper poudre þat is good for þis enten-
- 12 cioun; but in placis þat is myche fleisch aweie, it is nede for to
leie þerto þingis to regendre fleisch, þat we wollip speke þerof soone
heraftir. Rȝ, olibani lucidi, aloes, sanguis draconis ana, make þerof Rȝ
poudre. ¶ Anoper comoun for to streyne blood, & for to soude
- 16 woundis: Rȝ, sarcocolle partes duas, sanguis draconis, balaustie ana Rȝ
partem vnum,³ olibani lucidi partem β, & make herof poudre.
- ¶ Medicyns forto regendre fleisch haueþ propriete forto conglie
blood, þat comeþ to þe place wiþ tempere drienes, & makip þerof
20 fleisch, & makip elene superfluete þat wexip þeron. & þis is in
diuers maner / ffor whi, if a lyme be woundid in þat maner þat it
be nede for to regendre fleisch þeron, & þe place is drie, & þer is
miche quittance in þe wounde, þan it is nede þat þou haue swipe
24 drijng⁴ medicyns. ¶ If þat he haue litil quittance & his bodi be
moist, — — alle þese techingis þou hast had tofore.⁵ ¶ Medicyns
þat ben liȝt þat þou schalt vse þere, þat þer is litil quittance yn
moist bodies: Rȝ, thus minutum, mastix, farina ordei, fenigreci. Rȝ
- 28 And þese beþ somewhat more drier: aristologie, yeos, & orobum,
aloes, mirra, pix greca, farina fabarum; & more strong þat þou
schalt vse in bodies: astrologia, yeos, farina lupinorum, dragantum
adustum, vitriolum adustum; for if it be brent it wole be þe lasse
32 bityng, & his drienes ne schal not be alaskid. ¶ For .vij. causis
diuers þingis ben brent: Summe ben brent, for sum vertu in hem
schulde wexe / And summe þat þe malice þerof schulde goon awei :
as mirabolani, þat haueþ vertu of laxatif, & virtutem stipticam, for
36 whanne it is brent his vertu laxatif is maad lasse; & his vertu þat
is clepid stiptica, is neuer þe lasse, but it is þe more. In þe same

Medicines
which pro-
mote the
regeneration
of flesh.
[* lf. 257]

Simple
incarnative
medicines,
mild medi-
cines,

strong medi-
cines.

Nota

Substances
are burnt for
medical use
for several
reasons.

.1.

¹ MS. *pullme*.

³ *sic*.

⁵ Lat. : si vero pauca fuerit sanies, & membrum & corpus fuerint humida, medicina tunc indigens minus sicca, sicut superius habuisti.

- [¶ If. 257, bk.] maner ¹ vitriolum lesiþ his scharpnes, & his drienes is not lost /
- .2. The .ij. is þis, þat his greet substauce mowe be maad sutil, as
- .3. caneri *id est* crabbis þat ben brent / The .iiij. cause is þis, þat it mowe
- .4. gadere scharpnes, as stoonys, oistris, & schellis of eiren, þat ben 4
brent þat me mai make lyme of hem / The .iiij. is, þat it mowe be
aparailid for to be grounden, as seta sericum² / & among alle
medicyns þat ben for þe herte þat mowe be grunde, ben þe beste
as gold & siluir³ / In þis maner þou schalt diþte hem for to grinde / 8
Seþe hem in sulfur in leed, þat þei mowe þe bettir be grunde /
- .5. The .v. cause is þis, þat þe wickidnes þerof mowe be take awei :
as of scorpiouns þat ben brent, þat we mowe vse hem in medicyns,
þat ben for þe stoon. The .vi. cause is þis, þat his vertu mowe be 12
maad þe more, as squillis whanne þei ben brent, her vertu wole be
þe more / The .vij. cause is þis, þat his vertu mowe be take fro
him : as psillium, whanne it is brent / his vertu wole be þe lasse //
- [¶ If. 255] In what maner þou schalt go fro medicyn to medicyn, þou hast it 16
pleynerli ynow in þe first tretis, ⁴boþe simple medicyns & also
compound / þe whiche þou miþt vse as þou seest best to done / If
þou wolt regendre fleisch in a deep put þat vlcus is, take poudre
of thuris, whanne vlcus is⁵ maad clene, & fille ful þe hole þerof, for 20
it wole engendre fleisch wel. ¶ In þes vertues, & it is moost
competent to consolidatif medicyns.⁶ & his gummosite þat is clepid
thus masculinum ouþer olibanum, & þat is best for medicyns þat is
conglutinatif, þat ben forseid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitre. & 24
þe poudre of him, whanne it is maad smal & falliþ adoun of a
sarce, is clepid minutum thuris, & þat is best to regendre fleisch.
- Bi þis maner distinccioun þou schalt gadere þe difference of þre
medicyns þat ben in þis chapitre, & of summen þei ben clepid alle 28
[consolidatiues]. ¶ The .j. þerof þat is seid conglutinatif, þat
makip þe lippis of a wounde soude togidere / The .ij. it driep &
makip clene, & helpiþ blood for to turne into fleisch / The .iiij. it
driep wiþ vertu þat is clepid stiptica, þat makip hard fleisch to 32
arise in þe stide of skyn. ¶ This is a good medicyn for to regendre
[¶ If. 258, bk.] fleisch, þat is clepid litargirum nutritum, þat is norischid ⁷as it is

The best
incarnative
medicine
is thus.

One uses its
bark,
its gum;

it is further
used as a
powder,
Minutum
thuris

Three kinds
of consoli-
dating medi-
cines.

1. Congluti-
natives.

2. Incarnatives,


3. remedies pro-
ducing cicat-
rization.

² Lat.: sicut seta aut sericum.

³ Add. 26,106, fol. 105, bk.: quod inter medicinas cordiales fit, quod assa-
tur ut teri possit, et aurum & argentum, que decoquantur cum sulphure . . .

⁵ is, above line.

⁶ Lat.; Et nota quod de thure tria sunt, sive cortex, & illud est siccus
omnibus, & convenit plus in consolidatiuis medicinis facientibus pellem &
cicatrizantibus, quas ita habebis.

- aforseid in þe chapitre de vlceribus. ¶ **Anoþer poudre þat engendriþ fleisch** / Take thuris minute, masticis, fenigreci ana, fiat puluis. þis poudre regendriþ fleisch wel & drawiþ, & nyle not
 4 suffre þat vlcus schal stynke, but it makip for to haue a good saour. ¶ **Also an oynement þat is good for to regendre fleisch** / R̄, litargiri nutriti ʒ .ij, puluis thuris, sarcocolle, galbani, colofonie,¹ ana ʒ .j, medle hem alle togidere, & make þerof an oynement. R̄ 
- 8 ¶ **Anoþer poudre**, R̄, radicum malui visci, þat summen clepen² sanaticlam,³ & sumen clepiþ it vngaria; & waische it & drie it in a furneis in sich maner þat þou ne brenne it not. & þan grinde it & make þerof poudre, & leie þerof a good quantite in vlceribus þat
 12 ben holow / for off his owne propriete it engendriþ fleisch, boþe bi him-silf & also whanne it is medlid wiþ oþere þingis / **Also** take of þe forseid poudre ʒ .j, of thus þat be smal ʒ ʒ, vernicis,⁴ aloes, sarcocolle, masticis, fenigreci ana ʒ .ij, medle hem wiþ þe
 16 þingis aforseid, & þou miȝt make þerof an oynement wiþ oile & wax; & do ʒ .j. of þe poudre in ʒ .iiij. of oile, & ʒ ʒ. of wax. R̄
- ⁵And þis þou schalt knowe, þat þere þou puttist poudris, þou schalt putte none oynementis for to regendre fleisch / But whanne
 20 poudre ne mai not come þerto to þe botme þerof, þan þou muste leie þeron oynementis, for þe moisture of þe oile makip þe poudre peerse to þe botme. ¶ **Also þis oynement is good, for it drawiþ out quittance** / R̄, olij li. ʒ, resine ʒ .j, cere ʒ .ʒ, minute thuris,
 24 fenigreci ana ʒ .ʒ, make herof an oynement & cole it. ¶ **Also anoþer oynement þat is good for þis entencioun.** R̄, consolide maioris & minoris, cinoglosse, pilocelle,⁶ plantaginis maioris & minoris, ana. ʒ .j, vermes terrestres longos, qui dicuntur lumbrici,
 28 li. ʒ; kutte alle þes smale,⁷ & leie hem in li. j & ʒ. of oile of oliue, & lete hem ligge þere .viiij. daies, & þan boile hem a litil & þan cole hem, & do þerto schepis talow maad elene id est molten & colid, picis naualis li. ʒ, picis grece ʒ .iiij, armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci,
 32 terbentine, masticis communis minuti, ana ʒ. ʒ. In þis maner

¹ colofonie, see *Alphita*, p. 42.

² clepen, above line.

³ *sanaticla*. See Wr. Wül., 554, 8: "Saniculum, i. sanicle, i. wudemerch." *Minsheu* quotes the following proverb: "Celuy qui sanicle a. de Mire affaire il n'a. Et qui a du bugle & du sanicle, fait au chirurgien la nique. He that hath Sanicle, respects not the Poticarie, and he that hath Sanicle and Cumfrie, makes a jest of the Surgeon."

⁴ Halle, *Table*, p. 134: "Out of the Iuniper tree sweateth certeine teares, in the spring tyme chiefly and therefore called *Vernix*, quasi Vernus ros."

⁶ Lat. pilosella. See Wr. Wül., p. 556, 18.

⁷ MS. *þesmale*.

R̄ pou schalt' make hem : Take armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci, & [f. 259, bk.] dissolue hem in vinegre, & aftirward dis¹solue hem in caziola.² & whanne þei ben dissolued, do þerto oile, wex & pich, & þan do þerto alle þe oþere þat' ben maad to poudre, & þan cole hem & kepe 4 hem for þin vs. ¶ If' pou leist' þis oynement' in þe botme of' a wounde, it' wole drawe out' þe quittance & aswage þe akyng, & it' wole make clene & regendre fleisch in vlcera. ¶ This þou muste knowe, þat' þou; I sette proporcioun of' poudris, & oile, & wex, 8 neþeles þou schalt' proporcioun þi þingis more or lasse as þou seest' þat' þou hast' nede þerto. ¶ If' a wounde haue miche quittance, & be in a drie place, þan þou schalt' do þerto þe more poudre, & þe lasse oile & wex / If' it' so be þat' a wounde be in a moist' place, 12 þan þou schalt' do þerto þe lasse of' þe poudre, & more of' þe oile & of' þe wex, as it' is aforseid. ¶ Medicina consolidatiua, cicatrizatiua, & sigillatiua ben al oon ; & þat' ben medicyns þat' drieþ þe moisture of' a wounde, & makip a rynde aboue vpon þe fleisch, & makip a 16 strong' keueryng' for³ to defende þe fleisch fro harm / And A. seiþ, þat' in vlcera þat' is holow, þat' þere ⁴ne schal neuere be no skyn engendrid þeron, for þe skyn in a man is engendrid of' þe spermis of' þe fadir & of' þe modir / And alle þe partijs of' a man þat' ben 20 engendrid oonli of' sperme, & þei be kutt' awei, þei schulen neuere wexe aȝen / And alle þese þingis in a man ben engendrid oonli of' sperme, as a mannes skyn, & boonys & senewis ; & þerfor & þer be ony gobet' kutt' awei of' þese, þei ne mowe neuere be regendrid 24 aȝen, as .A. seiþ, & it' is soop / But' in þis caas medicynes mowe helpe for to engendre hard fleisch aboue, & schal be in þe place of' skyn, vpon which place nyle neuer wexe here afterward⁵ / ¶ Simple medicyns þat' ben in þis caas makyng' skyn vpon a soor þat' is 28 clene / **Cortices** arboris, pini, cortices thuris, centaurea combusta, ossa combusta, abrotanum combustum, balaustie, galle, cipressi, psidie, eucurma, rubea maioris combusta, lumbrici terrestres adusti, cathinia argenti & auri, alumen sissum, folia fici, stercus canis 32 comedentis ossa siccatum,⁶ aristologia longa & rotunda combuste, es [f. 260, bk.] vstum lauatum, & ius medicina⁷ / ⁸Sumtyme we medlide medicyns

The physician has to use his own discretion as to the doses.

Remedies which produce cicatrization.

Auicen

[f. 1f. 260]

Skin which has been destroyed cannot be reproduced.

Auicen

It may be replaced by a hard substance.

Simple medicines.

² Matth. Sylv. : "Cazola est quoddam vas." See Ital. cazzuola. *Tomm. Dict.* ³ MS. *fro.*

⁵ Lat. : "medicina ista namque adiuuat, vt nascatur caro calosa dura, que est loco cutis, super quam non nascitur pilus."

⁶ MS. *sucatum.*

⁷ Lat. : "et omnis (abbr. *ois*) medicina, que fit in duabus actiuis propter temperamentum."

- conglutinas wip a fewe corrosiuus, þat schulen be seid in þe nexte chapitre here aftir / But for to medle medicyns in þis maner, þer mote be miche kunnyng for to *proporcione* hem, & summe þerof
- 4 þou muste haue bi experience, & summe of þe knowyng of þe mannes complexioun, boþe of his bodi & also of his lyme / Of þe forseid simple medicyns þou miȝt vse hem in powdre, & if þou wolt þou miȝt make oynementis of hem, as it is aforseid / But þe oile
- 8 þat þou wolt make þese oynementis wip, schal algate be stipticum, as *oleum rosaceum* & *mirtinum*. ¶ A good composicioun þat þou schalt vse in somer in woundis & in vlcibus þat ben hote, & in euery place þere þe skyn is aweie in a mannes bodi, of riding, eþir
- 12 of pustulis, or of fier, or of hoot watir, & it is clepid vnguentum **vng^m Rasis** Rasis, þat is maad in þis maner: R̄, olij ro. ʒ iiij, cere ʒ ʒ, in þese regions þat ben hoot & ¹ in somer ʒ .ij, & aftir þe regioun þou schalt do þerto dyuers quantite of wex, ceruse ʒ .j, camphore ʒ .j,
- 16 þe whitis of ij. eggis. þou schalt make it in þis maner / first þou schalt grinde .ij. almaun²dis blaunchid & stampid in a mortar, & þan do out þe almaundis þat ben to-broke of þe mortar, & make clene þe mortar; & þan leie þeron camphore, & grinde it smal; &
- 20 þan do þerto ceruse, & grinde it smal; & þan do þerto oile, & grinde hem wel togidere wip þe pestel. & whanne it is almost coold, þan do þerto .ij. whitis of eiren, & meue hem wip a sclise longe, for þe more þat þei ben stirid togidere þe bettir it wole be /
- 24 Summen doon þerto ceruse wip þe forseid quantite of oile & wex, and camphore & whitis of eiren ʒ .v, litargiri ʒ .iiij. & þis is a good consolidatif, but it makij coold. & if þou wolt do þerto litarge, do more or lasse as þou seest þat it is to done // ¶ **This is a** Two powders.
- 28 **good poudre for þis entencioun** / R̄, aloes, *balaustiarum*, *cathinie argenti*, eris vsti triti,³ & lauati partes equales; make herof sutil poudre, & herof leie vpon þe place þere þou wolt haue þe skyn. ¶ **Anoþer poudre þat is more strong** þan þis / R̄, aloes, R̄
- 32 *cucurmie*, *vermium terrestrium combustorum*, *balaustiarum*, mirre, *gallarum*. ¶ **A good oynement** / R̄, fecem argenti ʒ .xxx, merdam ferri, cymolie ana ʒ .vij ⁴& ʒ, cathinie argenti, ceruse, [⁴ lf. 261, bk.] litargiri, plumbi vsti ana ʒ .v, argille rubie ʒ .x; medle hem alle
- 36 wip oile of ro., & make an oynement, & it is clepid vnguentum de palma. ¶ **Also anoþer þat G. made, þat wole soude vlcera þat ben oold & yuel for to hele** / R̄, adipis porci antiqui sine sale id est freisch swynys grese molten, & colid þoruȝ a clooþ / olij li. j & ʒ,

¹ MS. om. ʒ.

³ MS. certis.

Compound
medicines.

An ointment
to be used in
hot countries
and in sum-
mer.

Direction
how to make
it.

[² lf. 261]

litargiri li. ſs, calamenti¹ ʒ .iiij; make it^t in þis maner: grinde
 Rʒ litargirum & calamentum in a mortar, & do þerto a litil & a litil of
 oile & grese, molten togidere / ¶ Also: Rʒ, spatulam id est quæ fit^t de
 palma viridi, & þe middil þerof^t aboue kutt^t smal to gobetis, & do it^t 4
 in þi medicyn, & wiþ þe half^t of^t þe opere medicyns medle þis
 medicyn; þis is good for to regendre & soude togidere. ¶ Anopir
 medicyn þat is good for to regendre fleisch & make clene &
 soude, & is clepid medicamen Iohannis Mesue, þat is maad in 8

A regenera-
 tive ointment
 prescribed
 by Johannes
 Mesue.

Rʒ þis maner / Rʒ, pistatiue & resine,² panni albi vetusti ʒ .j, opo-
 nacum ʒ .ij, vini, mellis, olij ro. vel mirtini ʒ .x, litargiri, aloes,
 sarcocolle, mirre, ana ʒ .ʒ, make herof^t an oynement^t; þis wole
 regendre & hele woundis þat^t ben ³wickid & yuel for to hele, & þis 12
 medicyn is as good as þat^t, þat^t is sett^t in þe chapitre de vlceribus
 virulentis; þis makij clene, & driep & regendrij fleisch, þerfore
 ioyne þat^t & þis togidere. ¶ Also an oynement þat Maister

[3 lf. 262]

Rʒ
 Ointment of
 resin.

william someris⁴ made / Rʒ, rasinam albam & liquefactam in vino 16
 acerimo, & cole þe wijn & þe rosyn togidere into coold watir, &
 anoynte þin hondis, & tempere it^t wel in þin hondis, & kepe it^t, &
 if^t it^t be in somer do þerto half^t so miche of^t whit^t wax; make þis
 abrood vpon a lynnyn clooþ, & leie it^t vpon þe wounde, & þis wole 20
 Rʒ drie wel. ¶ Item: Rʒ, olij ro. ʒ .iiij, rasine ʒ .ij, cere ʒ .j, nucis
 cipreissi, cucurmie ana ʒ .j, make herof^t a gobet^t & kepe it^t; þis
 is more worþ þan apostolicon Nicholai. ¶ The maner of^t worching^t

Direction for
 the applica-
 tion of con-
 solidative and
 regenerative
 medicines.

of þese medicyns, þat^t of^t summen ben clepid consolidatiuis, schal 24
 be do in þis maner / The firste dai þat^t a wounde is maad, & þou
 hast^t brouzt^t þe lippis of^t þe wounde togidere with sewinge ouþir wiþ
 sum oper maner, þan leie þerto of^t þe firste medicyn, þat^t is clepid
 conglutinatif, vpon þe place þat^t is sewid, & leie þerof^t ynow³; & 28
 [5 lf. 262, bk.] þan þervpon leie a lynnyn clooþ ⁵wet^t in whitis of^t eiren, & þan leie
 þerto defensiuus & opere necessarijs til þe lippis of^t þe wounde be
 soudid togidere faste. ¶ The .ij. medicyn, þat^t is clepid regenera-
 tium, þat^t schal be leid in vlceribus & in depe woundis, for to 32
 regendre fleisch. ¶ At þe laste þou schalt^t leie consolidatiuis, or þe
 fleisch waxe to hiþe; & but^t if^t þou do þus, þou muste leie corosiuis
 for to frete awei þat^t fleisch þat^t is waxe to hiþe, & þat^t is double
 traueile & also vnkunnyng^t of^t þe leche. ¶ Thou muste knowe wel 36

¹ *calamentum*, a mistake for *calcantum*. Phillips: "Calcanth a Chymi-
 cal word, being the same as Vitriol."

² Lat.: rasure vel pistature.

⁴ I cannot find a physician of this name. Perhaps it is *Gulielmo Corvi*,
 author of the *Tractica*, who was a friend of Lanfranc. *Hæser* I, p. 710.

where & whanne þou schalt vse þese medicyns, & in þis maner þou schalt folowe þe riȝt rule of medicyns, & þan þi medicyns wolij worche as þei schulde /

4 ¶ Of medicyns cauteratiuis & corrosiuis /

COROSIUIS & cauterizatiuis we vsij in cirurgie in manie causis, & of corosiuis summe ben feble, & summe ben strong^r, & summe beþ more stronger / These ben feble, hermodactilis, aristologia, brionia, gencina,¹ vitriolum adustum, & þese haueþ moost vertu in moist^r bodies. ¶ More strong^r ben þes : vitriolum not^r combustum, tapsia, pees milui,² apium rampnum,³ cortex viticelle⁵ / And þese ben more strong^r : flos eris, viride eris, es vstum, arsenicum, sulphur. ¶ Also þese ben more strong^r : calx viua maad of stoonis, & of schellis of eiren & oistris, & strong^r lye, & arsenicum sublimatum, & watir maad of þese þingis ; & of þese medicyns þou miȝt make medicyns boþe simple & compound, whiche þou miȝt vse whanne þou wolt^r take awei deed fleisch, more strong^r & lasse strong^r as þou seest^r þat it^r is nede þerto. ¶ Of mediciz þat ben compound I wole telle þee a fewe, for of simple medicyns þou miȝt compound manie. ¶ A poudre þat wiþouten ony greuance & liȝtli fretiþ awei deed fleisch / Rȝ, viride eris, hermodactulorum, aristologia rotunda, make þerof poudre & kepe it^r in a drie place, & whanne þou wolt^r do awei deed fleisch / Take lynet eijer lynnen cloþ, & wete it^r with þi spotil & leie it^r in þe poudre, & turne it^r vp & down, & leie it^r vpon þe place. ¶ Thou schalt^r attende superfluite of fleisch⁶ in .ij. maners / In oon maner superfluite of fleisch as of elene fleisch þat wexiþ tofore aboue a wounde, & þis is ⁷clepid superfluite of good fleisch / In an oper maner we clepiþ superfluite of fleisch þat is medlid wiþ quittance, & is liquide, & þis cometh in defaute of þe leche, whanne he leiþ regeneratiuis to a wounde oupir to ony þing^r til it be perfitli elene, so þat þe newe fleisch & þe quittance wexiþ forþwiþ / In þe firste cause is noon nede of oper medicyn, but a simple corosif⁸ þat fretiþ wiþouten violence awei þe fleisch þat is woxen to hiȝ aboue þe wounde. ¶ In þe .ij. cause it^r is necessarie for to haue a medicyn corosif^r & clensynge as it^r is

Simple caustics.

Mild caustica.

Strong caustics.

[3 lf. 263]

Compound caustics.

Rȝ

Innocent excrecences.

[7 lf. 263, bk.]

Malignant excrecences.

Each requires its own treatment.

¹ Lat. : gentiana.

² MS. vulpi. Pes milui "crow-foot."

³ *Alphita*, p. 11: "Apium ranarum siue apium rampnum crescit in pratis . . ." See *rampinus*. uncus.—Dufr.

⁵ Wr. Wül., 138, 28: "Viticella, wiþwinde."

⁶ fleisch in margin.

⁸ MS. corosip.

A corrosive powder of caustic lime and arsenic.

R̄

aforseid in þe chapitre off mundificatiuis. ¶ **Anopir good poudre** þat^t remeueþ awei **superfluite of fleisch & rotid fleisch & crustons**¹ / R̄, calcis viue ʒ. ij., arsenici ʒ. ij., succi affodillorum radice ʒ. vj., medle hem togidere & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem & drie hem in schadowe & kepe hem in a drie place, for in a moist place it wole rotie anoon. & whanne þou hast nede for to vse ony herof, þan make þerof poudre & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also an oynement þat is clepid vnguentum viride & is a lizt corrosif, & makij² **superfluite of rotid fleisch & is maad in þis maner.** R̄, mellis partes .ij., viride eris partem vnam, & medle hem togidere.

vng^m viride
[² If. 264]

R̄

An ointment to cleanse ulcers.

R̄

¶ **Also anoper vnguentum viride þat makij clene & regendrij good fleisch in vlceribus þat ben olde, & fretij awei wickid fleisch wijpouten violence** / R̄, celidoyne radice, alleluia,³ folia centrum⁴ galli, leustici agrestis, scabiose, ana ℞. j., grynde wel alle þese herbis togidere wij .li. j. of schepis talowe & .li. j. of oile, medle hem togidere, & lete hem ligge .x. daies & rotie, & þan do hem to seþing on þe fier til þe herbis falle to þe botme, & þan cole hem, & do þerto wex, terbentyne, ana ʒ. ij., colofonie ʒ. j., masticis, olibani, ana ʒ. ʒ., viridis eris ʒ. j. þat schal be do in in þe ende of þe hoilyng, & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof an oynement. 20

An ointment to be applied

R̄

on fistulous and cancerous sores.

¶ **If þou wolt make a stronger medicyn for to slee a festre & a cancre** / R̄, vitri albi combusti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris, galle, attramenti, vitriole viridis, ana ʒ ʒ., auripigmenti foliati ʒ. ij., make herof poudre, & distempere hem wij strong vinegre & lacte anabulle⁵ til it be as picke as it were hony, & sette it to þe sunne in somer, & lete it drie. & if it be in wintir þou miȝt drie it wij lent fier, and whanne it is drie poudre it azen, & tempere wij þe forseid licour, & þan drie it azen, & þus þou schalt do .iiij. sijis oupir 28

A corrosive powder.

R̄

.iiij. & þan make poudre þerof & kepe it in a drie place. ¶ **Anoper poudre þat drieþ a cancre & a festre, & remeueþ superfluite of fleisch** / R̄, radices brionie ʒ. v., tapcie, laureole, esule, ana ʒ. ij., ciclaminis, yreos, aristolochie, longe & rotunde, hermodactulorum, 32 affodillorum radice .ʒ. j., & herbarum celidonie, leuistic agrestis, buglosse, summitates oliuarum, & mirte ana ʒ. j., tempere þe herbis & þe rotis in vinegre bi .iiij. daies, & þan seþe hem & cole hem, & take þat licour þat comeþ þerof, & seþe it & caste þeron quik lyme 36

¹ crustons, O.Fr. *crouston*.

² *Sin. Bart.*, p. 10: "Alleluia. i. *wodesour*."

⁴ *Alphita*, p. 38: "*Centrum galli* gallitricum . . . nux muscata." Wild Sage, Cancerweed.

⁵ *Matth. Syle.*: "Anabulla est species titimalli." Compare *Alphita*, p. 9.

- poudrid sotilli li. j., & medle hem wel togidere, & at þe laste do þerto auripigmenti ʒ. iij., & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem in a drie place, & whanne þou hast nede þerto, grynde oon þerof, & leie þe poudre þerof vpon þe place þat þou wolt haue frete. ¶ **Anopir poudre of þe same kynde.** Rʒ, arsenici rubri & citrini, calcis viue, aluminis¹ de pluma, gallarum nouarum ana, grynde hem with vinegre² & medle hem & drie hem, & kepe hem
- 8 as it is aforseid / ¶ A strong^t medicyn þat is as strong^t as oni fier, & vnquenta ruptoria þat mortifesh quyk fleisch & etip it, & oon herof is riztt strong^t & is a poudre maad bi sublimacioun. Rʒ, limature ferri, vitrioli viridis, alumen iamini, antymonij ana ʒ., ij. salis armoniaci,
- 12 arsenici citrini, sulphuris viui³ extincti cum salia, & tempere hem wip vinegre, ouþir wip watir, ouþir wip strong^t lye, & þe lie wole be þe bettir if it be maad wip bene seelis, & þan drie it & putte it in alutel⁴ & sublime it / This is þe maner of sublimacioun / loke þou
- 16 haue a strong^t vessel maad of glas þat it mowe dure in þe fier, ouþir a vessel of erþe wel glasil wipinne, & loke þat þe couerle þerof & þe bodi be wel closyngt, & do þerin þi poudre, & lute it wip good lute, & sette it in a furneis & make lizt fier half adai, & þan do out thi fier, & whanne it is coold opene it, & þat, þat leueþ in þe botme of þe vessel caste it out, & þat, þat cleueþ faste to þe couerle aboue, take it & kepe it, & if þou wolt worche þerwip þou muste worche ful quentliche, for it wole⁵ brenne as strongli as fier,
- 24 & wole make impressioun in depnes þan fier. þis poudre wole corrumpe & brenne þe place þat it is leid vpon, & þe same doip realgar sublimed, & if þow wolt ouercome þe wickidnes of it, make poudre of it & distempere it wip þe iuys of lactuce & plaunteyn til it be
- 28 in pickenesse of hony, & þan drie it, & þus þou schalt do manye tymes / & in þis maner þou schalt take awei greet malice, & it wole worche neuer þe worse. ¶ Also an oynement ruptorie for to breke fleisch þat is hool & maketh blak & brenneþ it, & wole make it
- 32 falle awei, & þan þer wole leue þere vleus. Manie men vsip þis in diuers maner, for to opene an enpostym, & for to do awei superfluite of fleisch. Rʒ, **quik lyme** as miche as þou wolt, & resolue it in

Rʒ

[² ff. 265.]

Nota bene.
Escharotics,
medicines as
strong as fire.

Rʒ

A corrosive
sublimate.

Nota
The process
of sublima-
tion.

[⁵ ff. 265, bk.]

A burning
ointment
made of
quick-lime.

Rʒ

¹ Halle Table, p. 9. *Alumen de pluma* = *Alumen Liquidum*.

³ a caret is placed here and this added later, but does not follow on:—
filos eris ana ʒ j ʒ
calsis viue G ʒ
argenti vii. ʒ j. [in margin.]

⁴ Castelli: "*Aludel* vel *Alutel* vocatur *Vitrum sublimatorium*." Arab. al-outhal (*Devic. Dict.*). A vessel used in sublimation.

strong^t lie þat^t is aforseid, and make þerof^t þe maner of an oyne-
ment, & whanne it^t is maad, al freisch leie it^t þerto, for þe more
freisch þat^t it^t is þe bettir it^t is / In þis maner þou schalt^t make þe
lie / ffile a vessel ful of askis of bene scelis, & þe .iij. part^t of quik 4
[¹ lf. 266] lyme, & poudre hem alle togidere & leie hem in ¹a vessel & presse
hem þat^t þei bicome fast^t togidere, & make a put^t in þe middil aboue,
in þe same put^t caste hoot^t watir seþing^t, & þis vessel schal be
holowe þat^t þe lie mowe passe þoru³. & vndir þis vessel sette anopir 8
vessel for to resseyue þe lie. ¶ Also anopir good ruptorie / R⁷,
calcis viue, partem vnam, arsenici, partem ſ., poudre hem & medle
hem wiþ sope & hony, & summen doiþ þerto li .ſ. of^t tartre / Also
mel anacardi is swiþe strong^t for to make vlcera. & if^t it be do to 12
oþere medicyns it^t worchip þe more strongli / In þis maner þou
schalt^t do / whanne þou ne miþt^t fynde mel anacardi, þan grinde
anacardos greet^t & leie hem in vinegre adai & anyzt^t, & þan boile
hem wel, & þan presse out^t þe licour þerof^t, & þat^t, þat^t goiþ out 16
þerof^t is a medicyn þat^t wole make vlcera. / Oupir take anacardos &
seþe hem in hoot^t tenacis þat^t smiþis vsen, & streyne hem, & þer
wole distille þerof^t hony. ¶ Also take þe wombis of cantarides &
grinde hem wiþ leueyne & leie hem in what^t place þou wolt^t & it^t 20
wole make vlcera / But^t herof^t þou muste be war þat^t in what^t place
þou settist^t cantarides þer ²wole come greet^t brennyng^t of^t vrine, &
sumtyme it^t makip so greet^t brennyng^t þat^t a mannes vrine is stoppid
þerwiþ. & þe cure þerof^t is þis / Seþe malue, paritorie, violet^t, watir- 24
cressen in watir, & lete þe patient sitte þeron anoon to þe nauuele, &
herwiþ þe akyng^t schal be taken awei, & also he schal make vrine
liztlich / & herof^t þou schalt^t take hede, þat^t in what^t place of
a mannes bodi þou makist^t a cauterie, anoon þeraftir þou schalt^t leie 28
a mitigatif^t þat^t schal make þe cruste falle awei þat^t was brent^t, & þou
ne schalt^t in no maner take awei þe cruste wiþ violence, but^t þou
schalt^t leie þerto a mitigatif^t, & lete þe cruste falle awei liztli.
¶ Medicyns þat^t wolen make þe cruste falle awei, & do awei þe 32
aking^t, ben þese: zelkis of^t eiren wiþ oile of^t rosis, þat^t is þe beste
of^t alle medicyns / Also, take þe leeuues & grinde wiþ grese, ouþer
wiþ buttir & leie þervpon / Also grese ouþir buttir is good þer- 36
fore. ¶ Also pultes maad of^t mele, oile & watir, ben good þer-
fore & accessip wel þe akyng^t & makip þe crustis falle. ¶ Also
wiþ þe cauterie of^t an hoot^t iren þou miþt^t ³do awei deed fleisch,
ouþir wiþ oon of^t þe medicyns þat^t ben forseid. ¶ Also if^t þou wolt^t

R⁷
A caustic
ointment
made of
quick-lime
and arsenic.

Cantarides.

[² lf. 266, bk.]

The applica-
tion of can-
tharides
excites
strangury.
dubium

Treatment.

[³ lf. 267]

³ MS. *do awei*, twice, the second one marked for erasure.

vse medicyns for to make cauterijs, þou muste take kepe of þis
 caas / In feble men & in a lital cause þou muste vse feble medicyns,
 & þou muste be war þat þou brenne no nerue ne no greet veyne ne
 4 noon arterie wip þi cauterie, ne wip þi medicyns þat makij cauterijs.
 ¶ Also in a strong man & in a boistous man, þou miȝt worche at
 oonys þat þou muste worche at manye tymes in a feble man / ffor
 in every medicyns þat a leche doij he schal take kepe of the
 8 strenkþe & of þe vertu of þe pacient //

Nerves and
 great blood-
 vessels
 must not be
 cauterized.

Use caustics
 according to
 the patient's
 strength.

Of mollificatif medicyns or softenyng.

WE vsij þese medicyns þat ben .iiij. in eueri cause.¹ Oon cause
 is þis, whanne þe mater þat þou wolt resolue is swiþe hard,
 12 for þan oonli wip resolutiuis as it is aforseid þe sotil mater wole
 resolue, & þat opir part wole bicome hard, & þan þou muste make
 mollificatiuis. ¶ The .ij. cause is þis, whanne ony lyme is to-broke
 oupir out of þe ioyncte, þouz it be brozt² yn aȝen, þe place wole be
 16 hard, & þe patient mai not meue þerwip, þan þou muste do³ þerto
 mollificatiuis til þe lyme be bettere as it is aforseid. ¶ The .iiij.
 cause is þis, whanne ony lyme þat haþ ben out of ioynct longe
 tyme, þan þou muste make þingis forto make þe place moist aȝen,
 20 þat þe boon mowe come into his ioynt aȝen. ¶ The .iiij. cause is,
 whanne a lyme is corrupt & is yuel ioyned, & makij al þe lyme foul,
 as whanne a boon is to-broken & is not ioyned, þan þou muste breke
 þe boon aȝen, & bringe it into his propre place as it schulde be /
 24 In alle þese causis we mote vse medicyns þat ben mollificatiuis, as
 ben þese : camomille, mellilotum, fenigreci, semen lini, & almaner
 fatnes, & marowe, & manie gummis, & every medicyn þat is hoot
 & moist wole make a lyme mollificatif / **A good composicioun for**
 28 **þe firste cause** / Take oold oile .iiij. partis, wex partem .j., & make
 þerof an oynement, and anoynte þerwip a lyme þat þou wolt resolue
 þe mater þat is þeron / ffor it wole make þe mater mollificatif, &
 make þe poris⁴ open to resolucioun // **Anoþer þat is more strong^r** /
 32 **R̄**, radiceis malua visci ̄ .j., & kutte it to smale gobetis, & putte
 hem in a mortar wip ̄ .iiij. of oile of lillie. & þou schalt sett þis
 vessel of glas in hoot boilyng watir, & þere it schal stonde til þe
 iuys of þe herbe be consumed. Wip þis oile þou schalt anoynte þe
 36 place, & leie þervpon lanam succidam *id est* wolle vnwaischen. & þis

.1.
 Emollients
 are used
 if other medi-
 cines prove
 insufficient,
 to relieve ten-
 sion ensuing

.2.
 the fracture
 [2 lf. 267, bk.]

.3.
 or dislocation
 of a limb,

.4.
 and if re-
 breaking
 becomes
 necessary.

An ointment
 of oil and
 wax.

R̄

[4 lf. 268]

A stronger
 emollient.

R̄

¹ Lat. : Mollificatiuis vtimur medicinis in quatuor casibus.

³ do, above line.

Directions for lomentation.

pou schalt' wite, þat' whanne þou wolt' make þese oynementis, first' pou shalt' make a fomentacioun wip' hoot' watir til þe place bicomē reed. & if' þe place be swithe hard, þan take a stoon þat' is clepid lapis molaris, & make him hoot' in þe fier, ouþir a greet' gobet' of' 4 ired, & do it' in strong' vinegre. & þe place of' a mannes lyme þat' is hard, holde ouer þe fume þat' comē out' of' þe vinegre, & þan anoynte him aftirward / þis is þe maner for to make a lyme mollificatif, & þer ben .iij. maners.¹ þe .j. maner is þis : pou schalt' make 8

.1. a decoccioun of' flouris of' camomille, mellilote, fenigrec, semen lini,

[² If. 268, bk.]

& rootis of' malua visci, soden in water. & þou schalt' ²make a fomentacioun to þe lyme in þis watir longe tyme, & frote þe lyme softli. & þan anoynte þe lyme wip' oon of' þese oynementis / R̄, 12 auxungie porci antique sine sale ʒ .iij, pinguedinis anseris, anatis & galline ana ʒ .j., melte hem alle togidere & cole hem, & do þerto ʒ .j. of' wex. þis wole make mollificatif, & restore moistnes. & if'

pou wolt' make it' for to be good for drienes of' a mannes brest, & 16 good for men þat' ben etik, do þerto ʒ .j. of' elene dragaganti, & þan it' wole be a good oynement' restoratif. ¶ Anopir oynement.

R̄, adipis porci antique sine sale ʒ .iiij, fecis olij de semine lini, bdellij ana ʒ .ij., storacis, calamite, galbani, oppopanacis, armoniaci, 20 ana ʒ .j. putte þe gummys in wijn for to temperē, & whanne þei ben temperid, putte hem in a morter, & stampe hem wel, melte þe remenawnt, & do hem togidere, & medle hem togidere. ¶ Also an

R̄ oynement' mollificatif & confortij / R̄, auxungie porci ʒ .iij, 24 pinguedinis anseris, anatis, galline, ana ʒ .j. olis communis antiqui ʒ .iiij. farine fenigreci, seminis lini, ana ʒ .j., bdellij, oppoponacis,

[³ If. 269]

masticis, thuris ʒ .ʒ., temperē þe gummis ³in wijn, & þan aftirward medle hem wip' grese, wex, & oile, & melte hem alle togidere & cole 28 hem. & of' þese þingis þat' schulen be grounde make poudre þerof, & medle it' perwip' & kepe it' for þin vss. & whanne þou hast' maad a stuwe as it' is aforceid ouþir a fomentacioun, þan anoynte him bi þe fier, & þis is clepid vnguentum Rasis. & I it' haue ofte preued euer-

vng^m Rasis

32 more goddis grace goinge tofore wipout' which grace is no þing' fulendid ne no sijknes do awei / But' eueri good ende & eueri good dede al it' comē of' þe miȝt' of' god / And þe help of' god I bad in þe firste bigymyng' of' þe book / ffor of' goddis grace I am þat' I am, 36 & goddis grace was neuere voide in me / And þe ende of' þis book was fulfillid þe noubre of ʒeeris from goddis beyng' .M.CC. nonagesimo sexto. & god of' his swete grace ne wernede me not' to make

God has helped me throughout my work, and this book has been finished in 1296.

¹ Lat. : modus autem mollificandi membra in 2°, 3° & 4° casu est unus.

an ende of þis book. & ful ofte I haue bede goddis grace þerto /
 wherefore god haþ grauntid, & god for his blessid name blesse þis God may
 bless this
 book & alle werkis þat ben wrouȝt in his name / ¹And god for his (1 ff. 269, bk.)
 4 miche grace lete hem wel worche þat takiþ þis werk on honde, & book and
 those who
 use it.
 bringe erroris out of her herte, & bringe hem & us to a good
 ende / To þe worschip of his blessid name & profit of his ser-
 uauntis, & me to forȝeuenes of my synnes, god it graunte et imperat
 8 per omnia secula seculorum AmeN.

Explicit.

Here endiþ þe book of lankfrank.²

² In red ink, but nearly erased.



Here bigynneþ a table of þe chapitris of þe book of
lankfrank //

[leaf 270]

The firste book conteyneþ .xv. chapitris /

- 4 The .i. c°. is maad of alle vniuersal woundis & vlcers [p. 31]
 The .ij. c°. is of woundis maad in þe fleisch / [p. 33]
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis maad in senewis / [p. 39]
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis maad in boonys / [p. 47]
 8 The .v. c°. is of woundis maad with strokis or kuttinge / [p. 50]
 The .vj. c°. is of woundis with postymys, & yuel discreasiam / [p. 54]
 The .vij. c°. of woundis maad of arauyschyng^t hound, or opir
 venymous beest / [p. 59]
 12 The .viij. c°. is of curis of woundis which folowip brekyng^t of
 boonys / [p. 62]
 The .ix. c°. is of flux of blood of woundis / [p. 64]
 The .x. c°. is of dietyng^t of woundid men / [p. 72]
 16 The .xj. c°. is of vlcers / [p. 77]
 The .xij. c°. is of fistulis / [p. 89]
 The .xiiij. c°. is of cancris / [p. 92]
 The .xiiij. c°. is of causis & lettyngis of sowdyng^e of woundis &
 20 vlcers / [p. 97]
 The .xv. c°. is of spasmus aboue comynge on woundis // [p. 99]

The .ij. book conteyneþ vnder o summe .x. c°.

- The .i. c°. is of woundis of þe heed, & his anothamia / [p. 106]
 24 The .ij. c°. of curis of woundis in þe face & of membris þat ben [leaf 270, bk.]
 conteyned in hem / [p. 141]
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis in þe necke, and of anothamia [p. 145]
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis of þe splet boonys of þe arme & of þe
 28 hondis, & anothami / [p. 155]
 The .v. c°. is of woundis in thoracis & membris conteyned in
 hem / [p. 161]

- The .vj. c^o. is of curis of woundis of þe spine ouþir spondilium. [p. 166]
- The .vij. c^o. is of woundis of þe stomac & entrailis & wombe, & anothamia / [p. 167] 4
- The .viij. c^o. is of woundis of þe lyuere, splen, reynes, & þe bladdre & anothamie / [p. 171]
- The .ix. c^o. is of woundis of þe 3erde and placis aboute it [p. 173]
- The .x. c^o. is of woundis of þe haunche & grynde & feet, & 8 anothamie / [p. 176]
- The .iij. book conteynep .viij. chapitris /
- The .i. c^o. is of makyng^t of fair heer / [p. 178]
- The .ij. c^o. is of lesyng of heer, or calow3nes or allopucie [p. 180] 12
- The .iij. c^o is of smale puschis and scalis and crustis / [p. 188]
- [leaf 271] The .iiij. c^o. is of clooþ and fraclis, & gowte roset & 3olowisch / [p. 189]
- The .v. c^o. is of smirtyng, scabbe, & icche / [p. 191] 16
- The .vj. c^o. is of þe morphu & impetigine / [p. 193]
- The .vij. c^o. is of lepre & of domys of lepre / [p. 196]
- The .viij. c^o. is of smelnes of membris & leene / [p. 199]
- The .iij. bok þe ij doctrinis, þat is of enpostyms, & conteynep 20 .xviij. chapitris.
- The .i. c^o. is of generacioun of humours and her kyndis / [p. 201]
- The .ij. c^o. is of enpostyms & of sermons þerof / [p. 204]
- The .iij. c^o. is of enpostyms in þe heed, & of gaderynge in þe 24 bedis of children / [p. 214]
- The .iiij. c^o. is of enpostyms of rotis of þe eeris [p. 216]
- The .v. c^o. is of enpostyms of þe necke, and of þe þrote / [p. 217]
- The .vj. c^o. is of enpostym subtillico / [p. 222] 28
- The .vij. c^o. is of enpostym of þe helpers aboute þe spondilia / [p. 223]
- The .viij. c^o. folowip of þe same tofore / [p. 224]
- The .ix. c^o. of enpostym appering in þe mouþ of þe stomak / 32 [p. 226]
- The .x. c^o. is of an enpostym in i[n]guine .i.¹ grindis. [p. 226]
- The .xj. c^o. is of enpostyme of þe haunche & ¶ of þe core / [p. 227] 36
- The .xij. c^o. is of enpostym of þe 3erde & ballok / [p. 228]
- [leaf 271, bk.] The .xiiij. c^o. is of scrophulis & glandulis / [p. 229]

1 = i. e.

	The .xiiij. c ^o . is of ^t þe cure of ^t þe cancre non vlcerat ^t /	[p. 231]
	The .xv. c ^o . is of ^t Boos /	[p. 232]
	The .xvj. c ^o . is of ^t akyng ^t of ^t ioynctis.	[p. 233]
4	The .xvij. c ^o . is of ^t akyng ^e of ^t haunchis /	[p. 238]
	The .xviii. c ^o . is of ^t dieting ^t of ^t men þatt ^t han ache in ioynctis /	[p. 240]
	The .iiij. boke and the .iiij. doctri ⁿ , and conteyneþ .xix. chapitris //	
8		
	The .i. c ^o . is of ^t egrenes of ^t y3en /	[p. 240]
	The .ii. c ^o . is of ^t egrenes of ^t eeris /	[p. 254]
	The .iiij. is of ^t disese of ^t þe nose /	[p. 258]
12	The .iiij. c ^o . is of ^t disese of ^t þe mouþ /	[p. 260]
	The .v. c ^o . is of ^t disese of ^t þe brest ^t , and off ^t swellyng ^t and greetnes / ¹ and coagulacion off ^t milke. ¹	[p. 265]
	The .vj. c ^o . is of ^t ruptorie of ^t þe siphac, and releuyng ^e a3en /	
16		[p. 268]
	The .vij. c ^o . is of ^t hernia of ^t þe ballokis /	[p. 269]
	The .viij. c ^o . is of ^t þe stoon in þe bladdre /	[p. 273]
	The .ix. c ^o . is of ^t an yuel þat ^t is clepid hermfrodito ²	
20	The .x. c ^o . is of ^t watri dropesies.	[p. 281]
	The .xj. c ^o . is of ^t cancer & vlcers in þe 3erde /	[p. 287]
	The .xij. c ^o . is of ^t emoroidis & fistula in ano.	[p. 289]
	The .xiiij. c ^o . is of ^t cancrene & mormals /	[p. 293]
24	The .xiiij. c ^o . is of ^t vngribus and stykyng ^e in handis and feet.	[leaf 272]
	¶ Elephancia /	[p. 295]
	The .xv. c ^o . is of ^t wertis in handis & feet ^t /	[p. 296]
	The .xvj. c ^o . is of ^t blood letyng ^t /	[p. 298]
28	The .xvij. is of ^t kutting ^t & bleding ^t , & water lechis	[p. 303]
	The .xviii. is of ^t cauterie large & of ^t streite /	[p. 305]
	The .iiij. book schal be algebra, & conteyneþ .ij. doctri ⁿ es /	
	The firste doctrine of ^t þe .iiij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris //	
32	The .i. c ^o . is of ^t brekyng ^t of ^t boonis, or o. word	¶ for al / [p. 312]
	The .ij. c ^o . is of ^t breking ^t of ^t þe face /	[p. 314]
	The .iiij. c ^o . is of ^t brekyng ^t of ^t þe forkid boon of ^t þe brest ^t /	[p. 316]
36	The .iiij. c ^o . is of ^t brekyng ^t of ^t boonys off ^t þe spaudis //	[p. 317]
	The .v. c ^o . is of ^t brekyng ^e of ^t þe adiutorie /	[p. 318]

¹⁻¹ added in different hand.

² This chapter is omitted; see note 8 on p. 281.

The .vj. c^o. is of brekyng^t of boonys þat^t is clepid coxe // [p. 320]

The .vii. c^o. is of brusyng^t or brekyng^t of tendir boonys wip þe
.viij. chapitre / [p. 321 & 322]

The secunde doctrine of þe fourþe book, & conteyneþ .v. 4
chapitris //

[leaf 272, bk.] The first^t c^o. is of failyng^t of place, word for al /

The .ij. c^o. is of failyng^t of place of þe chekeboon /

Tho .iiij. c^o. is of lacking^t of place of þe spaude /¹ 8

The .iiij. c^o. is of goyng^t out of þe ioynct^t of þe schuldre / [p. 323]

The .v. c^o. is of þe coniuncioun of þe goyng^t out of þe haunche /
[p. 326]

The antidotarie is þe .v. book, and conteyneþ seuene 12
chapitris //

The .i. c^o. is of reperussiuis & þe maner þerof^t / [p. 328]

The .ij. c^o. is of þe maner of resolutif^t medicins / [p. 333]

The .iiij. c^o. is of þe .iiij. maturatiuis & þe maner þerof^t / [p. 336] 16

The .iiij. c^o. is of mundificatiuis & þe maner þerof^t // [p. 339]

The .v. c^o. is of regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis // [p. 342]

The .vj. c^o. is of corrosiuis & cauterisatiuis // [p. 349]

The .vij. c^o. is of mollificatiuis or softenyng^t medicyns // [p. 353] 20

¹ These three chapters are left out.

Among the MSS. and old books which need copying or re-editing, are :—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

- English Inventories and other MSS. in Canterbury Cathedral (5th Report, Hist. MSS. Com.).
 Maumetrie, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
 The Romance of Troy. Harl. 525.
 Biblical MS., Corpus Cambr. 434 (ab. 1375).
 Purvey's Ecclesie Regimen, Cot. Titus D 1.
 Hampole's unprinted Works.
 þe Clowde of Unknowyng, from Harl. MSS. 2373, 959,
 Bibl. Reg. 17 C 26, &c. Univ. Coll. Oxf. 14.
 A Lanterne of Liȝt, from Harl. MS. 2324.
 Soule-hele, from the Vernon MS.
 Lydgate's unprinted Works.
 Boethius, A.D. 1410, &c.; Pilgrim, 1426, &c. &c.
 Vegetius on the Art of War. (Magd. Oxf. 30, &c.)
 Early Treatises on Music: Descant, the Gamme, &c.
 Skelton's englishing of Diodorus Siculus.
 The Nightingale and other Poems, from MS. Cot.
 Calig. A 2, Addit. MS. 10,036, &c.
 Boethius, in prose, MS. Auct. F. 3. 5, Bodley.
 Penitential Psalms, by Rd. Maydenstoon, Brampton,
 &c. (Rawlinson, A. 389, Douce 232, &c.).
 Documents from the early Registers of the Bishops of
 all Dioceses in Great Britain.
 Ordinances and Documents of the City of Worcester.
 Chronicles of the Brute.
 T. Breus's Passion of Christ, 1422. Harl. 2333.
 Jn. Crophill or Crephill's Tracts, Harl. 1735.
 Burgh's Cato.
 Memoriale Credencium, &c., Harl. 2309.
 Book for Recluses, Harl. 2372.
 Lollard Theological Treatises, Harl. 2343, 2330, &c.
 H. Selby's Northern Ethical Tract, Harl. 2388, art. 29.
 Hilton's Ladder of Perfection, Cott. Faust. B 6, &c.
 Supplementary Early English Lives of Saints.
 The Early and Later Festivals, ab. 1400 and 1440 A.D.
 Cotton, Claud. A 2; Univ. Coll. Oxf. 162, &c.
 Select Prose Treatises from the Vernon MS.
 Jn. Hyde's MS. of Romances and Ballads, Balliol 354.
 Metrical Homilies, Edinburgh MS.
 Lyrical Poems from the Fairfax MS. 16, &c.
 Prose Life of St. Audry, A.D. 1595, Corp. Oxf. 120.
 English Miscellanies from MSS., Corp. Oxford.
 Miscellanies from Oxford College MSS.
 Discs Mori, Jesus Coll. Oxf. 39; Bodl. Laud 99.
 Alain Chartier's Quadrilogue, &c., Univ. Coll. Oxf. 85.
 Mirrour of the blessed liyf of Ihesu Crist, Univ. Coll.
 Oxf. 123, &c.
 Pilgrimage of the Soul, A.D. 1400, prose, Univ. Coll.
 Oxf. 181, &c.
 Poem on Virtues and Vices, &c., Harl. 2260.
 Maundeuyll's Legend of Gwydo, Queen's, Oxf. 383.
 Book of Warrants of Edw. VI., &c., New Coll. Oxf. 328.
 Adam Loutfut's Heraldic Tracts, Harl. 6149-50.
 Rules for Gunpowder and Ordnance, Harl. 6375.
 John Watton's englisht Speculum Christiani, Corpus
 Oxf. 155, Laud G.12, Thoresby 530, Harl. 2250, art. 20.

EXTRA SERIES.

- Erle of Tolous. Ypotis.
 Sir Eglamoure. Emare.
 Lyrical Poems, from the Harl. MS. 2253.
 Le Morte Arthur, from the unique Harl. 2252.
 Sir Tristrem, from the unique Auchinleck MS.
 Miscellaneous Miracle Plays.
 Sir Gowther.
 Dame Siriz, &c.
 Orfeo (Digby, 86).
 Dialogues between the Soul and Body.
 Barlaam and Josaphat.
 Amis and Amiloun.
 Ipomedon.
 Sir Generides, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
 The Troy-Book fragments once cald Barbour's in the
 Cambr. Univ. Library and Douce MSS.
 Gower's Confessio Amantis.
 Poems of Charles, Duke of Orleans,
 Carols and Songs.
 Songs and Ballads, Ashmole MS. 43.
 The Siege of Rouen, from Harl. MSS. 2256, 753, Eger-
 ton 1995, Bodl. 3562, E. Museo 124, &c.
 Jn. Hart's Methode to read English, 1570.
 Octavian.
 Ywain and Gawain.
 Libeaus Desconus.
 Avnturs of Arther.
 Avowyng of King Arther.
 Sir Perceval of Gallas.
 Sir Isumbras.
 Partonope of Blois, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 188, &c.
 Pilgrimage to Jerusalem, Queen's, Oxf. 357.
 Other Pilgrimages to Jerusalem, Harl. 2333, &c.
 Hora, Penitential Psalms, &c., Queen's, Oxf. 207.
 St. Brandon's Confession, Queen's, Oxf. 210.
 Scotch Heraldry Tracts, copy of Caxton's Book of
 Chivalry, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxford 161.
 Stevyn Scrope's Doctryne and Wyshedome of the
 Auncyent Philosophers, A.D. 1450, Harl. 2266.

The Founder and Director of the E. E. T. Soc. is Dr. F. J. Furnivall, 3, St. George's Sq., Primrose Hill, London, N.W. Its Hon. Sec. is W. A. Dalziel, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. The Subscription to the Society is 21s. a year for the *Original Series*, and 21s. for the *Extra Series* of re-editions.

Early English Text Society.

The Subscription, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year [and £1 1s. additional for the EXTRA SERIES], due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid either to the Society's Account at the Head Office of the Union Bank of London, Princes Street, London, E.C., or by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Rd., Finsbury Park, London, N., and cross 'Union Bank of London.' (United-States Subscribers must pay for postage 1s. 4d. a year extra for the Original Series, and 1s. a year for the Extra Series.) The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

The Publications for 1893 (one guinea) are:—

100. Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20s.
101. Cursor Mundi. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe. 10s.

The Publications for 1894 (one guinea) are:—

102. Lanfrank's Science of Chirurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. from the 2 MSS. by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part I. 20s.
103. The Prymer, or Lay-Folk's Prayer-book, from MS., ab. 1420, ed. A. R. Clark and Hy. Littlehales. 10s. [At Press.]

The Publications for 1895 (one guinea) are:—

104. The Exeter-Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS., by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part I. 20s.
105. The Legend of the Cross, from a 12th century MS., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. [At Press.]

The Publications for 1896 (to be ready in 1893) will be chosen from:—

- Richard Misyn's Fire of Love, 1531, & Mending of Life, 1535 (from Hampole), ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A. [Text set.
Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., Part II., ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. [At Press.
Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen, Part II. [At Press.
An Anglo-Saxon Martyrology, edited from the 4 MSS. by Dr. G. Herzfeld. [At Press.
The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS., by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part II.
Queen Elizabeth's Englishings of Boethius, Plutarch, &c., ed. Miss Pemberton. [At Press.
Giraldi Cambrensis Expugnatio Hibernica, englished, MS. Trin. Coll. Dublin, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram, LL.D. [At Press.
George Ashby's Active Policy of a Prince, A.D. 1463, ed. Miss Mary Bateson. [At Press.
Prayers and Devotions, from the unique MS. Cotton Titus C. 19, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq. [Copied.
Sir David Lyndesay's Works. Part VI. and last, ed. W. H. S. Uteley. [At Press.
The Lay Folks' Catechism, by Archbp. Thoresby, ed. Canon Simmons and Rev. — Littlehales. [Text set.

EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1893 are:—

- I.XIII. Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi, englished ab. 1440, and 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram, LL.D. 15s.
I.XIV. Caxton's Godeffroy of Boloyne, or Siege & Conqueste of Jerusalem, 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15s.

The Publications for 1894 (one guinea) are:

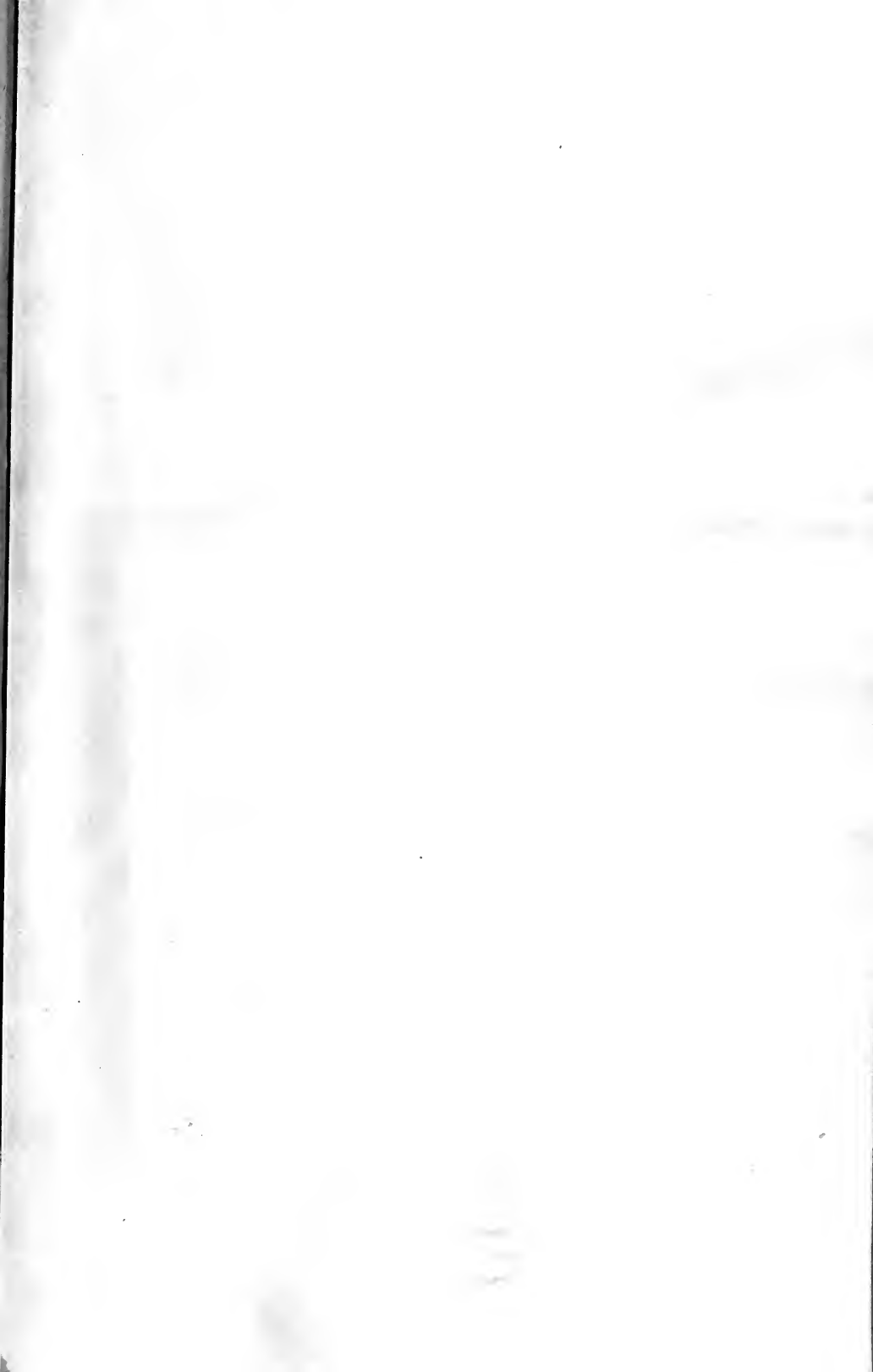
- I.XV. Sir Bevis of Hamton, Part III., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. 15s.
I.XVI. Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philisoffres, ab. 1445-50, ed. R. Steele, B.A. 15s.

The Publications for 1895 and 1896 (to be ready in 1893) will be chosen from:—

- I.XVII. Melusine, the prose Romance, from the unique MS., ab. 1500, ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. [Text done.
The Towneley Plays, re-edited from the unique MS. by G. England, Esq. and A. W. Pollard, M.A. [At Press.
The Chester Plays, Part II., re-edited by George England, Esq. [At Press.
Hoccleve's Regiment of Princes, 1411-12, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. [At Press.
Lichfield Guilds, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall; Introduction by Prof. E. C. K. Gonner. [Text done.
Extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
The Owl and Nightingale, 2 Texts parallel, ed. G. F. H. Sykes, Esq. [At Press.
The Three Kings' Sons, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. L. Keller. [At Press.
Deguileville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 3 prose Versions, 2 English, 1 French, ed. G. N. Currie, M.A.
Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall.
The Coventry Plays, re-edited from the unique MS. by George England, Esq.
Hoccleve's Minor Poems, II., from the Ashburnham MS., ed. I. Gollancz, M.A. [Copied.

The Large-Paper Issue of the Extra Series is stopd, save for unfinishd Works of it.

LONDON: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.



11. APR. 1984

PRAVICTORIA UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY

MAY 7 1982

OCT 1 1985



